Informazioni su questo libro

Si tratta della copia digitale di un libro che per generazioni è stato conservata negli scaffali di una biblioteca prima di essere digitalizzato da Google nell'ambito del progetto volto a rendere disponibili online i libri di tutto il mondo.

Ha sopravvissuto abbastanza per non essere più protetto dai diritti di copyright e diventare di pubblico dominio. Un libro di pubblico dominio è un libro che non è mai stato protetto dal copyright o i cui termini legali di copyright sono scaduti. La classificazione di un libro come di pubblico dominio può variare da paese a paese. I libri di pubblico dominio sono l'anello di congiunzione con il passato, rappresentano un patrimonio storico, culturale e di conoscenza spesso difficile da scoprire.

Commenti, note e altre annotazioni a margine presenti nel volume originale compariranno in questo file, come testimonianza del lungo viaggio percorso dal libro, dall'editore originale alla biblioteca, per giungere fino a te.

Linee guide per l'utilizzo

Google è orgoglioso di essere il partner delle biblioteche per digitalizzare i materiali di pubblico dominio e renderli universalmente disponibili. I libri di pubblico dominio appartengono al pubblico e noi ne siamo solamente i custodi. Tuttavia questo lavoro è oneroso, pertanto, per poter continuare ad offrire questo servizio abbiamo preso alcune iniziative per impedire l'utilizzo illecito da parte di soggetti commerciali, compresa l'imposizione di restrizioni sull'invio di query automatizzate.

Inoltre ti chiediamo di:

+ *Non fare un uso commerciale di questi file* Abbiamo concepito Google Ricerca Libri per l'uso da parte dei singoli utenti privati e ti chiediamo di utilizzare questi file per uso personale e non a fini commerciali.

+ *Non inviare query automatizzate* Non inviare a Google query automatizzate di alcun tipo. Se stai effettuando delle ricerche nel campo della traduzione automatica, del riconoscimento ottico dei caratteri (OCR) o in altri campi dove necessiti di utilizzare grandi quantità di testo, ti invitiamo a contattarci. Incoraggiamo l'uso dei materiali di pubblico dominio per questi scopi e potremmo esserti di aiuto.

+ *Conserva la filigrana* La "filigrana" (watermark) di Google che compare in ciascun file è essenziale per informare gli utenti su questo progetto e aiutarli a trovare materiali aggiuntivi tramite Google Ricerca Libri. Non rimuoverla.

+ *Fanne un uso legale* Indipendentemente dall'utilizzo che ne farai, ricordati che è tua responsabilità accertati di farne un uso legale. Non dare per scontato che, poiché un libro è di pubblico dominio per gli utenti degli Stati Uniti, sia di pubblico dominio anche per gli utenti di altri paesi. I criteri che stabiliscono se un libro è protetto da copyright variano da Paese a Paese e non possiamo offrire indicazioni se un determinato uso del libro è consentito. Non dare per scontato che poiché un libro compare in Google Ricerca Libri ciò significhi che può essere utilizzato in qualsiasi modo e in qualsiasi Paese del mondo. Le sanzioni per le violazioni del copyright possono essere molto severe.

Informazioni su Google Ricerca Libri

La missione di Google è organizzare le informazioni a livello mondiale e renderle universalmente accessibili e fruibili. Google Ricerca Libri aiuta i lettori a scoprire i libri di tutto il mondo e consente ad autori ed editori di raggiungere un pubblico più ampio. Puoi effettuare una ricerca sul Web nell'intero testo di questo libro da `http://books.google.com`

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google books

https://books.google.com

600093780X

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE

BROMSGROVE

LATIN GRAMMAR.

BY THE

REV. G. A. JACOB, D.D.

UPPER GRAMMAR MASTER OF CHRIST'S HOSPITAL.

FOURTH EDITION.

LONDON:

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO.

STATIONERS' HALL COURT.

MDCCCLVIII.

305. c. 29.

Digitized by Google

LONDON :
GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, PRINTERS,
ST. JOHN'S SQUARE.

Digitized by Google

LATIN GRAMMAR.

INTRODUCTION.

In most languages, the first part of Grammar is necessarily taken up with the forms and changes exhibited in their separate words; and in languages which, like the Latin, abound in nominal and verbal inflexions, this etymological part—or "Accidence"—occupies a most important place. In the following Grammar, the Etymological principles of the Latin language, which are continually referred to in the following Grammar, will perhaps be more readily understood and appreciated, if the student is introduced to a short general view of the principal component parts, which are found in declined or inflected words.

1. *The Casual, Temporal, and Personal Affixes.*

The case-endings of nouns, and the endings of the tenses and persons, in verbs, are the most obvious peculiarity in the Latin "Accidence." These terminations at first sight present much variety and irregularity. Thus we have as Datives *mensæ*, *die*i, *domino*, *tussi*, *grad*ui; but an examination shows, that the real termination of the Dative is one and the same in every noun in the language,—and that it is simply the letter [*i*]. For *mensæ* is contracted from *mensai*, a form found in actual use in the Genitive. *Domino* is contracted from *dominoi*, as may be plainly seen in the Greek declension, which gives [λόγος] λόγῳ with the [ι] subscript, compared with the datives *μοί*, *σοί*, &c., and the adverbial dative *οἴκοι*, &c. This also explains why many datives of this declension in Latin actually end in [*i*], as *ullus*, *ulli*; because in these words the letter [*i*] has gained a

Digitized by Google

greater prominence than the *o*. *Tussi* is a contraction for *tussii*, like *ingenii*, *ingeni*. And *diei* and *gradui*, when the termination is rightly set off, exhibit the [*i*] without any alteration.

The same thing may be seen in *Verbs*. Thus we have *amas*, *deles*, *audīs*, *regĭs*, all apparently different, and yet [*is*] is the real termination of them all. For *amas* is contracted from *amais* (like τιμά-εις, τιμᾷς); *deles* from *dele-is* (like *tristeis*, *tristes*); *audīs* from *audi-is*, which makes the syllable *long*; while *regis* remains uncontracted, and therefore is *short*.

A similar explanation may be given of all the other cases of nouns, and the other persons and tenses of verbs; from whence it follows, that, strictly speaking, there is only *one declension* and *one conjugation*; the same terminations, with a few trifling varieties, being found in all. But as contractions produce many apparent differences, a distinction of declensions and conjugations is perhaps better for beginners.

The terminations of nouns and verbs above described are called *Affixes*, as being *affixed*, or added on, to mark the case or person; and they are called, *Casual*, *Temporal*, or *Personal* affixes, according as they mark the *cases* of nouns, or the *tenses* and *persons* of verbs.

2. *Crude-forms.*

When a noun has been stripped of its case-endings, or casual affixes, there remains a part of the word, which is not affected in declining the noun (except by accidental contraction), but continues unaltered throughout all the cases. This unaltered part is called the *crude-form*, or *theme*, of the noun, and seems to represent the leading idea, or common meaning, which all the cases agree in expressing—so that they are called collectively *a noun*; though each case exhibits this common meaning differently modified, according to its own peculiar force and use.

When the crude-form ends in a consonant, it may readily be distinguished by the most cursory observation. Thus, in the word *stirps*, *stirpis*, *stirpi*, *stirpem*, *stirps*, *stirpe*, the crude-form is evidently [STIRP]; from which all the cases may be formed by merely adding their respective *affixes*, s, is, i, em, s, e. When the

Digitized by Google

crude-form ends with a vowel, its discovery is not always quite so obvious; but it may still be plainly seen in some of the cases, and especially in the ablative singular.

The formation of verbs in this respect is exactly similar to that of nouns; for there is in verbs also an unaltered part, which in use and meaning performs the same office, as we observed in nouns, and is therefore called the *crude-form* of the verb. Thus in *rego*, *regis*, *rege*bam, *rega*m, &c., the crude-form is [REG].

This same principle of crude-forms may be observed even in English, though less obviously, on account of our meagre inflexions. Thus, *defend* makes *defend*-est, *defend*-eth, *defend*-s, *defend*-ed, &c.

The unaltered part of a noun or verb is called its *crude-form*, because it is (so to speak) the crude or raw material, out of which the different cases or persons are shaped, and dressed up, and made fit for actual use. Crude-forms, therefore, must not be regarded as *words really existing in the language*, but as forms obtained by analysis. Although it does sometimes happen (especially in English) that the crude-form, and some of the real cases or persons, are accidentally written alike; as *amor*, love, is the crude-form and also the nominative case; *dic* the crude-form and also the imperative mood of *dico*, I say; so also in the English verb *defend*, above mentioned.

3. *Nominal, Verbal, and Adverbial Affixes*, &c.

It has been before observed, that each case of a noun has its own proper affix, which carries with it its own peculiar meaning in all nouns. Thus, *diei*, *gradui*, *stirpi*, &c., all have the affix [*i*], and all have the peculiar meaning of the dative case; but their crude-forms are totally different. In the same manner even after the casual affixes have been discarded, there may still be observed a number of classes, or collections of words, of such a nature that the words in the same class have all the same termination, while the rest of the word is totally different in each. And it is to be remarked, that this similarity of termination is to be found in classes of words of every kind—substantives, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, and particles—all exhibit-

Digitized by Google

ing this peculiar feature, and all capable of being arranged and classified, according as their terminations agree.

These terminations, it must be remembered, have nothing whatever to do with the case or person ending of the noun or verb; for they are to be seen after the casual and personal affixes have been removed, and also in adverbs, which are not declined at all. Thus, we have *amat*or, *act*or, *domit*or, &c.; *ed*ax, *vor*ax, *aud*ax, &c.; *vir*esco, *tum*esco, *inveter*asco, &c.; *acr*iter, *moll*iter, *suav*iter, &c. Or, to take English examples, *sweet*ness, *good*ness, *sound*ness; *hope*ful, *fear*ful, *grate*ful, &c.

Each of these terminations has its own proper force and meaning, whatever may be the other part of the word: thus, all words ending in *tor*, signify *a male agent*, or a man who performs an action. Though it does sometimes happen that the capriciousness of custom, which will not always be confined by rules, has introduced occasional irregularities; and words are consequently found, the signification of which does not readily correspond with the proper meaning of the termination. To distinguish these terminations from those of cases and tenses, they have been called *nominal*, *verbal*, or *adverbial* affixes, according as they are found in nouns, verbs, or adverbs, &c.

4. *Roots.*

When all the affixes above mentioned have been removed, together with every other part which gives any peculiar modification to the form or meaning of a word, there remains what is called the *Root.* To understand what is meant by a root, the student must bear in mind, that in most languages words may be classed together in *families;* each family containing within it different parts of speech—substantives, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, &c.—each of which has its own appropriate force and meaning, and yet there is besides one general meaning or leading idea, which runs through all the words of the same family. Thus, in English we have *please*, *pleas*ing, *pleas*ure, *pleas*urable, *pleas*urably, dis*pleas*e, dis*pleas*ure, un*pleas*ing, &c.; or, in Latin, *am*o, *am*or, *am*ator, *am*icus, *am*icitia, *am*abilis, *am*abilitas, *am*anter, in*im*icus, &c. In the English list, the general idea of *pleasing*, and in the Latin one that of *loving*, is found in all the words,

Digitized by Google

and is expressed by that part of the word which remains the same in them all, and which is called the *Root*, or stem; namely, [PLEAS] in the one family, and [AM] in the other.

The Root, like the crude-form of a word, is evidently not always a *word* of the language, but is only the elementary part of the kindred words of the same family, which is discovered by analysis, and from which the words may be derived—like branches springing from one common stem. It may, however, be remarked, that in English, and other similar languages, there will often be an awkwardness and irregularity in arranging such families of words; because some of them are formed from Roots which belong to another language. Thus, *love*, *love*ly, *am*iable, &c., belong in *meaning* to the same family; but the last word is derived from the Latin Root [AM], instead of the English one [LOV]. This irregularity is seldom found in Latin or Greek.

Upon observing any family of words it may be further seen, that some of the words are primary branches, or simple derivations, from the Root; while others may be called secondary, or tertiary derivatives. Thus, *pleasure* is simply derived from the Root [PLEAS], but *pleasurable*, though containing the same Root, is derived immediately from *pleasure*. So also in the Latin family, from [AM] is derived primarily *amicus*, secondarily *amicitia*. And the observance of this distinction is often important.

Lastly; it will be seen that a *Root* and a *Crude-form* are in some respects alike; yet they have this very marked difference, that a Root is the common stock of a whole family of words, embracing different parts of speech, but a Crude-form is only the common stock of a single noun or verb. Thus, a Root is the simplest element to which a word can readily be reduced; but a Crude-form may be a primary, secondary, or tertiary branch from the Root, and, indeed, may be compounded to any extent. Thus, in *amabilitas*, the Root is [AM], but the Crude-form is [AMABILITAT]. The practice of tracing words to their Roots is very useful in enabling students to gain a clear perception of the meaning of derivative words, as well in English as in other languages.

In observing the formation of words from their Roots or

Digitized by Google

Crude-forms, it is sometimes necessary to attend to the influence of *Euphony* and the effects of *Time*.

(*a*.) When the usual formation of a word would produce a harsh or unpleasing sound, it was often removed by the change or omission of letters. These Euphonic changes may for the most part be reduced to Rules, as they were made with some regularity and precision. Thus, *FrAngo, refrIngo; cAno, tubicEn, tubicInis; clauDo, clauSi,* for *claudsi,* are instances of Euphonic changes.

(*b*.) Time produces changes in all languages; and although the etymological forms of the Latin language have suffered comparatively but little from this source, yet its influence may be seen. Changes of this kind can seldom be reduced to Rules, as they depend on no fixed principle. Yet two different effects may be observed; for the *longest* forms are often the oldest, and time and the progress of refinement shorten them; and yet *short* forms are sometimes the oldest, and are lengthened by the subsequent addition of letters: thus, *annuo,* I assent, made originally the Perfect *annŭvi,* then *annŭi,* lastly *annŭi.* On the other hand, *sono,* I sound, seems to have had originally the Crude-form [SON], making the Infinitive *sonĕre;* but later writers make it [SONA], *sonāre.*

Digitized by Google

GRAMMAR.

§ 1. GRAMMAR may be divided into two parts, Etymology and Syntax.

Etymology teaches the forms and changes of separate words.

Syntax teaches the connexion and arrangement of words in sentences.

Obs. Prosody is not a part of Grammar, though necessary for understanding the construction of verse.

ETYMOLOGY.

§ 2. LETTERS.

1. The Latin Letters are twenty-five in number, being the same as those of the English Alphabet, but without w.

Aa, Bb, Cc, Dd, Ee, Ff, Gg, Hh, Ii, Jj, Kk, Ll, Mm, Nn, Oo, Pp, Qq, Rr, Ss, Tt, Uu, Vv, Xx, Yy, Zz.

2. A *Diphthong* is two vowels united in one sound. The diphthongs are *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe, ui;* but *ae, oe,* are commonly joined and written thus, *æ, œ.*

Obs. 1. The diphthong *ai* is always followed by a vowel, and the *i* is perhaps more correctly considered as a consonant, *j;* thus, *ajo* for *aio:* so in Greek words; as, *Grajus* for *Graius,* from [Γραῖος], just as *Ajax* from Αἴας, and *Troja* from Τροῖα.

Yet *aibam* seems to have been used for *aiebam,* where the *i* must be a vowel.

Obs. 2. The diphthongs *ei, ui, eu,* are very little used; thus,
ei only in a few interjections; as *hei!*
ui ,, in *cui, huic, hui.*
eu ,, in *ceu, eheu, heu, heus, neu, neuter, neutiquam, seu:* and in Greek words; as, *Orpheus.*

In all other cases these letters are pronounced as two syllables; as in *meus, mei, tui.*

Digitized by Google

Obs. 3. A kind of diphthong is formed by *ua* in *suadeo, suavis,* and their derivatives; by *ue* in *suesco* and its derivatives: and by *u* with any other vowel after *g* or *q;* as, *extinguo, sanguis, qui, qua, quo,* &c. In these the *u* appears to have its *consonant* sound (see *below, a,* 3. *Obs.* 1, *b.*); for it does not make the following vowel long; as, *sanguĭnis, quĕ:* yet it does not with the other consonant make a position, like two consonants; as, *ăqua,* with the first syllable short.

(*a*) *Pronunciation.*

1. The Latin letters are pronounced by us exactly like the English.
2. Hence the diphthongs are sounded thus:
   æ, e; *ai,* ay; *au,* au; *ei,* i; *eu,* u; *œ,* e; *ui,* i.
3. Q is always followed by *u,* as in English.

Obs. 1. The *true* sound of the Latin letters, especially the vowels, certainly differed much from the English pronunciation.

(*a*) *Vowels.*—The vowels and diphthongs probably corresponded nearly with the following English sounds:—

a	*e*	*i*	*o*	*u*
f*a*ther,	th*ey*,	mach*i*ne,	h*o*le,	r*u*le.
æ	*ai*	*au*	*ei*	*eu*	*œ*	*ui.*
sl*ei*ght,	*aye*,	*out*,	w*ei*ght,	y*ew*,	b*oy*,	*we.*

(*b*) *Consonants.*—C and G were always pronounced hard, as in *come* and *go:* they corresponded with the Greek letters, κ, γ; *Cicero* is Κικέρων, and *gigas* γίγας. Yet *c* followed by *i* and another vowel seems in some words to have had the soft sound of *s,* as the termination *tius, tia,* is often used for *cius, cia.*

J and V being the consonants of *i, u,* were pronounced like the English *y, w;* as, *ārjĕtis* (aryetis) for *ăriĕtis, tēnvis* (tenwis) for *tĕnŭis.* Hence the preceding vowel is long in such words. See *above, Obs.* 3.

K is used only in some abbreviations; as, K. for *Kæso.*

Y and Z, expressing the Greek letters *υ,* ζ, were used only in words taken from the Greek after the language was formed; as, Κῦρος *Cyrus,* γάζα *gaza.* In old Latin words of kindred origin with Greek ones, *y* and *z* are not used; as, *mus* μῦς.

The syllable *ti* before a vowel was pronounced not *shi* as in English, but *ti* or possibly *si;* as, *tertius,* terti-us, or tersi-us.

Obs. 2. *The Old Latin Alphabet.*—The Latin letters seem to have been originally twenty-one,

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, V, X.

(*a*) C had once the sound of G, but afterwards was pronounced as K, and K then ceased to be used.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) I and V were used both as vowels and consonants; but modern printers have added J for the consonant sound of I, and U for the vowel sound of V.

(*c*) R and S seem anciently to have had a kindred sound, for many words had *s* where *r* was afterwards used; as, *arbosem* for *arborem*. Some forms of this kind continued in use; as, *arbos* or *arbor*; so *opus oper-is*, *pectus pector-is*.

(*d*) Y and Z were added to the Alphabet to express the Greek *υ* and *ζ*.

(*b*) *Division of Letters.*

1. Of the letters six are vowels, *a, e, i, o, u, y*.
2. The remaining nineteen are consonants.
3. The consonants may be divided into *semi-vowels*, *mutes*, and *double letters*.

(*i*) The semi-vowels are the *liquids*, *l, m, n, r*.
the *sibilant*, or hissing letter, *s*.
the *vowel-consonants*, *j, v*.

(*ii*) The mutes are, *b, c, d, f, g, h, k, p, q, t*.

(*iii*) The double-letters are *x* [cs], and *z* [ds].

Obs. 1. The *proper* mutes are six, corresponding with the same letters in Greek,

1. *tenues*, soft or sharp, *p, c, t*, in Greek, *π, κ, τ*.
2. *mediæ*, middle or flat, *b, g, d*, ,, *β, γ, δ*.

The letter *k* is not used:—*q* has the same sound as *c* hard:—*h* is only an *aspiration* or hard breathing:—*f*, though a kind of aspirate, does not usually correspond with the Greek *φ*, but the aspirates are formed in Latin by the help of *h*; thus—

3. *aspiratæ*, aspirate, *ph, ch, th*, in Greek *φ, χ, θ*.

Obs. 2. The consonants may also be divided according to the *organs* with which they are pronounced; thus—

b, f, m, p, v,	called *labials*,	or lip-sounds.
c, g, h, k, q, x,	,, *gutturals*,	or throat-sounds.
d, j, l, n, r, s, t, z,	,, *linguals*,	or tongue-sounds.

Of these the *proper* labials, *p, b*, are called p-sounds.
,, gutturals, *c, g*, ,, k-sounds.
,, linguals, *t, d*, ,, t-sounds.

(*c*) *Punctuation.*

The stops used in Latin are the same as in English, the comma [,], the semi-colon [;], the colon [:], the full-stop [.], the note of interrogation [?], and the note of admiration [!].

Digitized by Google

§ 3. Changes of Letters.

Many changes of letters take place in the declension or composition of words, the general object of which appears to have been *Euphony*, or the production of a more pleasing sound.

These changes are mostly regulated by certain laws or principles, which require attention, and are commonly called the Rules of Euphony.

Rules of Euphony.

(*a*) Vowels.

1. *Contraction.*—Two vowels are often contracted into one.

Contraction is much less *observable* in Latin, than in Greek, because the *uncontracted* forms are, for the most part, not used. Yet many contractions may be traced in the inflexion and composition of words.

Rule.—In contraction the first vowel absorbs the other, and becomes long; thus,

ae	makes	*ā*,	as, *mensa-e, mensā.*	*ii*	makes	*ī*,	as, *fili-e, filī.*
ai	,,	*ā*,	*ama-is, amās.*	*ii*	,,	*ī*,	*di-i, dī.*
au	,,	*ā*,	*ama-unt, amānt.*	*oa*	,,	*ō*,	*co-ago, cōgo.*
ea	,,	*ē*,	*de-ago, dēgo.*	*oe*	,,	*ō*,	*domino-e, dominō.*
ee	,,	*ē*,	*die-e, diē.*	*oi*	,,	*ō*,	*domino-i, domino.*
ei	,,	*ē*,	*die-i, diē.*	*ue*	,,	*ū*,	*gradu-e, gradū.*
eu	,,	*ē*,	*mone-unt, monēnt.*	*ui*	,,	*ū*,	*gradu-i, gradū.*

Obs. 1. *Exceptions.*

1. *aa* makes *ē*, in verbs; as, *ama-am, amem:* so in lengthening a short *ă*; as, *ăgo, ēgi.*

2. *ai* makes *æ*, in nouns; as, *mensa-i, mensæ.*

3. *ao* — *o*, in verbs for the sake of the ending; as, *ama-o, amo.*

4. *oi* — *æ*, in the middle of some words; as, *co-itus, cœtus.*

5. *oi* — *i*, in nouns, *Gen. Sing.* and *Nom. Plur.*; as, *domino-i, domini.*

6. In the *Dat. Plur.* of nouns *ī* always absorbs *ă* and *ŏ* preceding; hence *mensa-īs, mensis; domino-īs, dominis.* This may be accounted for by a reference to the Greek terminations αις and οις.

Obs. 2. H, being no real letter, does not prevent contraction; as, *de-habilis, dēbilis; ne-homo, nēmo; præ-habeo, præbeo.*

J and V are sometimes dropped or absorbed to make way for contraction; as, *bĭjugæ, bīgæ; mŏvibilis, mōbilis.*

V sometimes combines with, or prevails over, an *o* preceding and makes *ū*: as, *bŏvibus, bōbus* or *būbus: providens, prūdens.*

Obs. 3. A species of contraction, called *Synizesis*, is sometimes used in Latin poetry, by which the vowels are left unaltered, but are pronounced as one syllable; as, *laquearibus aureis*, Virg. Æn. i. 726. *uno eodemque igni*, Virg. Ecl. viii. 81.

Obs. 4. For the *Elision* of vowels, see *Prosody.*

Digitized by Google

2. *Vowel-change.*—One vowel is often changed into another in the inflexion and composition of words.

The *short* vowels are most liable to change, but sometimes *long* vowels and diphthongs are changed also.

Rule i.—In the formation of words, *heavier* forms prefer the *lighter* vowels, and *lighter* forms the *heavier* vowels.

Obs. 1. Words become heavier by being lengthened, or by having more consonants at the end of a syllable; as,

iners heavier than *ars.*	*princeps* than *principis.*
cecini ,, *cano.*	*inīquus* ,, *æquus.*

Obs. 2. The short vowels may be thus arranged, to show their comparative weight,—*a, u, o, i, e.*—Of these *a* is the heaviest and *e* the lightest: but sometimes *u* appears lighter than *o*, and *i* than *e;* as, *colo, cultum; egeo, indigeo.*

Rule ii.—In changing vowels, *i* is commonly found in *open* syllables, and *e* in *closed* syllables.

Obs. Syllables are called *open*, when they end in a vowel; and *closed*, when they end in a consonant; as, *cano, ceci-ni, concen-tum.*

When only one consonant follows a vowel (in the middle of a word), it generally leaves the vowel *open*, as in *ceci-ni:* when two consonants follow, one is thrown back upon the vowel, and *closes* it, as in *concentum.* See *Compound Verbs*, § 51.

Rule iii.—In changing vowels, a short *i* is not allowed before *r*, but is changed into *e;* the *r* being thrown back upon, and closing, the syllable; as, *cinis, ciner-is; pario, peper-i, comper-io.* Comp. *cano, cecini, concino.*

The same is sometimes the case also with *t* and *d*, when followed by *i;* as, *patior, perpet-ior; gradior, ingred-ior.* See *Compound Verbs*, § 51. *Rule i.*

(*i*) In conformity with these Rules the following changes are made:

a into *e*, as, *fallo, fefelli.*	*u* into *e*, as, *opus, operis.*
a ,, *i*, *cano, cecini.*	*u* ,, *i*, *famulus, familia.*
a ,, *u*, *calco, inculco.*	*u* ,, *o*, *ebur, ebŏris.*
e ,, *i*, *vertex, verticis.*	So diphthongs.
e ,, *u*, *pello, pepuli.*	*æ* into *ī*, as, *æquus, inīquus.*
i ,, *e*, *cinis, cineris.*	*au* ,, *ē*, *audio, obēdio.*
o ,, *i*, *ordo, ordinis.*	*au* ,, *ō*, *plaudo, explodo.*
o ,, *u*, *colo, cultum.*	*au* ,, *ū*, *claudo, excludo.*

(*ii*) Some have no reference to *lighter* or *heavier* forms: as,

ă into *ē*, as, *fēci* from *facio.*	*o* into *e*, as, *verto* from *vorto.*
a ,, *o*, *portio* for *partio.*	*o* ,, *u*, *dominus* for *dominos.*
e ,, *o*, *pondus* from *pendo.*	*u* ,, *i*, *optimus* or *optumus.*
e ,, *u*, *scopulus* for *scopelus.*	*u* ,, *o*, *com* for *cum* in comp.
i ,, *e*, *mare* for *mari.*	*u* ,, *æ*, *mœnia* from *munio.*

Digitized by Google

3. *Inserted* or *Connecting Vowels.*—Inflected or compound words sometimes have a vowel inserted, to connect the different parts together; as, *pi-e-tas, vel-i-volus, vi-o-lentus, teg-u-men.*

So the euphonic *e* after a final consonant in the Abl. of nouns and Imperat. of verbs; as, *lapid-e, reg-e.*

(*b*) Consonants.

Rule i.—A harsh meeting of consonants is avoided, by dropping one or more of them; as, *ultum* for *ulctum; subtemen* for *subtexmen; gigas* for *gigants.*

Obs. 1. The following cases may be especially noticed:—
c or *g* dropped between *l* and *s*; see *Rule v. Obs.* 2.
t or *d* dropped before *s*; see *Rule vi.*
r after a diphthong dropped before *s*; see *Rule viii. Obs.* 2.
one of two final liquids dropped; as, *far* for *farr; mel* for *mell.*

Obs. 2. Sometimes consonants are apparently *absorbed*, and make a preceding short vowel long; thus,

d, as, *divīsi* for *divĭd-si.* | *s*, as, *īdem* for *ĭs-dem.*
g, as, *jūmentum* for *jŭg-mentum.* | *v*, as, *mōbilis* for *mŏv-bilis.*

Obs. 3. Consonants are sometimes euphonically inserted;

b, as, *comburo* for *com-uro.* | *p*, as, *emptum* for *em-tum.*
n, as, *findo* for *fid-o.* | *r*, as, *sero* for *se-o.*

Rule ii.—When two mutes meet, they will be of the same kind, both soft (*tenues*), or both middle (*mediæ*). Hence *b* and *g* become *p*, *c*, before *t*; as, *scribo, scriptum; rego, rectum.*

Obs. 1. *Sub, ob*, keep *b* in composition; as, *sub-ter, ob-tineo.*

Obs. 2. *Gu, qu*, before *t*, are also changed to *c*; as, *exstinguo, exstinctum; coquo, coctum.*

Rule iii.—A *tenuis* (*p, c, t*), before a liquid, is changed into its *media* (*b, g, d*); as, *pop-licus, publicus; nec-lego, negligo; quat-ra, quadra.*

Rule iv.—The *mediæ* (*b, g*), before *s*, are changed into their *tenues* (*p, c*); as, *scribo, scripsi; rego,* [*rec-si*] *rexi.*

Obs. 1. Except prepositions in composition; as, *sub-sisto:* and nouns in *bs*; as, *trabs, plebs.*

Obs. 2. Sometimes *b* before *s* is assimilated; as, *jub-si, jussi.*

Obs. 3. For the *d* before *s*, see *Rule vi.*

Rule v.—A guttural or k-sound (*c, g*), with *s*, becomes *x*; as, *duc-s, dux; duc-si, duxi;* | *reg-s, rex; reg-si, rexi.*

Obs. 1. *Gu, qu*, before *s*, also make *x*; as, *exstinguo, exstinxi; coquo, coxi.* A guttural is sometimes concealed in *h* or *v*; as, *veh-o, vexi; viv-o, vixi;* so *nix, niv-is.*

Obs. 2. When *l* or *r* precedes, *c* or *g* is lost before *s*; as, *mulc-eo, mulsi; alg-eo, alsi; parc-o, parsi; merg-o, mersi.*

Digitized by Google

Rule vi.—A lingual or t-sound (*t*, *d*) is usually lost before *s*; as, *front-s, frons*; *mit-si, mīsi*; *lapid-s, lapis*; *divĭd-si, divīsi.*

Obs. 1. A short vowel preceding is lengthened in verbs, but not in nouns; as, *divĭdo, divīsi*; but *lapĭs, lapĭd-is.*

Obs. 2. Sometimes *t* and *d* are not lost, but assimilated before *s*; as, *concut-si, concussi*; *ced-si, cessi.*

Obs. 3. The only noun, which ends with a t-sound, is *caput.* Others drop a final *t* or *d*; as, *lact, lac*; *cord, cor.*

Rule vii.—Of the liquids, *m*, *n*, the former is attached to labials (*p*, *b*), the latter to gutturals (*c*, *g*), and linguals (*t*, *d*); thus, *com-pono, com-bibo, con-curro, con-gredior, con-traho, con-duco*; so, *quem-dam, quendam*; *in-primis, imprimis*; *cum-que, cunque.*

Rule viii.—The liquid *r*, before *t*, is sometimes changed into *s*; as, *haur-io, haustum*; *torr-eo, tostum.*

Obs. 1. A final *r* sometimes appears as *s*; as, *mus* for *mur*; *mos* for *mor*; so *honos* or *honor*, &c.

Obs. 2. After a diphthong, *r* is dropped before *s*; as, *haur-io, hausi*; *hær-eo, hæsi.*

Rule ix.—The former of two consonants is often *assimilated*, i. e. changed into the latter; especially when the latter is a liquid or *s*; as, *ob-fero, offero*; *lapid-lus, lapillus*; *pat-ricida, parricida*; *liber-lus, libellus*; *sup-mus, summus*; *un-lus, ullus*; *prem-si, pressi.*

This *assimilation* is seen abundantly in compound verbs.

Obs. Sometimes the *latter* consonant is assimilated to the former; as, *vel-re, velle*; *facil-simus, facillimus*; *pulcher-simus, pulcherrimus.*

(*c*) *Interchanges of Consonants.*

Some changes of consonants between Greek and Latin words, and in Latin words among themselves, cannot be reduced to uniform Rules, but should yet be noticed.

(*i*) LABIALS.

1. B for *π*; as, *ἀπὸ ab, ὑπὸ sub*;—for *φ*; as, *ἄμφω ambo, νεφέλη nebula*, and *bi* in *tibi, sibi*, for *φι* or *φιν*. It is interchanged with *v*; as, *duellum* [*dvellum* and then *d* dropped], *bellum*; *duis, bis*; and contrariwise, *abfero* makes [*avfero* and then] *aufero.*

2. F for *β*; as, *βρέμω fremo*;—for *φ* in words of common Pelasgic origin; as, *φηγὸς fagus, φεύγω fugio.*

3. M for a final *ν*; as, *ποιητὴν poetam, ἔφευγον fugiebam*; so *μὴ ne*; see also *Rule vii.*;—for ; as, *ὕπνος somnus.* Sometimes falls out; as, *quam-si, quasi.*

Digitized by Google

4. P for β; as, κάνωβος *canopus;*—for φ; as, πορφύρα *purpura;* —for κ; as, λύκος *lupus;*—for τ; as ταὼς *pavo;*—for μ; as, μέρος *pars.* It is interchanged with *v;* as, *ovilio, opilio:* see also *Rule iii.;*—euphonically inserted, see *Rule i. Obs.* 2.

5. V represents the Greek Digamma, as is seen in *ver, vestis, video, vinum, vis,* &c. It represents a guttural *c* or *g;* as, *vivo, vixi; nix, nivis, ningo.* Often falls out, or is absorbed; as, *movibilis, mobilis.*

(*ii*) GUTTURALS.

1. C for γ; as ἀμοργή *amurca.* It is interchanged with *g;* as, *nec-otium, negotium,* see *Rule iii.;*—with *qu;* as, *qui, cujus;* —is euphonically inserted; as, σπέος *specus;*—falls out; as, *hocdie, hodie.*

2. G for κ; as, δίκη *dignus;*—falls out; as, *exag-men, examen; jug-mentum, jumentum.*

3. H stands for the Greek aspirate; as, Ἕκτωρ *Hector;*—for χ; as, χεῖμα *hiems:* so in Latin it represents *c* or *g;* as, *traho, tractum, trag-ula.*

4. Qu for τ; as, τέσσαρες *quattuor;*—for π; as, πέντε *quinque;* —for κ; as, εἰκὸς *æquus.* So, in some pronominal forms, π, κ, τ, *c, qu,* are interchanged; as, πῶς, κῶς, τίς, *cui, quis.*

5. X for ς; as, Αἴας, *Ajax;*—for ψ; as, ὀψ *vox.* It falls out; as, *subtex-men, subtemen.*

(*iii*) LINGUALS.

1. D for λ; as, μελετάω *meditor;*—for ζ; as, σχίζω *scindo;*— for θ; as, θεὸς *deus.* It is interchanged with *t;* as, *mendax, mentior;*—with *l;* as, *odor, oleo.* It is dropped; as, *cord, cor.*

2. J for ζ; as, ζυγὸν *jugum.* It falls out; as, *biju-gæ, bigæ.*

3. L for δ; as, Ὀδυσσεὺς *Ulysses,* δάκρυ *lacryma;*—for ρ; as, παῦρος *paulus.* It interchanges with *r;* as, *Latialis* or *Latiaris.*

4 N for ρ; as, δῶρον *donum,* so δεινὸς *dirus.* It is euphonically inserted; as δασὺς *densus, jugum jungo.*

5. R for λ; as, χελιδὼν *hirundo;*—for ς; as, χθὲς *heri.* Is often interchanged with *s;* as, *honor* or *honos, nasus* and *naris;*— with *d;* as, *medi-dies, meridies; auris, audio.*

6. S for τ; as, ῥητίνη *resina;*—for δ; as, ῥόδον *rosa;*—for the hard breathing; as, ἅλς *sal,* ὑπὲρ *super;*—for the soft breathing; as, εἰ *si,* εἴρω *sero.* It falls out; as, σφάλλω *fallo, is-dem idem.*

7. T for π; as, σπουδὴ *studium;*—for δ; as, στάδιον *spatium.* Is interchanged with *d:* as, *ad-que, atque.* It is dropped; as, *lact, lac.*

Digitized by Google

§ 4. PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 4. The principal parts of speech are three, *Nouns, Verbs, Particles.*

1. Nouns are declined, verbs are conjugated, particles are undeclined.

2. Nouns include *Substantive, Adjective,* and *Pronoun.*

3. Particles include *Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition,* and *Interjection.*

4. The parts of speech may therefore be reckoned as *eight;* namely, substantive, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, conjunction, preposition, interjection.

§ 5. NOUNS.

In nouns must be noticed *Numbers, Genders,* and *Cases.*

(*a*) *Numbers.*

1. Nouns have two numbers, *singular* and *plural.*

2. The singular speaks of *one;* as, *pater* a father.

3. The plural speaks of *more than one;* as, *patres* fathers.

(*b*) *Genders.*

1. Nouns have three genders, *masculine, feminine, neuter;* and each noun has one or the other of these genders; as, *dominus,* a lord, *mas.*—*mensa* a table, *fem.*—*regnum* a kingdom, *neut.*

2. Nouns, which may be used either as masculine or feminine, without restriction, are said to be *doubtful* in their gender; as, *finis* an end, *mas.* or *fem.*

3. Nouns, which are masculine, when they denote the male kind, and feminine, when they denote the female kind, are said to be *common* in their gender; as, *parens* a parent, when meaning a father, *mas.*—when meaning a mother, *fem.*

Obs. Nouns which with one gender denote both sexes are called *epicœne;* as, *passer* a sparrow, *mas.* either male or female.

Digitized by Google

(*c*) *Cases.*

1. Nouns have six cases in each number.

1. The *Nominative.*	4. The *Accusative.*
2. „ *Genitive.*	5. „ *Vocative.*
3. „ *Dative.*	6. „ *Ablative.*

Obs. The nominative [and vocative] is sometimes called *direct*, and the others *oblique* cases.

2. In Latin the cases are distinguished by their *endings;* but in English they are generally distinguished by different *prepositions*, of, to, for, by, with, from, &c. Hence such prepositions are called *signs* of the cases.

(*i*) The *Nominative* case usually goes before the *verb.* It answers the question, Who, or What? as, Who teaches? *Magister docet*, the master teaches.

(*ii*) The *Genitive* [or *Possessive*] case has the sign *of* or *'s* with an *apostrophe.* It answers the question, Whose, or Of what? as, Whose learning? *Magistri doctrina*, the learning of the master, or the master's learning.

(*iii*) The *Dative* case has the signs *to* or *for.* It answers the question, To or for whom? To or for what? as, To whom do I give the book? *Do librum magistro*, I give the book to the master.

(*iv*) The *Accusative* [or *Objective*] case usually follows the *verb.* It answers the question, Whom, or What? as, Whom do you love? *Amo magistrum*, I love the master.

(*v*) The *Vocative* case is used when one is called or spoken to; as, *O magister*, O master.

(*vi*) The *Ablative* case has the signs *by, with, from*, and others. It answers the question, By whom? With what? &c.; as, By whom are you taught? *Doceor a magistro*, I am taught by the master; With what does he speak? *Linguâ loquitur*, he speaks with his tongue.

Obs. The cases express the different *relations* of the noun, or the different ways in which the noun is connected with other words. The real force and meaning of each case can, therefore, be learned only from the *Syntax.*

Digitized by Google

§ 6. Formation of Nouns.

1. In Latin nouns there is one part of the word which remains the same throughout all the cases; and to this part letters or syllables are added to form each particular case.

(*a*) That part of the noun, which remains the same throughout, is called the *Crudeform* [or root] of the noun.

(*b*) The letter or syllable, which is added to form each particular case, is called the *case-ending* or *casual affix.*

(*c*) Thus in declining *pes* a foot,—

Gen. *ped-is;* Dat. *ped-i;* Acc. *ped-em;* Abl. *ped-e;* the crudeform is [PED]; the case-endings, *is, i, em, e.*

2. The casual affixes are nearly alike in all nouns,

Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom. *S*, or [no affix]	Nom. *ES* or *I*
Gen. *IS*, or *I*	Gen. *UM* or *RUM*
Dat. *I*	Dat. *ĭBUS*, or *IS*
Acc. *eM*	Acc. *ES* (i. e. *emS*)
Voc. *S*, or [no affix]	Voc. *ES*, or *I*
Abl. *ĕ*	Abl. *ĭBUS*, or *IS.*

3. In *neuter* nouns, the Nom. Acc. and Voc. are alike in both numbers, and in the plural end in *a.*

4. The Nom. and Voc. of *all* nouns are alike in both numbers, except in the Sing. of nouns in *us* of the second Declension.

5. The Dat. and Abl. plural of *all* nouns are alike.

Obs. 1. Nom. Sing.—The proper affix for the Nom. Sing. seems to have been *s;* as, [DIE], *dies;* [TURRI], *turris.*

(*a*) Some nouns do not take any affix in the Nom.; as, [MENSA], *mensa;* [CARMIN], *carmen.*

(*b*) Sometimes letters are dropped or changed in the Nom.; as, [LEON], *leo;* [NOCT], *nox.*

(*c*) Neuter nouns, strictly speaking, had no Nom. or Voc.; but when these cases were wanted for grammatical convenience, the form of the Acc. was used. Hence *s* is never added to the Nom. of neuter nouns. *Opus, pectus,* &c., are not exceptions to this, for the *s* belongs to the crudeform, and answers to the *r* of the oblique cases. See § 2, *a. Obs.* 2, *c.*

Digitized by Google

Obs. 2. GEN. SING. The longest, and probably oldest, affix for the Gen. Sing. was *ius*, which is still found in several words, such as, *unus*, *ullus*, &c. Comp. the Greek ιο seen in such words as, λόγος, λόγοιο. From *IUS* the common affixes *IS* and *I* may be derived, the last being used in nouns whose crudeform ends in [A, E, O]. But even those declensions which seem entirely to have discarded the *s*, show symptoms of its presence, as in the Gen. in *pater-familias*, and *Dies-piter*, "the father of day."

Obs. 3. DAT. SING. The oldest affix for the Dat. Sing. seems to have been *BI*, as seen in the pronouns *ti-bi*, *si-bi*, and in the adverbial Datives *ubi*, *ibi*, &c. Comp. the Greek φι, φιν, i. e. *bhi*. In *mihi* the *b* has been dropped, and in *tibi* the *h*.

Obs. 4. ACC. SING. The affix for the Acc. Sing. is *M*, the *E* being only a connecting vowel inserted after a consonant; as, *lapid-e-m* for *lapidm*.

Obs. 5. ABL. SING. As *e*, the affix for the Abl. Sing., disappears in all declensions, except when the crudeform ends in a consonant, the Abl. might be considered as exhibiting the simple crudeform of the noun, the *e* being merely added to soften a final consonant. The vowel of the crudeform is, however, long in the Abl.

(*a*) The oldest affix for the Abl. was *D*, or after a consonant *eD*, as, *prædad*, *altod*, *marid*, &c., in the Columna Rostrata. This usage was partially continued even to the time of Plautus, and has left traces of its existence in *sed*, *ego-met*, &c. When the *d* was discontinued, there was a tendency to make the Abl. like the Dat., as the plural still shows.

This likeness is also seen in the singular in the second Dec.; as, D. or Ab. *domino;* and in some words in *is*, and all neuters, of the first branch of the third Dec.; as, D. Ab. *tussi*, *mari*. Even when the crudeform ends in a *consonant*, the Dat. and Abl. seem to have been anciently the same, either both *e* or both *i*, whence Dat. *ære*, even in Liv. xxxi. 13; and Virgil continually makes the Abl. of such words in *i;* as, *capiti*, *lateri:* and even *humo solitâ*, Æn. ix. 214, seems to be a Dat. So also, in Dec. fourth and fifth, *curru*, *die*, are contractions for the Dat. as well as the Abl.

(*b*) There is a singular confusion of forms between the Acc. and Abl. to be seen in some words, the affixes *m* and *d* being interchanged; thus, *id*, *illud*, *istud*, *quod*, are accusatives, while *hinc*, *istinc*, *illinc*, i. e., *him*, *istim*, *illim*, seem to be ablatives. So the conjunctions *enim*, *jam*, &c., are locatives or datives, not accusatives; and *cum* is *quo tempore*.

Obs. 6. NOM. PLUR. The affix of the Nom. Plur. is supposed to have been originally *sĕs*, or *ĕs* added to the Nom. Sing.; and hence by the first *s* being absorbed *ēs* becomes *long*, even in the consonant declension; as, *lapid-sĕs*, *lapid-ēs*. The affix *I* is used with crudeforms in [*a*, *o*], which also drop the *s* in the Gen. Sing.

Obs. 7. GEN. PLUR. The proper affix of the Gen. Plur. is *RUM*, as is seen in the pronouns, and in such old forms as *lapiderum*, *regerum*, &c. Afterwards the *r* was dropped in nouns whose crudeform ended in *i*, *u*, or a *consonant*.

Obs. 8. DAT. PLUR. The Dat. Plur. may probably be formed by

Digitized by Google

adding *s*, or *es*, to the Dat. Sing.; thus, in pronouns, *bi* makes *bīs*, as, *tibi*, *vobis*. This *bīs* in other nouns became *būs*, with *i* for a connecting vowel after a consonant; as, *lapid-ī-bus*. When the crudeform ended in [*a* or *o*], the Dat. Sing. in *i* makes the Plur. *īs*; as, *mensa-i*, [*mensa-is*] *mensīs*; *domino-i*, *dominīs*.

Obs. 9. Acc. Plur. The Acc. Plur. is formed, as in Greek, by adding *s* to the Sing.: hence *ēs* is put for *ĕms*; as, *lapid-ĕms*, *lapidēs*: so *mensă-ms*, *mensās*.

SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 7. A Substantive is the name of any thing or object; as, *mensa* a table, *homo* a man.

1. Substantives are either *common nouns* or *proper names*.

2. A *common* noun denotes a whole class of things, and expresses the common nature which belongs to each; as, *homo* man.

3. A *proper* name denotes one individual person; as, *Johannes* John.

§ 8. Declensions.

1. There are five declensions of substantives.

2. The declensions are commonly distinguished by the ending of the Genitive case singular.

3. The Genitive in the five declensions ends in

æ, i, is, us, ei.

Obs. 1. The declensions of nouns may also be known by the endings of their crudeforms; thus—

The A-declension, crudeform ending in	A;	as, *mensa*	[MENSA].
„ E-declension,	„	E;	„ *dies*	[DIE].
„ I-declension,	„	I;	„ *tussis*	[TUSSI].
„ O-declension,	„	O;	„ *dominus*	[DOMINO].
„ U-declension,	„	U;	„ *gradus*	[GRADU].
„ Consonant declension,	„ a consonant;	„ *lapis*	[LAPID].

Obs. 2. All nouns in declining are—

Parisyllabic and *inseparable*;
or, *Imparisyllabic* and *separable*.

(*a*) Parisyllabic nouns *do not add a syllable* in declining, and their casual affixes are for the most part *inseparably* joined to the crudeform; as, *dominus*, G. *domini*, D. *domino*. This is the case when the crudeform ends in a *vowel*.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) Imparisyllabic nouns *add a syllable* in declining, and their casual affixes may be readily *separated* from the crudeform; as, *lapis*, G. *lapid-is*, D. *lapid-i*. This is the case when the crude-form ends in a *consonant*.

Obs. 3. Traces are found of a tendency to form all nouns with separable affixes; as,

mensa, Gen. *mensa-i*, *mensæ*. | *gradus*, Gen. *gradu-is*, *gradûs*.

So even nouns in [*a*, *e*, *o*,] are found with a Gen. in *s*; as, *pater-familias*; *Dies-piter*; *unus*, *unius*.

§ 9. First Declension.—*Crudeform ends in* A. Genitive ends in *æ*.

Nominatives of the first declension end in *a*; as, *mensa* f. table.

SING.		PLUR.	
Nom. *mensă*	a table	Nom. *mensæ*	tables
Gen. *mensæ*	of a table	Gen. *mensarum*	of tables
Dat. *mensæ*	to a table	Dat. *mensīs*	to tables
Acc. *mensam*	a table	Acc. *mensas*	tables
Voc. *mensă*	o table	Voc. *mensæ*	o tables
Abl. *mensā*	by a table.	Abl. *mensīs*	by tables.

Formation.

SING.		[MENSA]	PLUR.	
N. *mensa*,	no affix,	*-a*	N. *mensa-I*, contracted	*-æ*
G. *mensa-I*,	contracted	*-æ*	G. *mensa-RUM*	*-arum*
D. *mensa-I*,	,,	*-æ*	D. *mensa-IS*, contracted	*-is*
Ac. *mensa-M*,		*-am*	Ac. *mensa-ES*, ,,	*-as*
V. *mensa*,	no affix,	*-a*	V. *mensa-I*, ,,	*-æ*
Ab. *mensa-e*,	contracted	*-a.*	Ab. *mensa-IS*, ,,	*-is.*

Examples.

barba beard	*fossa* ditch	*porta* gate	*via* way
causa cause	*hora* hour	*silva* wood	*vita* life
cura care	*ira* anger	*stella* star	*uva* grape.

Obs. 1. The uncontracted Gen. in *aï* was used in old Latin, and is sometimes retained in epic poetry; as, *dives pictaï vestis et auri*, Virg. Æn. ix. 26.

Obs. 2. The Gen. in *as*, [*a-is*], remains in the word *familias*, when compounded with *pater*, *mater*, *filius*, *filia*; as, *pater-familias*, father or master of a family; *patris-familias*, &c.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 3. Poets contract the Gen. Plur. *arum* into *ûm*.

In compounds in *cola, gena;* as, *cælicolûm, terrigenûm.*

In patronymics; as, *Æneadûm*, for *Æneadarum.*

In some names of nations; as, *Lapithûm*, for *Lapitharum.*

Also in prose, *amphorûm, drachmûm*, for *amphorarum*, &c.

Obs. 4. The nouns *dea* goddess, and *filia* daughter, make the Dat. and Abl. Plur. in *abus*, to distinguish them from the masculine forms; Cic. p. Rab. 2. Liv. xxiv. 26. The same is also found, though not to be preferred, in *anima* soul, *asina* she-ass, *equa* mare, *liberta* freed-woman, *mula* mule, *nata* daughter.

This termination has remained in common use in the feminine of *duo* two, and *ambo* both.

Obs. 5. GREEK nouns end in *as, es, e*, for *ας, ης, η*.

Ænēas	G. *æ*	D. *æ*	Ac. *am* or *ān*	V. *ā*	Ab. *ā*.
Anchīses	G. *æ*	D. *æ*	Ac. *en*	V. *ē* or *ă*	Ab. *ā* or *ē*.
Hermiŏnē	G. *es*	D. *æ*	Ac. *en*	V. *ē*	Ab. *ē*.

Many nouns from *ης, η*, were Latinised from familiar use, and then ended in *a*, and were declined like *mensa;* as, *Persa* Persian, *Helĕna* Helen, *musĭca* music.

Satrapes satrap, has G. *-is*, D. *æ*, Ac. *en*, Ab. *ē*.

Obs. 6. FORMATION OF NOM. SING. Nominatives are the same as the crudeform; as, [MENSA] *mensa.*

§ 10. SECOND DECLENSION.—*Crudeform ends in* O. Genitive ends in *i*.

1. Nominatives masculine of the second declension end in *us, er;* and neuters end in *um;* as, *domĭnus*, m. lord, *puer* m. boy, *regnum* n. kingdom.

SING.		PLUR.	
Nom.	*dominŭs*	Nom.	*domini*
Gen.	*domini*	Gen.	*dominorum*
Dat.	*domino*	Dat.	*dominis*
Acc.	*dominum*	Acc.	*dominos*
Voc.	*dominĕ*	Voc.	*domini*
Abl.	*domino.*	Abl.	*dominis.*

Formation.

SING.		[DOMINO]	PLUR.		
N. *domino-S,*	*u* for *o*,	*-us*	N. *domino-I,*	contracted	*-i*
G. *domino-I,*	contracted	*-i*	G. *domino-RUM,*		*-orum*
D. *domino-I,*	,,	*-o*	D. *domino-IS,*	contracted	*-is*
Ac. *domino-M,*	*u* for *o*,	*-um*	Ac. *domino-ES,*	,,	*-os*
V. *domino,*	altered,	*-e*	V. *domino-I,*	,,	*-i*
Ab. *domino-e,*	contracted	*-o.*	Ab. *domino-IS,*	,,	*-is.*

Digitized by Google

2. In the same way nouns in *er* are declined:

Sing.		Plur.	
N. V.	*puer*	N. V.	*pueri*
Gen.	*puĕri*	Gen.	*puerorum*
Dat.	*puero*	Dat.	*pueris*
Acc.	*puerum*	Acc.	*pueros*
Abl.	*puero.*	Abl.	*pueris.*

3. Most nouns in *er* drop the *e* in declining; as, *magister* master.

Sing.		Plur.	
N. V.	*magister*	N. V.	*magistri*
Gen.	*magistri*	Gen.	*magistrorum*
Dat.	*magistro*	Dat.	*magistris*
Acc.	*magistrum*	Acc.	*magistros*
Abl.	*magistro.*	Abl.	*magistris.*

4. In the same way neuters in *um* are declined:

Sing.		Plur.	
N. A. V.	*regnum*	N. A. V.	*regna*
Gen.	*regni*	Gen.	*regnorum*
Dat.	*regno*	Dat.	*regnis*
Abl.	*regno.*	Abl.	*regnis.*

Examples.

annus year	*lectus* bed	*natus* son	*taurus* bull
fumus smoke	*lupus* wolf	*rivus* brook	*ventus* wind
astrum star	*bellum* war	*collum* neck	*ovum* egg.

Like *puer*,

gener son-in-law | *socer* father-in-law.

Like *magister*,

ager field | *aper* boar | *cancer* crab | *liber* book.

Obs. 1. The Gen. of nouns in *ius, ium*, anciently contracted *ii* into *i;* as, *Appius, Appi; imperium* command, *imperi.* Poets retained the practice when it suited their metre.

For the Gen. in *ius*, and Dat. *i*, see *Adjectives.*

Obs. 2. The Voc. of *filius* son, *genius* genius, and Roman proper names in *ius*, contracts *ie* into *i;* as, *fili, Mercuri, Caï.* So *meus* mine, V. *mi.*

The Voc. of *deus* God, is *O deus.* And in poets, or in certain ancient formulæ, other nouns in *us* have the Nom. and Voc. alike; as, *audi tu, populus Albanus*, Liv. i. 24.

Obs. 3. *Deus* in the Plur. has N. *dei, dii, di;* D. or Ab. *deis, diis, dis;* but *dei, deis*, mostly in poets only.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 4. The Gen. Plur. contracts *orum* into *ûm:*
In coins, measures, &c; as, *nummûm, modiûm.*
In numerals, especially distributives; as, *denûm.*
In certain other words; as, *Deûm, fabrûm, sociûm.*
In almost any words in poetry, but especially names of nations; as, *virûm, Danaûm.*

Obs. 5. The nouns in *er*, which retain the *e*, are only, *adulter* adulterer, *gener* son-in-law, *puer* boy, *socer* father-in-law, *vesper* evening star, *Liber* Bacchus, and *lĭberi* children. Also see *Adjectives.*

Obs. 6. *Vir* man, G. *viri*, is the only noun in *ir* of this Dec.

Obs. 7. Four names of trees, *cupressus* cypress, *ficus* fig, *laurus* bay, *pinus* pine, besides the regular forms of the 2nd or O-Dec., have cases in *ûs* and *u*, like the 4th or U-Dec.; thus,

Sing. *laurus, lauri,-ûs, lauro, laurum, laure, lauro,-u.*
Plur. *lauri,-us, laurorum, lauris, lauros,-us, lauri, lauris.*

For *domus* see Dec. 4.

Obs. 8. Greek nouns end in *ŏs, ŏn, ōs, ō*, for *oς, ον, ως, ω*;

N. *Delŏs,*	G. *i*	D. *o*	Ac. *ŏn*	V. *ĕ*	Ab. *o.*
,, *Ilĭŏn*	,, *i*	,, *o*	,, *ŏn*	,, *ŏn*	,, *o.*
,, *Athōs*	,, *o*	,, *o*	,, *ōn*	,, *ōs*	,, *o.*
,, *Mantō*	,, *ūs*	,, *o*	,, *o*	,, *o*	,, *o.*

(*a*) Greek nouns in *oς, ον*, are often Latinised into *us, um;* as, *Delus, Ilium.* Greek names in *ρος* following a consonant are commonly Latinised into *er;* as, *Alexander, Teucer;* but *Codrus, Hebrus, Locrus, Petrus,* change *ρος* into *rus.* For Greek nouns in *eus* see Dec. 4.

(*b*) A few Greek neuters in *oς* belong in Latin to Dec. 2, as far as they are declined at all; as, *chaos*, G. *i;* Ab. *o.* So *epos, ethos, melos.* Yet the Gen. and Abl. may be considered as coming from a Latin form in *us* or *um.*

Obs. 9. FORMATION OF NOM. SING. Nouns in *us* add *s*, and neuters add *m*, to the crudeform, and change the final [o] into *u;* as, [DOMINO] *dominus;* [REGNO] *regnum.*

Nouns in *er* drop the final [o] of the crudeform; as, [PUERO] *puer.*

§ 11. THIRD DECLENSION.

Genitive ends in *is.*

FIRST BRANCH—*Crudeform ends in* I.

Nouns of the first branch of the third declension are mostly *parisyllabic,* i. e. do not increase in the Genitive case.

Digitized by Google

1. Nominatives masculine and feminine end in *is*, *er*, *es*; and neuters end in *e*, *al*, *ar*; as, *tussis* f. cough, *imber* m. rain, *nubes* f. cloud, *mare* sea, *animal* animal, *calcar* spur.

SING.			PLUR.		
N. V.	*tussĭs*		N. V.	*tussēs*	
Gen.	*tussĭs*		Gen.	*tussium*	
Dat.	*tussi*		Dat.	*tussĭbus*	
Acc.	*tussim*		Acc.	*tussēs*	
Abl.	*tussi.*		Abl.	*tussĭbus.*	

Formation.

SING.			[TUSSI]	PLUR.		
N. V.	*tussi-S*,		*-is*	N. V.	*tussi-ES*, contracted	*-es*
G.	*tussi-IS*,	contracted	*-ĭs*	G.	*tussi-UM*,	*-ium*
D.	*tussi-I*,	,,	*-i*	D.	*tussi-BUS*,	*-ibus*
Ac.	*tussi-M*,		*-im*	Ac.	*tussi-ES*, contracted	*-es*
Ab.	*tussi-e*,	contracted	*-i.*	Ab.	*tussi-BUS*,	*-ibus.*

2. Most nouns in *is* change *i* into *e* in the Acc. and Abl. *Sing.*; thus *civis* citizen is declined,

SING.			PLUR.		
N. V.	*civis*		N. V.	*cives*	
Gen.	*civis*		Gen.	*civium*	
Dat.	*civi*		Dat.	*civibus*	
Acc.	*civem*		Acc.	*cives*	
Abl.	*cive.*		Abl.	*civibus.*	

3. In the same way nouns in *er* are declined,

SING.			PLUR.		
N. V.	*imber*		N. V.	*imbres*	
Gen.	*imbris*		Gen.	*imbrium*	
Dat.	*imbri*		Dat.	*imbribus*	
Acc.	*imbrem*		Acc.	*imbres*	
Abl.	*imbri* or *e.*		Abl.	*imbribus.*	

4. Nouns in *es* are thus declined,

SING.			PLUR.		
N. V.	*nubēs*		N. V.	*nubes*	
Gen.	*nubĭs*		Gen.	*nubium*	
Dat.	*nubi*		Dat.	*nubibus*	
Acc.	*nubem*		Acc.	*nubes*	
Abl.	*nubĕ.*		Abl.	*nubibus.*	

Digitized by Google

5. Neuters in *e, al, ar,* are thus declined,

SING.	N. A. V.	*mare*	PLUR.	N. A. V.	*maria*
	Gen.	*maris*		Gen.	*marium*
	Dat.	*mari*		Dat.	*maribus*
	Abl.	*mari.*		Abl.	*maribus.*

Neuters in *al, ar,* have lost a final *e* from the Nom. and so become *imparisyllabic,* increasing in the Gen.

SING.	N. A. V.	*animal*	PLUR.	N. A. V.	*animalia*
	Gen.	*animālis*		Gen.	*animalium*
	Dat.	*animali*		Dat.	*animalibus*
	Abl.	*animali.*		Abl.	*animalibus.*

Examples.

avis f. bird	*uter* bottle	*rupes* crag
collis m. hill	*venter* belly	*sedes* seat
navis f. ship	*September*	*vulpes* fox
ovīle fold	*toral* coverlet	*laquear* ceiling
rete net	*tribūnal*	*pulvīnar* cushion
sedīle seat	*vectīgal* tribute	*torcŭlar* press.

Obs. 1. Regular nouns of this Branch, which may be called the I-Declension, end only in *is* and *e*. They correspond exactly with Adj. of two terminations in *is;* like *tristis, triste.* Nouns in *er* correspond with the masculine form in *er* in Adj. like *acer, acris, acre.* Nouns in *al, ar,* are neuters, which have dropped the final *e,* and thus appear as imparisyllabic words.

Obs. 2. NOUNS in *is.*—Probably all nouns in *is* anciently made Acc. *im,* Abl. *i.* Afterwards some retained the older form, while others changed them to *em* and *e,* and some used both; thus—

(*a*) Always *im* and *i* in

amussis a rule, *ravis* hoarseness, *sitis* thirst, *tussis* cough, *vis* force.—The names of rivers; as, *Albis, Tiberis.*—Greek nouns Latinised; as, *basis* basement, *poesis* poetry.

(*b*) Both forms in

febris fever, *pelvis* bason, *puppis* poop, *restis* rope, *securis* axe, *turris* tower, with *im* and *i* more common.

bipennis axe, *buris* ploughtail, *clavis* key, **cucumis* gourd, *messis* harvest, *navis* ship, *neptis* niece, *sementis* sowing, *strigilis* scraper, **tigris* tiger, with *im* and *i* less common.

---

* Besides Acc. *im, cucumerem, tigridem;* from Gen. *-eris, -idis.*

Digitized by Google

(*c*) Acc. *em*, Abl. *i* in
all adjectives in *is;* as, *tristis.* So *Aprilis* April.

(*d*) Acc. *em*, Abl. *i* or *e* in
amnis river, *anguis* snake, *avis* bird, *civis* citizen, *classis* fleet, *fustis* club, *ignis* fire, *orbis* globe, and some others.—Substantives in *is* which are properly adjectives; as, *affinis* kinsman, *ædilis* ædile, &c.

(*e*) Acc. *em*, Abl. *e* in
piscis fish, *sentis* thorn, *torris* brand, *vectis* lever, *vermis* worm, and several others.—Proper names in *is;* as, *Juvenalis.*

(*f*) All nouns in *is* have the Gen. Plur. in *ium*, except *apis* bee, *canis* dog, *juvenis* a youth, *panis* bread, which make *apum*, *canum*, &c., like the consonant declension. So *volucris* bird, generally *volucrum.*

Obs. 3. Nouns in *er.*—Nouns in *er* of the I-Dec. are but few; they drop the *e* in declining. They are closely allied to nouns in *is;* but the Nom., instead of adding *s* to the crudeform, drops the final *i.* The crudeform of such words either ends in [RI], the Nom. inserting an euphonic *e;* as, [IMBRI] *imber;* or else the crudeform ends in [ERI], and drops the *e* in the oblique cases. The latter is more according to the analogy of *pater*, *patris*, in Greek πατήρ, πατέρος πατρός. The river *Tiberis*, *Tibris*, *Tiber*, has all three forms.

The names of months, as *September*, being really Adj., make only *i* in the Abl.; the others in *er* make *i* or *e.*

Obs. 4. Nouns in *e*, *al*, *ar.*—Neuters in *e*, *al*, *ar*, closely resemble neuter Adj. in *e*, and like them make the Abl. in *i.* Many of them are really Adj. still; as, *ovile* fold, from *ovilis* of or belonging to sheep;—*toral* coverlet, from *toralis* of or belonging to a couch;—*calcar* spur, from *calcaris* of or belonging to the heel. Nouns in *al*, *ar*, having merely dropped the final *e*, are sometimes found with it; as, *toral* or *torale.* Plural names of festivals in *alia* make the Gen. in *ium* or *iorum;* as, *Bacchanalia*, G. *-alium* or *-aliorum.* So *anciliorum* from *ancīle*, Hor. Od. iii. 5. 10.

Obs. 5. Nouns in *es.*—Nouns in *es* of this Branch are peculiar; they seem to have belonged once to the 5th or E-Dec.; and many traces of this still remain.

(*a*) The particulars which mark them as belonging to the 5th or E-Dec. are the following;—they are all feminine, except *vates* from its meaning;—the Nom. Acc. and Abl. have *e* (*ēs*, *em*, *e*), and *fames* hunger has Abl. *famē*, with *ē* long like *diē;*—in some a Gen. and Dat. in *ei* is still found; as, *plebes*, *plebei;*—some derivatives have *ē* in their formation; as, *nubes nubēcula*, like *dies diēcula*, while other nouns of the I-Dec. have *ĭ;* as, *ignis*, *ignĭculus.*

Digitized by Google

(*b*) Some of these nouns have approached nearer to the I-Dec. and have a Nom. in *is;* as, *feles* or *felis* cat, *fides* or *fidis* musical string.

(*c*) Some have dropped the vowel altogether in the Nom. and appear like the Consonant Dec.; *plebes, plebs; trabes, trabis, trabs,* beam. So *vates* makes Gen. Pl. *vatum.*

Obs. 6. Greek nouns end in *es, is, ys,* for ης, ις, υς.

N. *Pericles*	G. *is* or *i*	D. *i*	Ac. *em* or *en*	V. *es*	Ab. *e.*
poesis	,, *is*	,, *i*	,, *im* or *in*	,, *i*	,, *i.*
chelys	,, *yos*	,, *yi*	,, *ym* or *yn*	,, *y*	,, *ye.*

Obs. 7. FORMATION OF NOM. SING.—Nouns in *is* and *es* add *s* to the crudeform; as, [TUSSI] *tussis;* [NUBE] *nubes.* Nouns in *er* drop the final [I] of the crudeform, and insert *e;* as, [IMBRI] *imber.* Neuters change the final [I] into *e;* as, [MARI] *mare.*

§ 12. THIRD DECLENSION.

Genitive ends in *is.*

SECOND BRANCH.—*Crudeform ends in a* Consonant.

Nouns of the second branch of the third declension are mostly *imparisyllabic,* i. e. increase in the Genitive case.

1. Nominatives end in *c, l, a, n, s, t, o, r, x;* as, *lac* n. milk, *sol* m. sun, *poema* n. poem, *carmen* n. song, *lapis* m. stone, *caput* n. head, *leo* m. lion, *cantor* m. singer, *lex* f. law.

SING.		PLUR.	
N. V.	*lapis*	N. V.	*lapides*
Gen.	*lapĭdis*	Gen.	*lapidum*
Dat.	*lapidi*	Dat.	*lapidĭbus*
Acc.	*lapidem*	Acc.	*lapides*
Abl.	*lapidĕ.*	Abl.	*lapidibus.*

SING.		PLUR.	
N. V.	*leo*	N. V.	*leones*
Gen.	*leōnis*	Gen.	*leonum*
Dat.	*leoni*	Dat.	*leonĭbus*
Acc.	*leonem*	Acc.	*leones*
Abl.	*leonĕ.*	Abl.	*leonibus.*

SING.		PLUR.	
N. A. V.	*carmen*	N. A. V.	*carmina*
Gen.	*carmĭnis*	Gen.	*carminum*
Dat.	*carmini*	Dat.	*carminĭbus*
Abl.	*carmĭnĕ.*	Abl.	*carminibus.*

Digitized by Google

Formation.

	Sing. [lapid]		Plur.	
N. V.	*lapid-S, d* dropped,	*-is*	N. V. *lapid-ES*	*-ides*
G.	*lapid-IS*	*-idis*	G. *lapid-UM*	*-idum*
D.	*lapid-I*	*-idi*	D. *lapid-iBUS*	*-idibus*
Ac.	*lapid-eM*	*-idem*	Ac. *lapid-ES*	*-ides*
Ab.	*lapid-e*	*-ide.*	Ab. *lapid-iBUS*	*-idibus.*

2. In imparisyllabic nouns the crudeform is often much disguised in the Nominative singular. It is always found in the Genitive, by removing *is*, the case-ending. The Genitive therefore of such nouns must be known in order to decline them.

The following list contains all the common endings, with the crudeform marked in the Genitive.

a.	†*poēma* n. poem,	*poemăt-is.*
o.	*leo* m. lion,	*leōn-is.*
	ordo m. order,	*ordĭn-is.*
ac.	*lac* n. milk,	*lact-is.*
ec.	*alec* n. brine,	*alēc-is.*
al.	*sal* m. salt,	*săl-is.*
el.	*mel* n. honey,	*mell-is.*
il.	*pugil* c. boxer,	*pugĭl-is.*
ol.	*sol*, m. sun,	*sōl-is.*
ul.	*exul* c. exile,	*exŭl-is.*
an.	†*Titan* m.,	*Titān-is.*
en.	*ren* m. kidney,	*rēn-is.*
	nomen n. name,	*nomĭn-is.*
in.	†*delphin* m. dolphin,	*-phĭn-is.*
on.	†*Marathon* m.,	*Marathōn-is.*
	†*Gorgon* f.,	*Gorgŏn-is.*
	†*Xenophon* m.,	*Xenophont-is.*
yn.	†*Phorcyn* m.	*Phorcȳn-is.*
ar.	*jubar* n. sunbeam,	*jubăr-is.*
	far n. corn,	*farr-is.*
	†*hepar* n. liver,	*hepăt-is.*
er.	*ver* n. spring,	*vēr-is.*
	carcer m. prison,	*carcĕr-is.*
	pater m. father,	*patr-is.*
or.	*amor* m. love,	*amōr-is.*
	arbor f. tree,	*arbŏr-is.*
	cor n. heart,	*cord-is.*
ur.	*fur* c. thief,	*fūr-is.*
	fulgur n. gleam,	*fulgŭr-is.*
	ebur n. ivory,	*ebŏr-is.*
yr.	†*martyr* c.,	*martȳr-is.*
as.	*lampas*, f. torch,	*lampăd-is.*
	mas m. male,	*măr-is.*
	vas n. vessel,	*vās-is.*
	as m. a coin,	*ass-is.*
	pietas f. piety,	*pietāt-is.*
	anas f. duck,	*anăt-is.*
	†*gigas* m. giant,	*gigant-is.*
es.	*merces* f. reward,	*mercēd-is.*
	pes m. foot,	*pĕd-is.*
	obses c. hostage,	*obsĭd-is.*
	Ceres f.,	*Cerĕr-is.*
	quies f. rest,	*quiēt-is.*
	seges f. crop,	*segĕt-is.*
	miles c. soldier,	*milĭt-is.*
is.	*cuspis* f. point,	*cuspĭd-is.*
	†*Salămis* f.,	*Salamīn-is.*
	sanguis m. blood,	*sanguĭn-is.*
	pulvis m. dust,	*pulvĕr-is.*
	glis m. dormouse,	*glir-is.*
	lis f. strife,	*lĭt-is.*
os.	*custos* c. keeper,	*custōd-is.*
	flos m. flower,	*flōr-is.*
	os n. bone,	*oss-is.*
	cos f. whetstone,	*cōt-is.*
us.	*incus* f. anvil,	*incūd-is.*
	pecus f. cattle,	*pecŭd-is.*
	opus n. work,	*opĕr-is.*
	corpus n. body,	*corpŏr-is.*
	tellus f. earth,	*tellūr-is.*
	virtus f. virtue,	*virtūt-is.*
	†*Opus* f.,	*Opunt-is.*

† Greek nouns.

Digitized by Google

ys.	†*chlamys* f. cloak,	*chlamȳd-is.*
æs.	*præs* m. surety,	*præd-is.*
	æs n. copper,	*ær-is.*
aus.	*laus* f. praise,	*laud-is.*
bs.	*trabs* f. beam,	*trăb-is.*
	‡*cœlebs* c. single,	*cœlĭb-is.*
ls.	*puls* f. pulse,	*pult-is.*
ms.	*hiems* f. winter,	*hĭēm-is.*
ns.	*frons* f. bough,	*frond-is.*
	frons f. forehead,	*front-is.*
	†*Tiryns* f.	*Tirynth-is.*
ps.	*stirps* f. stock,	*stirp-is.*
	princeps c. chief,	*princĭp-is.*
	†*gryps* m. griffin,	*grȳph-is.*
rs.	*pars* f. part,	*part-is.*
t.	*caput* n. head,	*capĭt-is.*
ax.	*pax* f. peace,	*pāc-is.*
	fax f. torch,	*fāc-is.*
ex.	*vervex* m. wether,	*vervēc-is.*
	nex f. death,	*nĕc-is.*
	vibex f. weal,	*vibĭc-is.*
	vertex m. top,	*vertĭc-is.*
	lex f. law,	*lēg-is.*
	grex m. flock,	*grĕg-is.*
	remex m. rower,	*remĭg-is.*
ix.	*cervix* f. neck,	*cervīc-is.*
	calix m. cup,	*calĭc-is.*
	strix f. owl,	*strĭg-is.*
	nix f. snow,	*nĭv-is.*
ox.	*vox* f. voice,	*vōc-is.*
	Allobrox,	*Allobrŏg-is.*
	nox f. night,	*noct-is.*
ux.	*lux* f. light,	*lūc-is.*
	nux f. nut,	*nŭc-is.*
	conjux c. spouse,	*conjŭg-is.*
yx.	†*bombyx* d. silk,	*bombȳc-is.*
	†*Eryx* m.,	*Erȳc-is.*
	†*onyx* m.,	*onȳch-is.*
	†*Phryx* m.	*Phrȳg-is.*
æx.	*fæx* f. dregs,	*fæc-is.*
aux.	[*faux*] f. jaw,	*fauc-is.*
lx.	*calx* f. heel,	*calc-is.*
nx.	†*lynx* c. lynx,	*lync-is.*
	†*Sphinx* f.,	*Sphing-is.*
rx.	*arx* f. citadel,	*arc-is.*

Obs. 1. Some nouns increase *two* syllables in declining; when either the oblique cases are taken from a longer obsolete word, or the crudeform has become unusually shortened in the Nom.; thus, *iter* journey, *itinĕr-is* from *itiner* obsolete; *jecur* liver, *jecinŏr-is* from *jecinur* obsolete; but *supellex* furniture, *supellectĭl-is*, Nom. shortened. So the compounds of *caput*, when they end in *ceps;* as, *præceps* headlong, *præcipĭt-is.*

On the other hand, in *senex* old man, *sen-is*, the longer form *senĕc-is* has become obsolete in the oblique cases. So *caro* flesh, makes *carn-is* for *carĭn-is.*

Obs. 2. Nouns in *ter*—a *vowel* dropped.

The four nouns, *accipiter* hawk, *pater* father, *mater* mother, *frater* brother, drop the *e* in declining, and make *accipitr-is*, *patr-is*, *matr-is*, *fratr-is;* and thus appear to be parisyllabic. These nouns are distinguished from nouns in *er* of the first branch, or I-Declension, by always having *um* not *ium* in the Gen. Plur., and never having *i* in the Abl. Sing.; as, *imber*, *imbri* or *-e*, *imbrium;* but *pater*, *patre*, *patrum.* The irregular word *Jupiter* (for *Jovi-pater*) makes G. *Jovis*, *-i*, *-em.*

Obs. 3. Nouns in *is*—a consonant dropped.

---

† Greek nouns. ‡ Really Adj., unmarried.

Digitized by Google

A few nouns in *is* sometimes drop the final consonant of the crudeform, and are declined like the I-Declension; as,

cucŭmis gourd,	*-ĕris* or *-is.*	*Tibris* Tiber,	*-ĭdis* or *-is.*
ibis stork,	*ibĭdis*, Pl. *ibes.*	*tigris* tiger,	*-ĭdis* or *-is.*

Obs. 4. Some nouns seem to have lost a final consonant after *u: grus* crane, *gru-is*, *gru-i*, *gru-em*, *gru-e*. So *sus* pig, *su-is*. *bos* ox, *bŏv-is*, *-i*, *-em*, *-e*, makes Pl. G. *bŏ-um*, D. *bō-bus* or *bū-bus*.

Obs. 5. Nouns making the Gen. Plur. in *ium*.

Many nouns of the Consonant Declension seem anciently to have had crudeforms in [I]; as, *pars* part, [PART] anciently [PARTI]. Hence the Abl. *parti* for *parte* in Plautus, and the derivative *partio*, &c. At last, however, the *i* remained only in the Gen. Plur., making it *ium* instead of *um*.

The Gen. Plur. ends in *ium* in—

(*a*) Monosyllables, whose crudeform ends in *two consonants;* as, *pars* part, *part-ium* | *dens* tooth, *dent-ium* | *nox* night, *noct-ium*, except the Greek words *lynx* and *sphinx*, which make *um*.

Some monosyllables ending in *one* consonant make *ium;* as,

glis dormouse	*lis* strife	*nix* snow	*pax* peace	*strix* screech-owl
[*faux*] jaw	*mas* male	*par* pair	*sal* salt	*vas* surety?

but *ium* or *um* in *fraus* fraud, *lar* hearth-god, *mus* mouse.

(*b*) Polysyllables in *ns*, *rs*, crudeform in [NT, RT], make *ium* or *um;* as, *parens* parent, *parent-ium* or *-um; cohors* cohort, *cohort-ium* or *-um*.

Also nouns in *as*, *ātis*, have often *ium* as well as *um;* as, *civitas* state, *civitat-ium*, especially in Livy. So *Samnis*, *Samnitium; Quiris*, *Quirit-ium;* and some others.

Obs. 6. Before the Augustan age all nouns which made the Gen. Plur. *ium* (except nouns like *nubes*), commonly formed the Acc. Plur. in *eis* or *īs*, instead of *es;* as, *classis* fleet, *classeis; gens* race, *genteis*. But this practice, never universal, was afterwards disused.

Obs. 7. Greek nouns of the Consonant Dec. are numerous, but are in general quite Latinised in their case-endings. The Greek peculiarity (G. *ŏs*, D. *ĭ*, Ac. *ă*. Pl. N. *ĕs*, Ac. *ăs*) is mostly used by poets; but *Pan* Pan, *aer* air, *æther* ether, use only the Greek Acc. even in prose, and make *Pana*, *aera*, *æthera*.

Arcas, G. *Arcăd-ŏs* or *is*, D. *-ĭ*, Ac. *-ă* or *em*, Ab. *-ĕ*, Pl. N. *-ĕs*, Ac. *-ăs*.
æther, ,, *æthĕr-is*, ,, *-i*, ,, *-ă*, ,, *-ĕ*.

So in Greek endings after a vowel; as, *heros* hero, G. *hero-os* or *-is*.

Greek nouns in *is*, *idis*, make the Voc. in *is* or *ĭ;* as, *Daphnis* or *Daphnĭ:* and those in *as*, *antis*, make Voc. in *ā;* as, *Atlas*, *Atlantis*, *Atlā*. The Greek Dat. Plur. in *si* or *sin* is rare; as, *Lemniasi*, Ov. Am. iii. 672.

Digitized by Google

Greek neuters in *a*, like *poema poemăt-is*, were anciently sometimes Latinised into the Dec. 1.; as, *cum servili schemâ*, Plaut. Amph. Prol. 117. And the best authors made the Dat. and Abl. Plur. of such words in *is* rather than *ĭbus;* as, *poematis.*

Obs. 8. ENDINGS *of the Crudeform.*

Crudeforms of the Consonant Dec. end in every simple consonant, except F, J, Q.

B;	as, TRAB	from *trabs.*	L;	as, SOL	from *sol.*	R;	as, RUR	from *rus.*
C;	NEC	,, *nex.*	M;	HIEM	,, *hiems.*	S;	OSS	,, *os.*
D;	PED	,, *pes.*	N;	LEON	,, *leo.*	T;	PART	,, *pars.*
G;	LEG	,, *lex.*	P;	STIRP	,, *stirps.*	V;	NIV	,, *nix.*

Obs. 9. FORMATION *of the Nom. Sing.*

In the Consonant Dec. the last vowel of the Nom. Sing. often differs from the corresponding vowel of the other cases; as, *princeps, principis; corpus, corporis.*

This variation is seen only when the vowel is short; and it follows the rule that "lighter forms take the heavier vowels." (See *Rules of Euphony.*)

When the vowel thus varies, it often matters not which is taken for the crudeform; thus, *princeps, principis*, crudeform [PRINCEP] or [PRINCIP]. In either case the vowel must be changed in declining the noun; and in this instance neither *e* nor *i* is the radical vowel, since they come from *capio* [CAP]. But sometimes circumstances determine for one vowel rather than the other; thus in nouns like *ordo, ordinis*, the real crudeform seems to be [ORDŎN], shortened into *ordo* in the nominative, and [ORDIN] in the oblique cases; such nouns, too, anciently retained the *o* in declining.

(*a*) *Masculine and Feminine Nouns.*

i. Crudeforms in [B, C, G, M, P] add *s;* as, [TRAB] *trabs*, [NEC] *nex*, [LEG] *lex*, [HIEM] *hiems*, [STIRP] *stirps.*

Obs. 1. Short [I] of the crudeform becomes *e* in the Nom., except in monosyllables; as, [CŒLĬB] *cœlebs* unmarried, [VERTĬC] *vertex* top. (See *Rules of Euphony.*) Yet *filix* fern, *coxendix* hip, *natrix* snake, *appendix* appendix, retain the *i.*

Obs. 2. In *nix niv-is* snow the *x* arises from *vs*, the *v* being a substitute for *g*, which is seen in the verb *ningo.* So *vivo* live makes *vixi.*

ii. Crudeforms in [D, T] add *s*, but the *d* and *t* are dropped; as, [PED] *pes*, [PART] *pars.*

Obs. 1. A few Greek words drop [NT] before *s;* as, [GIGANT] *gigas* giant.

Obs. 2. When the crudeform ends in [ĬT] the *ĭ* becomes *ĕ* in the Nom.; as, [MILĬT] *miles* soldier (as if for *milets*). But crudeforms in [ĬD] retain the *i;* as, [CUSPĬD] *cuspis* point.

Digitized by Google

iii. Crudeforms in [L, R, S] remain unaltered; as, [SOL] *sol*, [AMOR] *amor*.

Obs. 1. Some nouns in [R] have the older form in *s* for the Nom.; as, [FLOR] *flos* flower, [TELLUR] *tellus* earth. A short *e* then becomes *i* in the Nom.; as, [PULVER] *pulvis* dust. (See *Rules of Euphony.*)

Obs. 2. *As ass-is* and its compounds having a crudeform ending in *ss* drop one *s* in the Nom.

iv. Final [N] of the crudeform is commonly dropped in the Nom., and ĭ preceding is changed into *o;* as, [LEŌN] *leo* lion, [ORDĬN] *ordo* order.

Obs. 1. The *n* is retained in some Greek words; as, *siren, delphin.* Also in *ren* kidney, *splen* spleen, *pecten* comb, *sanguen* (old form for *sanguis*) blood, *pollen* (or *pollis*) meal; and derivatives from *cano;* as, *cornicen*, horn-blower.

Obs. 2. When the *n* is retained, ĭ becomes *e* in the Nom.; as, [PECTĬN] *pecten.*

(*b*) *Neuter Nouns.*

i. Crudeforms of *neuter* nouns remain unaltered in the Nom.; as, [VER] *ver* spring, [VAS] *vas* vessel. But one of two final consonants, and a final *d* or *t*, is dropped; as, [MELL] *mel* honey, [FARR] *far* corn, [OSS] *os* bone, [CORD] *cor* heart, [LACT] *lac* milk, [POEMAT] *poema* poem.

Obs. A short ĭ becomes *e*, as in masculines; as, [CARMĬN] *carmen* song.

ii. Crudeforms in [R] have often the older form in *s* for the Nom.; as, [RUR] *rus* the country, [ÆR] *æs* copper.

Obs. Short ĕ and ŏ become *u* in the Nom. whenever the final *r* is changed to *s;* as. [OPĔR] *opus* work, [CORPŎR] *corpus* body. And ŏ is sometimes changed to *u*, even when the *r* remains; as, [EBŎR] *ebur* ivory.

§ 13. FOURTH DECLENSION—*Crudeform ends in* U.

Genitive ends in *ûs.*

1. Nominatives masculine and feminine of the fourth declension end in *ûs*, and neuters in *u;* as, *gradus* m. step, *cornu* n. horn.

SING.		PLUR.	
N. V.	*gradŭs*	N. V.	*gradūs*
Gen.	*gradûs*	Gen.	*graduum*
Dat.	*gradui*	Dat.	*gradĭbus*
Acc.	*gradum*	Acc.	*gradūs*
Abl.	*gradu.*	Abl.	*gradĭbus.*

Digitized by Google

Formation.

Sing.	[gradu]	Plur.
N. V. *gradu-S*,	*-us.*	N. V. *gradu-ES*, contracted *-us.*
G. *gradu-IS*, contracted,	*-ûs.*	G. *gradu-UM*, *-uum.*
D. *gradu-I*,	*-ui.*	D. *gradu-BUS*, *i* for *u*, *-ibus.*
Ac. *gradu-M*,	*-um.*	Ac. *gradu-ES*, contracted *-us.*
Ab. *gradu-e*, contracted,	*-u.*	Ab. *gradu-BUS*, *i* for *u*, *-ibus.*

2. Neuters in *u* are undeclined in the Singular.

Sing. N. A. V.	*cornu*	Plur. N. A. V.	*cornua*
Gen.	*cornu* (*-ûs*)	Gen.	*cornuum*
Dat.	*cornu*	Dat.	*cornĭbus*
Abl.	*cornu.*	Abl.	*cornĭbus.*

Examples.

currus car	*lusus* play	*sensus* sense	*gelu* frost
cursus course	*manus* hand	*vultus* face	*genu* knee.

Obs. 1. The Gen. Sing. sometimes retained the old uncontracted form in *is;* as, *anus* old woman, *anuis*, Ter. Heaut. ii. 3, 46. And *grus*, *sus*, Gen. *-is*, might be considered uncontracted nouns of this Dec. (*see* § 12. *Obs.* 4.)

(*a*) Sometimes the Gen. is found in *i*, like Dec. 2; as, *senati*, *tumulti*, in Sallust.

(*b*) Even neuters in *u* are found with a Gen. in *ûs;* as, *cornûs tibi cura sinistri*, Luc. vi. 217.

Obs. 2. The Dat. Sing. often contracts *ui* into *u;* as, *equitatu*, &c. in Cæsar; and frequently in Poets.

Obs. 3. Poets contract the Gen. Plur. *uum* into *ûm;* as, *currûm*, Virg. Æn. vi. 653.

Obs. 4. The Dat. and Abl. Plur. was anciently *ŭbus*, which form was retained in the following words:—

acus needle	*lacus* lake	*specus* cave	*pecu* beast
artus joint	*partus* birth	*tribus* tribe	*veru* spit.

ficus fig, *-ubus*, better *ficis; portus* port, *-ubus* and *-ibus; tonitrus* thunder, *-ibus*, less common *-ubus.*

Arcus bow, and *quercus* oak, are not found in the Dat. or Abl.

Obs. 5. *Domus* house has a mixture of the 2nd and 4th Dec.:

Sing. N.	*domus*	Plur. N.	*domus*
G.	*domûs*, (*domi* at home)	G.	*domuum*, *-orum*
D.	*domui*, (*-o* rare)	D.	*domibus*
Ac.	*domum*	Ac.	*domus*, *-os*
V.	*domus*	V.	*domus*
Ab.	*domo* (*-u* rare).	Ab.	*domibus.*

The forms of the 4th Dec. are not used in the sense of "home."

Digitized by Google

Obs. 6. Greek nouns end in *eus* for *ευς*; as,

Orpheus, G. *eos*, *eï*, D. *eï*, *eo*, Ac. *ea*, *eum*, V, *eu*, Ab. *eo*.

Such words in prose keep mostly to the Latin formation *eï*, *eo*, *eum*, except in the Voc. *eu*.

The Ac. *ĕa* in verse is sometimes *ēa* (Greek *ηα*); as, *Idomenea*, Virg. Æn. iii. 122.

From the Greek Nom. in *ευς* poets give to *Achilles*, *Ulixes*, a Gen., *Achillĕï*, *-ei*.

Jesus is thus declined, G. *u*, D, *u*, Ac. *um*, V. *u*, Ab. *u*.

Obs. 7. FORMATION *of Nom. Sing.*—Masculines and feminines add *s* to the crudeform, and neuters remain unaltered; as, [GRADU] *gradus*; [CORNU] *cornu*.

§ 14. FIFTH DECLENSION—*Crudeform ends in* E.

Genitive ends in *ei*.

Nominatives of the fifth declension end in *es*; as, *dies*, day.

SING.		PLUR.	
N. V.	*diēs*	N. V.	*diēs*
Gen.	*diēi*	Gen.	*diērum*
Dat.	*diēi*	Dat.	*diēbus*
Acc.	*diem*	Acc.	*diēs*
Abl.	*diē*.	Abl.	*diēbus*.

Formation.

	SING.		[DIE]		PLUR.		
N. V.	*die-S*,		*-es*	N. V.	*die-ES*,	contracted	*-es*
G.	*die-I*,		*-ei*	G.	*die-RUM*,		*-erum*
D.	*die-I*,		*-ei*	D.	*die-iBUS*,	contracted	*-ebus*
Ac.	*die-M*,		*-em*	Ac.	*die-ES*,	„	*-es*
Ab.	*die-e*,	contracted	*-e*.	Ab.	*die-iBUS*,	„	*-ebus*.

Examples.

res thing	*acies* edge	*fides* faith	*sanies* gore
spes hope	*facies* face	*series* order	*species* form.

Obs. 1. The *e* in the Gen. and Dat. Sing. is long when preceded by a vowel, but otherwise short; as, *diēi*, *fidĕi*. Yet old writers made the *e* long in all; as, *fidēi* in Ennius.

Obs. 2. The Gen. and Dat. Sing. sometimes contract *ei* into *ē*, especially in poetry; as,

Gen. *diē*, Virg. G. i. 208. | Dat. *fidē*, Hor. Sat. i. 3. 95.

A contraction into *i* is also found, though more rare; as,

Gen. *plebi*, Liv. ii. 42. | Dat. *pernicii*, Nep. Thras. 2.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 3. Only *dies* day, *res* thing, *species* form, have the plural complete.

Acies edge, *facies* face, *effigies* image, *series* order, *spes* hope, have only the Nom. Acc. and Voc. plural; and are not much used, in other cases, even in the singular.

The rest, from their meaning, have no plural at all.

Obs. 4. Greek nouns are undeclined plurals; as, *cete* whales.

Obs. 5. FORMATION *of Nom. Sing.*—Nominatives add *s* to the crudeform; as, [DIE] *dies.*

§ 15. THE GENDER OF NOUNS.

The Gender of nouns is determined in two ways:
I. By the *meaning* of words—General Rules.
II. By the *form* of words—Particular Rules.

I. *General Rules.*

1. *Masculine.* Words denoting *men* or *male* beings, as also the names of *rivers, months,* and *winds,* are masculine.

Obs. 1. Words not originally denoting men, but applied to them by custom, keep the gender of their termination; as, *operæ* labourers, *copiæ* troops, fem.; *mancipium* slave, neut.

Obs. 2. The rivers *Styx* and *Lethe* are fem., as in Greek. Three in *a* are fem. in poetry; *Albula,* Ov. Fast. iv. 68.—*Allia,* Luc. vii. 408.—*Matrŏna,* Auson. Id. x. 462.—*Iādar,* being undeclined, is neut. Luc. iv. 405.

2. *Feminine.* Words denoting *women* or *female* beings, as also the names of most *cities, countries, islands,* and *trees,* are feminine.

Obs. 1. Of the names of Towns the following are *masculine:*
All plurals in *i;* as, *Veii, Delphi, Argi* with neut. sing. *Argos.*
The towns *Croto, Frusĭno, Hippo, Narbo, Sulmo.*
Some Greek nouns, keeping the Greek custom; as, *Canōpus, Pharsālus.*
The following are *neuter:*—Those which have the neuter form of Dec. 2, whether sing. or plur.; as, *Tuscŭlum, Leuctra.*—Those which end in *e* or *ur,* Dec. 3; as, *Præneste, Tĭbur.*—Some indeclinable or barbarous words; as, *Asty, Suthul.* Yet *Præneste* is also fem.; as, *Præneste sub ipsâ.* Virg. Æn. viii. 561.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 2. The names of Countries and Islands having the neuter form of Dec. 2, whether sing. or plur., are *neuter;* as, *Latium, Bactra, Sminthium, Cythēra.*

Obs. 3. Of the names of Trees,—*oleaster* wild olive, *pinaster* wild pine, are *masculine*, as also several smaller trees or plants of Dec. 2; as, *spinus* thorn, *calămus* reed.—Trees and plants ending in *er*, Dec. 3, are mostly *neuter;* as, *acer* maple, *siler* osier, *suber* cork, *papaver* poppy, *siser*, parsnip. Also *robur* oak.

Obs. 4. The gender of all the nouns above mentioned may be considered as depending upon a substantive understood, which marks the class to which they belong; as, *vir* man, *fluvius* river, *mensis* month, *ventus* wind; or, *femina* woman, *urbs* city, *terra* land, *insula* island, *arbor* tree.

Hence in the same way the names of Ships are *fem., navis* being understood; as, *Centauro magnâ*, Virg. Æn. v. 122. Also the names of Plays, *fabula* understood; as, *Eunuchum suam*, Ter. Eun. Prol. 32. Yet *Orestes* is *mas.* in Juv. i. 6, but this is purposely expressed in a ludicrous way.

3. *Common.* Words denoting an office or condition, which may belong either to *men* or *women*, and some names of *animals*, are common in their gender.

Obs. 1. True *common nouns* are those which are found used as independent substantives (not merely in apposition with another), with both mas. and fem. adjectives agreeing with them; thus, *conjux* husband and wife; as, *miserrime conjux*, Virg. Æn. ii. 519. *regia conjux*, Virg. Æn. ii. 783.

(*a*) Of such nouns, belonging to men and women, the following are the best authenticated:

Antistes, vates, adolescens, auctor et *augur,*
Dux, judex, index, testis, cum *cive sacerdos,*
Municipi adde *parens, patrueli affinis* et *hæres,*
Artifici conjux atque *incola, miles* et *hostis,*
Par, juvenis, martyr, comes, infans, obses et *hospes,*
*Interpres, præsul, custos, vindex*que, *satelles.*

Auspex, exul, princeps, are not so well authenticated.

Antistes and *hospes* have also a fem. form, *antistita* and *hospita*, in the sense of priestess and hostess. When *par* is common, it means "a mate;" when it means "a pair," it is neuter.

(*b*) Besides the true common nouns there is a large number usually classed with them; such as,

Advena, verna, senex, opifex, auriga, sodalis,

but these, though real masculine substantives, are not found used as *real feminine substantives*, but only in apposition, or agreeing

Digitized by Google

with feminines, like adjectives; as, *advena anus paupercula*, Ter. Heaut. i. 1. 44.

(*c*) Some, instead of a common name, have a separate form for each gender; as, *coquus, coqua*, cook; *tibicen, tibicina*, flute-player.

Obs. 2. There is much variety in the names of animals.

(*a*) Some are common; as, *bos* m. f. ox, *canis* m. f. dog, *elephantus* m. f. elephant, *sus* m. f. pig.

(*b*) Some have separate forms for each gender; as, *agnus, agna*, lamb; *equus, equa*, horse, mare. Or with words altogether different; as, *aries, ovis*, ram, sheep; *taurus, vacca*, bull, cow.

(*c*) Some are *doubtful*, i. e. *mas.* or *fem.* indiscriminately, without regard to difference of sex; as, *dama* deer, *serpens* serpent, *talpa* mole.

(*d*) Some have separate forms, but used indiscriminately; as, *coluber, colubra*, snake; *lacertus, lacerta*, lizard.

(*e*) Some are *epicœne*, having only one gender for both sexes; as, *corvus* m. crow, *passer* m. sparrow, *aquila* f. eagle, *tigris* f. tiger, *vulpes* f. fox. With such words *mas* or *masculus, -a*, and *femina*, must be used, to distinguish the sex; as, *vulpes mas, vulpes femina.*

4. *Neuter.* All undeclined words are neuter.

Obs. Infinitives used as nouns, and any words quoted merely as words, are treated like undeclined nouns; as, *scire tuum*, Pers. i. 27, thy knowing; *hoc pœne*, Ov. Ep. xviii. 180, this "almost."

Letters of the alphabet are sometimes fem., *litera* being understood; see Quint. I. iv. 11.

5. *Greek nouns.* Greek nouns generally retain the gender which they had in Greek.

II. *Particular Rules.*

The *particular rules* apply to those nouns, whose gender is not fixed by their meaning.

The *particular rules* refer to the Declensions.

1. First, or A-Declension.

Nouns in *a* are *feminine.*

Obs. Nouns in *a*, derived from Greek words in *ας* or *ης*, are *masculine;* as, *Adria* the Adriatic, from Ἀδρίας.

Digitized by Google

2. Second, or O-Declension.

Nouns in *us* and *er* are *masculine.*
Nouns in *um* are *neuter.*

Obs. 1. The four Latin nouns *alvus* belly, *colus* distaff, *humus* ground, *vannus* fan, are *feminine.* Also many Greek nouns; as,
Antidotus, methodus, diphthongus, byssus, abyssus,
Crystallus, synodus, sapphirus, eremus, et *arctus,*
Carbasus, atque *atomus, dialectus,* et adde *papyrus.*

Arctus a bear is m. and f., but as a constellation *fem.* only.

Obs. 2. The Latin noun *pampinus* vine-leaf, though mostly mas., is *doubtful.* Also some Greek words; as,
Barbitus, et *balanus, grossus, pharus,* atque *phaselus.*

Of these *pharus* is rarely mas., and *barbiton* n. is also found.

Obs. 3. The two nouns *virus* venom, *pelagus* sea, are *neuter;* and *vulgus* the common people *mas.* and *neut.*

Obs. 4. A few Greek nouns in *os* are neut.; as, *chaos, epos, melos.*

3. Third Declension. Branch 1, or I-Dec.

Nouns in *er* are *masculine.*
Nouns in *es* and *is* are *feminine.*
Nouns in *e, ar, al,* are *neuter.*

Obs. 1. One noun in *er, linter* boat, is *doubtful.*

Obs. 2. Two nouns in *es, palumbes* pigeon, *vepres* brier (mostly plural), are *doubtful.*

Obs. 3. Many nouns in *is* are *masculine;* as,
Callis, caulis, collis, follis,† *mensis,* et *ensis,*
Orbis, fustis, funis, panis, crinis, et *ignis,*
Cassis,† *fascis,*† *torris, sentis,*† *piscis,* et *unguis,*
Et *vermis, vectis, postis, natalis,* et *axis,*
*Amnis, molaris, corbis*que, *lienis, aqualis,*
Et *finis, clunis,*† *torquis, scrobis, angue, canalis.*

(*a*) Of these *anguis, aqualis, callis, canalis, clunis, corbis, finis, scrobis, torquis,* are also found *feminine;* but *fines,* plur., meaning territories, is always *masculine. Canis,* usually *mas.,* is often *fem.,* meaning a hunting dog.

(*b*) *Aqualis, molaris, natalis,* are properly adjectives, *urceus, dens, dies,* being understood. So also *annales* (*libri*), *jugales* (*equi*), *pugillares* (*libelli*), are used as mas. substantives.

---

† Commonly plural, *folles, casses, fasces, sentes, clunes.*

Digitized by Google

4. THIRD DECLENSION. Branch 2, or Consonant DEC.

(*i*) Masculines end in *o*, *or*, *es*, *x*.

o, *-ōnis*,—not being verbal or abstract nouns in *io*; as, *sermo* discourse, *sermōn-is*.

or, *-ōris*; as, *amor* love, *amōr-is*; *honor* honour, *honōr-is*.

es; as, *fomes* fuel, *paries* wall.

EXCEPTIONS. *Merges* sheaf, *seges* corn, *teges* cover, *merces* reward, *quies* rest, are feminine.

[*Compes*] fetter is properly an adj. agreeing with *catena*, and hence feminine.—*ales* bird, *quadrupes* horse, also used as adjectives, are *doubtful*, but more commonly *fem.* when used as substantives.

x, *-ĭcis*; as, *vertex* top, *vertĭc-is*; *calix* cup, *calĭc-is*.

EXCEPTIONS. *Forfex* shears, *supellex*, *-ectilis*, furniture (properly an adj.); *appendix* addition, *coxendix* hip, *hystrix* porcupine, *natrix* water-snake, *cortex* bark, *culex* gnat, *imbrex* tile, *obex* bolt, *pumex* pumice-stone, *rumex* dock, *silex* flint, *varix* swollen vein, are *doubtful*.

Obs. 1. The following also are *masculine*,—compounds of *as* and *uncia*; as, *quadrans* quarter, *quincunx* five ounces.

Adeps fat, and *forceps* pincers, are *doubtful*.

Obs. 2. Nouns in *ens* are properly *Participles*, taking their gender from nouns understood; thus,

confluens (*amnis*), *oriens* and *occidens* (*sol*), *rudens* (*funis*) cable, *torrens* (*amnis*) torrent, are *mas.*—*bidens* fork is *mas.* like *dens*, but *bidens* (*ovis*) a sheep of two years old, is *fem.*—*continens* (*terra*) continent is *doubtful*, but better *fem.*

A few philosophical words are *neuter*; as, *accidens*, *consequens*.

Animans is all genders, but Cicero uses it *fem.* as "a living creature," and *mas.* as "a rational being."

Obs. 3. A great many Greek nouns are *masculine*:

in *an*; as, *pæan* pæan.	in *us*, *-odis*; as, *tripus* tripod.
en; *lichen* lichen.	*bs*; as, *chalybs* steel.
on; *gnomon* dial-pin; but *halcyon*, *icon*, *sindon*, are *fem.*	*ps*; *hydrops* dropsy.
in *as*, *-antis*; as, *elephas*.	*ax*; *thorax* corslet.
es, *-etis*; *lebes* caldron.	*yx*; *bombyx* silkworm, but *bombyx* silk is *fem.*

Onyx marble, or a vessel made of it, is *mas.*, but as "a precious stone" *fem.* *Lynx* is *fem.*, except in Hor. Od. ii. 13. 40, *timidos lyncas*.

Digitized by Google

(*ii*) *Feminines* end in *o, as, is, us, x.*

o, -ĭnis; as, *dulcedo* sweetness, *dulcedĭn-is.*

Exceptions. *Ordo* order, *turbo* whirlwind, are *mas.;* and *cupido* desire is *mas.* in Horace.

Cardo hinge, and *margo* margin, are *doubtful.*

io, -iōnis,—being verbal or abstract nouns; as, *actio* action, *actiōn-is.*

as, -ātis; as *ætas* age, *ætāt-is.*

Also *anas* duck, *anăt-is,* with *ă.*

is, -ĭdis; as, *cuspis* point, *cuspĭd-is.*

Only *lapis* stone, *lapĭd-is,* is *mas.* *Pulvis* dust, *pulvĕr-is,* and *cinis* ashes, *cinĕr-is,* are *doubtful;* though *cineres* is *mas.* in the Plur.

us, with a long vowel; as, *incus* anvil, *incūd-is;* *virtus* virtue, *virtūt-is;* *tellus* earth, *tellūr-is.*

Also *pecus* sheep, *pecŭd-is.*

x, -ĭcis; as, *cervix* neck, *cervīc-is;* *fornax* furnace, *fornāc-is.*

Obs. 1. The two nouns *cohors* cohort and *hyems* winter are *fem.*

Obs. 2. Greek *feminines* end in *as, is, ys,* with vowel *short* and crudeform in *d;* as, *lampas* torch, *lampăd-is;* *pyramis* pyramid, *pyramĭd-is;* *chlamys* cloak, *chlamўd-is.*

(*iii*) *Neuters* end in *men, ar, er, or, ur, us,* with vowel *short* in all.

men, -mĭnis; as, *carmen* song, *carmĭn-is.*

Pecten comb, *pectĭn-is,* is *mas.;* also, *pollis,* or *pollen,* meal, *pollĭn-is,* and *sanguis,* old form *sanguen,* blood, *sanguĭn-is.*

ar,	in all the	as,	*jubar* sunbeam, *jubăr-is.*
er,	crudeform		*uber* teat, *uběr-is.*
or,	ends in *r*		*æquor* plain *æquŏr-is.*
ur,	with a		*ebur* ivory, *ebŏr-is.*
us,	short vowel		*opus* work, *opĕr-is.*

Exceptions. *Agger* mound, *asser* beam, *carcer* prison, *later* tile, *passer* sparrow, *vesper* evening, *vomer* or *vomis,* ploughshare, with the Greek nouns *aer, æther,* air, are *mas.*

Arbor tree is *feminine.*

Furfur bran, *turtur* turtle, *vultur* vulture, are *mas.*

Lepus hare, *lepŏr-is,* is *mas.*

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. The word *caput* head, and *alec* pickle, are *neuter.*

Obs. 2. Greek neuters end in *a;* as, *poema* poem, *poemăt-is;* —or in *as, -ătis;* as *artocreas.*

(*iv*) *Monosyllables* are mostly *feminine,* but the following exceptions must be remembered.

1. Masculines.

sal salt, *sol* sun, *ren* kidney, *splen* spleen, *glis* dormouse, *pes* foot, *dens* tooth, *as* as, *gryps* griffin, *fons* fountain, *mons* mountain, *pons* bridge, *mus* mouse, *grex* flock, *flos* flower, *mos* custom, *ros* dew: or thus,

Sal, sol, ren, et *splen, glis, pes, dens, as,* simul et *gryps, Fons, mons, pons, mus, grex, flos, mos, ros,* mascula sunto.

Obs. Sal is also *neuter* in the Sing.—*Calx* heel, *scrobs* ditch, *stirps* trunk, are *doubtful.*

2. Neuters.

lac milk, *fel* gall, *mel* honey, *far* corn, *ver* spring, *cor* heart, *vas* vessel, *æs* brass, *os* (*ossis*) bone, *os* (*oris*) mouth, *crus* leg, *jus* right, *pus* venom, *rus* the country, *thus* frankincense: or thus,

Lac, fel, mel, far, ver, cor, vas, æs, ossis et *oris, Crus, jus, pus, rus, thus,* neutra vocanda tibi.

5. FOURTH, or U-DECLENSION.

Nouns ending in *us* are *masculine.*
Nouns ending in *u* are *neuter.*

Obs. 1. *Acus* needle, *domus* house, *manus* hand, *porticus* porch, *tribus* tribe, and the plurals *idus* ides, *quinquatrus* feast of Minerva, are *feminine.*

Obs. 2. *Penus* provisions, is *doubtful;* and *specus* cave, has all three genders.

6. FIFTH, or E-DECLENSION.

Nouns in *es* are *feminine.*

Obs. Dies day, is *doubtful* in the Sing., *masculine* in the Plur.; *meridies* mid-day, is *masculine.*

§ 16. IRREGULAR NOUNS.

1. Irregular nouns are called *Heteroclites.*

2. Heteroclites are of three kinds, *Variants, Redundants, Defectives.*

Digitized by Google

I. Variants.

Variants vary their gender, declension, or meaning, in different numbers.

1. *Variant in Gender.*

1. Masculine in the *Sing.*, neuter in the *Plur.*

Avernus, *Dindȳmus*, *Ismărus*, *Mænălus*, *Massĭcus*, *Pangæus*, *Tænărus*, *Tartărus*, *Taÿgĕtus;* also *Pergămus*, fem. These are all names of Places, and their plurals are used in poetry.

2. Neuter in the *Sing.*, masculine in the *Plur.*

Agos Argos, *cælum* heaven, *clathrum* bar, *porrum* leek.

2. *Variant in Declension.*

Delicium delight,	Pl. *æ.*	*induvium* dress,	Pl. *æ.*
epulum feast,	,, *æ.*	*vas*, *vasis*, vessel,	*vasa*, *-orum.*
exuvium spoil,	,, *æ.*	*vis*, *vis*, force,	*vires*, *-ium.*

3. *Variant in Meaning.*

Some nouns have a different, though kindred meaning in the *plural*, without however always losing the meaning of the *singular;*

Ædes a temple,	*ædes* a house.
aqua water,	*aquæ* medicinal springs.
auxilium help,	*auxilia* auxiliary troops.
carcer a prison,	*carceres* starting-place.
castrum a fort,	*castra* camp.
comitium place of assembly,	*comitia* assembly itself.
copia abundance,	*copiæ* troops.
facultas power of acting,	*facultates* property.
fortuna fortune,	*fortunæ* goods.
impedimentum hindrance,	*impedimenta* baggage.
litera letter (of the alphabet),	*literæ* an epistle.
(*ops*) *opis* help,	*opes* power, wealth.
opera labour,	*operæ* workmen.
pars part,	*partes* a party.
sal salt,	*sales* witticisms.
servitium slavery,	*servitia* slaves.

Sometimes the *plural* has accidentally a meaning totally different from the *singular;* as, *lustrum* a space of five years, *lustra* dens of beasts.

II. Redundants.

Redundants have two terminations, of different genders or declensions, in all or some of their cases.

Digitized by Google

1. *Redundant throughout the cases.*

alimonia, -ium food.	*baculus, -um* stick.	*colluvio, -ies* sink.
buccina, -um horn.	*catinus, -um* dish.	*colus, -i, -ūs* distaff.
cingula, -um belt.	*cubitus, -um* elbow.	*consortio, -ium* union.
esseda, -um car.	*pileus, -um* cap.	*elephas, -antus* elephant.
menda, -um spot.	*crater, -ēra* bowl.	*paupertas, -ies* poverty.

Many like *luxuria, -ies* luxury, and *conatus, -um* attempt. *juventus -utis, ta -æ, tas -atis,* youth. *senectus, -ta* old age. *penus -ūs, um -i, us -ŏris,* provisions. And some others.

Also some Adjectives.

acclivis, -us (rare), sloping.	*imbecillis* (rare), *-us,* weak.
bijugis (rare), *-us,* two-yoked.	*imberbis, -us* (rare), beardless.
exanimis, -us, lifeless.	*inermis, -us* (rare), unarmed.
hilaris, -us, cheerful.	*unanimis* (rare), *-us,* of one mind.

2. *Redundant in some cases.*

Chremes, Dares, Laches, Thales, make *is* and *ētis.*

Calchas has *æ* and *antis. Bootes, Euphrates, Orestes, æ* and *is. Requies* rest has Acc. *em, ētem;* Abl. *ē, ēte.*

Jugerum acre is regular; but has also, as if from *juger,* Sing. G. *jugeris,* Ab. *-e;* Plur. G. *-um,* Ab. *-ibus.*

For *laurus,* &c., see § 10. *Obs.* 7; and *domus* § 13. *Obs.* 5.

3. *Redundant in the Plural.*

Jocus m. jest,	Pl. *joci*	and *a.*	*margarita* pearl,	Pl. *-æ*	and *-a.*
locus m. place,	,, *loci*	,, *a.*	*balneum* bath,	Pl. *balnea*	,, *-æ.*
sibilus m. hiss,	,, *-i*	,, *a.*	*filum* thread,	,, *fila*	,, *-i.*
carbasus f. linen,	,, *-i*	,, *a*	*frænum* bit,	,, *fræna*	,, *-i.*
ostrea oyster,	*ostreæ*	,, *a.*	*rastrum* harrow,	,, *rastra*	,, *-i.*

N.B. *Loci* is mostly "passages" in books, &c.; *sibila* is poetic.

III. Defectives.

Defectives are deficient in *number* or in *case.*

1. *Defective in Number.*

1. Nouns which have no Plural—*Singularia tantum.*

(*a*) Names of qualities, or abstract words; as, *justitia* justice, *juventus* youth, *fames* hunger, *silentium* silence.

Obs. 1. The *plural* of abstract words is often used—when a quality is attributed to several objects; as, *proceritates arborum,* Cic. Sen. 17, the tallness of the trees:—or when different instances or species of the same quality are denoted; as, *utilitates multæ consecutæ sunt,* Cic. Am. 9, many kinds of usefulness have ensued.

Obs. 2. Poets freely use the plural of abstract words, either for greater emphasis, or for the sake of the metre; as, *amores, silentia,* &c.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) Nouns denoting a substance or mass; as, *aurum* gold, *argilla* clay, *sanguis* blood.

Obs. The plural of some of these words is used to denote separate objects, formed of the substance which the name signifies; as, *æra* bronze statues, *ligna* logs of wood.

(*c*) Collective nouns, or nouns of multitude; as, *plebs* the people, *vulgus* the vulgar.

Obs. Individual nouns are often used in the singular *collectively*, instead of the plural. This is specially the case,—(*i*) with names of nations in military phrases; as, *Romanus cum Latino Volscoque contenderet*, Liv. ii. 22. So with *miles, eques, hostis, civis*, &c.—(*ii*) with the names of fruits or grain; as, *mille fabæ modii*, Hor. Ep. i. 16. 55, for *fabarum*. So with names of animals or anything usually reckoned in numbers; as, *villa abundat porco, hædo, agno*, Cic. Sen. 17, with pigs, kids, &c.

(*d*) Also some common nouns have no plural; as,

aer, æther, air.	*diluculum* dawn.	*lethum* death.	*pontus* sea.
jubar sunbeam.	*specimen* model.	*nemo* no one.	*ver* spring.
meridies midday.	*vesper* evening.	*pelagus* sea.	*venia* pardon.

justitium suspension of business. And some others.

2. Nouns which have no Singular—*Pluralia tantum.*

(*a*) Some words denoting a class or collection of beings; as,

cælites‡ celestials.	*majores*† ancestors.	*primores*† chiefs.
lemures spectres.	*minores*† descendants.	*proceres* nobles.
liberi children.	*posteri*† posterity.	*superi*† gods above.
manes ghosts.	*penates* household gods.	*inferi*† gods below.

(*b*) Many words which imply a plurality, or denote a whole composed of several parts; as,

ambages‡ windings.	*casses*‡ nets.	*fauces*‡ jaws, throat.
*angustiæ** straits.	*clitellæ* panniers.	*fides** lyre.
annales‡ records.	*compedes*‡ fetters.	*fores** doors.
antes ranks.	*crepundia* rattle.	*grates* thanks.
*argutiæ** subtleties.	*diræ* curses.	*ilia* flank.
arma arms.	*divitiæ* riches.	*illecebræ** allurements.
artus joints.	*donaria* offerings.	*ineptiæ** silliness.
bellaria dainties.	*excubiæ* watch.	*inferiæ* offerings to the dead.
bigæ, quadrigæ, &c.‖	*exequiæ* obsequies.	*insidiæ* snares.
*blanditiæ** caresses.	*exta* entrails.	*lamenta* lamentations.
cancelli lattice.	*facetiæ* wit.	*loculi* bag, purse.

---

* Sing. also found.
† The Sing. an Adj. with a rather different sense.
‡ For Sing. see Defectives in Case.
‖ Sing. used in Silver Age.

Digitized by Google

mœnia walls, city.
manubiæ spoils of war.
minæ threats.
*minutiæ** small things.
munia offices.
nugæ trifles.
phaleræ trappings.
*plagæ** nets.
preces† prayers.
quisquiliæ refuse.
reliquiæ remains.
*salebræ** dirty places.
salinæ salt-works.
scalæ stairs, ladder.
scopæ broom.
*sentes** thorns.
serta garlands.
scruta wares.
sponsalia espousals.
tesqua wilds.
thermæ hot-springs.
tormina gripes.
tricæ trifles.
utensilia implements.
valvæ folding-doors.
*vepres** briers.
verbera† lashes.
viscera entrails.
virgulta twigs.

(*c*) Some in which the plurality of meaning is not easily traced.

cervices‡ neck.
cunabula cradle.
cunæ cradle.
inducĭæ truce.
*inimicitiæ** hostility.
nuptiæ wedding.
præcordia midriff.
sordes† filth.
tenebræ darkness.

(*d*) The names of certain days in the calendar, &c.; as, *calendæ, nonæ, idus, nundĭnæ* market-day, *feriæ* holiday.

Also names of festivals and public games; as, *repotia* wedding-feast, *natalicia* birthday-feast, *Bacchanalia, Floralia, Olympia, Saturnalia,* &c.

(*e*) Many names of towns; as, *Athenæ, Philippi, Leuctra, Fidenæ, Gabii,* &c.

2. *Defective in Case.*

1. *Aptots* or indeclinable nouns; having all cases alike.

(*a*) Names of letters; as, *Alpha, Beta,* &c.

(*b*) Cardinal numbers from 4 to 100; as, *quatuor, quinque,* &c. Also *mille* thousand, which is declined in the Plur. *millia, -ium.*

(*c*) Some common nouns; as, *cepe* onion, *gummi* gum, *mane* morning.

(*d*) Hebrew or other foreign words; as, *Baal, manna, Gabriel;* though *David* and *Daniel* make *-ĭdis, -ēlis.*

Some have gained a Latin ending; as, *Abrahamus, Josephus.*

Some have gained a declinable ending through the Greek; as, *Judas, -æ, Moses, -is.*

(*e*) Some *indeclinables* are found only in the cases which are alike in neuter nouns (Nom. Acc. Voc.); as, *fas* right, *nefas* wrong, *instar* likeness, *nihil* nothing.

Greek neuters in *es* and *os;* as, *cacoethes* bad habit, *melos* melody (see § 10. *Obs.* 8, *b*): and their plurals in *e;* as, *Tempe* Tempe, *cete* whales.

---

* Sing. also found. † For Sing. see Defectives in Case.
‡ Sing. used in Silver Age.

Digitized by Google

So with the plurals of many nouns which are perfect in the Sing.: *metus* fears, *neces* kinds of death, *paces* treaties of peace, *æra* works of brass, *jura* rights, *rura* fields, *thura* incense; the poetical plurals *colla, farra, fella, mella, murmura, silentia;* the *pluralia tantum, grates* and *munia*, the Abl. being rare; and some nouns of the 5th or E-Dec. See § 14. *Obs.* 3.

2. *Monoptots.*—Nouns with only one case. Many of these are used only in particular combinations or idioms.

S. N. *exspes* hopeless, *potis, pote*, able, &c.

G. *nauci* nutshell, in *non nauci facere:* see Abl. of Price.

D. *derisui* derision, *despicatui* contempt, *divisui* division, *ostentui* display; as, second datives with *esse*, &c., see Syntax.

Ab. *natu* by birth, with *major, minimus*, &c.; *diu* by day, *noctu* by night, in *diu noctuque*, &c.; *pondo* in weight, with *libræ* pounds expressed or understood; *in promptu* at hand; *in procinctu* in battle array; *jussu* by orders, *injussu* without orders, *permissu* by permission, and several other verbal nouns, with a genitive or a possessive pronoun; as, *jussu meo* by my orders.

Pl. Ac. *inficias* denial, with *ire; suppetias* aid, with *ferre.*

Ab. *ingratiis* against one's will.

Ambage, annali, casse, cælite, fauce, have plurals: see *above.*

3. *Diptots.*—Nouns with only two cases.

fors, forte, chance; *compedis,*† *-e*, fetter; *impetis, -e*, attack; *spontis, sponte*, will; *verberis,*† *-e*, lash; *astu*, pl. *astus*, craft.

4. *Triptots.*—Nouns with only three cases.

G. *feminis*, D. *-i*, Ab. *-e*, thigh. N. *situs*, Ac. *-um*, Ab. *-u*, filth.
N. *lues*, Ac. *luem*, Ab. *lue*, plague. G. *sordis,*† Ac. *-em*, Ab. *-e*, dirt.
D. *preci*, Ac. *-em*, Ab. *-e*, prayer. N. *vesper*, Ac. *-em*, Ab. *-e* or *-i*, evening.

5. *Tetraptots.*—Nouns with only four cases.

Ditionis dominion, *frugis* fruit, *opis* help, *vicis* turn, want the Nom. and Voc. Sing.—*Plus* more has no Dat. or Voc. but has the Plur. perfect.—*Vis* force is scarcely found in Gen. or Dat. Sing.—*Hiems* winter has no Dat. or Abl. Plur.

6. *Pentaptots.*—Nouns with only five cases.

Os a mouth, *fax* torch, *sol* the sun, and several others, have no Gen. Plur.

N.B. Many of these *Defectives*, especially those which are said to want only one or two cases, have been called defectives, merely because their cases do not happen to occur in the remains of the Latin authors which have come down to us.

---

† For Plural, *see* Defectives in number.

Digitized by Google

ADJECTIVES.

1. ADJECTIVES denote the *qualities* of things, and are joined to substantives to express their nature or character; as, *bonus puer*, a good boy.

2. Adjectives take the form and declension of substantives.

§ 17. *Adjectives of three terminations.*

Some adjectives have three terminations, one for each gender; as, *bonus* mas., *bona* fem., *bonum* neut.

Obs. In adjectives of three terminations the crudeforms of the *Mas.* and *Neut.* always end in [O], and that of the *Fem.* in [A]. Thus they are declined like substantives of the 2nd and 1st Dec.

1. Adjectives in *us, a, um*, [O, A]; as, *bonus*, good.

SING.	M.	F.	N.	PLUR.	M.	F.	N.
N.	*bonus,*	*bonă,*	*bonum.*	N.	*boni,*	*bonæ,*	*bonă.*
G.	*boni,*	*bonæ,*	*boni.*	G.	*bonorum,-arum,-orum.*		
D.	*bono,*	*bonæ,*	*bono.*	D.	*bonis,*	—	—
Ac.	*bonum,*	*bonam,*	*bonum.*	Ac.	*bonos,*	*bonas,*	*bonă,*
V.	*bone,*	*bonă,*	*bonum.*	V.	*boni,*	*bonæ,*	*bonă.*
Ab.	*bono,*	*bonâ,*	*bono.*	Ab.	*bonis,*	—	—

Obs. In the same way all participles in *us* are declined; as, *amatus, a, um*, loved.

2. Adjectives in *er, era, erum* [O, A]: as, *tener*, tender.

SING. N. V. *tener, tenĕra, tenĕrum.*
G. *tenĕri, tenĕræ, tenĕri,* &c.
the rest like *bonus.*

Some adjectives in *er* omit the *e* in declining; as,

SING. N. V. *æger, ægră, ægrum*, sick.
G. *ægri, ægræ, ægri,* &c.

Obs. One abjective ends in *ur*; as, *satur, satŭra, satŭrum*, full.

3. Some adjectives in *us* and *er* have the Gen. in *ius*, and the Dat. in *i*; as,

Digitized by Google

SING. N. *totus, totă, totum,* the whole.
G. *totius,* — —
D. *toti,* — —
the rest like *bonus.*

Obs. Like *totus* are declined *unus* one, *solus* alone, and several pronouns.

§ 18. *Adjectives of two terminations.*

Some adjectives have two terminations; one for the *masculine* and *feminine,* and the other for the neuter; as, *tristis* mas. fem., *triste* neut.

Obs. In adjectives of two terminations the crudeform ends in [I] or a *consonant.* Thus they are declined like substantives of the 3rd Dec. Branch 1 and 2.

1. Adjectives in *is, e* [I]; as, *tristis* sad.

SING.	M. F.	N.	PLUR.	M. F.	N.
N. V.	*tristis,*	*triste,*	N. V.	*tristes,*	*tristia,*
G.	*tristis,*		G.	*tristium,*	
D.	*tristi,*		D.	*tristibus,*	
Ac.	*tristem,*	*triste,*	Ac.	*tristes,*	*tristia,*
Ab.	*tristi.*		Ab.	*tristibus.*	

Obs. 1. All adjectives in *is* are of the I-Dec.; but they make *em* in the Acc., and *i* (never *e*) in the Abl. Sing.

Obs. 2. Thirteen adjectives in *ris* [ERI] have also in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. another masculine form in *er.* The Nom. in *ris* is then mas. and fem., but is generally used as fem.; as,

SING.	M.	M. F.	N.	
N.V.	*celer,*	*celĕris,*	*celĕre,*	swift.
G.	*celĕris.*			the rest like *tristis.*

All these Adj. except *celer,* omit the *e* before *r* in declining; as,

SING. N.V. *acer, acris, acre,* bold.
G. *acris.*

The following are the thirteen:

Campester, volucer, celeber, celer, atque *saluber,*
Junge *pedester, equester,* et *acer,* junge *paluster,*
Silvester, terrester, et his *puter,* adde *alacer*que.

The months *September, October,* &c., are Adj. of this kind, agreeing with *mensis* understood. Hence they said *nonæ Decembres,* Hor. Od. iii. 18. 10, and *libertate Decembri,* Hor. S. ii. 7. 4.

Digitized by Google

2. Adjectives in *or*, *us* [OR]; as, *melior* better.

SING.	M. F.	N.	PLUR.	M. F.	N.
N. V.	*melior*,	*melius*,	N. V.	*meliores*,	*meliora*,
G.	*meliōris*,		G.	*meliorum*,	
D.	*meliori*,		D.	*melioribus*,	
Ac.	*meliorem*,	*melius*,	Ac.	*meliores*,	*meliora*,
Ab.	*meliore* or *-i*.		Ab.	*melioribus*.	

Obs. 1. Adjectives in *or* are all *Comparatives*. They belong to the Consonant Dec.; but *i* is used in the Abl. Sing., principally in poets.

Obs. 2. *Plus*, *pluris*, more, is only *neut.* in the Sing., but has *plures*, *plura*, G. *plurium*, in the Plur. Its compound, *complures* several, makes *complura* or *-ia*.

§ 19. *Adjectives of one termination.*

Some adjectives have only one termination for all genders; as, *felix*, mas. fem. neut.

Obs. In adjectives of one termination the crudeform generally ends in [I]; but the Acc. always ends in *em*, and the Abl. mostly in *i* or *e*. Thus they are declined like substantives of the 3rd Dec. Branch 1. Some whose crudeform ends in a consonant are noticed below.

1. Adjectives in *x* [CI]; as, *felix* happy.

SING.		PLUR.		
N. V.	*felix*,	N. V.	*felices*,	*felicia*,
G.	*felīcis*,	G.	*felicium*,	
D.	*felīci*,	D.	*felicibus*,	
Ac.	*felicem*, *felix*,	Ac.	*felices*,	*felicia*,
Ab.	*felici* or *ĕ*.	Ab.	*felicibus*.	

Obs. Some substantives in *tor* are also used as adjectives and have a fem. in *trix*, declined like *felix*; as, *victor exercitus*, Nep. Ages. 4. *victrix causa*, Luc. i. 128. These have a neut. Plur. in *ia*; as, *victricia arma*, Virg. Æn. iii. 54. Hence in the Plur. they are Adj. of three terminations, *victores*, *victrices*, *victricia*. The Sing. *trix* is rarely neut.; as, *victrici concepta solo*, Claud. vi. Cons. Hon. 24.

2. Adjectives in *ns* [NTI]; as, *ingens*, vast.

SING.		PLUR.		
N. V.	*ingens*,	N. V.	*ingentes*,	*-tia*.
G.	*ingentis*.	G.	*ingentium*.	

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. In the same way all participles in *ans* or *ens* are declined; as, *amans, amantis,* loving.

Obs. 2. Words in *ns,* when used as substantives, and when actual participles, prefer the Abl. in *e.*

3. Adjectives in *rs* [RTI]; as, *solers,* careful.

SING.	N. V. *solers,*	PLUR.	N. V. *solertes, solertia.*
	G. *solertis.*		G. *solertium.*

4. Adjectives in *r* [RI]; as, *par,* equal.

SING.	N. V. *par,*	PLUR.	N. V. *pares, paria.*
	G. *paris.*		G. *parium.*

5. Adjectives in *es* [ETI]; as, *hebes,* dull.

SING.	N. V. *hebes,*	PLUR.	N. V. *hebetes, hebetia.*
	G. *hebĕtis.*		G. *hebetium.*

Obs. 1. Several adjectives in *r* and *es* belong to the *consonant* Dec., and thus omit the *i* in the Gen. Plur., and some do not admit *i* even in the Abl. Sing.

(*a*) Adj. in *r.*—*Pauper* poor, *puber* of age, *degĕner* degenerate, *uber* fertile, *memor* mindful, *cicur* tame; to which add *vetus, vetĕr-is,* old. All these, except *pauper* poor, admit *i* in the Abl.; as, *memor,* Ab. *memŏre, -i;* Pl. N. *memores,* G. *memorum.*

(*b*) Adj. in *es.*—*Ales* winged, *deses* dull, *dives* rich, *hospes* hospitable, *sospes* safe. All these, except *dives,* make only *e* in the Abl. Sing.; as, *sospes,* Ab. *sospĭte:* Pl. N. *sospites,* G. *sospitum.*

None of these Adj. have a *neuter* Plur., except *vetus, vetĕra;* and *dives,* which takes *ditia,* from the unusual form *dis, ditis.*

Such words are more like *substantives* than adjectives.

Obs. 2. Adjectives in *as.*—Some Adj. formed from the names of Places end in *as;* as, *Aquīnas* of *Aquinum.*

SING.	N. V. *Aquinas,*	PLUR.	N. V. *Aquinates, Aquinatia,*
	G. *Aquinātis.*		G. *Aquinatium.*

For *Aquinatem succum* see Hor. Ep. i. 10. 26.

In the same way are declined the pronouns *nostras,* &c.

Obs. 3. *Compound Adjectives.*—The endings and declining of Compound Adjectives depend upon the words from which they are derived. The following may be noticed:

(*a*) Compounds ending in *ceps* (from *caput*), in *rs,* and in *color,* have a crudeform in *i,* which they show in the Abl. Sing. together with *e,* and in the Nom. *neut.* and Gen. Plur.; as, *consors* united, Ab. *consorti, -e:* Pl. N. *consortia,* G. *consortium.*

(*b*) Compounds ending in *ceps* (from *capio*), *fex* (from *facio*),

Digitized by Google

and *ops*, have *i* with *e* in the Ab. Sing., but no where else; as, *inops* destitute, Ab. *inŏpi, -e:* Pl. N. *inopes*, G. *inopum.*

(*c*) Compounds ending in *pes, pos* (from *potis*), *corpor* (from *corpus*), and *stes* (from *sto*), have a crudeform altogether ending in a consonant; as, *bipes* having two feet, Ab. *bipĕde:* Pl. N. *bipĕdes*, G. *bipedum.*

N.B.—Adjectives of one termination have no *neuter* Plur. unless it can end in *ia; vetus, vetera*, is the only exception.

§ 20. *Defective Adjectives.*

1. Defective in number.

Pauci few, *plerique* most, have no Sing. in common use: but *paucus* in poetry has the sense of the plural; as, *foramine pauco*, Hor. Ar. P. 203, with few holes; and Sallust uses the obsolete *pleraque;* as, *pleraque juventus*, Sal. Cat. 17.

Plerique has no genitive; *plurimorum* is used instead.

2. Defective in case.

The Adj. *frugi* thrifty, *nequam* wicked, are indeclinables.

Macte, macti (*esto*) go on and prosper, *necesse* necessary, *potis, pote*, able, *præsto* ready, *volupe* agreeable (all used with *est*), are Adj. almost become adverbs. *Parum* too little, is a neut. Adj. used as a substantive.

The Nom. *sons* guilty, *seminex* half-dead, and some other compounds, are not used.

There is no mas. Nom. Sing. to *cætera -um* the rest, and *ludicra -um* sportive.

The Gen. *primoris* chief, has no Nom. Sing., nor any neuter in either number.

The Nom. *dis* rich is found only in Ter. Adel. v. 1. 8; and the neut. *dite*, Val. Flac. ii. 296. The other cases are common.

§ 21. Comparison of Adjectives.

1. Adjectives have two degrees of comparison, the *comparative* and *superlative.*

Obs. The *Comparative* denotes that a quality is possessed by one object in a greater or less degree than it is by *another;* as, *doctior* more learned [than some one else].

The *Superlative* denotes that a quality is possessed in the highest or lowest degree, or more than *all others;* as, *doctissimus* most learned [of all the persons spoken of].

2. The Adjective which expresses a quality without any comparison, is sometimes called the *Positive* degree.

Digitized by Google

(*a*) *Formation of comparatives and superlatives.*

1. The most usual formation is by adding—

-ior for the comparative.
-issimus for the superlative.

These are added to the crudeform of the positive; but final vowels are dropped in the formation; as,

doctus, learned, [DOCTO] *doct-ior*, *doct-issimus*.
tristis, sad, [TRISTI] *trist-ior*, *trist-issimus*.
solers, careful, [SOLERTI] *solert-ior*, *solert-issimus*.

2. Adjectives in *er* form the superlative by adding *-rimus;* and if the *e* is dropped before *r* in declining, it is dropped also in the comparative; as,

tener, tender, *tener-ior*, *tener-rimus*.
acer, bold, *acr-ior*, *acer-rimus*.

Obs. 1. The Adj. *vetus* old, also makes *veter-rimus; nupĕrus* late, *nuper-rimus;* and *maturus* early, *-issimus* and *-rimus*, the latter mostly in the adverb *maturrimè*.

Obs. 2. Some Adj. in *ilis, facilis* easy, *gracilis* slender, *humilis* low, *similis* like, form the superlative by adding *-limus;* as, *facilis, facillimus. Imbecillis* weak has both forms *-issimus* and *-imus*.

Obs. 3. Compound Adj. in *dĭcus, fĭcus, vŏlus*, take their comparative and superlative from forms in *ens* (*entis*); as, *maledĭcus* reviling, *maledicentior, maledicentissimus*. So *egĕnus* needy, and *provĭdus* provident, take theirs from *egens* and *providens*.

3. Adjectives ending in *us*, preceded by a vowel, make the comparative and superlative with *magis* more, and *maximè* most; as, *pius* dutiful, *magis pius, maximè pius*.

Obs. 1. Many other Adj. form their comparison in the same way.

(*a*) Some of these are compounds; as, *magnanimus;* and derivatives in *ĭcus, ĭdus, ālis, ĭlis, ŭlus, bundus*.

(*b*) Others are simple adjectives, which from some caprice use this method; as, *albus, almus, ferus*, and others.

(*c*) Some which regularly make *ior*, are found occasionally in poetry with *magis;* as, *magis beatus*, Hor. S. i. 3. 142.

Obs. 2. Some few Adj. in *ius* and *uus* are found with *ior* and *issimus;* as, *egregius* (*egregior, egregiissimus*, rare).

Digitized by Google

(*b*) *Irregular Comparison.*

Some common adjectives are very irregular in their comparison.

bonus good,	*melior*,	*optĭmus.*
malus bad,	*pejor*,	*pessĭmus.*
magnus great,	*major*,	*maxĭmus.*
parvus small,	*minor*,	*minĭmus.*
multus much,	*plus*,	*plurĭmus.*

Obs. 1. The following also are more or less irregular;

dives rich, *divitior* † or *ditior*, *ditissimus.*
frugi frugal, *frugalior*, *frugalissimus.*
dexter on the right, *dexterior*, *dextĭmus.*
sinister on the left, *sinisterior* (*sinistĭmus*).
nequam wicked, *nequior*, *nequissimus.*

Obs. 2. Double Superlatives.

The following have two irregular superlatives;

extĕrus outward, *exterior*, *extrēmus* and *extĭmus.*
infĕrus ‡ low, *inferior*, *infĭmus* and *imus.*
supĕrus ‡ high, *superior*, *suprēmus* and *summus.*
postĕrus ‡ behind, *posterior*, *postrēmus* and *postŭmus.*

N.B. *Infimus* generally signifies the *lowest thing* of many; *imus* the *lowest part* of one thing; as, *infimus mons* the lowest mountain, *imus mons* the bottom of the mountain. *Supremus* and *summus* differ in the same way. *Extimus* is not much used; and *postumus* means a last child; as, *tua postuma proles*, Virg. Æn. vi. 763.

(*c*) *Defective Comparison.*

1. Some have no *positive* adjective.

	deterior inferior,	*deterrimus.*
(ὠκὺς)	*ocior* quicker,	*ocissimus.*
(*præ*)	*prior* former, before,	*primus.*
(*citra*)	*citerior* more on this side,	*citĭmus.*
(*intra*)	*interior* further in, interior,	*intĭmus.*
(*ultra*)	*ulterior* further off, more beyond,	*ultĭmus.*
(*prope*)	*propior* nearer,	*proxĭmus.*
(*potis*)	*potior* better, preferable,	*potissimus.*

† Less common. ‡ Scarcely found in Nom. mas.

Digitized by Google

2. Some have no *comparative;*

diversus different,	*-issimus.*	*falsus* false,	*falsissimus.*
inclitus renowned,	*-issimus.*	*sacer* sacred,	*sacerrimus.*
novus new,	*novissimus.*	*vetus* old,	*veterrimus.*

and some others.

3. Some have no *superlative;*

juvenis young, *jūnior.* | *senex* old, *senior.*

adolescens, agrestis, alacer, ater, cæcus, declīvis, proclivis, deses, jejunus, longinquus, propinquus, protervus, salutaris, satur, surdus, teres, vulgaris, and verbals in *ĭlis* and *bĭlis.*

4. Two have no *positive* or *superlative;*

(*ante*) *anterior* before. | (*secus*) *sequior* inferior.

N.B. Many adjectives from their meaning do not admit of degrees of comparison; such as those which denote a material, origin, possession, or a definite time, &c.; as, *æneus, Romanus, paternus, æstivus.*

§ 22. Numerals.

(*a*) The principal numerals are—

Cardinal numbers—expressing *how many.*
Ordinal numbers—in *what rank or order.*

		Cardinal.	Ordinal.
1,	I.	*Unus* one,	*Primus* first.
2,	II.	*duo* two,	*secundus* second.
3,	III.	*tres* three,	*tertius* third.
4,	IV.	*quatuor,*	*quartus.*
5,	V.	*quinque,*	*quintus.*
6,	VI.	*sex,*	*sextus.*
7,	VII.	*septem,*	*septĭmus.*
8,	VIII.	*octo,*	*octāvus.*
9,	IX.	*novem,*	*nonus.*
10,	X.	*decem,*	*decĭmus.*
11,	XI.	*undĕcim,*	*undecimus.*
12,	XII.	*duodecim,*	*duodecimus.*
13,	XIII.	*tredecim,*	*tertius decimus.*
14,	XIV.	*quatuordecim,*	*quartus decimus.*
15,	XV.	*quindecim,*	*quintus decimus.*
16,	XVI.	*sedecim,*	*sextus decimus.*

Digitized by Google

	Cardinal.	Ordinal.
17,	XVII. *septendecim,*	*septimus decimus.*
18,	XVIII. *duodeviginti,*	*octavus decimus.*
19,	XIX. *undeviginti,*	*nonus decimus.*
20,	XX. *viginti,*	*vicesimus.*
21,	XXI. *viginti unus,* &c.	*vicesimus primus.*
30,	XXX. *triginta,*	*tricesimus.*
40,	XL. *quadraginta,*	*quadragesimus.*
50,	L. *quinquaginta,*	*quinquagesimus.*
60,	LX. *sexaginta,*	*sexagesimus.*
70,	LXX. *septuaginta,*	*septuagesimus.*
80,	LXXX. *octoginta,*	*octogesimus.*
90,	XC. *nonaginta,*	*nonagesimus.*
100,	C. *centum,*	*centesimus.*
200,	CC. *ducenti,*	*ducentesimus.*
300,	CCC. *trecenti,*	*trecentesimus.*
400,	CCCC. *quadringenti,*	*quadringentesimus.*
500,	D, or IↃ. *quingenti,*	*quingentesimus.*
600,	DC. *sexcenti,*	*sexcentesimus.*
700,	DCC. *septingenti,*	*septingentesimus.*
800,	DCCC. *octingenti,*	*octingentesimus.*
900,	DCCCC. *nongenti,*	*nongentesimus.*
1000,	M, or CIↃ. *mille,*	*millesimus.*
2000,	MM. *duo millia,* or *bis mille.*	*bis millesimus.*

1. The Cardinal numbers below *four*, and above a *hundred* are declined; thus,

Sing.	Plur.
N. *unus, una, unum.*	N. *uni, unæ, una.*
G. *unius,*	G. *unorum, -arum,-orum.*
D. *uni,*	D. *unis.*

like *totus.*

Plur.	Plur.
N.V. *duo, duæ, duo.*	N.V. *tres, tria.*
G. *duorum, -arum, -orum.*	G. *trium.*
D.Ab. *duobus, -abus, -obus.*	D. Ab. *tribus.*
Ac. *duos, duas, duo.*	Ac. *tres, tria.*

like *duo* is declined, *ambo, ambæ, ambo,* both.

Digitized by Google

Obs. The plur. of *unus* is used with *pluralia tantum*. See Syntax.

Duo and *ambo* have sometimes an Acc. mas. in *o* for *os;* as, *duo si discordia vexet inertes*, Hor. S. i. 7, 15. The Gen. is often *duûm* for *duorum*.

2. The numbers between a *hundred* and a *thousand* are adjectives of three terminations, as, *ducenti*, *-æ*, *-a*.

Obs. 1. The cardinal numbers for 13, 16, 17, 18, 19, may be used in a separate form; as, *decem et tres*, *decem et sex*, &c.

In the compound numbers above 20, the smaller number may precede with *et;* as, *unus et viginti*.

Obs. 2. In ordinal numbers, from 13 to 19, the smaller number may be placed last, and *et* inserted or not; as, 13th, *decimus tertius*, or *decimus et tertius*. *Duodevicesimus*, *undevicesimus*, are sometimes used for 18th, 19th, &c. In the compound numbers above 20, the smaller number may precede with *et;* as, *unus et vicesimus*, 21st. For 22nd, 32nd, &c. *alter et vicesimus* or *vicesimus et alter* is common.

Obs. 3. The first Ordinal *primus* is a superlative from *præ* before, hence it means "before all others." *Secundus* is derived from *sequor* to follow, and means "following another."

Obs. 4. From the Ordinal numbers are derived a class of numerals in *anus*, denoting the class or division to which one belongs; as, *primanus*, *secundanus*, *tertianus*. They are mostly used in describing the soldiers of the legions: hence, in the compounds the first word is fem. agreeing with *legio;* as, *tertiadecumani*, Tac. H. ii. 67.

(*b*) *Secondary Numerals.*

Several other numeral forms are used; of which the following are the principal:

1. *Distributives*—express *how many to each?*

1. *singŭlus* one each.	6. *senus.*	20. *vicēnus.*
2. *binus* two each.	7. *septēnus.*	30. *tricenus.*
3. *ternus* or *trinus.*	8. *octōnus.*	40. *quadragenus*, &c.
4. *quaternus.*	9. *novēnus.*	100. *centenus.*
5. *quinus.*	10. *denus*, &c.	200. *ducenus*, &c.

Distributives are mostly used in the plural; and often make Gen. *úm* for *orum*.

Obs. 1. From distributives are formed numerals in *arius*, to denote *of how many parts* anything consists; as, *binarius*, *ternarius*, *senarius*, &c.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 2. The substantive numerals *unio*, *ternio*, &c., are not classical: *numerus ternarius*, &c., should be used.

Obs. 3. Numeral adjectives in *ĭmus* denote *how many years old*; as, *bimus* two years old, *trimus*, *quadrimus*, &c.

2. *Multiplicatives*—express *how many fold?*

1. *simplex* single.	4. *quadruplex.*	10. *decemplex.*
2. *duplex* double.	5. *quincuplex.*	100. *centuplex.*
3. *triplex* triple.	7. *septemplex.* these alone are found.	

Obs. Poets use *geminus* and its compounds as multiplicatives; as, *solem geminum*, Virg. Æn. iv. 470: *tergeminam Hecaten*, Virg. Æn. v. 511: *septemgemini Nili*, Virg. Æn. vi. 800.

3. *Proportionals*—express *how many times more?*

1. *simplus* equal.	4. *quadruplus.*	8. *octuplus.*
2. *duplus* twice as much.	5. *quinquiplus.*	10. *decuplus.*
3. *triplus* thrice as much.	7. *septuplus.*	100. *centuplus.*

Proportionals are mostly neuter; as, *duplum*, or Abl. *duplo*.

Obs. The difference between *multiplicative* and *proportional* numbers is, that proportionals imply a comparison of one thing with another, but multiplicatives do not.

4. *Adverbials*—express *how many times?*

1. *semel* once.	6. *sexies* six times.	30. *tricies.*
2. *bis* twice.	7. *septies*, &c.	40. *quadragies.*
3. *ter* thrice.	17. *septies decies*, &c.	50. *quinquagies*, &c.
4. *quater* four times.	20. *vicies.*	100. *centies*, &c.
5. *quinquies.*	21. *semel et vicies.*	1000. *millies.*

Obs. 1. Numeral adverbs in *um* and *o* are formed from the ordinals; as, *primum* or *primo* firstly, *secundum*, *-o* (or *iterum*) secondly, &c.

Obs. 2. Some numeral substantives are compounded with *annus*, *dies*, *vir*; as, *biennium* a space of two years, *triennium*, &c.—*biduum* a space of two days, *triduum*, &c.—*duovĭri* two commissioners, *tresviri*, *decemviri*, &c. A member of such a commission is *duumvir*, *triumvir*, wherein *duum*, *trium*, is Gen. plur.; *duumviri*, *triumviri*, as a plural, is a corruption.

Obs. 3. The first syllable in *singulus*, *simplex*, *simplus*, *semel*, seen also in *similis*, *simul*, &c., corresponds with the Greek *ἅμα*, *ἁπλοῦς*, *ὁμαλός*, *ὁμοῦ*, and signifies *uniformity*, and thence *singleness*. The affixes *plex* and *plus* may be compared respectively with the Greek forms *πλάξ* a surface (whence *δίπλαξ* double, and from the same root the Latin *plico*), and *πολύς* much (root ΠΟΛ or ΠΛΟ fulness, whence *διπλόος* &c.); *duplex* therefore is "having a double surface," *duplus* "twice full."

Digitized by Google

PRONOUNS.

§ 23. PRONOUNS supply the place of substantives, and prevent their too frequent repetition in a sentence.

Pronouns are 1. Personal; 2. Demonstrative; 3. Relative; 4. Interrogative; 5. Possessive; 6. Adjective.

(*a*) *Personal Pronouns.*

1. The personal pronouns are *ego* I, *tu* thou, *nos* we, *vos* you, *sui* of himself, *ipse* self.

	SING.		PLUR.	
N.	*ego,*	*tu,*	*nos,*	*vos,*
G.	*mei,*	*tui,*	*nostrum, -i,*	*vestrum, -i,*
D.	*mihi,*	*tibi,*	*nobis,*	*vobis,*
Ac.	*me,*	*te,*	*nos,*	*vos,*
V.	—	*tu,*	—	*vos,*
Ab.	*me.*	*te.*	*nobis.*	*vobis.*

Sui is the same for both numbers and all genders, himself, herself, themselves; it has no nominative.

G. *sui,* D. *sibi,* Ac. *se,* Ab. *se.*

Obs. 1. To these pronouns the particle *met* may be added to give them greater emphasis; as, *egomet* I myself, *mihimet, temet, semet.* The Gen. plur. and the Nom. *tu* do not use *met;* but *tu* makes *tute* and then *tutemet. Meme, tete, sese* are also used.

Obs. 2. The genitives *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri,* are properly the Gen. of the possessives *meum, tuum,* &c. So *nostrum, vestrum,* for *nostrorum,* G. pl. of *noster,* &c. See Syntax.

Obs. 3. The *Formation* of Cases.

SING.	[ME] or [MI]	[TE] or [TI]	[SE] or [SI]
G.	*me-I,* (*meum*), *mei.*	*te-I,* (*tuum*), *tui.*	*se-I* (*suum*), *sui.*
D.	*mi-bHI,* (φι), *mihi.*	*ti-BhI,* (φι), *tibi.*	*si-BhI,* (φι), *sibi.*
Ac.	*me-* (*m* lost), *me.*	*te-* (*m* lost), *te.*	*se-* (*m* lost), *se.*
Ab.	*mi-e,* *me.*	*ti-e,* *te.*	*si-e,* *se.*

PLUR.	[NO.]	[VO.]	
N.A.	*no-ES,* *nos.*	*vo-ES,* *vos.*	*sui,* like
G.	(*nostrum*), *nostri.*	(*vestrum*), *vestri.*	the singular.
D.Ab.	*no-BIS,* *nobis.*	*vo-BIS,* *vobis.*	

The declension of these personal pronouns varies a little from that of other nouns; for being words in constant use from the

Digitized by Google

earliest period, they have in some cases retained older forms, and in others have been more liable to changes in pronunciation.

Obs. 4. *The* First *and* Second *pronouns.*

The *first* and second pronouns, specially when compared with the Greek, seem connected in form and meaning with the first and second *numerals;* thus,

(*i*) *mei, mihi, me,* = *μία, μόνος, μέν.* (me = number *one.*)
(*ii*) *tu, tui, te,* = *duo,* two, *δέ.* (thou = the *second object.*)

The Nom. *ego* has a different *root* and *meaning* from the oblique cases; for *ego* (comp. *secus, ἑκάς,* apart) means *separation*—i. e., I by myself,—or self used *subjectively:* but *me* means the *first object,*—i. e., me—or self used *objectively.*

Obs. 5. *The* Third *pronoun.*

The *third* Pers. has no simple pronoun like *ego, tu;* for *sui,* besides wanting the Nom., has a *reflective* meaning. The defect is supplied, when needed, by a Demonstrative *is* or *ille.*

2. *Ipse* belongs to all persons; as, *ego ipse* I myself, *tu ipse* thou thyself, *ipse* himself.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. V.	*ipse,*	*ipsa,*	*ipsum.*	*ipsi,*	*ipsæ,*	*ipsa.*
G.	*ipsius,*			*ipsorum,*	*ipsarum,*	*ipsorum.*
D.	*ipsi,*			*ipsis,*		
Ac.	*ipsum,*	*ipsam,*	*ipsum.*	*ipsos,*	*ipsas,*	*ipsa.*
Ab.	*ipso,*	*ipsâ,*	*ipso.*	*ipsis.*		

Obs. 1. *Ipse* was originally *ipsus,* as used in Terence, &c., and is declined with Gen. in *ius,* like *totus.*

Obs. 2. In the old language *ipse* made a compound with some cases of *is;* as, *eapse, eumpse, eopse* in Plautus for *ea ipsa,* &c. The form remained in *reapse* for *re ipsâ* or *re eâ ipsâ* in reality.

(*b*) *Demonstrative Pronouns.*

1. The demonstratives are *hic* this, *iste* that, *ille* that; and *is* he or that, less forcible than *ille.*

Hic denotes an object near, or connected with, *me*—the *speaker,*
iste ——— an object connected with *you*—the person *spoken to.*
ille ——— an object connected with *him*—the person *spoken of.*

Thus *hic, iste, ille,* belong respectively to the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Pers.

Digitized by Google

2. The demonstratives are thus declined—

	Sing.			Plur.		
N.	*hic,*	*hæc,*	*hoc.*	*hi,*	*hæ,*	*hæc.*
G.	*hujus,*			*horum,*	*harum,*	*horum.*
D.	*huic,*			*his,*		
Ac.	*hunc,*	*hanc,*	*hoc.*	*hos,*	*has,*	*hæc.*
Ab.	*hoc,*	*hac,*	*hoc.*	*his.*		
N.	*ille,*	*illa,*	*illud.*	*illi,*	*illæ,*	*illa.*
G.	*illius,*			*illorum,*	*illarum,*	*illorum.*
D.	*illi,*			*illis,*		
Ac.	*illum,*	*illam,*	*illud.*	*illos,*	*illas,*	*illa.*
Ab.	*illo,*	*illâ,*	*illo.*	*illis.*		
N.	*is,*	*ea,*	*id.*	*ii,*	*eæ,*	*ea.*
G.	*ejus,*			*eorum,*	*earum,*	*eorum.*
D.	*ei,*			*eis* or *iis,*		
Ac.	*eum,*	*eam,*	*id.*	*eos,*	*eas,*	*ea.*
Ab.	*eo,*	*eâ,*	*eo.*	*eis* or *iis.*		

Like *ille* is declined *iste, ista, istud,* Gen. *istius.* Like *is* is declined *īdem, eădem, ĭdem,* the same. Gen. *ejusdem.* Dat. *eidem.* Acc. *eundem, eandem, idem.*

Obs. 1. All the three demonstratives had once the same termination, *hic, hæc, hoc; istic, istæc, istoc* or *istuc; illic, illæc, illoc* or *illuc.* Of these *istic, illic,* &c., are found abundantly in the older Writers, as in Terence, but were afterwards changed to *iste* and *ille;* while *hic* remained unaltered. The pronominal adverbs *illic, illuc,* &c., retain the old forms. The final *c* comes from the demonstrative particle *ce* (*ecce*); which still remains, when the demonstrative is emphatic; as, *hicce, hujusce;* and in the interrogative forms, *hiccine, hunccine.* The unemphatic *is* perhaps never had the *c.*

Obs. 2. The crudeforms of all the demonstratives end in [o, a]; and they are declined like *totus;* thus in *hic,*

G. *ho-IUS* is *hujus:* D. *ho-I-c,*—*huic:* Ac. *ho-M-c,*—*hunc* for *humc.*

Obs. 3. From *ille* Virgil uses *olli* for *illi:* and the adverb *olim* is of the same origin, pointing to a form *olle* or *ollus.*

Obs. 4. In familiar language compounds with *en* or *ecce* were used; as, *eccum* for *ecce eum, ellum* for *en illum.*

Obs. 5. Some peculiar demonstrative forms are also used; as, *tot* so many, *talis* such, *tantus* so great. See Interrogatives.

Digitized by Google

(*c*) *Relative Pronouns.*

1. The simple relative is *qui, quæ, quod,* who, which.

Sing.			Plur.		
N.	*qui,*	*quæ, quod.*	N.	*qui,*	*quæ, quæ.*
G.	*cujus,*		G.	*quorum, -arum, -orum.*	
D.	*cui,*		D.	*quĭbus* or *queis.*	
Ac.	*quem, quam, quod.*		Ac.	*quos,*	*quas, quæ.*
Ab.	*quo, quâ, quo.*		Ab.	*quĭbus* or *queis.*	

Obs. 1. The crudeform of *qui* is [QUO, QUA]; hence are formed, Gen. *quo-IUS,—cujus:* Dat. *quo-I,—cui:* Ac. *quo-eM,—quem.* *Qu* and *c* being both *k* sounds, and *j* the consonant of *i,* (in English, *y,*) the change of *quoius* to *cujus* is but slight.

Obs. 2. The Relative has an Abl. *quī,* of all genders, found joined with *cum;* as, *quicum,* m. Cic. Am. 6: *quicum,* f. Virg. Æn. xi. 822. Otherwise *quī* is an interrogative for *quo* in what manner? or how? as, *quī fit, Mæcenas?* Hor. S. i. 1, 1.

2. Like *qui* is declined *quicunque* whoever; as,

N. *quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque;* G. *cujuscunque.*

Obs. 1. Some peculiar relative forms are also used; as, *quot* (so many) as, *qualis* (such) as, *quantus* (so great) as.

Obs. 2. *Universal Relatives.*—The addition of *cunque* to relatives gives them an *universality* or *inclusiveness* of meaning; for *cunque* signifies "at all times," "on every occasion." (See Hor. Od. i. 32, 15.) Thus *quicunque* means any one whatever of a given number, without determining which one it is. So *quotcunque, qualiscunque, quantuscunque.* (See below, *Obs.* 3.)

(*d*) *Interrogative Pronouns.*

The simple interrogative is *quis?* who? what?

Sing. N. *quis* or *qui, quæ, quid* or *quod.*
G. *cujus,*
D. *cui,*
Ac. *quem,* *quam, quid* or *quod.*

the rest like the relative *qui.*

Obs. 1. Strictly speaking there are *two* simple interrogatives, (*i*) *quis, quid.*—(*ii*) *qui, quæ, quod.* (See Syntax.)

All other interrogative forms are the same as the relatives; as, *quot* how many? *qualis* of what kind? *quantus* how great?

Digitized by Google

Obs. 2. *Indefinites.*—The interrogative *quis, qui,* is also used as an indefinite, "any one." See Syntax. So *ecquis,* (for *an-quis?*) "any one" with a question.

(*a*) *Aliquis,* for *alius-quis,* is another species of indefinite, and means "some one." So *aliquot, aliquantus.*

The indefinites *quis, ecquis, aliquis,* generally use *quă* not *quæ,* for the Nom. Sing. fem., and Plur. neut.

(*b*) Several compounds of *quis* have an indefinite meaning.

quisque each. | *quispiam* any one. | *quivis* whom you please.
quisquam any one. | *quidam* a certain one. | *quilibet* whom you please.
unusquisque each one. All these make the neut. *quid* or *quod.*

The meaning of *quisque,* and other such words in *que,* is this *quis,* and that *quis,* and the other *quis:* i. e. all the individuals of a given number taken separately.

Unusquisque has both parts declined; G. *uniuscujusque,* &c.

Obs. 3. *Universal Indefinites.*—*Quis* and all other interrogatives admit of being doubled, and then have a *universality* or *inclusiveness* of meaning, like the Universal Relatives with *cunque; quisquis* whosoever, i. e. this *quis,* or that *quis,* or the other *quis;*—any one whatever of a given number, be it which it may. So *quotquot, qualisqualis, quantusquantus.*

Quisquis is thus declined, being defective in some cases.

Sing. N.	*quisquis,*	*quidquid* or *quicquid.*
Ac.	(*quemquem* old),	*quidquid* or *quicquid.*
Ab.	*quoquo,*	*quâquâ,* *quoquo.*

Obs. 4. For the arrangement of correlative pronouns, see § 61.

(*e*) *Possessive Pronouns.*

The possessives are formed from the personal pronouns; thus,

from *ego, mei,*—	*meus,*	*mea,*	*meum,*	my, mine.
tu,	*tuus,*	*-a,*	*-um,*	thy, thine.
sui,	*suus,*	*-a,*	*-um,*	his, hers, &c.
nos,	*noster,*	*-tra,*	*-trum,*	our, ours.
vos,	*vester,*	*-tra,*	*-trum,*	your, yours.

To these may be added

cujus, -a, -um, whose? from *quis.* | *nostras, -atis,* of our country.
cujas, -atis, of what country? | *vestras, -atis,* of your country.

Obs. 1. The Voc. of *meus* is *mi, mea, meum.* For *vester* an older form is *voster.*

Digitized by Google

Obs. 2. The Abl. Sing. of possessives, especially *suus*, adds *pte* for emphasis; as, *suopte*, *suapte*. All the cases of *suus* may add *met*, and are then usually followed by *ipse*; as, *intra suamet ipsum mœnia compulere*. Liv. vi. 36.

(*f*) *Adjective Pronouns.*

The adjective pronouns not implying *possession*.

alius,	*alia*,	*aliud*;	G. *alĭus*;	D. *alĭi*,	another.
alter,	*-ĕra*,	*-erum*;	„ *alterĭus*;	„ *altĕri*,	the other.
ullus,	*-a*,	*-um*;	„ *ullĭus*;	„ *ulli*,	any one.
nullus,	*-a*,	*-um*;	„ *nullĭus*;	„ *nulli*,	no one.
uter,	*utra*,	*utrum*;	„ *utrĭus*;	„ *utri*,	one of two.

So *neuter* neither, *alteruter* either one, *uterque* both.

Obs. 1. *Alius* is *one* or *another* of several things; *alter* is *the one* or *the other* of two; hence *alter* is often a numeral, *a second*.

Uter and all its compounds refer to *two* things; it is also an *interrogative* and a *relative*; as, *uter* which one of two? *Uterque* is *both* taken separately, and thus differs from *ambo*, which means *both* taken together.

Obs. 2. All the adjective pronouns are declined like *totus*; but in the earlier writers several instances occur of the other formation, Gen. *i*, *æ*, *i*: Dat. *o*, *æ*, *o*; as, *aliæ pecudis*, Cic. Divin. ii. 13. So *toto orbi*, Propert. iii. 11, 57.

Alius makes Gen. *alĭus*, the *i* being always long, as contracted from *ali-ius*; yet the Dat. is *alĭi*. *Alter* makes *alterĭus*, the *i* being always short. In the others the *i* is considered *common*. See Prosody.

VERBS.

§ 24. A VERB denotes an *action*, or a *state of being*; as, *amo* I love, *patior* I suffer.

The person who performs the action, or exists in the state, is called the *Subject* of the verb; as, *ego amo* I love.

Obs. The subject of a verb may be represented as *performing* an action, or as *acted upon* by another; and the action itself may be represented as performed under different *circumstances*, at different *times*, and by different *persons*. Verbs therefore have forms which serve to denote all these different modifications, and which are called *Voices*, *Moods*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

Digitized by Google

(*a*) *Voices.*

1. Verbs have two Voices, *Active* and *Passive*.

2. The *Active* voice denotes that the subject performs an action; as, *amo* I love.

3. The *Passive* denotes that the subject is acted upon by another; as, *amor* I am loved.

Obs. Traces of a *Middle* voice.—Several verbs have a *middle* or *reflective* meaning in the passive; as, *moveor* I move myself, *vertor* I turn myself.

4. Active verbs are either *transitive* or *neuter*.

5. A *transitive* verb denotes that the subject acts upon another object; as, *amo te* I love you.

6. A *neuter* verb denotes that the subject does not act upon another object; as, *ambŭlo* I walk.

Obs. A great many verbs in English are both *transitive* and *neuter;* as, to move, to join, &c.: but very few verbs have both meanings in Latin. When a Latin verb is transitive, the neuter sense is obtained by adding the pronouns *me, te, se,* &c., or by using the passive; as, he moves the stone, *movet lapidem,*—he moves, *movet se* or *movetur*.

7. *Deponent* verbs have a passive form with an active signification; as, *loquor* I speak.

8. *Neuter-passive* verbs have an active form with a passive signification; as, *vapŭlo* I am beaten.

(*b*) *Moods.*

1. Verbs have four moods, *Indicative, Imperative, Subjunctive* or *Potential, Infinitive.*

2. The *Indicative* speaks of an action as simply and actually done; as, *amo* I love.

3. The *Imperative* speaks of an action as commanded or desired; as, *ama* love thou.

4. The *Subjunctive* and *Potential* speak of an action as only thought of in the mind; as, *cum amem* since I love, *ut amarem* that I might love.

Obs. The subjunctive and potential are thus distinguished.—The *subjunctive* marks an action which is thought of as *a fact;* and it is rendered in English by the *Indicative* mood; as, *tam crudelis erat ut omnes eum timerent,* he was so cruel that all *feared* him.—The *potential* marks an action which is thought of as *uncer-*

Digitized by Google

tain or *contingent*, and it is rendered in English by the *potential* words *may*, *might*, &c., as, *oro ut redeat* I pray that he *may* return.

5. The *Infinitive* speaks of an action without any reference to the person performing it, but as subsisting by itself, like a *substantive;* as, *amare* to love, or the loving.

Obs. The infinitive from its meaning and use is to be regarded rather as a *verbal* substantive than as a mood of the verb.

6. To verbs are attached — (*a*) *Gerunds* and *Supines*, which are verbal substantives; as, *amandi* of loving, *amātum* the loving, or to love.—(*b*) *Participles*, which are verbal adjectives, and speak of an action as a quality belonging to a subject; as, *amans* loving, *i. e.* one who loves.

Obs. Participles differ in meaning from adjectives, inasmuch as they describe a quality as existing only in a certain state or time; but adjectives generally denote a permanent or habitual quality. But many participles have by custom gained the meaning of adjectives.

(*c*) *Tenses.*

1. Latin verbs have six tenses,

Present;	as, *amo*	I love, or am loving.
Imperfect;	as, *amābam*	I loved, or was loving.
Future;	as, *amābo*	I shall love.
Perfect;	as, *amāvi*	I have loved, or I loved.
Pluperfect;	as, *amavĕram*	I had loved.
Future-perfect;	as, *amavĕro*	I shall have loved.

2. Tenses describe the *time* and *state* of an action.

(*a*) The *time* of an action is *present*, *past*, or *future*.

(*b*) In any of these three times an action may be described as *going on*, as *finished*, or as simply *acted* without noting whether it is going on, or finished.

These three states of an action may be called,

imperfect, the action described as *going on*.
perfect, „ „ as *finished*.
indefinite (or *aorist*), „ as simply *acted* without noting whether it is going on or finished.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. There being three *times* and three *states* of an action, *nine* tenses would be required to express them all; thus,

	Present.	*Past.*	*Future.*
IMPERFECT,	I am loving,	I was loving,	I shall be loving.
PERFECT,	I have loved,	I had loved,	I shall have loved.
INDEFINITE,	I love,	I loved,	I shall love.

The English verb has not tenses to express all these, without a circumlocution, nor has the Latin verb.

Obs. 2. In Latin there are only six tenses, because there are no distinct forms for the Present-indefinite "I love,"—the Past-indefinite "I loved,"—or the Future-imperfect "I shall be loving;" but,

amo I am loving, is also used for I love.
amavi I have loved, „ I loved.
amabo I shall love, „ I shall be loving.

The *Perfect* in the Latin verb is used to describe two different *times*, as well as two different *states* of an action; as,

amavi I have loved, to-day—Action *finished* in *present* time.
and *amavi* I loved, yesterday—Action *indefinite* in *past* time.
In the latter case the Perfect may be called the *Perfect-aorist*, or *Past-indefinite*.

Obs. 3. The Latin verb differs from the English principally in making great use of *Imperfects*, namely,

Present-imperfect, *amo* I am loving, mostly in English *I love.*
Past-imperfect, *amabam* I was loving, „ *I loved.*
So in the passive, *amor* I am being loved, „ *I am loved.*
amabar I was being loved, „ *I was loved.*

In English *Imperfects* cannot be expressed without a circumlocution, which is often either *too emphatic, awkward,* or *impossible.*

Obs. 4. As the tenses describe the *time* and *state* of an action, they would be more correctly named in the Latin verb,

Present-imperfect, instead of Present, *amo* I am loving.
Past-imperfect, „ Imperfect, *amabam* I was loving.
Future-indefinite, „ Future, *amabo* I shall love.
Present-perfect, „ Perfect, *amavi* I have loved.
Past-perfect, „ Pluperfect, *amaveram* I had loved.
Future-perfect, is already correct, *amavero* I shall have loved.

3. The Indicative mood alone has all the tenses.
The Imperative has only the present tense.
The Subjunctive or Potential has no futures.
The Infinitive has three tenses, Present, Perfect, and Future.

Digitized by Google

Obs. The tenses in the Infinitive mood, as well as the Participles, do not describe the *time*, but only the *state* of an action; and hence the Present and Imperfect, the Perfect and Pluperfect, are alike.

4. The Participles belong,

(*a*) In the Active voice to the Present and Future tenses; as, *amans* loving, *amatūrus* about to love.

(*b*) In the Passive voice to the Perfect and Future; as, *amātus* having been loved, *amandus* to be loved.

(*c*) Deponent verbs have a Perfect participle with an active signification; as, *secūtus* having followed.

Obs. The Gerunds and Supines are declined with cases. The Gerund has three cases, Gen., Dat. or Abl., and Acc. The Supine has two cases, Acc. and Abl.

(*d*) *Numbers and Persons.*

1. Each tense has two numbers, *Singular* and *Plural.*
2. Each number has three persons, *first*, *second*, and *third.*
3. The First person denotes the speaker.
   the Second „ „ the person spoken to.
   the Third „ „ the person spoken of.
4. In English the persons are often distinguished only by the personal pronouns, I, thou, he, we, you, they. But in Latin the persons are distinguished by the endings of the verb.

§ 25. Formation of Verbs.

1. The formation of verbs resembles that of nouns.
2. There is in every verb a *stem* or *crudeform*, which is found in every part of it.
3. To the crudeform of the verb letters or syllables are added to produce the different tenses.
4. To the crudeform of each tense letters or syllables are added to mark the different persons.

Digitized by Google

5. The letters or syllables which mark the tenses are called *Temporal affixes* or *tense-endings.*

6. The letters or syllables which mark the different persons are called *Personal affixes* or *person-endings.*

Example.

The crudeform of *rego* I rule is REG.
the *temporal affix* for the Imperfect is EBA.
the *personal affix* for the First person is M.
thus making *reg-eba-m, regēbam,* I was ruling.

Obs. 1. Every Latin verb being formed in the manner here described is in reality a compound word, made up of a *noun* contained in the crudeform; the *particular force and meaning of the tense* contained in the temporal affix; and a *pronoun* contained in the personal affix.

Obs. 2. The different personal affixes are all parts of personal pronouns; many of them not traceable in Latin, but derived from corresponding forms in the old Greek or other kindred languages.

§ 26. The verb *Sum* I am.

The verb *Sum,* though irregular, may be learned first, because it is an auxiliary verb, used in conjugating others, particularly in the passive voice.

Sum is called a *substantive* verb, because it denotes subsistence or being.

Sum I am. [ES]

Indicative Mood.

Present—I am.

Sing.	*sum* I am,	Plur.	*sŭmus* we are,
	es thou art,		*estis* you are,
	est he is,		*sunt* they are.

Imperfect—I was.

Sing.	*ĕram* I was,	Plur.	*erāmus* we were,
	ĕras thou wast,		*erātis* you were,
	ĕrat he was,		*ĕrant* they were.

Digitized by Google

Future—I shall *or* will be.

Sing. *ĕro* I shall be, Plur. *erĭmus* we shall be,
ĕris thou wilt be, *erĭtis* you will be,
ĕrit he will be, *ĕrunt* they will be.

Perfect—I have been.

Sing. *fui* I have been, Plur. *fŭimus* we have been,
fuisti thou hast been, *fuistis* you have been,
fuit he has been, *fuērunt* or *fuēre*.

Pluperfect—I had been.

S. *fŭĕram* I had been, P. *fuerāmus* we had been,
fŭĕras thou hadst been, *fuerātis* you had been,
fŭĕrat he had been, *fŭĕrant* they had been.

Future-perfect—I shall *or* will have been.

S. *fŭĕro* I shall have been, P. *fuerĭmus* we shall have been,
fŭĕris thou wilt &c. *fuerĭtis*, &c.
fŭĕrit he will &c. *fŭĕrint* they will &c.

Imperative Mood.

Sing. *es, esto*, be thou, Plur. *este, estōte*, be you,
esto let him be, *sunto* let them be.

Obs. The Present Subjunctive is often used as an Imperative; as, *sis* be thou, *sit* let him be, *simus* let us be, &c.

Subjunctive *or* Potential Mood.

Present—I may be.

Sing. *sim* I may be, Plur. *sīmus* we may be,
sis thou may'st be, *sītis* you may be,
sit he may be, *sint* they may be.

Imperfect—I might be.
(might, could, would, should, be.)

S. *essem* I might be, P. *essēmus* we might be,
esses thou mightest be, *essētis* you might be,
esset he might be, *essent* they might be.

Also S. *fŏrem, fŏres, fŏret.* P. —— —— *fŏrent.*

Digitized by Google

Perfect—I may have been.

S. *fuĕrim* I may have been, P. *fuerīmus* we may have
fuĕris thou may'st &c. *fuerītis*, [been,
fuĕrit he may &c. *fuĕrint* they may &c.

Pluperfect—I might have been.

(might, could, would, should, have been.)

S. *fuissem* I might have P. *fuissēmus* we might have
fuisses, [been, *fuissētis*, [been,
fuisset he might &c. *fuissent* they might &c.

Infinitive.		Participles.
to be, *esse.*	Present *or* Imperfect.	——
to have been, *fuisse.*	Perfect *or* Pluperfect.	——
to be about to be, *futūrum esse* or *fore.*	Future,	about to be, *futūrus.*

Obs. 1. Present and Perfect of *sum*, with their derivatives, differ entirely from each other, and are formed from different roots.

The crudeform of the Present is [ES], like the Greek *εἰμὶ* I am;

(*a*) Sometimes the *e* is dropped, as in *sum*, *sumus*, *sim*, &c.

(*b*) Sometimes the *s* is changed into *r*, as in *eram*, *ero*, Greek *ἔσομαι*; compare also the English words *is* and *are*, *was* and *were*.

(*c*) Other irregularities are produced by contraction, as *essem* for *es-ĕrem*, *esse* for *es-ĕre*.

(*d*) *Siem*, *sies*, *siet*, *sient*, are older forms for *sim*, *sis*, *sit*, *sint*, and occur in the comic writers and Lucretius.

(*e*) The participle *ens* is not used in the simple verb, but occurs in the compounds *absens*, *præsens*, *potens*.

Obs. 2. The crudeform of the Perfect is [FU], (seen in the old verb *fuo*, and the Greek *φύω*,) from which the tenses and persons are regularly formed.

(*a*) The irregular forms *forem*, *fore*, perhaps come from the same root, being contracted from *fu-ĕrem*, *fu-ĕre*.

(*b*) Other tenses of *fuo* occur in the older Poets; as, Pres. Subj. *fuam*, *fuas*, *fuat*, *fuant*; also Perf. *fuvi*, whence *fuvero*, *fuvissem*. Even Virgil has *Tros Rutulusve fuat*, Æn. x. 108.

Obs. 3. Of the compounds of *sum*, *prosum* inserts a *d*, (*pro* being anciently *prod*,) when a vowel would follow *pro*; as, *prodes*, *prodest*.

Digitized by Google

§ 27. Conjugations.

1. Latin verbs have *four* conjugations which are distinguished by their *characteristic* letters.

2. The Conjugations are most plainly marked by the Infinitive Mood; and the *characteristic* is the letter which comes before *re* in the Infinitive; thus,

Conj. 1 has *ā* long before *re;* as, *amāre* to love.
Conj. 2 „ *ē* long „ as, *monēre* to advise.
Conj. 3 „ *ĕ* short „ as, *regĕre* to rule.
Conj. 4 „ *ī* long „ as, *audīre* to hear.

3. *The Principal parts.*—The principal parts of a verb are the Present and Perfect tenses in the Indicative Mood, and the Supine; all the other tenses are formed from these. The Present Infinitive is commonly added to mark the conjugation.

4. The Crudeforms and principal parts appear thus in the four Conjugations.

First—crudeform in A,
[AMA], *amo, amāvi, amātum, amāre* to love.

Second—crudeform in E,
[MONE], *moneo, monui, monĭtum, monēre* to advise.

Third—crudeform in O, U, or a *consonant,*
[REG], *rego, rexi, rectum, regĕre* to rule.

Fourth—crudeform in I,
[AUDI], *audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre* to hear.

Obs. 1. The *regular* formation for the 2nd Conj. is seen in such verbs as, *deleo, delēvi, delētum* to blot out, which is exactly like *amā-vi, amā-tum,* and *audī-vi, audī-tum.* But as almost all verbs in *eo* are formed like *moneo, monui;* this is taken as an example of the 2nd Conj., although irregular.

Obs. 2. The *temporal* and *personal* affixes being nearly the same in all verbs, the difference of Conjugation is produced by the manner in which the same affixes combine with the crudeforms of different verbs. Hence the peculiarities of each conjugation principally depend upon the ending of the crudeforms of the verbs.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 3. *Crudeform Conjugations.*

The Conjugations may be arranged, like the Declensions of nouns, according to the endings of the crudeforms of verbs; and there will then be *six Conjugations*, having for their characteristic letters the *five vowels* and a *consonant*; thus,

The Six Conjugations.

A; as,	[AMA],	*amo,*	*amāvi,*	*amātum,*	*amāre* to love.
E; „	[DELE],	*deleo,*	*delēvi,*	*delētum,*	*delēre* to blot out.
I; „	[AUDI],	*audio,*	*audīvi,*	*audītum,*	*audīre* to hear.
O; „	[NO],	*nosco,*	*nōvi,*	*nōtum,*	*noscĕre* to observe.
U; „	[ARGU],	*arguo,*	*argui,*	*argūtum,*	*arguĕre* to prove.
Consonant;	[REG],	*rego,*	*rexi,*	*rectum,*	*regĕre* to rule.

(*a*) Of these it must be observed that the regular form of the Perfect and Supine of the E-Conj., *evi, etum,* as seen in *deleo,* is found in a very few Verbs. Most verbs in *eo* drop the *e* in the Perfect, and make it end in *ui.*

(*b*) The verb *nosco, novi,* is almost the only instance of the O-Conj., and even *nosco* belongs to the Consonant-Conj. in the Present and its derivatives. Verbs of the U-Conj. too, not admitting of any contraction with the *u,* are conjugated exactly like the Consonant-Conj. Hence it is no great deviation from correctness to class the O-, U-, and Consonant-Conj. together, thus making *four* in all. And these four Conjugations may be called

the *First* or A-Conjugation; as, *amo.*
the *Second* or E-Conjugation; as, *moneo.*
the *Third* or Consonant-Conj.; as, *rego.*
the *Fourth* or I-Conjugation; as, *audio.*

Obs. 4. *Verbs of two Conjugations.*

Many verbs belong to two different Conjugations, one being seen in the Present, and the other in the Perfect or Supine; as,

Conj. 1.	*seco, secāre,*	Conj. 3.	*secui, sectum,* to cut.
— 2.	*ardeo, ardēre,*	— 3.	*arsi, arsum,* to burn.
— 3.	*sterno, sternĕre,*	— 1.	*strāvi, strātum,* to lay low.
— 3.	*cerno, cernĕre,*	— 2.	*crēvi, crētum,* to see.
— 3.	*peto, petĕre,*	— 4.	*petīvi, petītum,* to seek.
— 4.	*venio, venīre,*	— 3.	*veni, ventum,* to come.

In all such verbs the *characteristic* vowel, *a, e, i,* which is seen in some tenses, is dropped in others. Thus the verb has two crudeforms; as, *seco,* [SECA] and [SEC]; *peto,* [PET] and [PETI].

All verbs are commonly said to belong to that Conjugation which is seen in the Present tense.

Digitized by Google

REGULAR VERBS.

§ 28. Active Voice.

First Conjugation—crudeform in A.

Amo I love. [AMA]

Indicative Mood.

Present—I love *or* am loving.

Sing. *amo* I love, [AMA] Plur. *amāmus* we love,
amas thou lovest, *amātis* you love,
amat he loves. *amant* they love.

Imperfect—I loved *or* was loving.

Sing. *amā-bam*, [AMABA] Plur. *ama-bāmus*,
amā-bas, *ama-bātis*,
amā-bat. *amā-bant*.

Future—I shall *or* will love.

Sing. *amā-bo*, [AMAB] Plur. *ama-bĭmus*,
amā-bis, *ama-bĭtis*,
amā-bit. *amā-bunt*.

Perfect—I loved *or* have loved.

Sing. *amāv-i*, [AMAV] Plur. *amav-ĭmus*,
amav-isti, *amav-istis*,
amāv-it. *amav-ērunt*, or *-ēre*.

Pluperfect—I had loved.

Sing. *amav-ĕram*, [AMAVERA] Plur. *amav-erāmus*,
amav-ĕras, *amav-erātis*,
amav-ĕrat. *amav-ĕrant*.

Future-perfect—I shall *or* will have loved.

Sing. *amav-ĕro*, [AMAVER] Plur. *amav-erĭmus*,
amav-ĕris, *amav-erĭtis*,
amav-ĕrit. *amav-ĕrint*.

Imperative Mood.

Present.

S. *amā*, *amā-to*, love thou, P. *amā-te*, *ama-tōte*, love ye,
amā-to let him love. *amanto* let them love.

Obs. **The Present Subjunctive is often used as an Imperative; as, *amet* let him love, *amemus* let us love. See Syntax.**

Digitized by Google

Subjunctive *or* Potential Mood.

Present—I may love *or* be loving.

Sing.		[AME]	Plur.	
	amem,			*amē-mus,*
	ames,			*amē-tis,*
	amet.			*ament.*

Imperfect—I might love *or* be loving.
(might, could, would, should.)

Sing.		[AMARE]	Plur.	
	amā-rem,			*ama-rēmus,*
	amā-res,			*ama-rētis,*
	amā-ret.			*amā-rent.*

Perfect—I may have loved.

Sing.		[AMAVERI]	Plur.	
	amav-ĕrim,			*amav-erīmus,*
	amav-ĕris,			*amav-erītis,*
	amav-ĕrit.			*amav-ĕrint.*

Pluperfect—I might have loved.
(might, could, would, should, have.)

Sing.		[AMAVISSE]	Plur.	
	amav-issem,			*amav-issēmus,*
	amav-isses,			*amav-issētis,*
	amav-isset.			*amav-issent.*

Infinitive.		Participles.
amāre,	Present *or* Imperfect.	*amans,*
to love *or* be loving.		loving; one who is loving.
amav-isse,	Perfect *or* Pluperfect.	———
to have loved.		
ama-tūrum esse,	Future.	*ama-tūrus,*
to be about [*or* going] to love.		about [*or* going] to love.

Gerunds.

Gen. *amandi,*	Acc. *amandum,*	Abl. *amando,*
of loving.	to love *or* the loving.	by loving.

Supines.

Acc. *amā-tum,*	Abl. *amā-tu,*
to love *or* for loving.	to be loved *or* in loving.

Obs. In the Infinitive Mood, and Participle, the same tense is Present or Imperfect, Perfect or Pluperfect.

Digitized by Google

Second Conjugation—crudeform in E.

Moneo I advise. [MONE]

Indicative Mood.

Present—I advise.

Sing. *moneo,* *mones,* *monet,*
Plur. *monēmus,* *monētis,* *monent.*

Imperfect—I was advising.

Sing. *monē-bam, -bas, -bat;* like *ama-bam.*

Future—I shall advise.

Sing. *monē-bo, -bis, -bit;* like *ama-bo.*

Perfect—I have advised.

Sing. *monu-i, -isti, -it;* like *amav-i.*

Pluperfect—I had advised.

Sing. *monu-ĕram, -ĕras, -ĕrat;* like *amav-eram.*

Future-perfect—I shall have advised.

Sing. *monu-ĕro, -ĕris, -ĕrit;* like *amav-ero.*

Imperative Mood.

S. *monē, monē-to,* advise. Pl. *monē-te, mone-tōte,*
monē-to, *monento.*

Subjunctive *or* Potential Mood.

Present—I may advise.

Sing. *mone-am,* *mone-as,* *mone-at,*
Plur. *mone-āmus,* *mone-ātis,* *mone-ant.*

Imperfect—I might advise.

Sing. *monē-rem, -res, -ret;* like *ama-rem.*

Perfect—I may have advised.

Sing. *monu-ĕrim, -ĕris, -ĕrit;* like *amav-erim.*

Pluperfect—I might have advised.

Sing. *monu-issem, -isses, -isset;* like *amav-issem.*

Infinitive.	Participles.
to advise,—Present *or* Imperfect	—advising,
monēre.	*monens.*
to have advised,—Perfect or Pluperfect.	
monu-isse.	——
to be about to advise,—Future	—about to advise,
moni-tūrum esse.	*moni-tūrus.*

Gerunds.			Supines.	
monendi,	*-dum,*	*-do,*	*monĭ-tum,*	*-tu,*
of,	to,	by advising.	to advise.	to be advised.

Digitized by Google

Third Conjugation—crudeform in O, U, or a *Consonant*.

Rego I rule. [REG]

Indicative Mood.

Present—I rule.

Sing. *rego,* *regis,* *regit,*
Plur. *regĭmus,* *regĭtis,* *regunt.*

Imperfect—I was ruling.

Sing. *regē-bam, -bas, -bat;* like *ama-bam.*

Future—I shall rule.

Sing. *reg-am,* *reg-es,* *reg-et,*
Plur. *reg-ēmus,* *reg-ētis,* *reg-ent.*

Perfect—I have ruled.

Sing. *rex-i, -isti, -it;* like *amav-i.*

Pluperfect—I had ruled.

Sing. *rex-ĕram, -ĕras, -ĕrat;* like *amav-eram.*

Future-perfect—I shall have ruled.

Sing. *rex-ĕro, -ĕris, -ĕrit;* like *amav-ero.*

Imperative Mood.

Sing. *rege, reg-ĭto,* rule thou. Plur. *reg-ĭte, reg-itōte, reg-ĭto.* *regunto.*

Subjunctive *or* Potential Mood.

Present—I may rule.

Sing. *reg-am, -as, -at;* like *mone-am.*

Imperfect—I might rule.

Sing. *regĕ-rem, -res, -ret;* like *ama-rem.*

Perfect—I may have ruled.

Sing. *rex-ĕrim, -ĕris, -ĕrit;* like *amav-erim.*

Pluperfect—I might have ruled.

Sing. *rex-issem, -isses, -isset;* like *amav-issem.*

Infinitive.	Participles.
to rule,—Present *or* Imperfect—ruling,	
regĕre.	*regens.*
to have ruled,—Perfect *or* Pluperfect.	
rex-isse.	——
to be about to rule,—Future—about to rule,	
rec-tūrum esse.	*rec-tūrus.*

Gerunds.			Supines.	
regendi, -dum, -do,			*rec-tum,*	*-tu,*
of,	to,	by ruling.	to rule.	to be ruled.

Digitized by Google

Fourth Conjugation—crudeform in I.

Audio I hear. [AUDI]

Indicative Mood.

Present—I hear.

Sing. *audio,* *audīs,* *audit,*
Plur. *audīmus,* *audītis,* *audiunt.*

Imperfect—I was hearing.

Sing. *audiē-bam, -bas, -bat;* like *ama-bam.*

Future—I shall hear.

Sing. *audi-am, -es, -et;* like *reg-am.*

Perfect—I have heard.

Sing. *audīv-i, -isti, -it;* like *amav-i.*

Pluperfect—I had heard.

Sing. *audiv-ĕram, -ĕras, -ĕrat;* like *amav-eram.*

Future-perfect—I shall have heard.

Sing. *audiv-ĕro, -ĕris, -ĕrit;* like *amav-ero.*

Imperative Mood.

Sing. *audi, audī-to,* hear thou. Plur. *audī-te, audi-tōte, audī-to.* *audiunto.*

Subjunctive *or* Potential Mood.

Present—I may hear.

Sing. *audi-am, -as, -at;* like *mone-am.*

Imperfect—I might hear.

Sing. *audī-rem, -res, -ret;* like *ama-rem.*

Perfect—I may have heard.

Sing. *audiv-ĕrim, -ĕris, -ĕrit;* like *amav-erim.*

Pluperfect—I might have heard.

Sing. *audiv-issem, -isses, -isset;* like *amav-issem.*

Infinitive. Participles.

to hear,—Present *or* Imperfect—hearing,
audīre. *audiens.*

to have heard,—Perfect *or* Pluperfect.
audiv-isse. ——

to be about to hear,—Future—about to hear,
audi-tūrum esse. *audi-tūrus.*

Gerunds. Supines.

audiendi, -dum, -do, *audī-tum, -tu,*
of, to, by hearing. to hear. to be heard.

Digitized by Google

§ 29. The Endings of Verbs.—Active Voice.

Indicative Mood.

Present.	*o,*	*as,*	*at*	*āmus,*	*ātis,*	*ant*
	eo,	*es,*	*et*	*ēmus,*	*ētis,*	*ent*
	o,	*ĭs,*	*it*	*ĭmus,*	*ĭtis,*	*unt*
	io,	*īs,*	*it*	*īmus,*	*ītis,*	*iunt*
Imperf.	*ābam,*	*ābas,*	*ābat*	*ābāmus,*	*ābātis,*	*ābant*
	ēbam,	*ēbas,*	*ēbat*	*ēbāmus,*	*ēbātis,*	*ēbant*
	ēbam,	*ēbas,*	*ēbat*	*ēbāmus,*	*ēbātis,*	*ēbant*
	iēbam,	*iēbas,*	*iēbat*	*iēbāmus,*	*iēbātis,*	*iēbant*
Future.	*ābo,*	*ābis,*	*ābit*	*ābĭmus,*	*ābĭtis,*	*ābunt*
	ēbo,	*ēbis,*	*ēbit*	*ēbĭmus,*	*ēbĭtis,*	*ēbunt*
	am,	*es,*	*et*	*ēmus,*	*ētis,*	*ent*
	iam,	*ies,*	*iet*	*iēmus,*	*iētis,*	*ient*
Perfect.	*i,*	*isti,*	*it*	*ĭmus,*	*istis,*	*ērunt, ēre*
Pluperf.	*ĕram,*	*ĕras,*	*ĕrat*	*ĕrāmus,*	*ĕrātis,*	*ĕrant*
Fut.-perf.	*ĕro,*	*ĕris,*	*ĕrit*	*ĕrĭmus,*	*ĕrĭtis,*	*ĕrint.*

Imperative Mood.

Present.	*ā, āto,*	*ātō*	*āte, atōte,*	*anto*
	ē, ēto,	*ēto*	*ēte, ētōte,*	*ento*
	ĕ, ĭto,	*ĭto*	*ĭte, ĭtōte,*	*unto*
	ī, īto,	*īto*	*īte, ītōte,*	*iunto.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	*em,*	*es,*	*et*	*ēmus,*	*ētis,*	*ent*
	eam,	*eas,*	*eat*	*eāmus,*	*eātis,*	*eant*
	am,	*as,*	*at*	*āmus,*	*ātis,*	*ant*
	iam,	*ias,*	*iat*	*iāmus,*	*iātis,*	*iant*
Imperf.	*ārem,*	*āres,*	*āret*	*ārēmus,*	*ārētis,*	*ārent*
	ērem,	*ēres,*	*ēret*	*ērēmus,*	*ērētis,*	*ērent*
	ĕrem,	*ĕres,*	*ĕret*	*ĕrēmus,*	*ĕrētis,*	*ĕrent*
	īrem,	*īres,*	*īret*	*īrēmus,*	*īrētis,*	*īrent*
Perfect.	*ĕrim,*	*eris,*	*ĕrit*	*ĕrīmus,*	*erītis,*	*ĕrint*
Pluperf.	*issem,*	*isses,*	*isset*	*issēmus,*	*issētis,*	*issent.*

Infinitive.			Participles.			Verbal Nouns.	
Pres.	Perf.	Fut.	Pres.	Perf.	Fut.	Gerunds.	Supines.
āre	*isse*	*aturum esse*	*ans*		*aturus*	*andi, -um, -o*	*ātum, -u*
ēre		*ĭturum*	*ens*		*ĭturus*	*endi, -um, -o*	*ĭtum, -u*
ĕre		*turum*	*ens*		*turus*	*endi, -um, -o*	*tum, -u*
īre		*īturum*	*iens*		*īturus*	*iendi,-um, -o*	*ītum, -u.*

The endings contain the *temporal* and *personal* affixes throughout the Moods.

In the Presents, Imperfects, and Futures, the final vowel of the crudeform, *a, e, i,* is included, to show how it unites with the affixes.

Digitized by Google

§ 30. *Remarks on the Active Voice.*

Obs. 1. The *circumlocutory* or *intentional* Conjugation.

The Future participle with the verb *sum* is conjugated throughout, and expresses an "intention of acting;" thus,

Amaturus sum.

INDICATIVE. Pres. *amaturus sum*, I intend, *or* am about, to love.
Imperf. *amaturus eram*, I intended, *or* was about, to love.
So *amaturus ero, fui, fueram*, (*fuero* rare).
SUBJUNCTIVE. *amaturus sim, essem, fuerim, fuissem.*
INFINITIVE. Pres. *amaturum esse.* Perf. *amaturum fuisse.*

The Pres. Infin. of this intentional form, *amaturum esse*, serves as the Future Infin. of the ordinary verb. So *amaturus sim* or *essem*, serves as a Fut. Subj. of *amabo*. (See Syntax.)

Obs. 2. *Contractions* or *Syncopations* in verbs.

(*a*) In the perfect and its derivatives, *avi, evi*, followed by *s*, and *ave, eve*, followed by *r*, are often syncopated by dropping the *v*, and contracting the vowels;

as, *amâsti* for *amavisti*, *implêssem* for *implevissem*,
amâram for *amaveram*, *implêro* for *implevero*.

So *ovi, ove*, in *nosco, novi*, and the compounds of *moveo, movi*; as, *nôram* for *noveram, summôssem* for *summovissem.*

Also *uve* in the old language; as, *adjûro* for *adjuvero*, in Ennius.

(*b*) In Conj. 4. *ivi* is often thus contracted before *s*; as, *audîsti* for *audivisti*; but not *ive* before *r*.

(*c*) In Conj. 4. throughout the Perfect and its derivatives the *v* is often dropped, and the vowels left uncontracted; as, *audii* for *audivi*, *audieram* for *audiveram*. The forms where two *ii* meet, belong to poetry, (except in the compounds of *eo, ivi*); as, *audiit, mugiit*, in Virgil. The others also in prose.

In verse *iit* is sometimes contracted into *ît*; as, *perît*, Juv. x. 118. More rarely *ii* into *i*; as, *sepelt* for *sepelivi, -ii*, Pers. iii. 97.

(*d*) In the Perfect and Pluperf. of Conj. 3. *is* or *iss* is dropped after *s* or *x*; as, *evâsti* for *evasisti, erepsemus* for *erepsissemus, trâxe* for *traxisse.*

Obs. 3. *Old* or *obsolete* forms in the Fut. perf. and Perf. Subj.

Conj. 1. *asso, assim* for *avero, averim*; as, *levasso* for *levavero.*
,, 2. *esso, essim* ,, *uero, uerim*; ,, *licessit* ,, *licuerit.*
,, 3. *so, sim* ,, *ero, erim*; ,, *accepso* ,, *accepero.*

These occur in Ennius, Plautus, and even Terence; but were afterwards disused. Traces remain in *ausim* I would dare, *faxo, faxim* I will, would, do. So *jusso* for *jussero*, Virg. Æ. xi. 467. Hence the old Fut. Infin. *expugnassere*, Plaut. Am. i. 1. 55.

Digitized by Google

Formation of Tenses.

§ 31. *Principal Parts.*

The principal parts of a Latin verb are the *Present, Perfect,* and *Supine.* These are derived from the crudeform of the verb; and all the other tenses from *them.*

(*a*) *Present.*

1. The present adds *o* to the crudeform of the verb; as, [MONE], *mone-o;* [REG], *reg-o.*

Obs. The Present has no *temporal* affix, the *o* being only the ending of the 1st Person.

2. The crudeform of some irregular verbs is altered in the Present by the addition, change or omission of letters.

3. Whatever alteration is found in the Present is found also in the Imperfect and Future, and all its other derivatives.

Obs. 1. The alterations made in the Present generally disappear in the Perfect and Supine; as, *vinc-o* conquer, *vic-i, vic-tum; cresc-o* grow, *cre-vi, cretum.*

Obs. 2. The principal alterations made in the Present are,

(*i*) The addition of letters to the crudeform; *n, r, sc, t, u.*

N added; as, *cern-o* see, with *e* transposed, *cre-vi, cre-tum.*

sperno spurn [SPRE].	*lino* smear [LE, LI].	*pono,* for *posno* [POS].
sterno lay low [STRA].	*sino* suffer [SI].	*temno* despise [TEM].

N inserted before the last letter; as, *find-o* cleave, *fid-i.*

frango break [FRAG].	*pango* fasten [PAG].	*scindo* cut [SCID].
fundo pour [FUD].	*pungo* prick [PUG].	*tango* touch [TAG].
linquo leave [LIQ].	*rumpo* break [RUP].	*vinco* conquer [VIC].

Four verbs, *fingo, mingo, pingo, stringo,* keep the *n* in the Perfect, and drop it only in the Supine; as, *fingo* feign, *finxi, fic-tum.* Also *pando* open, *pandi, passum* (*pad-sum*), and *pinso* grind, *pinsui, pinsĭtum* or *pistum.*

But *tundo* beat, [TUD], makes Perf. *tu-tŭd-i,* and Sup. *tun-sum.*

Some keep *n* throughout the verb, and so appear regular; as, *jung-o* join, *junxi, junc-tum,* from *jug-um* yoke.

So *ningo* snow, *nix. plango* lash, *plag-a.* and some others.

R added; as, *ser-o,* sow, *se-vi, sa-tum.*

Digitized by Google

Sc added; is the form of *Inceptives*, but is found also in

cresco grow [CRE]. | *nosco* observe [NO]. | *quiesco* rest [QUIE].
disco learn [DIC]. | *pasco* feed [PA]. | *suesco* am wont [SUE].
posco, po-posc-i, has *sc* throughout: *glisco, hisco*, no perf. or sup.

T added; as, *flect-o* bend, (*flec-si*), *flexi*, and (*flec-sum*), *flexum*.
necto bind [NEC]. | *pecto* comb [PEC]. | *plecto* twine [PLEC].

U added; as, *stinguo* (in comp.), (*sting-si*), *stinxi*.
tingo, tinguo, dip [TING]; *ungo, unguo*, anoint [UNG].

Many verbs have in the Present a final vowel, *a, e, i*, which is lost in the Perfect; as, *mone-o, mon-ui*. And several consonants are lost before *si*, in the Perfect, merely by the Rules of Euphony.

(*ii*) The last consonant doubled; as, *pell-o* drive away, *pe-pŭl-i*.
(*cello*) strike [CUL]. | *vello* pluck [VUL]. | *mitto* send [MIT].

The loss of one consonant in the Supine of *curro* run, *fallo* deceive, *verro* brush, is only euphonic.

(*iii*) Letters changed or lost.

h for *g*; as, *traho* draw [TRAG]. | *c* or *g* lost; as, *fluo* flow [FLUC].
veho carry [VEG]. | *struo* build [STRUC].
t for *ss*; as, *meto* mow [MESS]. | *v* for *u*, in *solvo* and *volvo*
v ,, *c*; ,, *vivo* live [VIC]. | in the Pres. and Perf.

The deponent *metior, men-sus*, seems to have lost *n* in the Present.

Some have lost a final *i* in the Present, which re-appears in the Perfect and Supine, as *pet-o* seek, *peti-vi, peti-tum*; *quær-o* seek, *quæsi-vi*, with *r* for *s* in Pres.; *arcesso* fetch, and others.

(*iv*) Two verbs have a *reduplication* in the Present; thus, *gigno* beget, for *gi-geno*, [GEN]; *sisto* stop, [ST].

(*b*) *Perfect.*

In regular verbs the Perfect is derived from the same crudeform as the Present; as, *amo*, [AMA], Perf. *ama-vi*; *rego*, [REG], Perf. (*reg-si*) *rexi*.

Obs. 1. When the crudeform has been altered in the Present, it generally returns to its simple state in the Perfect; as, *cern-o* see, Perf. *cre-vi*. See *Present. Obs.* 1, 2.

Obs. 2. Many verbs having a final vowel *a, e, i*, in the Pres. lose it in the Perf.; as, *sono* sound, [SONA], Perf. *son-ui*.
moneo advise, [MONE], P. *mon-ui*; *salio* leap, [SALI], P. *sal-ui*.
This is the usual practice with verbs in *eo*; as, *mone-o, mon-ui*.

Digitized by Google

There are four ways of forming the Perfect :—

(*i*) First Formation.

1. The Perfect adds *vi* or *ui* to the crudeform of the verb.

2. *Vi* is used after a vowel; as, *amo, ama-vi.*

and *Ui* — after a consonant; as, *moneo, mon-ui.*

3. All regular verbs of the 1st and 4th Conj. make the Perfect in *vi* like *amavi, audivi.*

4. Most verbs of the 2nd Conj. drop the *e* in the Perfect, and so make it end in *ui*, like *moneo, mon-ui.*

5. Verbs in *uo* make the Perfect in *ui;* as, *arguo, argui;* the *u* of the verb being instead of *u* added for the Perfect.

Obs. 1. This formation in *vi* or *ui* is peculiar to Latin verbs. *Vi* is used with all vowel terminations; as,

ama-vi, dele-vi, audi-vi, no-vi, plu-vi.

Obs. 2. With verbs of the 2nd. Conj. *ui* is so common that it is considered the regular formation; as, *moneo, monui.* But with other verbs *ui* is considered irregular.

A few verbs in *eo* retain the *e*, and make the Perfect in *evi;* as, *deleo* destroy, *delevi.* | *fleo* weep, *flevi.* | *neo* spin, *nevi.*

impleo fill, *implevi*, and other compounds of (*pleo*).

adoleo grow up, *adolevi* and other compounds of (*oleo* grow).

So, *cresco* grow, *crevi.* | *quiesco* rest, *quievi.* | *suesco*, am wont, *suevi.*

Obs. 3. Verbs in *uo* anciently made the Perfect in *uvi* like the other vowel conjugations; then the *uv* was contracted into *ū;* as,

Annüit sese mecum decernere ferro, Ennius.

Lastly the *u* was shortened on account of the vowel following; and all verbs in *uo* make *ŭi*, except *pluo* rain, sometimes *pluvi.*

(*ii*) Second Formation.

1. The Perfect adds *si* to the crudeform of the verb; as, *rego* [REG], *rexi* for *reg-si.*

2. The Perfect in *si* is the regular formation for verbs of the 3rd Conj., whose crudeform ends in a consonant.

Obs. This formation in *si* corresponds with the formation of the 1st Aorist in Greek. It is used with consonant terminations; and hence is appropriate to the 3rd Conj., and is found also in some verbs which have a final vowel (*e, i*) in the Present; as, *maneo* remain, *man-si; sepio* hedge, *sep-si.*

Digitized by Google

(*iii*) Third Formation.

1. The Perfect adds *i* to the crudeform of the verb, and prefixes a reduplication; as, *curro* run, *cu-curr-i.*

2. The reduplication is the first consonant of the verb repeated with a vowel.

3. The vowel of the reduplication is either *e*, or the vowel of the verb; as, *cado* fall, *cecĭdi; disco* learn, *didĭci; posco* demand, *poposci; curro* run, *cucurri.*

Obs. 1. The reduplicated Perfect corresponds with the formation of the Perfect in Greek. It takes the shortest form of the verbal root, dropping letters which have been added in the Present, and making the penultima short when possible; as, *disco* learn, *didĭci; pello* drive away, *pepŭli.*

Obs. 2. Most reduplicated Perfects belong to verbs of the 3rd or Consonant Conj. When the crudeform of the Present ends in a vowel, *a, e, i*, it is lost in the Perfect; as, *do* give [DA], *dedi; mordeo* bite, *momordi; pario* produce, *pepĕri.*

Obs. 3. The Perfects of four verbs, *bibo* drink, *bĭbi; findo* cleave, *fĭdi; scindo* cut, *scĭdi; fero* bear, *tŭli;* seem to have lost a reduplication: *tetuli* for *tuli* is found in Plautus and Terence; and the others, unlike all such dissyllabic Perfects, have the penultima short, just as reduplicated Perfects have.

Tollo take up, from which *tetuli, tuli,* seems formed, uses the Perfect *sustŭli;* which is formed with a reduplication thus, *stollo, su-stuli;* the initial *s* was then lost from the Present.

Obs. 4. The reduplication is generally lost in compound verbs; as, *pello, pepuli; depello, depuli.* Several compounds of *curro* make *curri* or *cucurri:* and the compounds of *do, disco, sto, posco,* retain the reduplication; as, *deposco, depoposci.*

(*iv*) Fourth Formation.

The Perfect adds *i* to the crudeform of the verb, and lengthens the preceding vowel; as, *ĕmo* buy, *ēmi.*

Obs. 1. This formation resembles the Greek Perfects which have the temporal augment; and hence *ago* act changes *ă* into *ē;* as, *ăgo, ēgi,* like *ἀγω, ἦχα.*

Obs. 2. Perfects of this formation are dissyllables, formed from monosyllabic roots ending in a consonant. And a final vowel in the Present, is lost in the Perfect; as, *sĕdeo* sit, *sēd-i.*

Obs. 3. Perfects of this formation which have a crudeform ending in *v*, have all a final vowel in the Present; and might be considered as formed with *vi*, and then contracted; as, *jŭvo* help, *jŭva-vi, jŭv-vi, jūvi.* The penultima is then long by compensation.

Digitized by Google

(c) *Supine.*

1. The Supine adds *tum* to the crudeform of the verb; as, *amo*, [AMA], *amā-tum.*

Obs. This formation is used with all vowel terminations; as, *amā-tum, delē-tum, audī-tum, nō-tum, argū-tum.*

The vowel before *tum* is always long, except in *dătum, rătum, sătum, ĭtum, quĭtum, cĭtum, lĭtum* and *rŭtum.*

2. In the 2nd conj. and in some other verbs, *ĭ* is inserted after a consonant; as, *moneo, mon-ĭtum.*

Obs. Whenever the Supine ends in *ĭtum*, the Perfect ends in *ui.* The two verbs *bibo* drink, *bibi, bibitum; fugio* flee, *fugi, fugitum;* are the only exceptions.

3. After *d* or *t*, and in some other verbs, the Supine ends in *sum;* as, *claudo* shut, *clau-sum; verto* turn, *ver-sum.*

Obs. 1. The Supine is generally formed from the same verbal root as the Perfect; as, *cern-o* see, *cre-vi, cre-tum; pet-o* seek, *peti-vi, peti-tum.*—For some exceptions, see *above* (*a*) *Obs.* 2. *i:* also *sepelio* bury, *sepeli-vi,* makes *sepul-tum.*

Obs. 2. *Endings* of the *Supine.*

Verbs, which have a perfect in *ui*, generally make the Supine in *ĭtum*, always in *tum;* except *censeo* think, *censui, cen-sum.*

Of the consonant endings, not having a perfect in *ui*, the *p* sounds, *b, p,*—the *k* sounds, *c, g, qu,*—as also *m* and *v*, mostly have a Supine in *tum.* And the *t* sounds, *d, t,*—the liquids *l, n,* —and *s*, have a Supine in *sum.*

Obs. 3. Verbs are sometimes regarded as having a Supine, if they have the Future Participle in *rus*, which is derived from it: but some verbs, as *careo* want, *doleo* grieve, *lateo* lie hid, *noceo* hurt, *taceo* am silent, *valeo* am well, have the Future Participle, but no Supine.

(d) *Euphonic Changes in Perfect and Supine.*

Obs. 1. With the Perfect ending in *si*, and with the Supine in *tum* or *sum*, preceding consonants are often subject to euphonic changes; being lost, changed, assimilated, combined with *s* in the form of *x*, or having an euphonic *p* inserted.

(*a*) Labials, or *p* sounds, *b, p,* become or remain *p* before *si* and *tum;* as,

scribo write, *scrip-si, scrip-tum.* | *carpo* crop, *carp-si, carp-tum.*

One verb, *jubeo* order, has *sum* in the Supine, and assimilates *b;* as, *jussi, jussum,* for *jub-si, jub-sum.* So *labor* glide, *lap-sus.*

Digitized by Google

(*b*) Gutturals, or *k* sounds, *c*, *g*, *qu*, become or remain *c* before *si* and *tum*; and form *x* in the Perfect; as, *dico* say, *dixi*, *dictum*.
rego rule, *rexi* for *rec-si*, *rec-tum*; *coquo* cook, *coxi*, *coc-tum*.

So with a vowel lost; as, *augeo* increase, *auxi*, *auc-tum*.

One verb, *figo* fix, *fixi*, *fixum* for *fic-sum*, has a Supine in *sum*.

If *l* or *r* precedes, *c*, *g*, *qu*, are lost, *s* remains unaltered in the Perfect, and the Supine has either *tum* or *sum*; as,
fulcio prop, *ful-si*, *ful-tum*; *mulgeo* milk, *mul-si*, *mul-sum*.
sarcio patch, *sar-si*, *sar-tum*; *mergo* sink, *mer-si*, *mer-sum*.
torqueo twist, *tor-si*, *tor-tum* or *tor-sum*.

Also, without *l* or *r* in *raucio* am hoarse, *rau-si*.

(*c*) Linguals, or *t* sounds, *d*, *t*, are lost before *si* and *sum*; as, *claudo* shut, *clau-si*, *clau-sum*; *mitto* send, *mi-si*, *mis-sum*.

So *ardeo* burn, *ar-si*, *ar-sum*; *sentio* feel, *sen-si*, *sen-sum*.

Some few assimilate *d* and *t*; as, *cedo* yield, *ces-si*, *ces-sum*; *quatio* shake, (*quas-si*), *quas-sum*. And in the Supine only, *findo*, *fis-sum*; *scindo*, *scis-sum*; *fodio*, *fos-sum*; *mitto*, *mis-sum*.

So in deponents, *ordior* begin, *or-sus*; *utor* use, *u-sus*; and with assimilation, *gradior* step, *gres-sus*; *patior* suffer, *pas-sus*.

(*d*) Liquids, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, are variously treated.

l. no Perf. in *si*; Sup. in *tum*, with *l* unaltered; as, *colo* till, *cul-tum*: but *ll* has *sum* and drops one *l*; as, *fallo* deceive, *fal-sum*.

m. inserts *p* before *si* and *tum*; as, *sumo* take, *sump-si*, *sump-tum*: but *premo* press, assimilates *m*; as, *pres-si*, *pres-sum*.

n. remains unaltered; as, *maneo* remain, *man-si*, *man-sum*.

r. is variable, and the changes are not alike in the Perf. and Sup.

In the Perf. *r* is lost in *hæreo* stick, *hæ-si*; *haurio* draw, *hau-si*: but assimilated in *gero* bear, *ges-si*; *uro* burn, *us-si*.

In the Sup. *r* remains before *tum*; as, *pario* produce, *par-tum*: or is changed to *s*; as, *haurio*, *haus-tum*; *gero*, *ges-tum*; *uro*, *us-tum*. So deponents, *orior* rise, *or-tus*; *queror*, complain, *ques-tus*.

r is lost before *sum* in *hæreo*, *hæ-sum*: *rr* loses one *r*, and the other remains; as, *curro* run, *cur-sum*; *verro* brush, *ver-sum*.

(*e*) The letters *s* and *v*.

s is lost before *si* and *sum*; as, *viso* visit, *vi-si*, *vi-sum*.
censeo think, *cens-ui*, *cen-sum*; *meto* mow, *mess-ui*, *mes-sum*.

v has no Perfect in *si*, except *vivo* live, *vixi*, *victum*.

In the Supine *v* is lost, and the preceding vowel made long; as, *jŭvo* help, *jūtum* for *juv-tum*; *fŏveo* cherish, *fō-tum*.

If *a* precedes, *v* becomes *u*; as *făveo*, favour, *fau-tum*.

Obs. 2. Some euphonic changes take place in reduplicated Perfects. See *Rules of Euphony*.

e for *a*; as, *fallo* deceive, *fefelli*; so *pango*, *parco*, *pario*.
ĕ „ *ă*; „ *căndo* fall, *cecĭdi*; so *cano*, *tango*.
ī „ *æ*; „ *cædo* kill, *cecīdi*.
ŭl „ *ell*; „ *pello* drive away, *pepŭli*; so *cello* in comp.

Digitized by Google

§ 32. *Derivative Tenses.*

The Derivative Tenses are formed by adding their own affixes to the principal parts of the verb.

List of Derivative Tenses.

	Present.	Perfect.	Supine.
Indicative	Imperfect Future	Pluperfect Future-perfect	
Imperative	Present		
Subjunctive	Present Imperfect	Perfect Pluperfect	
Infinitive	Present	Perfect	Future
Participle	Present		Future
	Gerunds		

(*a*) *Indicative Mood.*

1. The Imperfect adds *EBAm* to the crudeform of the Present; as, *amo*, (*ama-ebam*), *amābam; audio, audi-ēbam.*

Obs. 1. The *e* of *ebam* is lost by contraction in the A- and E- Conj., but is retained in the others; as, *amā-bam, mone-bam, audi-ēbam, argu-ēbam, reg-ēbam.*

Obs. 2. In the early language the *e* of *ebam* seems to have been lost in all verbs. This is seen in the I-Conj. in later Poets; as, *lenībam, insignībąm*, Virg. Æ. iv. 528. vii. 790.—and in *eo* go, *ibam*, in prose.

2. The Future in 1st and 2nd Conj. adds *bo* to the crudeform of the Present; as, *amo, amā-bo; mone-o, monē-bo.*

The Future in the 3rd and 4th Conj. adds *am* to the crudeform of the Present, but the *a* becomes *e* in conjugating the tense; as *reg-o, reg-am, -es, -et; audi-o, audi-am, -es, -et.*

Obs. The early language shows a tendency to make the Future of all verbs in *bo;* as, *dicebo* for *dicam, scibo* for *sciam.* This form was retained in *eo* go, *ibo.*

3. The Pluperfect adds *ERAm* to the crudeform of the Perfect; as, *amav-i, amav-ĕram.*

4. The Future-perfect adds *ERo* to the crudeform of the Perfect; as, *amav-i, amav-ĕro.*

Digitized by Google

(*b*) *Imperative Mood.*

The Imperative exhibits the crudeform of the Present Indicative; the 3rd Conj. only adding a short *ĕ*; as, *amo, amā; moneo, monē; rego, reg-ĕ; audio, audī.*

Obs. The four verbs, *dico* say, *duco* lead, *facio* do, *fero* bear, make the Imperatives *dic, duc, fac, fer,* without a final *ĕ.*

(*c*) *Subjunctive Mood.*

1. The Present Subjunctive adds *am* to the crudeform of the Present Indicative, but in the 1st Conj. it is contracted into *em;* as, *amo,* (*ama-am*), *amem; mone-o, mone-am.*

Obs. The early language seems to have made the Present Subj. end in *im;* as, *edim* for *edam,* Plaut. Aul. iii. 2. 16. So *duim, perduim,* for *dem, perdam* in old forms. This ending was retained in *sim, velim, malim, nolim,* from *sum, volo, malo, nolo.*

2. The Imperfect Subjunctive adds *ĕREm* to the crudeform of the Present Indicative; as, *amo,* (*amă-ĕrem*), *amārem; reg-o, reg-ĕrem.*

Obs. The connecting vowel *ĕ* of *ĕrem* is lost in the A-, E-, and I- Conj.; as, *amā-rem, monē-rem, audī-rem;* but *argu-ĕrem, reg-ĕrem.*

3. The Perfect Subjunctive adds *ERIm* to the crudeform of the Perfect Indicative; as, *amav-i, amav-ĕrim.*

4. The Pluperfect Subjunctive adds *ISSEm* to the crudeform of the Perfect Indicative; as, *amav-i, amav-issem.*

(*d*) *Infinitive Mood.*

1. The Present Infinitive adds *ĕRE* to the crudeform of the Present Indicative; as, *amo,* (*ama-ĕre,*) *amāre; reg-o, reg-ĕre.*

Obs. The connecting vowel *ĕ* of *ĕre* is lost in the A-, E-, and I-Conj.; as, *amā-re, monē-re, audī-re;* but *argu-ĕre, reg-ĕre.*

2. The Perfect Infinitive adds *ISSE* to the crudeform of the Perfect Indicative; as, *amav-i, amav-isse.*

3. The Future Infinitive is formed by the Future Participle and *esse* to be; as, *amaturum esse.*

Digitized by Google

(*e*) *Participles.*

1. The Present Participle adds *ENS* to the crude-form of the Present Indicative; as, *amo*, (*ama-ens*), *amans; audi-o, audi-ens.*

Obs. The vowel of *ens* is lost in the A- and E- Conj., but is retained in the others; as, *amans, monens, reg-ens, audi-ens.*

2. The Future Participle adds *rus* to the crude-form of the Supine; as, *amatu, amatu-rus.*

Obs. In a few irregular verbs the Future Participle does not exactly follow the form of the Supine; as, *juvo* help, *jutum, iuvaturus; seco* cut, *sectum, secaturus; sono* sound, *sonĭtum, sonāturus; pario* bring forth, *partum, parĭturus.*

So in Deponents, *morior* die, *mortuus, morĭturus; orior* arise, *ortus, orĭturus; fruor* enjoy, *fructus, frŭturus.*

(*f*) *Gerunds.*

The Gerunds add *ENDi -um, -o,* to the crudeform of the Present Indicative; as, *amo*, (*ama-endi*), *amandi; audi-o, audi-endi.*

Obs. The first vowel of *endi* is lost in the A and E Conj., but is retained in the others; as, *amandi, monendi, reg-endi, audi-endi.*

§ 33. Formation of Persons.

The complete forms of the Personal affixes are

Sing.	o,	ĭs,	ĭt.
Plur.	ĭmus,	ĭtis,	unt.

1. When the crudeform of a tense ends in a *consonant*, these personal affixes remain unaltered; as,

Sing.	*amab-o,*	*amab-is,*	*amab-it.*
Plur.	*amab-ĭmus,*	*amab-ĭtis,*	*amab-unt.*

2. When the crudeform of a tense ends in a *vowel, a, e, i,* the 1st Person takes m, instead of o, except in the Present Indicative; and the connecting vowels of the personal affixes are lost; as,

S.	*amaba-m, amabam,*	Pl.	*amaba-imus, amabāmus,*
	amaba-is, amabas,		*amaba-itis, amabātis,*
	amaba-it, amabat.		*amaba-unt, amabant.*

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. When the crudeform of a tense ends in a vowel, it becomes long by uniting with the vowel of the personal affixes; as, *ama-ĭs, amās; mone-ĭmus, monēmus; audi-ĭtis, audītis.*

Obs. 2. Hence the Perfect Subj. will naturally have the *i* long in the Plural; as, *amaveri-imus, amaverīmus;* and the Future perfect the *i* short; as, *amaver-ĭmus, amaverĭmus;* yet both are found *long* and *short* in verse.

Obs. 3. The 3rd Persons, *amăt, monĕt, audĭt,* &c., have their vowel short, on account of the final T. [See *Prosody*]. Yet the vowel appears long in the Passive voice; as, *amātur, monētur.*

3. The Present Indicative takes o for the 1st Pers. Sing. in all verbs, and makes contractions with the vowels *a, e, i,* in the 1st, 2nd, and 4th Conj.; but all verbs of the 3rd Conj. are uncontracted; thus,

Contracted Conjugations.

Sing.		Sing.		Sing.	
ama-o,	*amo,*	*mone*-o,	*moneo,*	*audi*-o,	*audio,*
ama-is,	*amās,*	*mone*-is,	*monēs,*	*audi*-is,	*audīs,*
ama-it,	*amat.*	*mone*-it,	*monet.*	*audi*-it,	*audit.*
Plur.		Plur.		Plur.	
ama-imus,	*amāmus,*	*mone*-imus,	*monēmus,*	*audi*-imus,	*audīmus,*
ama-itis,	*amātis,*	*mone*-itis,	*monētis,*	*audi*-itis,	*audītis,*
ama-unt,	*amant.*	*mone*-unt,	*monent.*	*audi*-unt,	*audiunt.*

Uncontracted Conjugation.

S. *reg-o, reg-ĭs, reg-it.* P. *reg-ĭmus, reg-ĭtis, reg-unt.*
argu-o, argu-ĭs, argu-it. *argu-imus, argu-ĭtis, argu-unt.*

4. The Perfect Indicative has peculiar affixes, which remain unaltered in all verbs.

S. I,	ISTI,	ĭT.	Pl. ĭMUS,	ISTIS,	ERUNT.
Sing. *amav-i,*			*amav-isti,*		*amav-it.*
Plur. *amav-ĭmus,*			*amav-istis,*		*amav-ērunt.*

5. The Personal affixes for the Imperative are,

S.	*ĕ,*	ĭTO;	ĭTO.	Pl. ĭTE,	ĭTOTE;	*u*NTO.
Sing.	*ama-e,*	*amā;*		*ama-i*TO,	*amāto:*	
				*ama-i*TO,	*amāto.*	
Plur.	*ama-i*TE,	*amāte;*		*ama-i*TOTE,	*amatote:*	
				*ama-u*NTO,	*amanto.*	

Obs. The Imperative in the 2nd Sing. may be considered as merely the crudeform of the verb without any affix; as, *ama, mone, audi:* only *ĕ* is added in the 3rd Conj.: as, *regĕ, arguĕ;* and *a, e, i,* in other conjugations are *long,* as if from contraction.

Digitized by Google

§ 34. Passive Voice.

First Conjugation—*Amor* I am loved.

Indicative Mood.

Present—I am loved.

S. *amor* I am loved,
amā-ris, -re, thou art,
amā-tur he is loved.

P. *amā-mur* we are loved,
ama-mĭni you are loved,
amantur they are.

Imperfect—I was loved.

Sing. *amā-bar,*
ama-bāris, -bāre,
ama-bātur.

Plur. *ama-bāmur,*
ama-bamĭni,
ama-bantur.

Future—I shall be loved.

Sing. *amā-bor,*
ama-bĕris, -bĕre,
ama-bĭtur.

Plur. *ama-bĭmur,*
ama-bimĭni,
ama-buntur.

Perfect—I have been loved *or* was loved.

S. *amātus sum* or *fui,*
amatus es or *fuisti,*
amatus est or *fuit.*

P. *amati sumus* or *fuimus,*
amati estis or *fuistis,*
amati sunt, fuerunt, -ere.

Pluperfect—I had been loved.

S. *amātus eram* or *fueram,*
amatus eras or *fueras,*
amatus erat or *fuerat.*

P. *amati eramus* or *fueramus,*
amati eratis or *fueratis,*
amati erant or *fuerant.*

Future-perfect—I shall have been loved.

S. *amātus ero* or *fuero,*
amatus eris or *fueris,*
amatus erit or *fuerit.*

P. *amati erimus* or *fuerimus,*
amati eritis or *fueritis,*
amati erunt or *fuerint.*

Imperative Mood.

Present—be thou loved.

Sing. *amāre, amā-tor,*
amā-tor.

Plur. *ama-mĭni, ama-mĭnor,*
amantor.

Obs. The Present Subjunctive is often used as an Imperative; as, *ametur* let him be loved; *amemur* let us be loved.

Digitized by Google

Subjunctive *or* Potential Mood.

Present—I may be loved.

Sing.		Plur.	
	amer,		*amē-mur,*
	amē-ris, -re,		*ame-mĭni,*
	amē-tur.		*amentur.*

Imperfect—I might be loved.
(might, could, would, should.)

Sing.		Plur.	
	amā-rer,		*ama-rēmur,*
	ama-rēris, -rēre,		*ama-remĭni,*
	ama-rĕtur.		*ama-rentur.*

Perfect—I may have been loved.

S.		P.	
	amātus sim or *fuerim,*		*amati simus* or *fuerimus,*
	amatus sis or *fueris,*		*amati sitis* or *fueritis,*
	amatus sit or *fuerit.*		*amati sint* or *fuerint.*

Pluperfect—I might have been loved.
(might, could, would, should, have.)

S.		P.	
	amātus essem or *fuissem,*		*amati essemus, fuissemus,*
	amatus esses or *fuisses,*		*amati essetis* or *fuissetis,*
	amatus esset or *fuisset.*		*amati essent* or *fuissent.*

Infinitive.		Participles.
amari, to be loved.	Present.	———
amā-tum esse, to have been loved.	Perfect.	*amā-tus,* loved; having been loved.
amā-tum iri, to be about [*or* going] to be loved.	Future.	*amandus,* one who is to be loved.

Obs. 1. In the Infinitive mood and Participle the same tense is Present and Imperfect, Perfect and Pluperfect.

Obs. 2. The Future Infinitive *amatum iri* is formed with the Supine, and hence *amatum* is not altered, when used with a feminine or plural noun. See *Syntax.*

Obs. 3. The Future Participle *amandus* expresses not mere futurity, but *duty* or *necessity:* it is equivalent to the Greek verbal in *τέος.*

Digitized by Google

Second Conjugation—*Moneor* I am advised.

Indicative Mood.

Present—I am advised.

Sing. *moneor,* *monēris, -re,* *monētur,*
Plur. *monēmur,* *monemĭni,* *monentur.*

Imperfect—I was advised.

Sing. *monē-bar, -bāris, -e, -bātur;* like *ama-bar.*

Future—I shall be advised.

Sing. *monē-bor, -bĕris, -e, -bĭtur;* like *ama-bor.*

Perfect—I have been advised.

Sing. *monĭtus sum* or *fui;* like *amatus sum,* &c.

Pluperfect—I had been advised.

S. *monĭtus eram* or *fueram;* like *amatus eram,* &c.

Future-perfect—I shall have been advised.

S. *monĭtus ero* or *fuero;* like *amatus ero,* &c.

Imperative Mood.

Present—be thou advised.

S. *monēre, monē-tor,* Pl. *monē-mĭni, mone-mĭnor,*
monē-tor. *monentor.*

Subjunctive *or* Potential Mood.

Present—I may be advised.

Sing. *monĕ-ar,* *monĕ-āris, -re,* *mone-ātur.*
Plur. *mone-āmur,* *mone-amĭni,* *mone-antur.*

Imperfect—I might be advised.

Sing. *monē-rer, -rēris, -e, -rētur;* like *ama-rer.*

Perfect—I may have been advised.

S. *monĭtus sim* or *fuerim;* like *amatus sim,* &c.

Pluperfect—I might have been advised.

S. *monĭtus essem* or *fuissem;* like *amatus essem,* &c.

Infinitive.		Participles.
to be advised, *monēri.*	Present.	———
to have been advised, *monĭ-tum esse.*	Perfect.	having been advised, *monĭ-tus.*
to be about to be advised, *monĭ-tum iri.*	Future.	one who is to be advised, *monendus.*

Digitized by Google

Third Conjugation—*Regor* I am ruled.

Indicative Mood.

Present—I am ruled.

Sing. *regor,* *regĕris, -ĕre,* *regĭtur,*
Plur. *regĭmur,* *regimĭni,* *reguntur.*

Imperfect—I was ruled.

Sing. *regē-bar, -bāris, e, -bātur;* like *ama-bar.*

Future—I shall be ruled.

Sing. *reg-ar,* *reg-ēris, ēre,* *reg-ētur,*
Plur. *reg-ēmur,* *reg-emĭni,* *reg-entur.*

Perfect—I have been ruled.

Sing. *rectus sum* or *fui;* like *amatus sum,* &c.

Pluperfect—I had been ruled.

S. *rectus eram* or *fueram;* like *amatus eram,* &c.

Future-perfect—I shall have been ruled.

S. *rectus ero* or *fuero;* like *amatus ero,* &c.

Imperative Mood.

Present—be thou ruled.

S. *reg-ĕre, reg-ĭtor,* *reg-ĭtor.* P. *reg-imĭni, reg-imĭnor,* *reg-untor.*

Subjunctive *or* Potential Mood.

Present—I may be ruled.

Sing. *reg-ar, -āris, -e, -ātur;* like *mone-ar.*

Imperfect—I might be ruled.

Sing. *regĕ-rer, -rēris, -e, -rētur;* like *ama-rer.*

Perfect—I may have been ruled.

S. *rectus sim* or *fuerim;* like *amatus sim,* &c.

Pluperfect—I might have been ruled.

S. *rectus essem* or *fuissem;* like *amatus essem,* &c.

Infinitive. Participles.

to be ruled, *regi.*	Present.	———
to have been ruled, *rec-tum esse.*	Perfect.	having been ruled, *rec-tus.*
to be about to be ruled, *rec-tum iri.*	Future—	one who is to be ruled, *regendus.*

Digitized by Google

Fourth Conjugation—*Audior* I am heard.

Indicative Mood.

Present—I am heard.

Sing. *audior, audīris, -re, audītur,*
Plur. *audīmur, audimĭni, audiuntur.*

Imperfect—I was heard.

Sing. *audiē-bar, -bāris, -e, bātur;* like *ama-bar.*

Future—I shall be heard.

Sing. *audi-ar, -ēris, -e, -ētur;* like *reg-ar.*

Perfect—I have been heard.

S. *audītus sum* or *fui;* like *amatus sum,* &c.

Pluperfect—I had been heard.

S. *audītus eram* or *fueram;* like *amatus eram,* &c.

Future-perfect—I shall have been heard.

S. *audītus ero* or *fuero;* like *amatus ero,* &c.

Imperative Mood.

Present—be thou heard.

S. *audīre, audī-tor, audī-tor.* P. *audi-mĭni, audi-mĭnor, audi-untor.*

Subjunctive *or* Potential Mood.

Present—I may be heard.

Sing. *audi-ar, -āris, -e, ātur;* like *mone-ar.*

Imperfect—I might be heard.

Sing. *audī-rer, -rēris, -e, -rētur;* like *ama-rer.*

Perfect—I may have been heard.

S. *audītus sim* or *fuerim;* like *amatus sim,* &c.

Pluperfect—I might have been heard.

S. *audītus essem* or *fuissem;* like *amatus essem,* &c.

Infinitive.		Participles.
to be heard, *audīri.*	Present.	
to have been heard, *audī-tum esse.*	Perfect.	having been heard, *audī-tus.*
to be about to be heard, *audī-tum iri.*	Future—	one who is to be heard, *audiendus.*

Digitized by Google

§ 35. *The Endings of Verbs.—Passive Voice.*

Indicative Mood.

Present.	*or,*	*āris,-e,*	*ātur*	*āmur,*	*amĭni,*	*antur*
	eor,	*ēris,-e,*	*ētur*	*ēmur,*	*emĭni,*	*entur*
	or,	*ĕris,-e,*	*ĭtur*	*ĭmur,*	*ĭmĭni,*	*untur*
	ior,	*īris,-e,*	*ītur*	*īmur,*	*īmini,*	*iuntur*
Imperf.	*ābar,*	*abāris,-e,*	*abātur*	*abāmur,*	*abamĭni,*	*abantur*
	ēbar,	*ebāris,-e,*	*ebātur*	*ebāmur,*	*ebamĭni,*	*ebantur*
	ēbar,	*ebāris,-e,*	*ebātur*	*ebāmur,*	*ebamĭni,*	*ebantur*
	iēbar,	*iebāris,-e,*	*iebātur*	*iebāmur,*	*iebamĭni,*	*iebantur*
Future.	*ābor,*	*abĕris,-e,*	*abĭtur*	*abĭmur,*	*abimĭni,*	*abuntur*
	ēbor,	*ebĕris,-e,*	*ebĭtur*	*ebĭmur,*	*ebimĭni,*	*ebuntur*
	ar,	*ēris,-e,*	*ētur*	*ēmur,*	*emĭni,*	*entur*
	iar,	*iēris,-e,*	*iētur*	*iēmur,*	*iemĭni,*	*ientur.*

The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-perfect, are formed with the Perfect Participle and the tenses of *Sum.*

Imperative Mood.

Present.	*āre,*	*ātor,*	*ātor*	*amĭni, amĭnor,*	*antor*
	ēre,	*ētor,*	*ētor*	*emĭni, emĭnor,*	*entor*
	ĕre,	*ĭtor,*	*ĭtor*	*ĭmĭni, ĭmĭnor,*	*untor*
	īre,	*ītor,*	*ītor*	*īmĭni, īmĭnor,*	*iuntor.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Present.	*er,*	*ēris,-e,*	*ētur*	*ēmur,*	*emĭni,*	*entur*
	ear,	*eāris,-e,*	*eātur*	*eāmur,*	*eamĭni,*	*eantur*
	ar,	*āris,-e,*	*ātur*	*āmur,*	*amĭni,*	*antur*
	iar,	*iāris,-e,*	*iātur*	*iāmur,*	*iamĭni,*	*iantur*
Imperf.	*ārer,*	*arēris,-e,*	*arētur*	*arēmur,*	*aremĭni,*	*arentur*
	ērer,	*ērēris,-e,*	*ērētur*	*ērēmur,*	*ēremĭni,*	*ērentur*
	ĕrer,	*ĕrēris,-e,*	*ĕrētur*	*ĕrēmur,*	*ĕremĭni,*	*ĕrentur*
	īrer,	*irēris,-e,*	*irētur*	*irēmur,*	*iremĭni,*	*irentur.*

The Perfect and Pluperfect are formed with the Perfect Participle and the tenses of *Sum.*

Infinitive.			Participles.		
Pres.	Perf.	Fut.	Pres.	Perf.	Fut.
āri	*ātum esse*	*ātum iri*		*ātus*	*andus*
ēri	*ĭtum*	*ĭtum*		*ĭtus*	*endus*
i	*tum*	*tum*		*tus*	*endus*
īri	*ītum*	*ītum*		*ītus*	*iendus.*

Digitized by Google

§ 36. *Remarks on the Passive Voice.*

Obs. 1. Transitive verbs alone have a regular passive conjugution; as, *amo* I love, *amor* I am loved. See *Syntax.*

Neuter verbs may have an *impersonal* passive: i.e. the 3rd P. Sing., without any distinct subject; as, *eo* I go, *itur* there is a going *or* men go: *concurro* I engage, *concurritur* there is an engaging *or* an engagement takes place. See § 50, *Obs.* 6, and *Syntax.*

Obs. 2. The *circumlocutory* or *necessity* Conjugation.

The Future Participle passive with the verb *Sum* is conjugated throughout; and expresses an act which must be, or ought to be, suffered; thus,

Amandus sum.

INDICATIVE Pres. *amandus sum* I must be loved.
Imperf. *amandus eram* it was necessary for me to be loved.
So *amandus ero, fui, fueram,* (*fuero* rare).
SUBJUNCTIVE. *amandus sim, essem, fuerim, fuissem.*
INFINITIVE Pres. *amandum esse.* Perf. *amandum fuisse.*

Impersonal passives have this participle neuter, and get the meaning of the *active* voice, stated *generally;* as, *pereo* I perish, *pereundum, est, erat,* &c., there must be a perishing, &c., *or* men must perish. See *Syntax.*

Obs. 3. The Perfect Participle passive makes in reality a circumlocutory conjunction with *sum;* as, *amatus sum, eram, fui,* &c., but these are considered as the regular Perfects of the ordinary passive verb. For the difference between *amatus sum* and *amatus fui,* see *Syntax.*

§ 37. FORMATION OF TENSES.

1. There are no *temporal* affixes belonging exclusively to the Passive voice.

2. The Present, and its derivatives, are formed from the corresponding tenses of the Active voice, by merely adding the personal affixes of the Passive.

3. The Perfect, and its derivatives, are formed from the Perfect Participle passive and one of the tenses of *sum;* as, *amatus sum.*

4. The Present Infinitive adds *I* to the Active, instead of the final *e,* in the 1st, 2nd, and 4th Conj.;

Digitized by Google

and instead of the whole affix *ere* in the 3rd; as, *amare, amari; regere, regi.*

Obs. In the early language, and later in Poetry, the Infinitive sometimes ended in *ier* instead of *i;* as, *accingier,* Virg. Æ. iv. 493.

5. The Perfect Participle always follows the form of the Supine; as, *amatum, amatus.*

6. The Future Participle adds *ENDUS* to the crude-form of the Present Active; as, *amo,* (*ama-endus*), *amandus; audi-o, audi-endus.*

Obs. 1. The first vowel of *endus* is lost in the A- and E-Conj., but is retained in the others; as, *amandus, monendus, reg-endus, audi-endus.*

Obs. 2. In Conj. 3, 4, the Future Participle often ends in *undus* instead of *endus;* and in some phrases *undus* is the usual form; as, *res repetundæ* extortion.

§ 38. Formation of Persons.

1. The Personal affixes in the Passive voice are—

Sing.	R,	RIS, or RE,	UR.
Plur.	R,	MINI,	UR.

Obs. The termination *re* in the 2nd Person is but seldom used in the Present Indicative; but in the other tenses is very common, even in prose.

2. The Passive personal affixes are used not instead of, but in addition to, the Active ones, excepting the 2nd Pers. Plur.; thus—

S. *amo*-R, *amor*	P. *amamus*-R, *amāmur*
amas-RIS, *amāris*	*ama*(*tis*)-MINI, *amamĭni*
amat-UR, *amātur.*	*amant*-UR, *amantur.*
S. *amem*-R, *amer*	P. *amemus*-R, *amēmur*
ames-RIS, *amēris*	*ame*(*tis*)-MINI, *amemĭni*
amet-UR, *amētur.*	*ament*-UR, *amentur.*

Obs. 1. Final *m* and *s* of the Active voice are always dropped in forming the Passive; as, *amem*-r, *amer; amas*-ris, *amaris.*

Obs. 2. Short *ĭ* of the Active becomes *ĕ* before *r* in the Passive, according to the Rules of Euphony; as, *amabĭs*-ris, *amabĕris.*

Digitized by Google

§ 39. Deponents.

1. Deponents are conjugated like passive verbs, but have participles both of the *active* and *passive* form, with gerunds and supines like active verbs.

Moror I delay, [MORA] like *Amor*.

Indicative Mood.

Present—I delay.

S. *moror, morāris*, &c., like *amor*.

Imperfect—I was delaying.

S. *morābar, morabāris*, &c., like *amabar*.

Future—I shall delay.

S. *morābor, morabĕris*, &c., like *amabor*.

Perfect—I have delayed.

S. *morātus sum* or *fui*, &c., like *amatus sum*.

Pluperfect—I had delayed.

S. *morātus eram* or *fueram*, &c., like *amatus eram*.

Future-perfect—I shall have delayed.

S. *morātus ero* or *fuero*, &c., like *amatus ero*.

Imperative Mood.

S. *morāre, morātor*, P. *moramĭni, morantor*.

Subjunctive *or* Potential Mood.

Present—I may delay.

S. *morer, morēris*, &c., like *amer*.

Imperfect—I might delay.

S. *morārer, morarēris*, &c., like *amarer*.

Perfect—I may have delayed.

S. *morātus sim* or *fuerim*, &c., like *amatus sim*.

Pluperfect—I might have delayed.

S. *morātus essem* or *fuissem*, &c., like *amatus essem*.

Infinitive.		Participles.
morāri, to delay.	Present.	*morans*, delaying.
morātum esse, to have delayed.	Perfect.	*morātus*, having delayed.
moratūrum esse, to be about to delay.	Fut. Act.	*moratūrus*, about to delay.
morātum iri, to be about to be delayed.	Fut. Pass.	*morandus*, one who is to be delayed.

Gerunds.			Supines.	
morandi, of,	*-dum*, to,	*-do*, by delaying.	*morātum*, to delay.	*-tu*, to be delayed.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. The Imperative of deponents has no plural in *mĭnor* like *moraminor*, as passives have.

Obs. 2. The Future Infinitive and Participle, *moratum iri*, *morandus*, have always a passive meaning and are used only in *transitive* deponents. Neuter deponents can use them only as Impersonals. See § 36, *Obs.* 2.

The Perfect Participle also is sometimes used as passive.

2. Deponents are found in all the Conjugations; as,

Conj. 1.	*moror* I delay,	like *amor*.
Conj. 2.	*vereor* I fear,	„ *moneor*.
Conj. 3.	*fungor* I perform,	„ *regor*.
Conj. 4.	*blandior* I flatter,	„ *audior*.

Obs. 1. By far the greatest number of Deponents are of Conj. 1; and those are mostly derived from nouns, and signify—

(*a*) To fetch or get what the noun denotes; as,

aquor get water, *aqua*. | *lignor* get wood, *lignum*.
frumentor get corn, *frumentum*. | *pabulor* get fodder, *pabulum*.

(*b*) To act like, or to be, what the noun denotes; as,

ancillor, from *ancilla* handmaid. | *cornīcor*, from *cornix* raven.
aucupor, — *auceps* fowler. | *famulor*, — *famulus* servant.
auguror, — *augur* soothsayer. | and many others.

To this class belong the deponents in *cĭnor*; as,

latrocinor rob, from *latro*. | *vaticinor* prophesy, from *vates*.

And many others, taking their meaning from the noun; as,

auxilior aid, from *auxilium*. | *jaculor* dart, from *jaculum*.
epulor feast, — *epulum*. | *nugor* trifle, — *nugæ*.

(*c*) The deponent form of many of these verbs is accounted for by their having a *semi-passive* meaning; as, *ancillor*, serve, i. e. am made a servant. Others have a *middle* meaning, like the Greek middle voice; as, *frumentor* = ἐπισιτίζομαι supply myself with corn. Hence some called deponents are only passives used in this middle sense; as, *versor* am turned, or turn myself, and so "engage in."

Obs. 2. Some deponents have also a less usual active form in *o*; as,

altercor quarrel, *-co*	*ludificor* mock, *-co*	*palpor* stroke, *-po*
auspicor presage, *-co*	*muneror* reward, *-ro*	*pigneror* pledge, *-ro*
fabricor form, *-co*	*oscitor* gape, *-to*	*populor* waste, *-lo*.

So *adūlor* flatter, *arbitror* think, *criminor* accuse, are sometimes passive in Cicero, though the active form in *o*, once used, had become obsolete.

Obs. 3. Some, whose usual form is active, are yet found used as deponents; as, *communico* share, *communicor*, Liv. iv. 24.

commurmuro, *-ror*	*frutico* sprout, *-cor*	*luxurio*, *-ior*
fluctuo wave, *-uor*	*lacrimo* weep, *-mor*	*nicto* wink, *-tor*.

Digitized by Google

§ 40. Neuter Passives.

1. The true Neuter-passives have an *active* form with a *passive* meaning; as,

Vapulo I am beaten, [VAPULA].

Pres. *vapulo.* Imp. *vapulabam.* Fut. *valpulabo.*
Perf. *vapulavi.* Plup. *vapulaveram.* F. P. *valpulavero.*

and so in the other Moods.

Obs. The three verbs, *fio* am made, *vapulo* am beaten, *veneo* am sold, are true Neuter-passives. *Fio* has no Perfect of its own, but takes the passive form *factus sum* from *facio.*

2. Verbs with an *active* meaning, and Perfects of a passive form, may be called Neuter-deponents.

Audeo I dare, [AUDE].

Pres. *audeo.* Imp. *audebam.* Fut. *audebo.*
Perf. *ausus sum.* Plup. *ausus eram.* F. P. *ausus ero.*

Imperative, *aude, audeto.*

Pr. *audeam.* I. *auderem.* P. *ausus sim.* Pl. *ausus essem.*

INFIN. *audere.* Present *audens.* PARTIC.
ausum esse. Perfect *ausus.*
ausurum esse. Fut. Act. *ausurus.*
(*ausum iri.*) Fut. Pass. *audendus.*

Gerunds, *audendi, -dum, -do.* Supine, *ausum.*

Obs. 1. The four verbs *audeo* dare, *fido* trust *fisus sum*, *gaudeo* am glad *gavīsus*, *soleo* am wont *solitus*, are Neuter-deponents.

Obs. 2. Like the Neuter-deponents are *juro* swear, *cæno* sup, *prandeo* dine, *poto* drink, which have the Perfect participles *juratus, cænatus, pransus, potus*, with an active meaning; whence a second Perfect of a passive form; as, *juro, juravi* and *juratus sum.*

In the same manner there are sometimes found from *conspiro conspiratus, coalesco coalĭtus;*—more frequently *adolesco adultus, obsolesco obsoletus;* and in Poets *cresco cretus.*

Obs. 3. The Neuter-deponents, except *soleo*, have four participles, like Deponents in *or;* but the Future Infin. and Particip. passives are used impersonally, as in other neuter verbs, unless the Neuter-deponent gains a transitive meaning; as, *audeo* dare to do, *audendus, -a, -um*, a thing to be dared.

Obs. 4. Some Impersonal verbs have a Perfect in the passive form, together with the active; as, *piget, piguit*, or *pigĭtum est.* See § 50.

Digitized by Google

§ 41. *Verbs in* io *of the* third *conjugation.*

1. Some verbs in *io* have a peculiar formation in the Present and its derivatives, being partly like the 3rd and partly like the 4th conjugation.

These have a double crudeform, ending in I, or a consonant. The final *i* is retained before *a, ē, o, u;* and lost before *ĕ, i.*

Căpio, I take, [CAPI] or [CAP].

Indicative—Present.

S. *capio, capĭs, capit.* P. *capĭmus, capĭtis, capiunt.*

Imperfect. Future.

S. *capiebam,* &c. S. *capiam, -ies, -iet,* &c.

Imperative.

S. *capĕ, capĭto.* P. *capĭte, -ĭtote, -iunto.*

Present. (Subjunctive.) Imperfect.

S. *capiam, -ias, -iat,* &c. S. *capĕrem, -ĕres, -ĕret,* &c.

Infinitive. Participle. Gerunds.

capĕre. capiens. capiendi, -dum, -do.

The Passive voice has the same peculiarities.

To this class belong *cupio, rapio, sapio, facio, jacio, fodio, fugio, pario, quatio,* and the compounds of [*lacio*], [*specio*].

Obs. Of these verbs *cupio* has the Perf. and Sup. regular, *cupīvi, cupītum;* the rest have various kinds of irregularity.

2. Some deponents are conjugated in the same way.

Morior, I die, [MORI] or [MOR].

Indicative—Present.

S. *morior, -ĕris, -ĭtur.* P. *morĭmur, -ĭmini, -iuntur.*

Imperfect. Future.

S. *moriebar,* &c. S. *moriar, -iēris, -riētur,* &c.

Imperative.

S. *morĕre, morĭtor.* P. *morimini, moriuntor.*

Present. (Subjunctive.) Imperfect.

S. *moriar, -iaris, -iatur.* S. *morĕrer, -ĕrēris,* &c.

Infinitive. Participle. Gerunds.

mori. moriens. moriendi, -dum, -do.

In the same way *gradior, orior, patior.*

Digitized by Google

IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 42. Irregular Verbs are divided into two classes :

1. Verbs which are irregular in the formation of the Present, Perfect, or Supine, when the alterations thus made remain in all the derivative tenses.

2. Verbs which are irregular in the formation of particular tenses or persons, without necessarily affecting their derivatives.

Class I.

§ 43. Irregular in the Present, Perfect, or Supine.

Almost all the irregular verbs in Latin belong to this class.

Causes of Irregularity.

1. A *double* crudeform,—one for the Present, the other for the Perfect; as, *domo*, tame, [DOMA] and [DOM]. A very large number of the irregular verbs are of this kind.

Obs. When there are two crudeforms, it is sometimes difficult to decide which is the *original* and which the *altered* one. But the crudeform of the Perfect is generally the more simple, and is sometimes known to be the older of the two; whereas many alterations may be traced in the Present. See § 31. (*a.*) 3. *Obs.* 2.

2. A *less usual* formation in the Perfect. The usual formations are, Conj. 1, *avi.*—Conj. 2, *ui.*—Conj. 4, *ivi.* In Conj. 3. there is so much variety that all are inserted in the lists, though *si* may be considered the regular formation.

For the formations of the Perfect, see § 31. (*b.*)

3. The Supine ending in *ĭtum* or *sum.*

Obs. 1. The Supine in *ĭtum* being the usual formation in Conj. 2. is not noticed as irregular in that conjugation.

Obs. 2. Some Supines in *tum* are considered irregular from the loss or change of consonants before *tum.*

For irregularities in the formation of the Supine, see § 31. (*c.*)

N.B.—The Verbs in the following lists are placed in four divisions, according to the four formations of the Perfect; and the verbs in each division are arranged according to the conjugation, which appears in the Present.

Digitized by Google

§ 44. Lists of Irregular Verbs.

1. First formation of the Perfect—*Vi* or *Ui*.

(*i*) First Conjugation.

crepo creak,	*crepui,*	*crepĭtum,*	*crepare.*
cubo lie,	*cubui,* (*cubavi,*)	*cubĭtum,*	*cubare.*

compounds with *m* before *b* are of Conj. 3; as, *incumbo, incubui.*

domo tame,	*domui,*	*domĭtum,*	*domare.*
frico rub,	*fricui,*	*frictum,* (*fricatum,*)	*fricare.*
mico glitter,	*micui,*	———	*micare.*

emico dart forth, *ui, atum.* *dimico* fight, *avi, atum.*

neco kill,	*necavi,* (*necui,*)	*necatum,*	*necare.*

eneco kill at last, *enecui, enectum;* also, *avi, atum.*

seco cut,	*secui,*	*sectum,* (*secaturus,*)	*secare.*
sono sound,	*sonui,*	*sonĭtum,* (*sonaturus,*)	*sonare.*
tono, thunder,	*tonui,*	*tonĭtum,*	*tonare.*
veto forbid,	*vetui,* (*vetavi,*)	*vetĭtum,*	*vetare.*

Obs. *Plico* fold, has no Perf. or Sup., but the compounds make also *ui, itum;* as, *applico, avi, ui, atum, itum.* Those derived from nouns in *plex* have only *avi, atum;* as, *supplico, duplico,* &c.

Poto drink, is regular, but *potum* is often used for *potatum.*

(*ii*) Second Conjugation.

censeo think,	*censui,*	*censum,* (*censītum,*)	*censēre.*
cieo stir up,	*civi,*	*cītum,*	*ciēre.*

cio, civi, cītum, Conj. 4, has the same meaning as *cieo.*

doceo teach,	*docui,*	*doctum,*	*docēre.*
misceo mix,	*miscui,*	*mixtum, mistum,*	*miscēre.*
sorbeo suck up,	*sorbui,* (*sorpsi,*)	(*sorptum,*)	*sorbēre.*
teneo hold,	*tenui,*	(*tentum,*)	*tenēre.*
torreo roast,	*torrui,*	*tostum,*	*torrēre.*

Obs. 1. Verbs of Conj. 2, making *ui, ĭtum,* are considered regular; many making *ui* have no Supine; and several have no Perfect nor Supine. See § 48, 2. *c.*

Obs. 2. Some few in *eo* make *ēvi, ētum.* See § 31, *b. i. Obs.* 2. *deleo* destroy, *fleo* weep, *neo* spin, compounds of *pleo* fill, some compounds of *oleo* grow.

(*iii*) Third Conjugation.

(*a*) Perfect in—*Avi.*

pasco feed,	*pavi,*	*pastum,*	*pascĕre.*

the compounds *compesco, dispesco,* have Perf. *pescui.*

sterno lay low,	*stravi,*	*stratum,*	*sternĕre.*

Digitized by Google

(*b*) Perfect in—*Evi.*

cresco grow,	*crevi*,	*cretum*,	*crĕscere.*
quiesco rest,	*quievi*,	*quietum*,	*quiescĕre.*
suesco am accustomed,	*suevi*,	*suetum*,	*suescĕre.*
cerno see, (decide,)	(*crevi*,	*cretum*,)	*cernĕre.*

no Perf. or Sup. in the sense of seeing; *crevi* = *decrevi* in forensic language.

sperno despise,	*sprevi*,	*spretum*,	*sperněre.*
sero sow,	*sevi*,	*sătum*,	*serĕre.*

sero arrange, makes *serui*, *sertum*, but only in compounds.

(*c*) Perfect in—*Ivi.*

arcesso fetch,	*arcessivi*,	*arcessītum*,	*arcessĕre.*
capesso undertake,	*capessivi*,	*capessītum*,	*capessĕre.*
facesso hasten,	*facessivi*, (*-essi*,)	*facessītum*,	*facessĕre.*
incesso attack,	*incessivi*, (*-essi*,)	——	*incessĕre.*
lacesso provoke,	*lacessivi*,	*lacessītum*,	*lacessĕre.*
lino smear,	*livi*, *levi*,	*lĭtum*,	*linĕre.*
sino allow,	*sivi*,	*sĭtum*,	*sinĕre.*

desĭno cease, *desii*, *desĭtum.*

quæro enquire,	*quæsivi*,	*quæsītum*,	*quærĕre.*
tero rub,	*trivi*,	*trītum*,	*terĕre.*
peto seek,	*petivi*,	*petītum*,	*petĕre.*

(*d*) Perfect in—*Ovi.*

nosco observe,	*novi*,	*notum*,	*noscĕre.*

the original *gnosco* (γιγνώσκω) appears in the compounds: of these *agnosco*, *cognosco*, have the Sup. *agnĭtum*, *cognĭtum*; *ignosco* has *ignotum*; *dignosco*, *internosco*, have none.

(*e*) Perfect in—*Ui.*

alo, nourish,	*alui*,	*alĭtum*, (*altum*,)	*alĕre.*
colo cultivate,	*colui*,	*cultum*,	*colĕre.*
consŭlo consult,	*consului*,	*consultum*,	*consulĕre.*
molo grind,	*molui*,	*molĭtum*,	*molĕre.*
occŭlo hide,	*occului*,	*occultum*,	*occulĕre.*
volo wish,	*volui*,	——	*velle.*
fremo murmur,	*fremui*,	*fremĭtum*,	*fremĕre.*
gemo groan,	*gemui*,	*gemĭtum*,	*gemĕre.*
tremo tremble,	*tremui*,	——	*tremĕre.*
vomo vomit,	*vomui*,	*vomĭtum*,	*vomĕre.*
gigno beget,	*genui*,	*genĭtum*,	*gignĕre.*

the Present *gigno* is for *gi-gen-o* with a reduplication like γίγνομαι.

pōno place,	*pŏsui*,	*posĭtum*,	*ponĕre.*

Digitized by Google

strepo make a noise,	*strepui,*	*strepĭtum,*	*strepĕre.*
dipso knead,	*dipsui,*	*dipsĭtum, depstum,*	*dipsĕre.*
pinso grind,	*pinsui,*	*pinsĭtum, pistum,*	*pinsĕre.*
meto reap,	*messui,*	*messum,*	*metĕre.*
sterto snore,	*stertui,*	——	*stertĕre.*
texo weave,	*texui,*	*textum,*	*texĕre.*

(*f*) Present in—*Io.*

cupio desire,	*cupivi,*	*cupītum,*	*cupĕre.*
rapio snatch,	*rapui,*	*raptum,*	*rapĕre.*
sapio taste,	*sapivi, sapui,*	——	*sapĕre.*

the Perfect *sapui* is mostly used in compounds.

(*g*) Present in—*Uo.*

luo pay,	*lui,*	*luĭtum,*	*luĕre.*
ruo rush,	*rui,*	*ruĭtum,*	*ruĕre.*

in compounds the Supine is *rŭtum.*

solvo loose,	*solvi,*	*solūtum,*	*solvĕre.*
volvo roll,	*volvi,*	*volūtum,*	*volvĕre.*

the only irregularity in *solvo* and *volvo* is having *v* for *u* in the Present and Perfect.

Obs.—Regular verbs in *uo* make *ui, ūtum;* as, *arguo, argui, argutum,* and they are not inserted in this List.

(*iv*) Fourth Conjugation.

amicio clothe,	——	*amictum,*	*amicire.*
eo go,	*ivi, ii,*	*ĭtum,*	*ire.*
queo can,	*quivi,*	*quĭtum,*	(*quire.*)
salio leap,	*salui,*	*saltum,*	*salire.*
sepelio bury,	*sepelivi,*	*sepultum,*	*sepelire.*

2. Second Formation of the Perfect—*Si.*

(*i*) First Conjugation.

No verbs of the First Conjugation form the Perfect in *Si.*

(*ii*) Second Conjugation.

jubeo order,	*jussi,*	*jussum,*	*jubēre.*
luceo shine,	*luxi,*	——	*lucēre.*
mulceo soothe,	*mulsi,*	*mulsum,*	*mulcēre.*
ardeo burn,	*arsi,*	*arsum,*	*ardēre.*
rideo laugh,	*risi,*	*risum,*	*ridēre.*
suadeo exhort,	*suasi,*	*suasum,*	*suadēre.*

Here also may be placed the Neuter-deponents,
audeo dare, *ausus sum.* *gaudeo* rejoice, *gavisus sum.*

augeo increase,	*auxi,*	*auctum,*	*augēre.*
frigeo am cold,	(*frixi* in comp.)	——	*frigēre.*

Digitized by Google

lugeo mourn,	*luxi*,	——	*lugēre.*
algeo am cold,	*alsi*,	——	*algēre.*
fulgeo glitter,	*fulsi*,	——	*fulgēre.*

fulgo, fulgĕre, is also used; mostly in poetry.

indulgeo indulge,	*indulsi*,	*indultum*,	*indulgēre.*
mulgeo milk,	*mulsi*,	*mulsum*,	*mulgēre.*
tergeo wipe,	*tersi*,	*tersum*,	*tergēre.*

also *tergo, tergĕre*, is used.

turgeo swell,	(*tursi*,)	——	*turgēre.*
urgeo urge,	*ursi*,	——	*urgēre.*
maneo remain,	*mansi*,	*mansum*,	*manēre.*

of the compounds *emineo* has *-ui*; *immineo, promineo*, no Perf.

hæreo stick,	*hæsi*,	*hæsum*,	*hærēre.*
torqueo twist,	*torsi*,	*tortum*,	*torquēre.*

(*iii*) Third Conjugation.

Regular as well as irregular verbs are inserted here.

(*a*) Characteristic *b, p.*—Present in *bo.*

glubo peel,	(*glupsi*,)	*gluptum*,	*glubĕre.*
nubo am married,	*nupsi, nupta sum*,	*nuptum*,	*nubĕre.*
scribo write,	*scripsi*,	*scriptum*,	*scribĕre.*

Present in *po.*

carpo pluck,	*carpsi*,	*carptum*,	*carpĕre.*

repo creep, *scalpo* scratch, *sculpo* carve, *serpo* creep.

(*b*) Characteristic *c, g.*—Present in *co.*

dico say,	*dixi*,	*dictum*,	*dicĕre.*
duco lead,	*duxi*,	*ductum*,	*ducĕre.*

T inserted.

flecto bend,	*flexi*,	*flexum*,	*flectĕre.*
necto bind,	*nexi, nexui*,	*nexum*,	*nectĕre.*
pecto comb,	*pexi*,	*pexum*,	*pectĕre.*

plecto lash, no Perf. or Sup., but *amplector* has *amplexus.*

Present in *go.*

figo fix,	*fixi*,	*fixum*,	*figĕre.*
[*fligo*,] *ad, con, in*, strike,	*flixi*,	*flictum*,	*fligĕre.*

used only in compounds. *profligo* is Conj. 1.

frigi parch,	*frixi*,	*frictum*, (*frixum*,)	*frigĕre.*
rego rule,	*rexi*,	*rectum*,	*regĕre.*

so *sugo* suck, *tego* cover.

N before go.

ango, torment,	*anxi*,	——	*angĕre.*

Digitized by Google

cingo surround,	*cinxi,*	*cinctum,*	*cingĕre.*
so *jungo* join, *lingo* lick, *mungo* (*e*) blow the nose.			
plango beat, *tingo* dip, *ungo, unguo,* anoint.			
ningo snow,	*ninxi,*	——	*ningĕre.*
[*stinguo,*] *dis, ex, re,* put out,	*stinxi,*	*stinctum,*	*stinguĕre.*
clango ring, no Perf. or Sup.			
fingo feign,	*finxi,*	*fictum,*	*fingĕre.*
so *mingo* (*meio*), *pingo* paint, *stringo* bind close.			

R before *go.*

mergo sink,	*mersi,*	*mersum,*	*mergĕre.*
spargo scatter,	*sparsi,*	*sparsum,*	*spargĕre.*

Present irregular; *c* or *g* concealed.

coquo cook,	*coxi,*	*coctum,*	*coquĕre.*
traho draw,	*traxi,*	*tractum,*	*trahĕre.*
veho carry,	*vexi,*	*vectum,*	*vehĕre.*
vivo live,	*vixi,*	*victum,*	*vivĕre.*
[*licio*] *ad, e, in,* &c., lure,	*-lexi,*	*-lectum,*	*-licĕre.*
elicio makes *elicui, elicĭtum.*			
[*spicio*] *ad, in,* &c., look,	*-spexi,*	*-spectum,*	*-spicĕre.*
fluo flow,	*fluxi,*	*fluctum,*	*fluĕre.*
struo build,	*struxi,*	*structum,*	*struĕre.*

(*c*) Characteristic *d, t.*—Present in *do.*

cedo yield,	*cessi,*	*cessum,*	*cedĕre.*
claudo shut,	*clausi,*	*clausum,*	*claudĕre.*
divĭdo divide,	*divīsi,*	*divīsum,*	*dividĕre.*
so *lædo* hurt, *ludo* play, *plaudo* clap, *rado* shave,			
rodo gnaw, *trudo* thrust, *vado* go (in compounds).			

[*Vado, rado, lædo, ludo, divido, trudo,*
Claudo, plaudo, rodo, ex do semper faciunt si.]

fido trust, *fisus sum.* *frendo* gnash, no Perf., *fressum, fresum.*

Present in *to* or *tio.*

mitto send,	*misi,*	*missum,*	*mittĕre.*
quatio shake,	(*quassi,*)	*quassum,*	*quatĕre.*

(*d*) Characteristic *m, r.*—Present in *mo.*

como adorn,	*compsi,*	*comptum,*	*comĕre.*
so *demo* take away,	*promo* bring out, *sumo* take.		
temno despise,	[*tempsi,*	*temptum, temnĕre,* in comp.]	
premo press,	*pressi,*	*pressum,*	*premĕre.*

Present in *ro.*

gero bear,	*gessi,*	*gestum,*	*gerĕre.*
uro burn,	*ussi,*	*ustum,*	*urĕre.*

Digitized by Google

(*iv*) Fourth Conjugation.

farcio stuff,	*farsi*,	*farctum, fartum*,	*farcire.*
fulcio prop,	*fulsi*,	*fultum*,	*fulcire.*
haurio draw,	*hausi*,	*haustum*, (*hausurus*,)	*haurire.*
raucio am hoarse,	*rausi*,	*rausum*,	*raucire.*
sæpio hedge in,	*sæpsi*,	*sæptum*,	*sæpire.*
sancio sanction,	*sanxi*,	*sanctum*, -*ītum*,	*sancire.*
sarcio patch,	*sarsi*,	*sartum*,	*sarcire.*
sentio feel,	*sensi*,	*sensum*,	*sentire.*
vincio bind,	*vinxi*,	*vinctum*,	*vincire.*

3. Third formation of the Perfect—*Reduplication.*

(*i*) First Conjugation.

do give,	*dedi*,	*dătum*,	*dăre.*

do has the *ă* short throughout, and so approaches to the third Conjugation, to which most of its compounds belong.

sto stand,	*steti*,	*statum*,	*stare.*

(*ii*) Second Conjugation.

mordeo bite,	*momordi*,	*morsum*,	*mordēre.*
pendeo (n.) hang,	*pependi*,	*pensum*,	*pendēre.*

differs from *pendo* only in the Present.

spondeo engage,	*spopondi*,	*sponsum*,	*spondēre.*
tondeo shear,	*totondi*,	*tonsum*,	*tondēre.*

(*iii*) Third Conjugation.

cădo fall,	*cecĭdi*,	*cāsum*,	*cadĕre.*

of the compounds only *incido*, *occido*, *recido*, have a Supine.

cædo cut,	*cecīdi*,	*cæsum*,	*cædĕre.*
căno sing,	*cecĭni*,	*cantum*,	*canĕre.*

the compounds, which have a Perfect, make *cinui*: *accino*, *intercino*, *recino*, have no Perfect or Supine.

[*cello* strike,	*cecŭli*,	*culsum*,	*cellĕre*].

only used in compounds; of these, *percello* makes *perculi*, *-culsum*; *antecello*, *excello*, *præcello*, make *celui*; no Supine.

curro run,	*cucurri*,	*cursum*,	*currĕre.*
disco learn,	*didĭci*,	(*disciturus*,)	*discĕre.*
fallo deceive,	*fefelli*,	*falsum*,	*fallĕre.*
(*pango*) *paciscor* bargain,	*pepĕgi*,	*pactum*,	*pangĕre.*

the compounds make *pēgi*: *pango* strike, frame, *panxi*, *panctum*.

parco spare,	*peperci*,	*parsum*,	*parcĕre.*

Digitized by Google

pario, bring forth, *pepĕri*, *partum*, (*pariturus*,) *parĕre*.
the compounds are of Conj. 4.—Infin. *ire*. *aperio*, *operio*, make Perfect *perui*; *comperio*, *reperio*, *-pĕri*.
pello drive away, *pepŭli*, *pulsum*, *pellĕre*.
pendo hang, weigh, *pependi*, *pensum*, *pendĕre*.
differs from *pendeo* only in the Present.
posco demand, *poposci*, —— *poscĕre*.
pungo pierce, *pupŭgi*, *punctum*, *pungĕre*.
the compounds make the Perfect *punxi*.
sisto stop, *stiti*, *stătum*, *sistĕre*.
all compounds are intransitive, and take the Perf. of *sto*.
sisto has a reduplication in the Present, like the Greek ἵστημι.
tango touch, *tetĭgi*, *tactum*, *tangĕre*.
tollo take away, *sustŭli*, *sublātum*, *tollĕre*.
tundo pound, *tutŭdi*, *tunsum*, *tundĕre*.
the compounds make the Supine *tusum*.

Obs. 1.—The following verbs seem to have lost a Reduplication.

bibo drink, *bibi*, (*bĭbĭbi*,) *bibitum*, *bibĕre*.
findo cleave, *fĭdi*, (*fefĭdi*,) *fissum*, *findĕre*.
scindo cut, *scĭdi*, (*scicĭdi*,) *scissum*, *scindĕre*.
fero bear, (*tollo*,) *tŭli*, *tetŭli*, *lātum*, *ferre*.

Obs. 2.—The syllable of reduplication is generally lost in compound verbs; but it is retained in the four verbs,
do, *disco*, *sto*, *posco*,
and sometimes in the compounds of *curro*.

4. Fourth formation of the Perfect—*Penultima long.*

(*i*) First Conjugation.

jŭvo help, *jūvi*, (*jūtum*,) *juvaturus*, *juvare*.
the compound *adjŭvo* has *adjuturus* or *adjuvaturus*.
lăvo wash, *lāvi*, *lavatum*, *lautum*, *lotum*, *lavare*.
also *lăvo*, *lavĕre*, Conj. 3. in poetry.

(*ii*) Second Conjugation.

prandeo dine, *prandi*, *pransum*, *pransus*, *prandēre*.
sĕdeo sit, *sēdi*, *sessum*, *sedēre*.
sido settle, or sit as a bird, is akin to *sedeo*.
strideo shriek, *strīdi*, —— *stridēre*.
also in poetry *strido*, *stridĕre*.
vĭdeo see, *vīdi*, *vīsum*, *vidēre*.
căveo beware, *cāvi*, *cautum*, *cavēre*.
făveo favor, *fāvi*, *fautum*, *favēre*.
păveo dread, *pāvi*, —— *pavēre*.
[*niveo*] *conniveo* wink, *nīvi*, *nixi*, —— *nivēre*.
ferveo glow, *fervi*, *ferbui*, —— *fervēre*.
also in the old language and poetry, *fervo*, *fervĕre*.

Digitized by Google

fŏveo cherish,	*fōvi,*	*fōtum,*	*fovēre.*
mŏveo move,	*mōvi,*	*mōtum,*	*movēre.*
vŏveo vow,	*vōvi,*	*vōtum,*	*vovēre.*

(*iii*) Third Conjugation.

lambo lick,	*lambi,*	(*lambĭtum,*)	*lambĕre.*
scăbo scratch,	*scăbi,*	——	*scabĕre.*
ico strike,	*īci,*	*ictum,*	*icĕre.*
used only for "striking a treaty," except in the Passive *ictus.*			
vinco conquer,	*vīci,*	*victum,*	*vincĕre.*
accendo kindle,	*accendi,*	*accensum,*	*accendĕre.*
so *incendo;* compounds of [*cando* make to burn.]			
cudo forge,	*cūdi,*	*cūsum,*	*cudĕre.*
defendo defend,	*defendi,*	*defensum,*	*defendĕre.*
so *offendo;* compounds of [*fendo* strike.]			
ĕdo eat,	*ēdi,*	*ēsum,*	*edĕre.*
fundo pour out,	*fūdi,*	*fūsum,*	*fundĕre.*
mando bite,	(*mandi,*)	*mansum,*	*mandĕre.*
pando expand,	*pandi,*	*passum,* (*pansum,*)	*pandĕre.*
prehendo, prendo, take,	*prehendi,*	*prehensum,*	*prehendĕre.*
rŭdo bray,	*rūdi,*	——	*rudĕre.*
scando climb,	*scandi,*	*scansum,*	*scandĕre.*
sido settle,	*sīdi,*	——	*sidĕre.*
akin to *sedeo.*			
ăgo act,	*ēgi,*	*actum,*	*agĕre.*
cogo for *coăgo* has *co-ēgi, coactum: dego* (*dēgi*) for *de-ago.*			
frango break,	*frēgi,*	*fractum,*	*frangĕre.*
lĕgo read,	*lēgi,*	*lectum,*	*legĕre.*
of the compounds, *diligo, intelligo, negligo,* have Perf. *lexi.*			
psallo play on an instrument, (*psalli,*)	——		*psallĕre.*
vello pluck,	*velli, vulsi,*	*vulsum,*	*vellĕre.*
ĕmo buy,	*ēmi,*	*emptum,*	*emĕre.*
linquo leave,	*līqui,*	(*lictum,*)	*linquĕre.*
in prose mostly *relinquo.*			
rumpo break,	*rūpi,*	*ruptum,*	*rumpĕre.*
verro sweep,	*verri,*	*versum,*	*verrĕre.*
viso visit,	*vīsi,*	——	*visĕre.*
verto turn,	*verti,*	*versum,*	*vertĕre.*

Present in *io.*

căpio take,	*cēpi,*	*captum,*	*capĕre.*
făcio make,	*fēci,*	*factum,*	*facĕre.*
jăcio cast,	*jēci,*	*jactum,*	*jacĕre.*
fŏdio dig,	*fōdi,*	*fossum,*	*foděre.*
fŭgio flee,	*fūgi,*	*fugĭtum,*	*fugĕre.*

Digitized by Google

(*iv*) Fourth Conjugation.

vĕnio come,	*vēni*,	*ventum*,	*venire*.

Obs. The verbs which have *v* for their last consonant; as, *juvo*, *caveo*, &c., might be considered as having a Perfect in *ui*; the *u* being then lost by contraction, and the preceding vowel consequently made long; as, *jŭvo*, *jŭvui*, *jūvi*.

§ 45. *Index to the Irregular Verbs.*

accendo,	4. iii.	*cubo*,	1. i.	*fido*,	2. iii. c.
agnosco,	1. iii. d.	*cudo*,	4. iii.	*figo*,	2. iii. b.
ago,	4. iii.	*cupio*,	1. iii. f.	*findo*,	3. iii. obs. 1.
algeo,	2. ii.	*curro*,	iii. 3.	*fingo*,	2. iii. b.
alo,	1. iii. e.	*defendo*,	4. iii.	*fodio*,	4. iii.
amicio,	1. iv.	*dego*,	4. iii.	*foveo*,	4. ii.
ango,	2. iii. b.	*deleo*,	1. ii. obs. 2.	*frango*,	4. iii.
antecello,	3. iii.	*demo*,	2. iii. d.	*fremo*,	1. iii. e.
aperio,	3. iii.	*desino*,	1. iii. c.	*frendo*,	2. iii. c.
applico,	1. i. obs.	*dico*,	2. iii. b.	*frico*,	1. i.
arcesso,	1. iii. c.	*dignosco*,	1. iii. d.	*frigeo*,	2. ii.
ardeo,	2. ii.	*diligo*,	4. iii.	*frigo*,	2. iii. b.
augeo,	2. ii.	*dimico*,	1. i.	*fugio*,	4. iii.
bibo,	2. iii. obs. 1.	*dipso*,	1. iii. e.	*fulcio*,	2. iv.
cado,	3. iii.	*disco*,	3. iii.	*fulgeo*,	2. ii.
cædo,	3. iii.	*dispesco*,	1. iii. a.	*fundo*,	4. iii.
cano,	3. iii.	*divido*,	2. iii. c.	*gemo*,	1. iii. e.
capesso,	1. iii. c.	*do*,	3. i.	*gero*,	2. iii. d.
capio,	4. iii.	*doceo*,	1. ii.	*gigno*,	1. iii. e.
carpo,	2. iii. a.	*domo*,	1. i.	*glubo*,	2. iii. a.
caveo,	4. ii.	*duco*,	2. iii. b.	*hæreo*,	2. ii.
cedo,	2. iii. c.	*duplico*,	1. i. obs.	*haurio*,	2. iv.
[*cello*],	3. iii.	*edo*,	4. iii.	*ico*,	4. iii.
censeo,	1. ii.	*elicio*,	2. iii. b.	*ignosco*,	1. iii. d.
cerno,	1. iii. b.	*emico*,	1. i.	*incendo*,	4. iii.
cieo,	1. ii.	*emo*,	4. iii.	*incesso*,	1. iii. c.
cingo,	2. iii. b.	*eneco*,	1. i.	*indulgeo*,	2. ii.
cio,	1. ii.	*eo*,	1. iv.	*intelligo*,	4. iii.
clango,	2. iii. b.	*excello*,	3. iii.	*internosco*,	1. iii. d.
claudo,	2. iii. c.	*facesso*,	1. iii. c.	*jacio*,	4. iii.
cognosco,	1. iii. d.	*facio*,	4. iii.	*jubeo*,	2. ii.
cogo,	4. iii.	*fallo*,	3. iii.	*jungo*,	2. iii. b.
colo,	1. iii. e.	*farcio*,	2. iv.	*juvo*,	4. i.
como,	2. iii. d.	*faveo*,	4. ii.	*lacesso*,	1. iii. c.
comperio,	3. iii.	*fero*,	3. iii. obs.	[*licio*],	2. iii. b.
compesco,	1. iii. a.	*ferveo*,	4. ii.	*lædo*,	2. iii. c.
consulo,	1. iii. e.	*flecto*,	2. iii. b.	*lavo*,	4. i.
coquo,	2. iii. b.	*fleo*,	1. ii. obs. 2.	*lego*,	4. iii.
crepo,	1. i.	[*fligo*],	2. iii. b.	*lingo*,	2. iii. b.
cresco,	1. iii. b.	*fluo*,	2. iii. b.	*lino*,	1. iii. c.

Digitized by Google

linquo,	4. iii.	*posco,*	3. iii.	*sterno,*	1. iii. a.
luceo,	2. ii.	*poto,*	1. i. obs.	*sterto,*	1. iii. e.
ludo,	2. iii. c.	*præcello,*	3. iii.	*stinguo,*	2. iii. b.
lugeo,	2. ii.	*prandeo,*	4. ii.	*sto,*	3. i.
luo,	1. iii. g.	*prehendo,*	4. iii.	*strepo,*	1. iii. e.
mando,	4. iii.	*premo,*	2. iii. d.	*strideo,*	4. ii.
maneo,	2. ii.	*promo,*	2. iii. d.	*stringo,*	2. iii. b.
mergo,	2. iii. b.	*psallo,*	4. iii.	*struo,*	2. iii. b.
meto,	1. iii. e.	*pungo,*	3. iii.	*suadeo,*	2. ii.
mico,	1. i.	*quæro,*	1. iii. c.	*suesco,*	1. iii. b.
mingo,	2. iii. b.	*quatio,*	2. iii. c.	*sugo,*	2. iii. b.
misceo,	1. ii.	*queo,*	1. iv.	*supplico,*	1. i. obs.
mitto,	2. iii. c.	*quiesco,*	1. iii. b.	*sumo,*	2. iii. d.
molo,	1. iii. e.	*rado,*	2. iii. c.	*tango,*	3. iii.
mordeo,	3. ii.	*rapio,*	1. iii. f.	*tego,*	2. iii. b.
moveo,	4. ii.	*raucio,*	2. iv.	*temno,*	2. iii. d.
mulceo,	2. ii.	*rego,*	2. iii. b.	*teneo,*	1. ii.
mulgeo,	2. ii.	*reperio,*	3. iii.	*tergeo,*	2. ii.
mungo,	2. iii. b.	*repo,*	2. iii. a.	*tero,*	1. iii. c.
neco,	1. i.	*rideo,*	2. ii.	*texo,*	1. iii. e.
necto,	2. iii. b.	*rodo,*	2. iii. c.	*tingo,*	2. iii. b.
negligo,	4. iii.	*rudo,*	4. iii.	*tollo,*	3. iii.
neo,	1. ii. obs. 2.	*rumpo,*	4. iii.	*tondeo,*	3. ii.
ningo,	2. iii. b.	*ruo,*	1. iii. g.	*tono,*	1. i.
[*niveo*],	4. ii.	*sæpio,*	2. iv.	*torqueo,*	2. ii.
nosco,	1. iii. d.	*salio,*	1. iv.	*torreo,*	1. ii.
nubo,	2. iii. a.	*sancio,*	2. iv.	*traho,*	2. iii. b.
occulo,	1. iii. e.	*sapio,*	1. iii. f.	*tremo,*	1. iii. e.
offendo,	4. iii.	*scabo,*	4. iii.	*trudo,*	2. iii. c.
operio,	3. iii.	*scalpo,*	2. iii. a.	*tundo,*	3. iii.
pando,	4. iii.	*scando,*	4. iii.	*turgeo,*	2. ii.
pango,	3. iii.	*scindo,*	3. iii. obs. 1.	*vado,*	2. iii. c.
pario,	3. iii.	*scribo,*	2. iii. a.	*veho,*	2. iii. b.
parco,	3. iii.	*sculpo,*	2. iii. a.	*venio,*	4. iv.
pasco,	1. iii. a.	*seco,*	1. i.	*vello,*	4. iii.
paveo,	4. ii.	*sedeo,*	4. ii.	*verro,*	4. iii.
pecto,	2. iii. b.	*sentio,*	2. iv.	*verto,*	4. iii.
pello,	3. iii.	*sepelio,*	1. iv.	*veto,*	1. i.
pendeo,	3. ii.	*sero,*	1. iii. b.	*video,*	4. ii.
pendo,	3. iii.	*serpo,*	2. iii. a.	*vincio,*	2. iv.
percello,	3. iii.	*sido,*	4. iii.	*vinco,*	4. iii.
peto,	1. iii. c.	*sino,*	1. iii. c.	*viso,*	4. iii.
pingo,	2. iii. b.	*sisto,*	3. iii.	*vivo,*	2. iii. b.
pinso,	1. iii. e.	*solvo,*	1. iii. g.	*volo,*	1. iii. e.
plango,	2. iii. b.	*sono,*	1. i.	*volvo,*	1. iii. g.
plaudo,	2. iii. c.	*sorbeo,*	1. ii.	*vomo,*	1. iii. e.
plecto,	2. iii. b.	*spargo,*	2. iii. b.	*voveo,*	4. ii.
[*pleo*],	1. ii. obs. 2.	[*spicio*],	2. iii. b.	*ungo,*	2. iii. b.
plico,	1. i. obs.	*sperno,*	1. iii. b.	*urgeo,*	2. ii.
pono,	1. iii. e.	*spondeo,*	3. ii.	*uro,*	2. iii. d.

Digitized by Google

§ 46. Irregular Deponents.

1. Two crudeforms, or Perfect Participle irregular.

Conj. 2.			
misereor pity,	*misertus* (*miserĭtus*).	*morior* die,	*mortuus.*
fateor confess,	*fassus.*	*patior* suffer,	*passus.*
reor suppose,	*rătus.*	*fruor* enjoy,	*fructus.*
		loquor speak,	*locutus.*
Conj. 3.		*sequor* follow,	*secutus.*
amplector embrace, so *complector.*	*amplexus.*	Conj. 4.	
labor glide,	*lapsus.*	*assentior* agree,	*assensus.*
nitor strive,	*nisus, nixus.*	*experior* try,	*expertus.*
queror complain,	*questus.*	*opperior* wait for,	*oppertus* (*opperītus*).
utor use,	*usus.*	*metior* measure,	*mensus.*
gradior walk,	*gressus.*	*ordior* begin,	*orsus.*
		orior arise,	*ortus.*

Obs. The verbs *loquor*, *sequor*, interchange the kindred letters *q* and *c*. *Queror* retains the older form with *s* in the Perfect. *Labor* is only irregular as making *sus* in the Perfect.

2. The Present having the form of an Inceptive.

(*apiscor*, *aptus*, rare) gain; whence *adipiscor*, *adeptus.*
expergiscor awake, *experrectus;* from *ex-per-rego.*
(*fatiscor* rare) grow weary, *fessus.*
irascor grow angry, *iratus.*
[*miniscor*], root [MEN] seen in *mens*, *memini*, *&c.* hence *comminiscor* invent, *commentus: reminiscor* remember.
nanciscor obtain, *nactus* or *nanctus.*
nascor am born, *natus:* originally *gnascor*, whence *agnatus*, *cognatus.*
obliviscor forget, *oblītus:* akin to *oblĭno*, *oblĭtum*, besmear.
paciscor bargain, *pactus.* See *pango.*
proficiscor proceed, *profectus.* From *pro-facio* make forward.
ulciscor avenge, (*ulctus,*) *ultus.*
vescor feed on, no Perfect.

Obs. Though all these verbs have an inceptive form, in some of them the inceptive meaning can hardly be traced.

Digitized by Google

Class II.

§ 47. Verbs irregular in particular tenses or persons.

1. *Possum* I am able.

Present.

S. *possum, potes, potest.* | P. *possŭmus, potestis, possunt.*

Imperfect.	Future.
potĕram, poteras, &c.	*potĕro, poteris,* &c.

Perfect.	Pluperfect.	Future-perfect.
potui, -isti.	*potueram, -eras.*	*potuero, -eris.*

[No Imperative.]

Subjunctive *or* Potential.

Present.

S. *possim, possis, possit.* | P. *possīmus, possītis, possint.*

Imperfect.	Perfect.	Pluperfect.
possem.	*potuerim.*	*potuissem.*

Infinitive, *posse.* Pres. *potens,* Participle.
potuisse. Perf. ——

Obs. 1.—*Possum* is compounded of *potis* able, and *sum;* the *t* of *potis* is assimilated in the tenses and persons which begin with *s;* as, *possum* for *pot-sum:* the initial *f* of the Perfects is lost; as, *potui* for *pot-fui;* and some tenses are contracted; as, *possem* for *potessem, posse* for *potesse.*

Obs. 2.—*Possum* has no Imperative, and no Future Infinitive. The Participle *potens* has become an Adj. in use.

2. *Vŏlo,* I am willing, or I wish, has two compounds, *nōlo* I am unwilling, and *mālo* I am more willing.

Obs.—*Nōlo* is for *non-volo: mālo* for *magis-volo, mavŏlo.*

Vŏlo, [VOL]. *Nōlo,* [NOL]. *Mālo,* [MAL].

Present.

Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
volo,	*volŭmus,*	*nolo,*	*nolŭmus,*	*malo,*	*malŭmus,*
vis,	*vultis,*	*nonvis,*	*nonvultis,*	*mavis,*	*mavultis,*
vult,	*volunt.*	*nonvult,*	*nolunt.*	*mavult,*	*malunt.*

The Imperfect and Future are regular, like Conj. 3.

The Perfects are *vŏlui, nōlui, mālui,* and from these the Pluperfect and Future-perfect are regularly formed.

Digitized by Google

Imperative.

[none]	S. *noli, nolīto,* *nolīto.* P. *nolīte, nolitote,* *nolunto.*	[none]

Subjunctive *or* Potential.

Present.

Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
vĕlim,	*velīmus,*	*nōlim,*	*nolīmus,*	*mālim,*	*malīmus,*
velis,	*velītis,*	*nolis,*	*nolītis,*	*malis,*	*malītis,*
velit,	*velint.*	*nolit,*	*nolint.*	*malit,*	*malint.*

Imperfect.

vellem, es, et.	*nollem, es, et.*	*mallem, es, et.*

The Perfect and Pluperfect are regular.

Infinitive.

velle, voluisse.	*nolle, noluisse.*	*malle, maluisse.*

Participles.

volens.	*nolens.*	[none]

Gerunds.

volendi, volendo.	*nolendi.*	[none]

3. *Edo* I eat, *ēdi, ēsum,* [ED].

Edo is conjugated regularly; but, besides the regular form, it has some parts like the tenses of *sum.*

Indicative—Present.

S. *ĕdo, edis, edit,* P. *edimus, editis, edunt.*
ēs, est. (pass. *estur*) *estis.*

Subjunctive—Imperfect.

S. *ĕdĕrem, ederes, ederet,* P. *ederemus, -etis, -ent,*
essem, esses, esset. *essemus, -etis, -ent.*

Imperative.		Infinitive.
S. *ede, edito,*	P. *edite, editote,*	*edere.*
ēs, esto.	*este, estote.*	*esse.*

4. *Fero* I bear, *tŭli, lātum,* [FER].

Fero is irregular in some tenses of the Active and Passive voices, from the omission of the connecting vowels in some persons; as, *fers, fert* for *feris, ferit.*

Digitized by Google

Active.	Passive.
Indicative—Present.	
fero, fers, fert, *ferĭmus, fertis, ferunt.*	*feror, ferris(e), fertur,* *ferĭmur, ferimini, feruntur.*
Imperative.	
fer, ferto, *ferto,* *ferte, fertote,* *ferunto.*	*ferre, fertor,* *fertor,* *ferimini, feriminor,* *feruntor.*
Subjunctive—Imperfect.	
ferrem, ferres, ferret.	*ferrer, ferrēris, ferrētur.*
Infinitive—Present.	
ferre.	*ferri.*

The other tenses are conjugated regularly.

5. *Fio* I become, or am made, [FI].

Fio is used as the Passive of *facio*, from which it takes the participles *factus*, and *faciendus*.

Obs.—The compounds of *facio*, when they change *a* into *i*, have a passive in *or*; as, *inficio, inficior*; but *calefacio, calefio*.

Fio is conjugated regularly like the 4th Conj., except that the Imperfect Subj. and Present Infin. have the connecting vowel *e* uncontracted.

Subjunctive—Imperfect.	Infinitive—Present.
fĭerem, fĭeres, &c.	*fĭeri.*

No Present Participle, Gerunds or Supines.

Obs.—Of the compounds the following are defective, *confit, confieri*, it is accomplished; *defit, defiunt, defiat, defieri*, it is wanting; *infit* he begins.

6. *Eo* I go, *ivi, ĭtum, ire*, [I].

The crudeform [I] becomes *e* before *a, o, u*.

Indicative—Present.

S. *eo, is, it.* P. *īmus, ītis, eunt.*

Imperfect.	Future.
ībam, ibas, ibat, &c.	*ibo, ibis, ibit*, &c.

Digitized by Google

Imperative.

S. *i, ito; ito.* P. *ite, itote; eunto.*

Present.	Subjunctive.	Imperfect.
eam, eas, eat, &c.	*irem, ires, iret,* &c.	

Infinitive.	Present.	Participle.
ire.		*iens, (euntis).*

Obs. 1.—The Perfect *ivi* and its derivatives are regular, but in compounds usually drop the *v;* as, *adii, perii.*

Obs. 2.—The Passive of *eo* is impersonal only; as, *itur, itum est;* but some compounds gain a transitive sense, and so have a personal passive; as, *adeo* approach, *adeor.*

The compound *ambio* go about, retains the *i* throughout.

Like *eo* are conjugated *queo* I can, *nequeo* I cannot.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs are divided into three classes.

I. Verbs which are defective in the Supine, Perfect, or Present.

II. Verbs which are defective in other tenses or persons.

III. Verbs which are defective in all persons except the third singular, and are called Impersonal.

Class I.

§ 48. Defective in Supine, Perfect, or Present.

1. Defective in the *Supine.*

(*a*) Almost all neuter verbs of Conj. 2. have no Supine;

aceo am sour.	*frigeo* am cold.	*oleo* smell.	*strideo* shriek.
albeo am white.	*frondeo* bloom.	*palleo* am pale.	*studeo* study.
algeo am chill.	*fulgeo* flash.	*pateo* lie open.	*stupeo* amazed.
areo am dry.	*horreo* shudder.	*paveo* dread.	*tabeo* pine.
calleo skilled.	*langueo* faint.	*puteo* stink.	*tepeo* am warm.
candeo glow.	*lateo* lie hid.	*rigeo* am stiff.	*torpeo* am dull.
caneo am hoary.	*luceo* shine.	*rubeo* am red.	*tumeo* swell.
conniveo wink.	*lugeo* mourn.	*sileo* am silent.	*turgeo* swell.
egeo need.	*madeo* am wet.	*sordeo* am dirty.	*vigeo* flourish.
ferveo glow.	*marceo* fade.	*splendeo* shine.	*vireo* am green.
floreo flourish.	*niteo* shine.	and others.	

Digitized by Google

(*b*) Several other verbs have no Supine; as,

ango vex.	*disco* learn.	*pluo* rain.	*serpo* creep.
arceo repel.	*lambo* lick.	*posco* demand.	*sido* settle.
compesco.	*lingo* lick.	*psallo* play.	*sisto* stop.
dispesco.	*luo* pay.	*raucio* hoarse.	*sterto* snore.
congruo agree.	*metuo* fear.	*refello* refute.	*timeo* fear.
ingruo attack.	*mico* glitter.	*rudo* bray.	*urgeo* urge.
incesso seize.	*ningo* snow.	*sapio* taste.	*viso* visit.
dego live.	[*nuo* nod] *ab.&c.*	*scabo* scratch.	*volo* wish.

Lines for Memory.

Posco, compesco, dispesco, raucio, disco,
Incesso, viso, serpo, ingruo, congruo, ningo,
Abnuo, lingo, luo, metuo, sterto, arceo, sido,
Ango, pluo, timeo, scabo, dego, psallo, refello,
Lambo, mico, sapio, rudo, urgeo, sisto, voloque.

Obs. 1. The compounds of *arceo, lingo, luo,* have Supines. The compounds of *cado* fall, have no Supines, except *incido, occido, recido.*

Obs. 2. *Metuo* has *metutum,* Lucr. v. 1139, and *luo* has *luiturus.*

2. Defective in the *Perfect* and *Supine.*

(*a*) Desideratives have no Perfect nor Supine.

Except *esurio* am hungry, *ivi, iturus; nupturio* desire to marry, *ivi; parturio* am in labour, *ivi.*

(*b*) Inceptives have mostly no Perfect nor Supine, except what belongs to the simple verb. They may be thus divided.

(*i*) *Derived from Verbs.*

Taking the Perfect and Supine of the simple verb; as, *ardesco* grow hot, from *ardeo, arsi, arsum.*

So *adolesco* &c.	*oleo.*	*convalesco,*	*valeo.*	*obdormisco,*	*dormio.*
coalesco,	*alo.*	*indolesco,*	*doleo.*	*revivisco,*	*vivo.*
concupisco,	*cupio.*	*inveterasco,*	*invetero.*	*scisco,*	*scio.*

Taking the Perfect of the simple verb, no Supine; as, *acesco* grow sour, *acui* from *aceo.*

So *albesco* fr.	*albeo.*	*hæresco* fr.	*hæreo.*	*resipisco* fr.	*sapio.*
aresco,	*areo.*	*horresco,*	*horreo.*	*rubesco,*	*rubeo.*
calesco,	*caleo.*	*irraucisco,*	*raucio.*	*senesco,*	*seneo.*
candesco,	*candeo.*	*languesco,*	*langueo.*	*stupesco,*	*stupeo.*
canesco,	*caneo.*	*liquesco,*	*liqueo.*	*tabesco,*	*tabeo.*
conticesco,	*taceo.*	*madesco,*	*madeo.*	*tepesco,*	*tepeo.*
extimesco,	*timeo.*	*marcesco,*	*marceo.*	*tremisco,*	*tremo.*
fervesco,	*ferveo.*	*occallesco,*	*calleo.*	*tumesco,*	*tumeo.*
floresco,	*floreo.*	*pallesco,*	*palleo.*	*viresco,*	*vireo.*
gemisco,	*gemo.*	*putresco,*	*putreo.*	and others.	

Digitized by Google

(*ii*) *Derived from Nouns.*

Taking a Perfect in *ui*, though there is no simple verb in *eo*; as, *crebresco* grow frequent, *crebrui* from *creber*.

So *crudesco*	fr. *crudus.*	*macresco*	fr. *macer.*	*obmutesco*	fr. *mutus.*
duresco,	*durus.*	*maturesco,*	*maturus.*	*obsurdesco,*	*surdus.*
evanesco,	*vanus.*	*nigresco,*	*niger.*	*vilesco,*	*vilis.*
innotesco,	*notus.*				

Without a Perfect or Supine; as, *ægresco* grow sick, from *æger*.

So *ditesco*	fr. *dives.*	*incurvesco*	fr. *curvus.*	*mollesco*	fr. *mollis.*
grandesco,	*grandis.*	*integrasco,*	*integer.*	*pinguesco,*	*pinguis.*
gravesco,	*gravis.*	*juvenesco,*	*juvenis.*	*puerasco,*	*puer.*
ignesco,	*ignis.*	*mitesco,*	*mitis.*	*teneresco,*	*tener.*

(*c*) Some neuters in *eo* have no Perfect nor Supine;

aveo desire.	*hebeo* am dull.	*mœreo* mourn.	*scateo* gush.
calveo am bald.	*humeo* wet.	*polleo* strong.	*squaleo* dirty.
flaveo yellow.	*liveo* pale.	*renideo* shine.	*vegeo* am gay.
fœteo stink.	[*mineo*]? whence *immineo* and *promineo*.		

also some other verbs; as,

ambigo doubt.	*furo* rage.	*plecto* lash.	†*temno* despise.
clango ring.	*glisco* increase.	†*plico* fold.	†*vado* go.
fatisco crack.	*hisco* gape.	*salio* salt.	*vergo* incline.
ferio strike.	*labo* totter.		

Lines for Memory.

Ambigo, clango, furo, ferio, labo, glisco, fatisco,
Plecto, hisco, vergo, temno, plico, salio, vado.

†Compounds of *plico, temno, vado,* have a Perfect and Supine.

Obs. A very few verbs have a Supine and no Perfect; as, *amicio,* clothe, *amictum; frendo* gnash, *fressum.*

3. Defective in the Present.

1. *Cœpi*	2. *Memĭni*	3. *Novi*	4. *Odi*
I have begun.	I remember.	I know.	I hate.

Obs.—These verbs have all the Derivatives of the Perfect. *Cœpi,* from the obsolete *cœpio,* keeps the Perfect meaning "I have begun;" but *memini, novi, odi,* gain the meaning of a Present.

1. *Cœpi* has the participles Fut. Act. *cœpturus;* Perf. Pass. *cœptus.*

Digitized by Google

2. *Memini* has an Imperative *memento, mementote.* It is a reduplicated Perfect from the root [MEN] seen in *mens, reminiscor.* &c.; hence *memini* "I have fixed in my mind,"=I remember.

3. *Novi* is only the Perfect of *nosco* I observe; hence *novi* "I have observed"=I know from observation.

4. *Odi* has the Fut. Act. participle *osurus;* and derivatives *exosus, perosus,* with an active meaning "hating."

Class II.

§ 49. Defective in other tenses or persons.

Many verbs considered regular are deficient in certain tenses or persons; thus *cupe* is not found from *cupio, dor* from *do, putatus sum* from *puto;* but those only are called *Defective Verbs,* which have more marked deficiencies.

1. *Aio* I say, [AI].

Indicative.

S. Present.	Imperfect.	Perfect.
S. *aio, aïs, aït.*	S. *aiebam, -bas,* &c.	S. — — *aït.*
P. — — *aiunt.*	P *aiebamus,* &c.	

Subjunctive—Present.

S. — *aias, aiat.* P. — — *aiant.*

2. *Inquam* I say, [INQUI].

Present. (Indicative.)	Imperfect.
S. *inquam, inquis, inquit,*	S. *inquiebam, -bas,* &c.
P. *inquĭmus, -ĭtis, -iunt.*	P. *inquiebamus,* &c.

Future.	Perfect.
S. — *inquies, inquiet,*	S. — *inquisti, inquit.*
P. — — —	P. — *inquistis,* —

Imperative.

S. *inquĕ, inquĭto.* P. *inquĭte.*

Subjunctive—Present.

S. — *inquias, inquiat.* | P. — *inquiatis, inquiant.*

Obs.—Inquam is used only *between* words quoted, while *ait, aiunt,* is mostly found in the *oratio obliqua.*

Digitized by Google

3. [*For*], *fari* to speak, [FA].

Fari with its compounds *affari, effari, profari,* is mostly used by Poets.

The most common parts are,

fatur, fare, fatus,-a,-um, fari, fando.

The following are also found, *fantur, fabor, fandi, affamur, affamini, affabar, effabor,-bĕris,* &c. *fandus* occurs only in *fandum et nefandum* right and wrong.

4. *Quæso, quæsŭmus,* I beseech you.

Originally the same as *quæro.* It is mostly inserted in another sentence.

5. Some defective Imperatives.

Apăgĕ,	*Avē,*	*Salvē,*	*Valē,*
begone.	hail.	hail.	farewell.

Obs.—*Apage* is the Greek Imperative ἄπαγε from ἀπάγω. *Salve* is from the old verb *salveo* I am well or safe. Plaut. Truc. ii. 2. 4. *Salvēto, salvēte, salvēbis, salvēre,* are also found in the sense of "hail." *Ave, vale,* are only the regular Imperatives of *aveo, valeo.*

6. *Cĕdo*

give, tell, let us have.

CLASS III.

§ 50. *Impersonal Verbs.*

Impersonal Verbs are used only in the third person singular, and do not have a noun for their subject.

Oportet it is right, [OPORTE].

Indicative.

Pr. *oportet.*	Imp. *oportebat.*	F. *oportebit.*
P. *oportuit.*	Plu. *oportuerat.*	F. P. *oportuerit.*

Impersonal Verbs have no *Imperatives.*

Subjunctive.

P. *oporteat.* I. *oporteret.* P. *oportuerit.* Pl. *oportuisset.*

Infinitive.

Pres. *oportēre.* Perf. *oportuisse.*

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1.—The true Impersonals are principally the following,

decet it becomes	*liquet* it is plain	*pœnitet* it repents
libet it pleases	*miseret* it pities	*pudet* it shames
licet it is allowed	*piget* it grieves	*tædet* it wearies.

Some, and probably all, of these Impersonals were originally personal verbs in *eo*. *Misereo, pudeo*, &c., are found in Ennius and Plautus; and some, even in later authors, approached the usage of personal verbs. [See *Syntax.*]

Obs. 2.—Many Verbs, which have the other persons, are used impersonally in the 3rd; sometimes with a slight difference of meaning; as, *accedo* I approach, *accedit* it is added.

accĭdit it happens	*expedit* it profits	*pertinet* it belongs
attinet it belongs	*fallit, fugit,* it [escapes me.	*placet* it pleases
constat it is agreed		*præstat* it is better
contingit it happens	*fit* it happens	*rĕfert* it concerns
convenit it suits	*interest* it concerns	*restat* it remains
evenit it occurs	*juvat* it delights	*vacat* there is time.

Obs. 3.—Verbs denoting changes in the weather, &c., are often used as Impersonals, from the omission of *Deus, cœlum, dies*, &c.; as, *pluit* it rains, *ningit* it snows, *lucescit* it dawns.

Obs. 4.—Some Impersonals have a second Perfect with a passive form; as, *libet, libuit,* or *libitum est.*

So *licet, -uit, -itum est* | *piget, -uit, -itum est.* | *pudet, -uit, -itum est.*

miseret, (*miseruit* rare,) also *miseretur, miseritum est.*

placet, placuit, placitum est. | *tædet,* (*tæduit,*) *pertæsum est.*

Obs. 5.—Passive Impersonals are the passives of neuter verbs, used as a general statement of an act done, without any distinct subject; as, *itur, concurritur.* See § 36, *Obs.* 1, and *Syntax.*

Obs. 6.—Impersonals have mostly no Participles. There are some exceptions; as, *libens* or *lubens; licens, -iturus; pœnitens, -iturus, -itendus; pigens, -endus; pudens* Adj. *pudendus.*

§ 51. Compound Verbs.

1. Compound Verbs are mostly formed with prepositions; as, *ad-moneo, ex-audio.*

Obs. For the changes then made in the Preposition, see § 54, d.

2. In verbs compounded the short vowels *ă, ĕ,* are often changed; see *Rules of Euphony.*

Digitized by Google

Rule i. Short *ă* before two consonants is changed into *ĕ;* as, *arceo,* drive away, *ex-erceo.*

So [*cando*], *accen-do* kindle	*fallo* deceive	*lacto* entice	*patro* perform
	farcio stuff	*pario* produce	*sacro* devote
capto catch at	*fatiscor* weary	*partio* divide	*scando* climb
carpo pluck	*gradior* walk	*pasco* feed	*spargo* scatter
damno condemn	*jacto* toss	*patior* suffer	*tracto* handle.

Note.—*Fatiscor, gradior, pario, patior,* have the *ă* followed by only one consonant; see § 3, *a.* 2. Rule iii.

Rule ii. Short *ă* before one consonant is changed into *ĭ;* as, *ăgo* drive, *ab-ĭgo.*

So [*apiscor*] get	*frango* break	*rapio* snatch	*taceo* am silent
cado fall	*jacio* cast	*salio* leap	*tango* touch
cano sing	*lateo* lie hid	[*lacio*] draw	*sero, sătum,* sow
capio take	*pango* fasten	*sapio* taste	*do, dătum,* give.
facio make	*placeo* please	*statuo* set up	

Note.—*Frango, pango, tango,* have the *ă* followed by two consonants; but the *n* does not belong to the root, and probably only gave a nasal sound to the *g.*

Rule iii. Short *ĕ* before one consonant is changed into *ĭ;* as, *egeo* want, *ind-igeo.*

So *emo* buy	*premo* press	*sedeo* sit	*dedi* gave
lego read	*rego* rule	*teneo* hold	*steti* stood
			[*specio*] look.

Rule iv. The diphthong *æ* is changed into *ī* in the three verbs, *cædo* slay, *lædo* hurt, *quæro* seek; as, *con-cīdo, e-līdo, in-quīro.*

(*a*) When *ă* comes before two consonants in the *Supine,* it is changed into *e,* though *i* appears in the Present; as, *cănо, cantum; succĭno, succentum.*

So with *capio, captum; facio, factum; jacio, jactum; rapio, raptum;* and from [*lacio*] *allicio, allectum.*

But the Supine of *ago, actum; frango, fractum; pango, pactum; tango, tactum;* remains unchanged; as, *ex-igo, exactum.* And *salio, saltum,* becomes *sultum;* as, *in-silio, in-sultum.*

(*b*) When *ă* or *ĕ* becomes *long* in the *Perfect* or *Supine,* it remains unchanged in those parts of the verb; though *i* appears in the Present; as, *ăgo, ēgi; ex-ĭgo, ex-ēgi; căndo, cāsum; oc-cĭdo, oc-cāsum.*

So with *căpio, cēpi*	*făcio, fēci*	*frango, frēgi*	*jăcio, jēci*
ĕmo, ēmi	[*lăcio, lexi*]	*lĕgo, lēgi*	*prĕmo, pressi.*
rĕgo, rexi	*sĕdeo, sēdi*	[*spĕcio, spexi*]	

Digitized by Google

(*c*) Much variety is thus seen in such compounds;

ago; ex-ĭgo, -ēgi, -actum.	*lego; de-lĭgo, -lēgi, -lectum.*
cado; oc-cĭdo, -cĭdi, -cāsum.	*pango; im-pingo, -pactum.*
cano; suc-cĭno, -cinui, -centum.	*premo; de-primo, -pressi, pressum.*
capio; re-cĭpio, -cēpi, -ceptum.	*rapio; di-rĭpio, -rĭpui, -reptum.*
emo; ad-ĭmo, -ēmi, -emptum.	*rego; di-rĭgo, -rexi, -rectum.*
facio; in-fĭcio, -fēci, -fectum.	*salio; in-sĭlio, -silui, -sultum.*
frango; in-fringo. frēgi. fractum	*sedeo; ob-sĭdeo, -sēdi, -sessum.*
jacio; e-jĭcio, -jēci, -jectum.	[*specio*]; *in-spĭcio, -spexi, -spectum.*
[*lacio*]; *al-lĭcio, -lexi, -lectum.*	*tango; at-tingo, -tĭgi, -tactum.*

3. Some compounds deviate a little from the general Rules.—The following may be noticed.

Obs. 1.—Some compounds of *ago* retain *a;* as, *perago, satago.* Others contract it; as, *de-ago, dego; co-ago, cogo.*

Obs. 2.—Some compounds of *pango* and *placeo* retain *a;* as, *depango, oppango, circumpango, repango; complaceo, perplaceo.*

Obs. 3.—*Facio* changes *a* into *i* only when compounded with a preposition or other particle; as, *inficio, olfacio.*

Obs. 4.—*Lego* retains its vowels when compounded with *re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad;* as, *relĕgo, perlĕgo.*

Obs. 5.—Some compounds of *rego* are syncopated in the Present; as, *pergo, per-rexi; surgo, sur-rexi.*

Obs. 6.—The compounds of *calco* tread, *quatio* shake, *salto* dance, change *a* into *u;* as, *inculco, percutio, resulto.*

Obs. 7.—The compounds of *claudo* shut, *lavo* wash, cast out the *a;* as, *occludo, deluo.*

4.—Some verbs are found only in composition; *as,* [*miniscor*] mind, whence *comminiscor, reminiscor.*

So *cando* light, *ac-, in-cendo.*	*niveo* wink, *con-niveo.*
cello thrust, *per-, ex-cello,* &c.	*nuo* nod, *ab-, in-, re-nuo.*
fendo strike, *de-, of-fendo.*	*oleo* grow, *ab-, ad-oleo,* &c.
†*fligo* dash, *af-, con-fligo,* &c.	*pello, āre,* speak, *ap-pello,* &c.
gruo rush? *con-, in-gruo.*	*pleo* fill, *com-, im-pleo,* &c.
†*lacio* lure, *al-, e-licio,* &c.	*specio* look, *ad-, in-spicio,* &c.
leo blot, *de-leo.*	†*stinguo, dis-, ex-stinguo,* &c.
nideo shine, *re-nideo.*	*uo* clothe, (ἔννυμι), *ex-uo.*

Imbuo may be from ὕω wet, rain; and *induo* from δύω go in.

† Used by Lucretius, but rare and obsolete.

Digitized by Google

PARTICLES.

Particles are Adverbs, Conjunctions, Prepositions, and Interjections.

§ 52. Adverbs.

Adverbs denote the *manner* in which an action is performed, or in which a state exists; as, *scribit bene* he writes well, *diu dormit* he sleeps long.

(*a*) *Different kinds of Adverbs.*

1. Derived from Adjectives.—A very large number of Adverbs are derived from adjectives, and express the quality which the adjective describes; as, *doctus* learned, *docte* learnedly; *sapiens* wise, *sapienter* wisely.

Obs.—Some Adjectives, from their meaning, do not admit of an Adverb, such as those which denote a material or colour. Others, though the meaning would allow it, are not found with adverbs formed from them; as, *dirus*, *discors*, *rudis*, *trux*, &c.

2. Cases of Nouns.—Some adverbs are evidently the cases of substantives; as,

Dat. *foris* abroad, *vespĕri* in the evening.

Acc. *foras* abroad, *alias* at another time.

Abl. *hodie* to-day, *noctu* by night, *forte* by chance.

3. Pronominal Adverbs.—A number of particles are derived from pronouns, and may be used as adverbs or conjunctions; as, *quo* whither, *inde* thence.

4. Primitive Adverbs.—Some adverbs seem to be *primitives*, or not derived from any other words; as, *sæpe* often, *satis* enough, *cras* to-morrow.

Obs. 1.—Adverbs not derived from Adj. may be divided into,

(*a*) Adverbs of quantity; as *parum* little, *satis* enough, *abunde* abundantly, *nimis* too much.

(*b*) Of time; as, *nunc* now, *tunc* or *tum* then, *hodie* to-day, *cras* to-morrow, *heri* yesterday, *jam* now, *mane* in the morning.

(*c*) Of place; as, *ubi* where, *ibi* there, *quo* whither, *eo* thither, *longe* afar, *hic* here, *huc* hither, *hinc* hence.

(*d*) Of affirmation; as, *ita* thus, *sic* so, *quidem* indeed, *profecto* truly, *nempe* certainly.

(*e*) Of negation; as *non* no, *immo* nay, *nunquam* never.

And many others which cannot be reduced to precise heads.

Obs. 2.—Most Prepositions were originally adverbs, and many continued to be so used; as, *ante* before, *post* afterwards.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) *The Comparison of Adverbs.*

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives admit of comparison; and the usual termination is,

for the comparative *ius;* for the superlative *issimè.*

2. Adverbs follow in their comparison the forms and varieties of their respective adjectives.

Obs. 1.—The Adj. *major* has adverb *magis; potior* has *potius* and *potissimum; primus* has *primum* or *-o;* and *meritissimus, tutissimus,* have *meritissimo* or *-e, tutissimo* or *-e.*

Obs. 2.—A few not derived from Adj. admit of comparison; as, *diu,* long, *diutius, diutissimè.* | *sæpe,* often, *sæpius, sæpissimè.*
satis enough, *satius.* | *sĕcus,* otherwise, *secius.*

§ 53. CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions are used to connect together different words and sentences.

Obs.—Conjunctions may be divided according to their signification into the following heads:—

(*a*) *Copulative,* which connect objects that are to be considered conjointly; as, *et, ac, que, atque,* and; *nec, neque,* neither, nor; *et,—et,* both,—and.

(*b*) *Disjunctive,* which connect objects that are to be considered separately; as, *aut, vel, ve,* or, either; *seu, sive,* whether; *utrum,—an,* whether,—or.

(*c*) *Comparative,* expressing a comparison; as, *ut, sicut, velut,* as; *quam* as, than; *tanquam, quasi, ut si,* as if.

(*d*) *Admissive,* expressing a concession; as, *etsi, tametsi, quanquam, quamvis, licet,* although; *quamlibet* as you please.

(*e*) *Conditional,* expressing a condition; as, *si* if; *sin* but if; *nisi* unless; *dummodo* provided that.

(*f*) *Illative,* expressing an inference; as, *ergo* so then; *igitur, itaque,* therefore; *idcirco, propterea,* on this account; *quare, quapropter, quamobrem,* wherefore; *unde* whence.

(*g*) *Causal,* expressing a cause or reason; as, *nam, enim,* for; *quia, quod,* because; *quoniam, quando,* since.

(*h*) *Intentional,* expressing a purpose; as, *ut* that; *quo,* in order that; *ne, ut ne,* lest, that not; *neu, neve,* nor, and lest.

(*i*) *Adversative,* expressing opposition; as, *sed, autem,* but; *at* yet; *atqui* and yet; *attamen* but yet.

(*k*) *Temporal,* expressing time; as, *quum, quando,* when; *simul, simul ac,* as soon as; *postquam* after that; *dum* whilst; *donec* until.

(*l*) *Interrogative,* simply expressing a question; as, *num, ne, an,* whether?

Digitized by Google

§ 54. Prepositions.

1. Prepositions are placed before substantives to mark their *relation* to other nouns or verbs.

Obs.—The principal relations which prepositions express, are—
1. *Motion towards;* as, *ad, erga, tenus, versus.*
2. *Motion from;* as, *a, ab, e, ex, de.*
3. *Precedence;* as, *ante, præ, pro, super, supra.*
4. *Posteriority;* as, *post, pone, infra, sub, subter, secundum.*
5. *Union;* as, *apud, cum, coram, circum, prope, juxta.*
6. *Opposition;* as, *adversus, contra, ob.*
7. *Inclusion;* as, *in, inter, intra.*
8. *Exclusion;* as, *absque, sine, extra, clam.*
9. *Transition;* as, *cis, citra, per, præter, trans.*

2. The following are the principal prepositions.

(*a*) *Prepositions with the Accusative.*

ad to.	*erga* towards.	*post* after.
apud with.	*extra* without.	*præter* beside.
ante before.	*infra* beneath.	*prope* near.
adversus, -sum, against.	*inter* among.	*propter* near, on account of.
cis, citra, on this side.	*intra* within.	*secundum* after, according to.
circa, circum, around.	*juxta* near.	*supra* above.
circiter about.	*ob* on account of.	*trans* across.
contra against.	*penes* in the power of.	*versus* towards.
	per through.	*ultra* beyond.
	pone behind.	

(*b*) *Prepositions with the Ablative.*

a, ab, abs, from, by.	*e, ex,* out of, from.
absque without.	*præ* before, owing to.
coram in the presence of.	*pro* for, before.
cum with.	*sine* without.
de down from, concerning.	*tenus* up to.

(*c*) *Prepositions with the Acc. and Abl.*

in, with Acc. into, against:—with Abl. in, on.
super, with Acc. above:—with Abl. upon, concerning.
sub, (or *subter,*) under, beneath.

Digitized by Google

(*d*) *Prepositions in Composition.*

Prepositions in composition often change their final consonants, especially by assimilating them to the consonant which follows. [See *Rules of Euphony.*]

The following particulars may be noticed.

1. A, ab, abs.—*A* is used before *m, sp, v;* as, *a-mitto, a-spernor, a-verto: Ab* before vowels, and *d, j, l, n, r, s;* as, *ab-eo, ab-duco, ab-jungo, ab-luo, ab-nuo, ab-ripio, ab-sumo: Abs* before *c, p, t;* as, *abs-condo, as-porto* for *abs-, abs-traho. Ab* becomes *au* before *f* in *au-fero,* but *ab-fui* keeps the *b.*

2. Ad.—*Ad* assimilates its *d,* except when it comes before *b, j, m, v;* as, *ad-bibo, ad-jungo, ad-mitto, ad-verto;* but *ac-curro, ad-duco, af-fero, ag-gero, al-ludo, an-nuo, ap-pono, ac-quiro, ar-ripio, as-sentio, at-traho;* yet *d* is kept in *ad-sum, ad-fui,* &c.

3. Cum.—*Com* is used for *cum* in composition, and remains unchanged before *b, m, p;* as, *com-bibo, com-mitto, com-pono:* The *m* is assimilated before the liquids, *l, n, r;* as *col-ludo, con-niveo, cor-ripio;* and changed into *n* before other consonants; as, *con-cludo, con-duco, con-fero, con-gero, con-jungo, con-quiro, con-sentio, con-tingo, con-verto.*

Com drops the *m* before vowels; as, *co-eo:* So *circum* makes *circu-eo,* otherwise *m* is retained; as, *circum-ago.*

4. E, ex.—*Ex* is used before vowels and *c, p, q, s, t;* as, *ex-eo, ex-cudo, ex-pono, ex-quiro, ex-scindo, ex-traho: E* is used before the other consonants; as, *e-bibo, e-duco, e-gredior, e-jicio, e-ludo, e-mitto, e-nitor, e-ripio, e-vinco:* before *f* the *x* is assimilated; as, *ef-fero.*

5. In.—*In* changes the *n* into *m* before the *b, p;* as, *im-bibo, im-pono:* the *n* is assimilated before *l, m, n, r;* as, *il-lido, im-mitto, in-nuo, ir-ruo.*

6. Ob.—*Ob* assimilates *b* before *c, f, p,* and loses it before *m;* as, *oc-curro, of-fero, op-pono, o-mitto;* so *os-tendo* for *obs-tendo.*

7. Per.—*Per* and *inter* sometimes assimilate the *r* before *l;* as, *pel-licio, intel-ligo: per* drops the *r* in *pe-jero.*

8. Post.—*Post* loses *st* in *po-mœrium* and *po-meridianus. Pro* adds *d* before a vowel; as, *prod-eo.*

9. Sub.—*Sub* assimilates the *b* before *c, f, g, m, p, q, r;* as, *suc-cedo, suf-ficio, sug-gero, sum-moveo, sup-pono, suc-cutio, sur-ripio:* the *b* is sometimes retained before *m* and *r;* as, *sub-mitto, sub-rideo:* in *su-spicio,* the *b* is lost.

10. Trans.—*Trans* generally becomes *tra* before *d, j, l, n;* as, *tra-do, tra-jicio, tra-loquor, tra-no.*

11. Some ending in *a* have a corresponding form in *o;* thus,

circa,	*citra,*	*contra,*	*extra,*	*intra,*	*ultra,*	——
circo,	*citro,*	*contro,*	*extro,*	*intro,*	*ultro,*	*retro.*

Digitized by Google

§ 55. Interjections.

Interjections express a sudden emotion; as,

Joy; *io* ha! *evoe!* Grief; *væ* woe! *heu, eheu, hei,* alas!

Praise; *euge* bravo! Surprise; *o, en, ecce,* behold! *hem!*

Calling; *heus* hark' ye! *ohe! ehodum! eia!*

Many other words are occasionally used as interjections; as, *pax! malum! perii!*

§ 56. Inseparable Particles.

Some particles are only found in compound words.

1. *An, am, amb,* (Greek ἀμφὶ,) "on both sides,"—hence always implying something *twofold;* as, *an-ceps* doubtful, [having two heads.] *An* is used before *c, f, q;* as, *an-ceps, an-fractus, an-quiro: am* before *p,* [or *b*]; as, *am-plector: amb* before vowels; as, *amb-io.*

2. *Di, dis,* [*duo* two,] "asunder,"—implying division or separation; as, *di-gero* arrange. *Di* is used before *g, l, m, n, r, sp, v;* as, *di-gero, di-ligo, di-minuo, di-numero, di-ripio, di-spergo, di-verto: dis* is used before *c, j, p, q, s, t;* as, *dis-curro, dis-jungo, dis-pono, dis-quiro, dis-sentio, dis-traho.* The *s* is assimilated before *f;* as, *dif-fero: di* is sometimes used before *j,* and *dis* before *r;* as, *di-judico, dis-rumpo.*

3. *In,* (Greek *a, αν*) "negation," as, *im-purus* impure: *in* is used generally with adjectives, and implies the *opposite* of the simple word. The *n* is changed in the same way as that of *in* the preposition; as, *im-purus, il-læsus.*

4. *Ne,* (Greek *νε*) "negation;" as, *ne-fas,* wickedness, [not-lawfulness].

5. *Re, red,* "back" or "again;" as, *red-do* restore, [give again]. The *d* generally used before vowels; as, *red-eo, re-mitto, red-do.*

Such words as *relliquiæ, rettuli,* are probably from *red-liquiæ, red-tuli.*

6. *Se,* [*secus, ἑκὰς,*] "removal" or "separation:" with verbs "aside;" as, *se-duco* seduce, [draw aside]: with adjectives "without;" as, *se-curus* careless, [without care].

7. *Ve* "badly,"—hence sometimes *negation;* as, *ve-grandis* clumsy, [awkwardly great]; *ve-sanus* insane.

Digitized by Google

FORMATION OF WORDS.

§ 57. Roots.

1. Words of all kinds are derived from some Root or Stem.

2. A Root is that part which remains after taking away from a whole family of kindred words all the parts which are different in each; thus AC is the Root of *ac-us, ac-ies, ac-idus, ac-iditas, ex-ac-uo.*

3. The root expresses the *leading idea* or *general meaning,* which runs through all the kindred words; thus Ac expresses the general meaning of "sharpness."

4. In forming words, some are derived directly from the root; as, *acus, acidus,* from Ac: others are derived from words already formed; as, *aciditas* from *acidus.*

5. Hence there are primary, secondary, tertiary formations, &c., which may be thus arranged.

Root AC, point or sharpness.

Derivations.

PRIMARY.	SECONDARY.	TERTIARY.
AC-us needle,	*ACu-arius* needleman. *ACu-la* (dim.) *ACu-leus* sting,	*ACule-atus* having a sting.
AC-uo sharpen,	*ACu-tus* sharp, *ACu-men* point,	*ACut-è* acutely. *ACumin-o* make pointed.
AC-ies edge.		
AC-eo am sour,	*ACe-sco* grow sour. *ACe-tum* vinegar,	*ACet-abulum* vinegar-cruet.
AC-idus sour,	*ACid-ulus* (dim.) *ACid-è* sourly. *ACid-itas* sourness.	
AC-er sharp,	*ACri-ter* sharply. *ACri-tas* sharpness. *ACri-tudo* harshness. *ACri-monia* harshness. *ACer-bus* bitter,	*ACerb-è* bitterly. *ACerb-o* embitter. *ACerb-itas* bitterness.

Digitized by Google

§ 58. Classes of Words.

1. Independently of the endings which mark cases, tenses, persons, &c., words of all kinds are found, with certain affixes or terminations which have been added to the Root to form the words.

2. Each of these terminations has a particular force and meaning of its own, whatever may be the root, or other part of the word, to which it is joined; thus *amā-tor, monĭ-tor, vic-tor, janĭ-tor,* have all the same affix *tor,* and with the same meaning.

3. Thus Classes of words may be formed by arranging together those which have the same endings, and marking their signification.

4. Classes of words may thus be formed with substantives, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, and particles.

§ 59. Classes of Substantives.

(*a*) Persons.

1. A *male agent* or *doer.*

-tor; as, *ama-tor* lover, *vic-tor* conqueror, *jani-tor* porter.
Formed like the Supine of a corresponding Verb, and have *s* instead of *t* when the Supine has; as, *tondeo* shear, *tonsum, ton-sor* barber. Yet neither these, nor any other substantives which take the form of the Supine, have any necessary connexion with *verbs;* as may be seen in *janitor* from *janua* door; *prætor* ruler from *præ* before.

2. A *female agent* or *doer.*

-trix; as, *vic-trix* conqueror, *jani-trix* portress.
Formed like the masculine; but when the mas. ends in *sor,* the fem. retains the *s;* as, *ton-sor, ton-strix: expul-sor* however makes *expul-trix.*
A few agents have *ter, tra;* and *ius* or *io, ia;* as, *magis-ter* master, *magis-tra; lud-ius* or *lud-io* player, *lud-ia.*

3. *One who is in a state* denoted by the Root.

-sul; as, *con-sul* one who is *with* another in office; *exul,* (for *ex-sul,*) one who is *out* of his country.
Used especially with prepositions; as, *con-sul, ex-sul, præ-sul.*

Digitized by Google

(*b*) Things.

1. The *thing done* or *passive object.*

-tum; as, *cogita-tum* a thought, *dic-tum* a saying.
Formed like the Supine of Verbs.

2. The thing which *exhibits the action* of the Root, whether actively or passively.

-mentum; as, *adju-mentum* help, (that which *helps*);
frag-mentum fragment, (that which *has been broken.*)

-men; as, *teg-men* covering, (that which *covers*);
ag-men marching army, (that which *is led* forward.)
Sometimes *i* or *u* is a connecting vowel; as, *regĭ-men, tegŭ-men.*

-umnus or *-umna;* as, *al-umnus* nursling, (that which is *nourished* or *nursed.*)
col-umna column, (that which supports.)
So *aut-umnus* for *auct-umnus* from *augeo,* the season which *increases* the fruits of the earth; *ær-umna* for *ægr-umna* from *æger* sick.
These endings are sometimes used indifferently; as, *tegmen* or *tegumentum; columen* or *columna.*

3. That which *acts the part of,* or *is like,* the Root.

-āgo; as, *im-ago* image, (which *imitates*); *vir-ago* from *vir.*
-īgo; „ *vert-igo* giddiness, (turning round, *verto.*)
-ūgo; „ *lan-ugo* down, (soft hair like wool, *lana.*)
Some of these may be regarded as denoting an *act* or *state.*

4. The *instrument* with which anything is done.

-trum; as, *ara-trum* plough, from *aro.*
Sometimes a *passive object;* as, *spec-trum* thing seen.

-ŭlum; as, *vinc-ulum* bond, from *vincio.*
For other terminations denoting an instrument, see the next head.

(*c*) Places.

1. The place *where an agent acts.*

-torium; as, *dormi-torium* sleeping-room.
Formed from the Agent; as, *dormitor, dormitorium:* they are really *neuter adjectives.*

-trīna; as, *tons-trina* barber's shop.
Not always formed from the agent; as, *la-trina* washhouse, from *lavo:* some end in *īna;* as, *fod-ina* mine, from *fodio.* Some of these words do not mean a place; as, *doc-trina,* learning.

Digitized by Google

2. The place *appropriated to any particular object.*

-ētum; as, *quero-etum* oak-grove, *vin-etum* vineyard.
-arium; virid-arium green-house, *viol-arium* violet-bed.
These words generally mean a place where something *grows.* But words in *arium* do not always mean a place; sometimes *stipendium* pay, or *tempus* time, is to be supplied; as, *cloac-arium* scavenger's pay, *annivers-arium* anniversary.
-ile; as, *ov-ile* sheepfold, *fœn-ile* hay-loft.

3. (*a*) The *place* of an action.
(*b*) An *action* or *state.*

-ium; as, (*a*) *comit-ium* place of assembling, (*cum, eo.*)
(*b*) *arbitr-ium* decision, *gaud-ium* joy. [See also *d.* 3, *b.*]

4. (*a*) The *place* of an action.
(*b*) The *instrument* or *means.*

-bŭlum; as, (*a*) *sta-bulum* stall, (from *sto.*)
(*b*) *pa-bulum* fodder, (from *pasco.*)
-cŭlum; as, (*a*) *cœna-culum* supper-room, (from *cœna.*)
(*b*) *oper-culum* lid or cover, (from *operio.*)
When there is an *l* in the Root
bulum becomes *-brum;* as, (*a*) *delu-brum* shrine, (from *deluo.*)
(*b*) *fla-brum* blast, (from *flo.*)
culum becomes *-crum;* as, (*a*) *lava-crum* bath, (from *lavo.*)
(*b*) *ful-crum* prop, (from *fulcio.*)
-bra may be used without an *l;* as, *late-bra* hiding-place, *tere-bra* gimlet.

(*d*) Abstract Words.

1. An *action,*—(*a*) the *act of doing.*

-tio; as, *cuncta-tio* delaying, *lec-tio* reading.
-tus; as, *audi-tus* hearing, *can-tus* singing.
Formed like the Supine and taking *s* instead of *t,* when the Supine does; as, *concursum, concur-sio, lusum, lu-sus.*
Some verbals in *io* do not take the form of the Supine; and they generally have a *passive* meaning; as, *reg-io* a country *ruled over,* from *rego.*

(*b*) The *act* or the *thing done,* either meaning.

-tūra; as, *pic-tura* painting, or a picture.
Formed like the Supine; as, (*metior, mensum*), *men-sura* measure. Some denote a *State;* as, *dicta-tura* dictatorship.
-ēla; as, *quer-ela* complaining, or a complaint.

Digitized by Google

(*c*) An *act, state,* or *feeling.*

-or; as, *clam-or* shout, *rub-or* redness, *am-or* love.
Generally formed from a verb, which determines the particular meaning.

2. A *quality* (formed from adjectives).

-ia; as, *audac-ia* boldness, (from *audax.*)
-ies; ,, *minut-ies* minuteness, (*minutus.*)
-itia; ,, *just-itia* justice, (*justus.*)
-ities; ,, *moll-ities* softness, (*mollis.*)
-itudo; ,, *mult-itudo* multitude, (*multus.*)
-itas; ,, *suav-itas* sweetness, (*suavis.*)
Some words in *tas* omit the connecting vowel; as, *paupertas* poverty: the *i* is changed into *e*, when the Adj. ends in *ius;* as, *pius, pie-tas:* and Adj. in *stus* take *as* only instead of *itas;* as, *honestus, honest-as.*
A few end in *tus*, or in *ēdo, īdo*, and are not formed from Adjectives; as, *virtus* virtue, *frig-edo* cold, *cup-ido* desire.
Some Abstract words drop into a *concrete* meaning; as, *multitudo* a multitude, or number of *persons.*

3. A State.—(*a*) A *state* or *condition.*

-monium; as, *matri-monium* matrimony.
-monia; ,, *parsi-monia* parsimony.
Also with other meanings; as, *patri-monium* inheritance from a father; *quere-monia* a complaint.

(*b*) A *state* or *office.*

-atus; as, *consul-atus* consulship, (from *consul.*)
-ium; ,, *sacerdot-ium* priesthood, (*sacerdos.*)
Formed from other nouns; and sometimes meaning a *collection* or *body of persons;* as, *sen-atus* senate, assembly of *senes; conviv-ium* feast, assembly of *convivæ.* [See also *c*, 3.]

(*e*) Patronymics.

A *Patronymic* is a name formed from the name of a father or ancestor, and is used in *poetry.*

1. Latin Patronymics are Greek words, and take the usual forms which are found in Greek. [See Gr. Gr. § 106, *e.*]

Thus masculine Patronymics end in

-ĭdes from ιδης; as, *Hyrtacides* son of Hyrtacus.
-ădes — αδης; ,, *Hippotades* son of Hippotas.
-ĭădes — ιαδης; ,, *Anchisiades* son of Anchises.

Digitized by Google

feminine Patronymics end in

-as from *ας*; as, *Thestias* daughter of Thestius.
-is — *ις*; ,, *Tyndaris* daughter of Tyndarus.
-īnē — *ινη*; ,, *Nerine* daughter of Nereus.
-ōnē — *ωνη*; ,, *Acrisione* daughter of Acrisius.

2. Some, really Latin Patronymics, are merely adjectives; as *Saturnius* son of Saturn. *Saturnia* daughter of Saturn.

3. The names of Nymphs have the form of Patronymics; as, *Orēas, Orēădĕs* Mountain-nymphs.

Naïs, Naïdes Naiads. | *Oceanis, Oceanĭtĭdĕs* Ocean-nymphs.

(*f*) Diminutives.

Diminutives are formed from other nouns, and denote *smallness in size,* and thence either *affection* or *contempt.*

1. Diminutives generally end in

-ŭlus, -a, -um, when the Primitive is Dec. 1. or 2.; as *puer* boy, *puer-ulus; ara* altar, *ar-ula; scutum* shield, *scut-ulum.*
When a vowel precedes, the older form *-ŏlus* is retained; as, *filius* son, *fili-olus.*

-cŭlus, -a, -um, when the Primitive is Dec. 3. 4 or 5; as, *piscis* fish, *pisci-culus; mulier* woman, *mulier-cula; cor* heart, *cor-culum.*

Obs. 1. In adding *culus* the following points may be noticed:

l, r, and *s* for *r,* add *culus* to the Nom.; as, *animal, animal-cula; cor, cor-culum; flos, flos-culus.*

o, (G. *ōnis* or *ĭnis*), becomes *un*; as, *sermo, sermun-culus; virgo, virgun-cula.* Hence *unculus* with other words; as, *avus, av-unculus.*

is and *es,* (G. *is* or *ei*), add *culus* to the crudeform; as, *piscis, pisci-culus; dies, die-cula:* others have ĭ as a connecting vowel; as, *dens, denti-culus; versus, versi-culus.*

Obs. 2. For the sake of Euphony *ulus* is sometimes used for *culus*; as, *sacerdos, sacerdot-ulus.*

Obs. 3. Diminutives in *ulus* are sometimes contracted into

ellus with *l, n, r,* in the termination; as, *oculus,* [*ocululus*], *ocellus; asinus, asellus; puer, puella.*

illus, less usual, with *l, n*; as, *baculus, bacillus; vinum, villum.* So from *lapis,* [*lapid-iculus*], *lapillus.*

From this contracted form a second class of diminutives arises; as, *liber, libellus, libellulus.*

Obs. 4. Diminutives may be formed from adjectives, and even adverbs; as, *miser* wretched, *misellus; melius* better, *meliusculus* rather better.

2. A few diminutives end in

-aster; as, *poeta, poetaster.*
-astra; ,, *filia, filiastra.*
-cio; ,, *homo, homuncio.*
-uleus; as, *equus, equuleus.*
-xillus; ,, *paulus, pauxillus.*
-xilla; ,, *mala, maxilla.*

Digitized by Google

§ 60. Classes of Adjectives.

(*a*) Verbal Adjectives:—with an *active* sense.

1. *Doing an act,* or *being in a state.*

-ens; as, *prud-ens* prudent.

Present participles, (active voice), are all Adj. of this kind: many of them have almost lost their verbal connexion; as, *prudens* prudent (*pro-video*); *sapiens* wise (*sapio*): and some Adj. have this participial meaning, without belonging to any verb.

2. *Able and willing* to do (as an agent).

-ax; as, *aud-ax* daring, *audeo; vor-ax* voracious, *voro.*

-ŭlus; as, *garr-ulus* talkative, *garrio; quer-ulus* querulous.

Words in *ax* and *ulus* mean nearly the same, but *ax* implies more *energy* and *voluntary action.*

3. *Apt* or *ready* to do.

-ūcus; as, *cad-ucus* frail, ready to fall, *cado.*

Some in *īvus* are nearly the same; as, *cad-ivus.*

4. *Abounding in* or *doing profusely.*

-bundus; as, *fluctua-bundus* full of wavings; *lacrima-bundus* weeping profusely.

The connecting vowel is *a*, when the kindred verb is Conj. 1: otherwise it is *e* or *i;* as, *treme-bundus, pudi-bundus.*

These words nearly resemble participles; and some even govern an Acc.

5. Having a *nature* or *faculty.*

-cundus; as, *ira-cundus* passionate, from *ira; rubi-cundus* ruddy, from *rubeo.*

With a *passive* sense.

6. One who *has been acted on,* or *brought into a state.*

-tus; as, *aura-tus* gilded; *crini-tus* long-haired.

Past participles, (passive voice), are all Adj. of this kind: and Adj. of this kind are all passive in their literal meaning, though not really connected with any verb; thus *crinitus* having long hair,—i.e. one who *has been supplied with hair.*

7. Able to be done.

-bĭlis; as, *ama-bĭlis* amiable.

(*a*) formed generally from the *crudeform* of a corresponding

Digitized by Google

verb; as, *deleo, delē-bilis.* After a consonant ĭ is inserted; as, *rego, reg-ibilis.*

(*b*) formed sometimes from the *Supine;* as, *video, visum, vis-ibilis.*

(*c*) *bilis* is sometimes shortened to *ilis;* as, *fac-ilis, flex-ilis.*

Obs. These Adj. are sometimes used in an *active* sense; as, *penetra-bilis* penetrating, *terribilis* terrifying.

8. One that exhibits the action of the verb, either *actively* or *passively.*

-ĭdus; as, *cup-idus* desirous, (one who desires, *cupio.*)
rap-idus rapid, (one who is hurried along, *rapio.*)

-ĭdis; as, *vir-idis* green, (from *vireo.*)
Adjectives of this kind are chiefly connected with *neuter* verbs; hence they express a *state,* rather than an *action;* as, *caleo, calidus; stupeo, stupidus.*

-uus is more rare; as, *noc-uus* hurtful, (from *noceo.*)

N.B.—The above are called verbal adjectives from the nature of their signification, and not because they are derived from verbs, which some of them evidently are not.

(*b*) Adjectives derived from, or connected with, substantives.

1. *Of* or *belonging to* the root.—Possessives.

-ālis; as, *natur-alis* natural; *reg-alis* regal.
-ĭlis; as, *host-ilis* hostile; *vir-ilis* manly.
-āris; as, *milit-aris* military; *popul-aris* popular.
-ius; as, *reg-ius* royal; *patr-ius* of a father.
-itius, -icius; as, *prop-itius* favourable, (from *prope* near.)
tribun-icius belonging to a tribune.
-uus; as, *ann-uus* annual; *perspic-uus* clear.
-aneus; as, *subit-aneus* sudden; *extr-aneus* external.
-arius; as, *subit-arius, extr-arius;* applied generally to *persons,* and *aneus* to things. Words in *arius* are sometimes used as substantives, *vir* &c. being understood; as, *armentarius,* herdsman.
-īvus; as, *æst-ivus* of summer; *tempest-ivus* seasonable.

2. *Like,* or *having a nature suited to* a thing.

-īcus; as, *am-icus* friendly, (like one who loves.)
-ĭcus; as, *lyr-icus* lyrical, (adapted to the lyre.)
-tĭcus; as, *aqua-ticus,* aquatic, (suited to the water.)
-tĭlis; as, *aqua-tilis* aquatic.

Digitized by Google

-ter; as, *molli-ter* softly, *mollis;* *memori-ter* mindfully, *memor.*
Formed from Adj. of one or two terminations, with crude-form ending in [illegible] or a consonant: in the latter case *i* is often inserted as a connecting vowel: as, in *memor-i-ter;* but when the last consonant is *t*, *er* only is added; as, *sapiens, sapient-er.*

Obs. 1. Some Adjectives in *us* have adverbs in *è* and *ter;* as, *durus* hard, *durè* and *duriter; firmus* firm, *firmè* and *firmiter.*

Obs. 2. Several adverbs are only the neuters of adjectives; as, *nimius* too much, *nimium; facilis* easy, *facilè.*

2. Not expressing the qualities of Adjectives.

-ies, number; as, *dec-ies* ten times; *tot-ies* so many times.
Classed with the numerals.

-im, by way of; as, *furt-im* stealthily, by way of theft *furtum; cur-im* hastily, by way of running.
Formed like the Supine or Perf. Part. passive; and when made from nouns, generally end in *ātim,* as if from a verb of Conj. 1.; as, *cuneus* wedge, *cuneatim.* Sometimes division seems to be implied; as, *viritim* man by man.

-itus, origin; as, *cœl-itus* from heaven, *cœlum; antiqu-itus* from antiquity, *antiquus.*

-isper, during; as, *paul-isper* for a short time, from *paulus.*

-fariam, in how many ways; as, *multi-fariam* in many ways.

N.B.—Several others cannot be classed under distinct heads.

3. Taken from the cases of Nouns.

The different cases of nouns have in many instances been used as Adverbs, besides the forms above mentioned; and some have by custom almost lost their meaning as nouns. Thus,

S. N. or Ac. *parum* too little; *verùm* but; *instar* like.
Gen. *satis* enough.
Dat. *ubi* where; *ibi* there; [see Pronominal Particles].
Acc. *obviam* to meet; *tum, tunc* then.
Abl. *forte* accidentally; *noctu* by night; *repente* suddenly.
Pl. Gen. *impræsentiarum* for the present.
D. Abl. *ingratiis* grudgingly, *foris* abroad, *alternis* alternately.
Acc. *alias* elsewhere, *foras* abroad.

Some Adverbs or Conjunctions consist of two or more different parts of speech combined; as,

denuo anew, *de-novo.*
forsitan perhaps, *fors-sit-an.*
illico forthwith, *in-loco.*
magnopere greatly, *magno-opere.*
quam-ob-rem why.
quem-ad-modum as.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) *Pronominal Particles.*

A number of particles are formed from pronouns, and used both as adverbs and conjunctions;

1. Single Particles.

(*i*) Formed from the demonstrative pronouns, *hic, iste, ille.*

	hic.	*iste.*	*ille.*	
Dat. Acc. Abl.?	*hic,* *huc,* *hinc,*	*istic,* *istuc,* *istinc,*	*illic,* *illuc,* *illinc,*	*at* a place. *to* a place. *from* a place.
Abl. f.	*hac,*	*istac,*	*illac,*	in what way.
Acc. f. Acc. n.	*hac,* *ho,*	—— *isto,*	—— *illo,*	used in compounds.

(*ii*) Correlatives formed from the interrogative, demonstrative, relative, and indefinite pronouns, *quis, is, qui, aliquis;* thus,

	quis?	*is.*	*qui.*	*aliquis.*	
Dat.	*ubi?*	*ibi,*	*ubi,*	*alicubi,*	at a place.
Acc.	*quo?*	*eo,*	*quo,*	*aliquo,*	to a place.
Abl.?	*unde?*	*inde,*	*unde,*	*alicunde,*	from a place.
Abl. f.	*quâ?*	*eâ,*	*quâ,*	*aliquâ,*	in what way.
	quàm?	*tàm,*	*quàm,*	*aliquàm,*	in what degree.
	quoties?	*toties,*	*quoties,*	*aliquoties,*	how often.
Acc. f. Acc. n.	*qua?* *quo?*	*ea,* *eo,*	*qua, quam,* *quo.*	*aliquo.*	used in compounds.

So from *alius* another, *alibi, alio, aliunde, aliâ;* and from others in the same manner.

Obs. 1. In *ubi* and *unde*, *q* or *c* is dropped, which re-appears when a vowel precedes; as, *ali-cunde* from somewhere, *si-cubi* if anywhere.

Obs. 2. In the accusative forms *quo, eo, ea*, and also *ho, hac*, &c. a final *d* or *m* is lost, which is seen in *quod, quam.* That these forms are accusatives appears from their meaning, "to a place;" and from their position in such compounds as, *quo-circa, qua-propter, inter-eā*, &c.

Obs. 3. The forms *hinc, unde*, &c. are peculiar; they appear to be ablatives, from their meaning, "from a place;" and from their following the prepositions *ab, de, ex;* as, *ab-hinc, de-inde.* The words *istinc, illinc*, are sometimes found without the *c*, and then appear as *istim, illim.*

Obs. 4. From *quis* and *qui* some other particles are found; *quum, quando* when, *quia* because, *cur* why, *quam* how.

Digitized by Google

2. Compound Particles.

(*i*) Derived from Compound Pronouns.

Some are double particles from the double pronoun *quisquis*; as, *ubiubi* wheresoever or be-it-where-it-may, *undeunde* whence-soever or be-it-whence-it-may.

Some have final affixes, from the pronouns *quicunque*, *quisque*, &c., thus,

Expressing Universality.

cunque; as, *ubicunque* wheresoever. | *que*; as, *ubique* everywhere.
libet; as, *ubilibet* where you please. | *vis*; as, *ubivis* where you wish.

Expressing Emphasis.

dem; as, *ibidem* in the same place. | *nam*; as, *ubinam?* where, pray?

Expressing Indefiniteness.

piam; as, *quapiam* in any way. | *quam*; as, *unquam* at any time.

The following are the most complete.

quisnam?	*quisquis.*	*quicunque.*	*quisque.*	*qui-vis, libet.*	*idem.*
ubinam?	*ubiubi.*	*ubicunque.*	*ubique.*	*ubivis.*	*ibidem.*
quonam?	*quoquo.*	*quocunque.*	[*quŏque.*]	*quovis.*	*eodem.*
undenam?	*undeunde.*	*undecunque.*	*undĭque.*	*undevis.*	*indĭdem.*
quānam?	*quāquā.*	*quācunque.*	——	*quāvis.*	*eădem.*

(*ii*) Formed with prepositions, or other affixes, put after or before the simple particle.

Prepositions put after their cases.

circa; as, *quocirca* wherefore; (*idcirco* therefore).
propter; as, *hacpropter* on this account, *quapropter* wherefore.
tenus; as, *hactenus* so far, *quatenus* inasmuch as.
versum; as, [*quo-versum*], *quorsum* to what purpose?
usque; as, *hucusque* as far as this, *quousque* how far?

Prepositions, or other affixes, put first.

ab; as, *abhinc* from hence.
ad; as, *adeo* to that degree.
ante; as, *antehac* before this.
de; as, *deinde* next.
inter; as *interea* in the mean time.
post; as *posthac* hereafter.
ne; as *nequĭd* lest any how.
si; as, *sicubi* if any where.

Digitized by Google

§ 64. Compound Words.

1. The Latin language does not abound with compound words, like the Greek.

2. Compounds are either *parathetic* or *synthetic*.

3. In *parathetic* compounds, both words retain their form and meaning, subject only to the Rules of Euphony. They are therefore merely *placed side by side*, as it were, though they are written as one word; as from *ab* and *duco*, *abduco*.

Obs. In parathetic compounds the words are sometimes separated in poetry; as, *septem subjecta trioni*, Virg. G. iii. 381, for *septentrioni*. The compounds of *cunque*, and *per* with an Adj. or Adv. are sometimes separated even in prose; as, *per mihi gratum feceris*, for *pergratum*.

4. In *synthetic* compounds the first word loses all inflexion, and the latter word often takes a form which it could not have out of composition. The words are therefore *placed in close union*, and really make one new word; as from *causa* and *dĭco*, *causidĭcus*.

Obs. In synthetic compounds the words cannot be separated.

(*a*) In parathetic compounds—the first word is generally a preposition or other particle,—seldom a *noun*, never a *verb*.

1. When the first word is a Particle,—it is generally prefixed to a verb or adjective; as,

ab-duco lead-away; *in-nocuus* harmless.

Obs. Compound verbs make a large number of this class.

2. When the first word is a Noun,—two nouns are united, of which one is in the Gen. case; as,

Senatûs-consultum senate's-decree, G. *S.-consulti*.
Pater-familias father-of-a-family, G. *Patris-fam*.

Obs. 1. A very few consist of a substantive and adjective, and then both are declined; as, *res-publica* state, G. *rei-publicæ*; *jus-jurandum* oath, G. *juris-jurandi*.

Obs. 2. Many particles are parathetic compounds; as, *ubi-cunque*, *quam-ob-rem*, &c.

Digitized by Google

3. Expressing the *material* or *origin* of a thing.

-eus ; as, *ferr-eus* made of iron, (*ferrum.*)
-aceus ; as, *chart-aceus* made of paper, (*charta.*)
-ēnus ; as, *terr-enus* earthy, (*terra.*)
-īnus ; as, *can-inus* canine, (*canis.*)
-ĭnus ; as, *cedr-inus* made of cedar, (*cedrus.*)
-nus ; as, *ilig-nus* oaken, (*ilex*); also *frater-nus, mater-nus,* denoting origin.

The termination *īnus* belongs mostly to animals, and *ĭnus* to trees.

4. Denoting *abundance,* or *excess ;* hence often in a *bad sense.*

-osus ; as, *fam-osus* infamous; *vin-osus* given to wine.
-olentus ; as, *vi-olentus* violent, (from *vis.*) Sometimes *u* is the connecting vowel; as, *pulver-ulentus* dusty. Sometimes shortened; as, *cruolentus, cruentus,* bloody, (from *cruor*); *violentus, violens.*

5. In *the time* of.

-ernus ; as, *hodi-ernus* of to-day; *hest-ernus* of yesterday.
-urnus ; as, *di-urnus* in the day-time; *noct-urnus* in the night.

(*c*) Adjectives formed from proper names.

1. From names of *men.*

-ianus ; as, *Cæsar-ianus* one of Cæsar's party.
The most common form with Roman names.
-anus ; as, *Sull-anus* from *Sulla.*
With names in *a ;* yet *Gracchus* makes *Gracch-anus.*
-īnus ; as, *Jugurth-inus* from *Jugurtha ; Verr-inus* from *Verres.*
-ĕus ; as, *Romul-eus* from *Romulus.* (used by Poets.)

For Greek names are used,

-ēus or *-īus,* (Gr. ειος); as, *Sophocl-eus* from *Sophocles.*
-ĭcus, (Gr. ικὸς); ,, *Socrat-icus* from *Socrates.*
Some names had both forms, *eus* and *icus,* with a slight difference in meaning; as, *Philippeus* and *Philippicus.*

Obs. 1. In Cic. Ver. ii. 2, 21, *Marcellīa, Verrīa,* names of Greek festivals, are neut. Pl. of Adj. in *īus* or *ēus.*

Obs. 2. The names of Roman Gentes are themselves adjectives; hence *via Appia, lex Julia.* Even *Augustus* is so used; as *domus Augusta.* And poets went further; as, *Romulæ gentis custos* for *Romuleæ,* Hor. Od. iv. 5, 1.

Obs. 3. The endings *ensis* and *anus* are found with common nouns denoting a place; as, *prat-ensis* from *pratum* meadow; *mont-anus* from *mons* mountain.

Digitized by Google

2. From names of *Towns*.

-ensis; as, *Cann-ensis* from *Cannæ*.
-anus; „ *Rom-anus* from *Roma;* (mostly for names in *a* or *æ*.)
-īnus; „ *Aric-inus* from *Aricia;* (mostly for names in *ia, ium*.)
-as; „ *Arpin-as* from *Arpinum;* (mostly for names in *um*.)

For Greek names sometimes the Latin endings were used,—sometimes the following.

-æus for αιος; as, *Smyrn-æus* from *Smyrna*.
-ĭus „ ιος; „ *Rhod-ius* from *Rhodus*.
-ĕus „ ευς; „ *Halicarnass-eus* from *Halicarnassus*.
-ītęs „ ῖτης; „ *Abder-ites* from *Abdēra*.
and other Greek endings. see Gr. Gr. § 107. *b*. 2.

3. From names of Nations.

-ĭcus; as, *Britann-icus* from *Britannus*.
-ius; as, *Thrac-ius* from *Thrax*. (less common than *icus*.)

Obs. Poets use the substantive form as an Adj.; as; *Marsus aper* for *Marsicus*, Hor. O. i. 1. 28. *Cressa pharetra* for *Cretica*, Virg. G. iii. 345.

4. From names of *Countries*.

-ensis; as, *Hispani-ensis* from *Hispania*.
-anus; „ *Afric-anus* from *Africa*.

Obs. These names of countries must be distinguished from the names of nations; thus, *exercitus Hispaniensis* means 'an army in Spain,' *exercitus Hispanicus* an army of Spaniards.

§ 61. Classes of Pronouns.

(*a*) Demonstratives, relatives, interrogatives, &c., have some terminations with peculiar meanings.

1. *Quantity* or *size*.

-antus; as, *tantus* so great, *quantus* how great.

2. *Quality* or *kind*.

-alis; as, *talis* of such a kind, *qualis* of what kind.

3. *Number*.

-ot, answering to Cardinal numbers; as, *tot* so many, *quot* how many.
-ŏtus, answering to Ordinal numbers; as, *tŏtus* such a one (in order), *quotus* which one (in order).

Digitized by Google

Obs. Interrogatives, Demonstratives, Relatives, Indefinites, Universal relatives, and Universal indefinites, with these terminations, form *Correlatives* with each other, which may be thus arranged:

Interro.	Dem.	Relat.	Indefin.	Univ. Relat.	Univ. Indef.
quis?	*is.*	*qui.*	*aliquis.*	*quicunque,*	*quisquis.*
quantus?	*tantus,*	*quantus,*	*aliquantus,*	*quantuscunque,*	*quantusquantus,*
qualis?	*talis,*	*qualis,*	——	*qualiscunque,*	*qualisqualis,*
quot?	*tot,*	*quot,*	*aliquot,*	*quotcunque,*	*quotquot.*
quŏtus?	*tŏtus,*	*quŏtus,*	——	*quotuscunque,*	——

To these might be added the compounds of *libet* and *vis*, *quilibet*, *quivis*, &c., and the diminutives *quantulus*, *tantulus*, *aliquantulus*, &c.

For the Correlative pronominal adverbs, see § 63. *b.*

(*b*) Possessives.

-us; as, *meus* mine, *tuus* thine, *suus* his.
-ter; as, *noster* ours, *vester* yours. (Gr. τερος.)

(*c*) Of such a Country.

-as; as, *nostras* of our country, *vestras* of your country.

§ 62. Classes of Verbs.

(*a*) Verbs derived from *Nouns.*

1. To *be* what the noun denotes;—*neuter.*

-eo, ēre; as, *flor-eo* bloom, from *flos; alb-eo* am white, from *albus.* Always Conj. 2.

2. To *do* or *make* what the noun denotes; *transitive.*

-o, are; as, *fraud-o* defraud, from *fraus; alb-o* whiten, from *albus.* Always Conj. 1.

Obs. To this Class belong numerous Deponents of Conj. 1., signifying *to be* what a kindred noun denotes: hence they are in a passive form, as meaning literally *to be made;* as, *æmulari* to be made, i.e. to be, a rival, from *æmulus: ancillari* to be a maidservant, from *ancilla.*

(*b*) Verbs derived from *Verbs.*

1. Frequentatives.—To do *frequently* or *repeatedly.*

-ĭto; as, *rog-ito* ask repeatedly, from *rogo; miss-ito* send often, from *mitto.*
Formed either from the Present or the Supine of the primitive verb; as, *rogito* from *rogo*, *missito* from *missum.*
-o; as, *puls-o* strike repeatedly, from *pello; jact-o* toss, from *jacio.*
Formed always from the Supine.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. The shorter form is less emphatic. Sometimes both are formed from the same verb; as, *curro* run, *curso, cursito; dico* say, *dicto, dictito.*

Obs. 2. A few Frequentatives end in *-icŭlo;* as, *mitto, miss-iculo;* and in *-ico;* as, *fodio* dig, *fod-ico* nudge.

Obs. 3. All Frequentatives belong to the 1st or A-conjugation.

2. Inceptives.—To *begin* to do; to *grow to* a state.

-sco; as, *are-sco* become dry, from *areo.*

Formed generally from a primitive verb; having *a, e, i,* as a connecting vowel according to the Conjugation; as,

lab-asco from *labare.*	*ingem-isco* from *gemĕre.*
pall-esco ,, *pallēre.*	*obdorm-isco,* ,, *dormīre.*

Some are formed from nouns: as, *puerasco* grow to boyhood, from *puer.*

Obs. 1. Inceptives often prefix a preposition; as, *ingemisco, obdormisco.*

Obs. 2. Some Inceptives in form have no inceptive meaning; as, *pasco* feed, *posco* demand.

Obs. 3. A few Inceptives end in *-utio* or *-ulto;* as, *cæcus* blind, *cæc-utio, cæc-ulto.* Also in *-esso; capio* take, *cap-esso* undertake.

Obs. 4. All Inceptives in *sco* belong to the 3rd or Consonant Conj., and the primitive verbs are most of the 2nd or E-conj.

3. Desideratives.—To *desire* or *long* to do.

-turio; as, *cœna-turio* want to sup, from *cœno.*

Formed from the Future Participle; but having *ŭ:* hence the ending is *surio,* when the primitive has *surus;* as, *edo* eat, *esurus, esurio.*

Obs. All Desideratives belong to the 4th or I-conjugation.

4. Diminutives.—To do *slightly* or *minutely.*

-illo; as, *cant-illo* hum, from *canto.*

Obs. All Diminutives belong to the 1st or A-conjugation.

§ 63. Classes of Particles.

(*a*) *Abverbs.*

1. Expressing the qualities of Adjectives.

-ē; as, *alt-ē* highly, from *altus; tener-ē* tenderly, from *tener.*

Formed always from Adj. of three terminations with crude-form ending in [o. a]. The Adverbs seem to come from the Dat. or Abl. feminine; whence the *ē* is long. Compare the Greek adverbs in *ᾳ* or *ῃ*; as, *ἰδίᾳ* privately, *πέζῃ* on foot.

-ō; as, *fals-ō* falsely, from *falsus; crebr-ō* frequently, *creber.*

Formed from the same sort of Adj. as the preceding. The Adverb seems to come from the Dat. or Abl. neuter.

Digitized by Google

-ter; as, *molli-ter* softly, *mollis; memori-ter* mindfully, *memor.*
Formed from Adj. of one or two terminations, with crude-form ending in [ɪ], or a consonant; in the latter case ĭ is often inserted as a connecting vowel; as, in *memor-i-ter;* but when the last consonant is *t*, *er* only is added; as, *sapiens, sapient-er.*

Obs. 1. Some Adjectives in *us* have adverbs in *è* and *ter;* as, *durus* hard, *durè* and *duriter; firmus* firm, *firmè* and *firmiter.*

Obs. 2. Several adverbs are only the neuters of adjectives; as, *nimius* too much, *nimium*; *facilis* easy, *facilĕ.*

2. Not expressing the qualities of Adjectives.

-ies, number; as, *dec-ies* ten times; *tot-ies* so many times.
Classed with the numerals.

-im, by way of; as, *furt-im* stealthily, by way of theft *furtum; curs-im* hastily, by way of running.
Formed like the Supine or Perf. Part. passive; and when made from nouns, generally end in *ātim,* as if from a verb of Conj. 1.; as, *cuneus* wedge, *cuneatim.* Sometimes division seems to be implied; as, *viritim* man by man.

-ĭtus, origin; as, *cœl-itus* from heaven, *cœlum; antiqu-itus* from antiquity, *antiquus.*

-isper, during; as, *paul-isper* for a short time, from *paulus.*

-fariam, in how many ways; as, *multi-fariam* in many ways.

N.B.—Several others cannot be classed under distinct heads.

3. Taken from the cases of Nouns.

The different cases of nouns have in many instances been used as Adverbs, besides the forms above mentioned; and some have by custom almost lost their meaning as nouns. Thus,

S. N. or Ac. *parum* too little; *verùm* but; *instar* like.
Gen. *satis* enough.
Dat. *ubi* where; *ibi* there; [see Pronominal Particles].
Acc. *obviam* to meet; *tum, tunc* then.
Abl. *forte* accidentally; *noctu* by night; *repente* suddenly.
Pl. Gen. *impræsentiarum* for the present.
D. Abl. *ingratiis* grudgingly, *foris* abroad, *alternis* alternately.
Acc. *alias* elsewhere, *foras* abroad.

Some Adverbs or Conjunctions consist of two or more different parts of speech combined; as,

denuo anew, *de-novo.*	*magnopere* greatly, *magno-opere.*
forsĭtan perhaps, *fors-sit-an.*	*quam-ob-rem* why.
illico forthwith, *in-loco.*	*quem-ad-modum* as.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) *Pronominal Particles.*

A number of particles are formed from pronouns, and used both as adverbs and conjunctions;

1. Single Particles.

(*i*) Formed from the demonstrative pronouns, *hic, iste, ille.*

	hic.	*iste.*	*ille.*	
Dat.	*hic,*	*istic,*	*illic,*	*at* a place.
Acc.	*huc,*	*istuc,*	*illuc,*	*to* a place.
Abl.?	*hinc,*	*istinc,*	*illinc,*	*from* a place.
Abl. f.	*hac,*	*istac,*	*illac,*	in what way.
Acc. f.	*hac,*	——	——	used in
Acc. n.	*ho,*	*isto,*	*illo,*	compounds.

(*ii*) Correlatives formed from the interrogative, demonstrative, relative, and indefinite pronouns, *quis, is, qui, aliquis;* thus,

	quis?	*is.*	*qui.*	*aliquis.*	
Dat.	*ubi?*	*ibi,*	*ubi,*	*alicubi,*	at a place.
Acc.	*quo?*	*eo,*	*quo,*	*aliquo,*	to a place.
Abl.?	*unde?*	*inde,*	*unde,*	*alicunde,*	from a place.
Abl. f.	*quâ?*	*eâ,*	*quâ,*	*aliquâ,*	in what way.
	quàm?	*tàm,*	*quàm,*	*aliquàm,*	in what degree.
	quoties?	*toties,*	*quoties,*	*aliquoties,*	how often.
Acc. f.	*qua?*	*ea,*	*qua, quam,*		used in
Acc. n.	*quo?*	*eo,*	*quo.*	*aliquo.*	compounds.

So from *alius* another, *alibi, alio, aliunde, aliâ;* and from others in the same manner.

Obs. 1. In *ubi* and *unde*, *q* or *c* is dropped, which re-appears when a vowel precedes; as, *ali-cunde* from somewhere, *si-cubi* if anywhere.

Obs. 2. In the accusative forms *quo, eo, ea,* and also *ho, hac,* &c. a final *d* or *m* is lost, which is seen in *quod, quam.* That these forms are accusatives appears from their meaning, "to a place;" and from their position in such compounds as, *quo-circa, qua-propter, inter-eā,* &c.

Obs. 3. The forms *hinc, unde,* &c. are peculiar; they appear to be ablatives, from their meaning, "from a place;" and from their following the prepositions *ab, de, ex;* as, *ab-hinc, de-inde.* The words *istinc, illinc,* are sometimes found without the *c*, and then appear as *istim, illim.*

Obs. 4. From *quis* and *qui* some other particles are found; *quum, quando* when, *quia* because, *cur* why, *quam* how.

Digitized by Google

2. Compound Particles.

(*i*) Derived from Compound Pronouns.

Some are double particles from the double pronoun *quisquis*; as, *ubiubi* wheresoever or be-it-where-it-may, *undeunde* whence-soever or be-it-whence-it-may.

Some have final affixes, from the pronouns *quicunque*, *quisque*, &c., thus,

Expressing Universality.

cunque; as, *ubicunque* wheresoever. | *que*; as, *ubique* everywhere.
libet; as, *ubilibet* where you please. | *vis*; as, *ubivis* where you wish.

Expressing Emphasis.

dem; as, *ibidem* in the same place. | *nam*; as, *ubinam?* where, pray?

Expressing Indefiniteness.

piam; as, *quapiam* in any way. | *quam*; as, *unquam* at any time.

The following are the most complete.

quisnam?	*quisquis.*	*quicunque.*	*quisque.*	*qui-vis, libet.*	*idem.*
ubinam?	*ubiubi.*	*ubicunque.*	*ubique.*	*ubivis.*	*ibidem.*
quonam?	*quoquo.*	*quocunque.*	[*quõque.*]	*quovis.*	*eodem.*
undenam?	*undeunde.*	*undecunque.*	*undique.*	*undevis.*	*indĭdem.*
quãnam?	*quãquã.*	*quãcunque.*	——	*quãvis.*	*eãdem.*

(*ii*) Formed with prepositions, or other affixes, put after or before the simple particle.

Prepositions put after their cases.

circa; as, *quocirca* wherefore; (*idcirco* therefore).
propter; as, *hacpropter* on this account, *quapropter* wherefore.
tenus; as, *hactenus* so far, *quatenus* inasmuch as.
versum; as, [*quo-versum*], *quorsum* to what purpose?
usque; as, *hucusque* as far as this, *quousque* how far?

Prepositions, or other affixes, put first.

ab; as, *abhinc* from hence.
ad; as, *adeo* to that degree.
ante; as, *antehac* before this.
de; as, *deinde* next.
inter; as *interea* in the mean time.
post; as *posthac* hereafter.
ne; as *negud* lest any how.
si; as, *sicubi* if any where.

Digitized by Google

§ 64. Compound Words.

1. The Latin language does not abound with compound words, like the Greek.

2. Compounds are either *parathetic* or *synthetic.*

3. In *parathetic* compounds, both words retain their form and meaning, subject only to the Rules of Euphony. They are therefore merely *placed side by side,* as it were, though they are written as one word; as from *ab* and *duco, abduco.*

Obs. In parathetic compounds the words are sometimes separated in poetry; as, *septem subjecta trioni,* Virg. G. iii. 381, for *septentrioni.* The compounds of *cunque,* and *per* with an Adj. or Adv. are sometimes separated even in prose; as, *per mihi gratum feceris,* for *pergratum.*

4. In *synthetic* compounds the first word loses all inflexion, and the latter word often takes a form which it could not have out of composition. The words are therefore *placed in close union,* and really make one new word; as from *causa* and *dīco, causidĭcus.*

Obs. In synthetic compounds the words cannot be separated.

(*a*) In parathetic compounds—the first word is generally a preposition or other particle,—seldom a *noun,* never a *verb.*

1. When the first word is a Particle,—it is generally prefixed to a verb or adjective; as,

ab-duco lead-away; *in-nocuus* harmless.

Obs. Compound verbs make a large number of this class.

2. When the first word is a Noun,—two nouns are united, of which one is in the Gen. case; as,

Senatûs-consultum senate's-decree, G. *S.-consulti.*
Pater-familias father-of-a-family, G. *Patris-fam.*

Obs. 1. A very few consist of a substantive and adjective, and then both are declined; as, *res-publica* state, G. *rei-publicæ; jus-jurandum* oath, G. *juris-jurandi.*

Obs. 2. Many particles are parathetic compounds; as, *ubi-cunque, quam-ob-rem,* &c.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) In synthetic compounds,—the first word is generally a noun or particle,—seldom a *verb*.

1. When the first word is a Noun,—*ĭ* is used as a connecting vowel; as,

causi-dicus cause-pleader, *corni-cen* horn-blower.

The *i* is omitted before a vowel; as,

magn-animus great-minded, *un-animis* one-minded.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the *i* is omitted even before a consonant; as, *princeps* from *primus* and *capio*.

Obs. 2. In *tibĭcen* flute-player, from *tibia*, contraction makes the *i* long; as, *tibĭi-cen*, *tibīcen*.

Obs. 3. Numerals vary in their forms; as, *quadru-pes* quadruped, *quinque-remis* quinque-reme, *centi-manus* hundred-handed.

2. When the first word is a Particle,—it remains unaltered, except by Euphony; as,

male-dĭcus evil-speaking, *semi-animis* half-dead.

Obs. 1. Sometimes contraction takes place; as, *mālo* for *mage-vŏlo*, *nōlo* for *ne-vŏlo:* and *semi-animis* is *semănimis* in verse.

Obs. 2. Synthetic compounds beginning with a particle are partly like parathetic ones, the first word remaining unaltered.

3. When the first word is a Verb,—it has *ĕ* for a connecting vowel; as,

are-facio make dry, *treme-facio* make tremble.

Obs. Compounds of this kind are few: The last word is always *facio;* and the first is mostly a verb of Conj. 2.

(*c*) The *latter* word—may be of any kind, and is subject to euphonic changes; as,

re-fringo from *frango*, *in-ermis* from *arma*.

Obs. A number of minor changes takes place in giving a substantive or adjective termination to the compound word:

cen	from *cano;* as,	*corni-cen.*	*dux*	from *duco;* as,	*re-dux.*
ceps	,, *capio;* ,,	*prin-ceps.*	*fer*	,, *fero;* ,,	*signi-fer.*
ceps	,, *caput;* ,,	*præ-ceps.*	*fex*	,, *facio;* ,,	*for-fex.*
cĭda	,, *cædo;* ,,	*patri-cida.*	*ficus*	,, *facio;* ,,	*male-ficus.*
cidium	,, *cado;* ,,	*stilli-cidium.*	*gĕna*	,, *gigno;* ,,	*capri-gena.*
dĭcus	,, *dīco;* ,,	*male-dicus.*	*ger*	,, *gero;* ,,	*armi-ger.*

and others.

Digitized by Google

SYNTAX.

§ 65. Construction of Sentences.

(*a*) *Propositions.*

1. Every perfect sentence contains one or more *propositions.*

2. A proposition declares some fact or thought, and consists of three parts, *Subject, Predicate, Copula;* the subject is the *thing* or *person spoken of;* the predicate is *that which is said of* the subject; the copula *connects* the subject and predicate; as,

Alexander est victor.—Alexander is conqueror.

Alexander, the subject; *victor*, the predicate; *est*, the copula.

3. The *subject* is properly a *substantive* or *personal pronoun;* as,

Alexander—est victor, *vos—vivitis,*
Alexander—is conqueror. you—live.

4. The *predicate* may be a *substantive, adjective,* or *verb;* as,

Alexander est—victor, *puer est—ignavus,*
Alexander is—conqueror. the boy is—idle.

homines—moriuntur,
men—die.

5. The simple copula is the verb *est* is; when any other verb is used, it contains the copula joined with the predicate; as,

Alexander vincit,—Alexander conquers.

vincit being nearly equivalent to *est victor.*

Obs. Every sentence may be thus divided: since even an interrogation is only a proposition, the Subject or Predicate of which is doubted or unknown, and is therefore expressed as a question; thus, in *quis vincit?* who conquers? *quis* expresses the unknown Subject: in *vincitne Alexander?* does Alexander conquer? the Predicate *vincit* is doubted.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) *Simple and Compound Sentences.*

1. A *simple* sentence contains one proposition; as,

vos vivitis. *puer est ignavus.*

Obs. A simple sentence, in its *simplest form*, contains only a subject, predicate and copula; as, *puer est ignavus.*

(*i*) If other words are added to a sentence, without introducing another predication, it is still a simple sentence, though not in its simplest forms. Words thus added are called Complements.

(*ii*) The *complements* of a simple sentence will never be Verbs, for Verbs are necessarily predicates; and Conjunctions and Prepositions cannot be used without other parts of speech connected with them.

(*iii*) Hence the complements of a simple sentence must be

either Substantives, Adjectives, } including Pronouns.
or Adverbs.

thus, *pater optimus filium suum maxime amat;* where the complements are

Substantive, *filium.*
Adjectives, *optimus* and *suum.*
Adverb, *maxime.*

2. A *compound* sentence contains two or more propositions, connected with each other; as,

puer, qui doctrinam negligit, stultus est.
the boy, who neglects learning, is foolish.

Obs. When, instead of substantives, adjectives, or adverbs only, entire or abbreviated sentences are added, each containing a *verb*, and therefore a new *predication*,—the sentence becomes *compound.*

(*i*) A compound sentence therefore consists of

A *principal* clause, i. e. the original or simple proposition.
Accessory clauses, i. e. the additional or complementary propositions.

Thus *nuncius, qui missus est, simul ac me conspexit, fratrem mortuum esse nunciavit;* where the

Principal clause is—*nuncius nunciavit.*

Accessory clauses are—*qui missus est,*—*simul ac me conspexit,* —*fratrem mortuum esse.*

(*ii*) As the complementary *words* of a *simple* sentence are substantives, adjectives, adverbs;—so the accessory or complementary *clauses* of a *compound* sentence are

(*a*) Substantival clauses; as, *fratrem mortuum esse*=*fratris mortem*, which are substantives.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) Adjectival clauses; as, *qui missus est=missus*, which is a verbal adjective.

(*c*) Adverbial clauses; as, *simul ac me conspexit=extemplo*, which is an adverb.

(*c*) *Independent and Dependent Sentences.*

1. All propositions are *dependent* or *independent*.

i. An independent proposition is one which can stand alone, and does not depend upon any other word; as,

frater mortuus est,	*nuncius nunciavit,*
my brother is dead.	the messenger announced.

ii. A dependent proposition is one which cannot stand alone, but depends upon some other word; as,

nuncius—fratrem mortuum esse—nunciavit,

the messenger announced that my brother was dead.

Obs. 1. In a compound sentence the Principal clause is always an independent proposition; as, *nuncius nunciavit.* The verb is then usually in the Indicative Mood.

The Accessory clauses are generally dependent, but sometimes independent.

Obs. 2. In a compound sentence the clauses are either Co-ordinate, ——— or ——— Subordinate, with reference to each other.

(*a*) A clause is co-ordinate to another, when it holds a similar position in the structure of a compound sentence; as, *Romulus urbem condidit, et fratrem suum occidit.*

Co-ordinate clauses are mostly connected by conjunctions, but sometimes without them.

The conjunctions which connect co-ordinate clauses are principally Copulative, *et, que, nec;*—Disjunctive, *aut, vel;*—Adversative, *sed, autem;*—Argumental, *nam, enim;*—Illative, *igitur, itaque*, &c.

(*b*) A clause is subordinate to another, when it depends upon it in the structure of a compound sentence; as, *fratrem mortuum esse—nunciavit.*

Subordinate clauses are co-ordinate to each other, when they hold a similar position; i. e. when they are of the same kind, and depend upon the same word; as, *nuncius, fratrem mortuum esse, patrem autem vivere, nunciavit.*

(*c*) Hence accessory clauses are *independent*, when they are co-ordinate with the principal clause: but all subordinate clauses are *dependent.*

Digitized by Google

2. The *Oratio recta* and *Oratio obliqua.*—An independent sentence, whether simple or compound, is called a *direct* sentence, *Oratio recta.*

It contains a direct assertion, command, or question.

A dependent sentence, whether simple or compound, is called an *indirect* or *oblique* sentence, *Oratio obliqua,* when it contains an indirect assertion, command, or question; as,

Oratio recta, *frater mortuus est.*

Oratio obliqua, *fratrem mortuum esse,—nunciavit.*

Obs. The *Oratio obliqua* is always a substantival clause; but any others may be its subordinates; thus,

Oratio recta.—*Ita creatus rex, fautor infimi generis hominum, ex quo ipse est, odio alienæ honestatis ereptum primoribus agrum sordidissimo cuique divisit.*

Oratio obliqua.—*Dicit Tarquinius, ita creatum regem, fautorem infimi generis hominum, ex quo ipse sit, odio alienæ honestatis ereptum primoribus agrum sordidissimo cuique divisisse.*

(*d*) *Subordinate Clauses.*

The different kinds of Subordinate clauses should be noticed.

1. Substantival. 2. Adjectival. 3. Adverbial.

1. *Substantival Clauses.*—A substantival clause, like a substantive, expresses the Subject or Object of a verb, or stands in Apposition; hence its most appropriate form is an Infinitive Mood with its Accusative; as, Subject, *humanum est irasci;* Object, *patrem vivere nunciavit.*

Obs. In abbreviated clauses, where a substantive has been omitted, or might be substituted, clauses which have an adjectival or even adverbial form may express a subject, object, or apposition, and so take the place of a substantival clause; just as in a simple sentence an adjective or adverb may stand for a substantive; thus, *videmus quæ eventura sint.—oro ut redeat.*

Substantival clauses may be divided into three sorts,

i. *Indirect assertion.* ii. *Indirect petition.* iii. *Indirect question.*

i. Indirect assertion—generally has the Infinitive with Accusative; but sometimes *ut* with a Subjunctive, sometimes *quod* with an Indicative or Subjunctive; as, *patrem vivere nunciavit. commune hoc vitium est, ut invidia gloriæ comes sit. lætor quod vivit in urbe.*

ii. Indirect petition—expresses a result desired or aimed at,

Digitized by Google

and has the Subjunctive with or without *ut* or *ne;* as, *oro ut redeat. ne faceres monui.*

Obs. Instead of *ut* with Subj. the Infinitive is sometimes used, which treats the desired result as if it were a thing asserted; as, *te manere monui.*

iii. Indirect question—has a dependent interrogative, (pronoun or conjunction), with its own verb in the Subjunctive; as, *nescis quid velis. quam ignavus sit intelligo.*

2. *Adjectival Clauses.*—An adjectival clause qualifies a word or sentence, as an adjective does a substantive; it is introduced by a Relative (pronoun or conjunction); as, *nuncius, qui missus est.*

Obs. 1. By abbreviation adjectival clauses may be expressed by means of participles or nouns in apposition; as, *Galli, a Cæsare victi, fugerunt. effodiuntur opes irritamenta malorum.*

Obs. 2. Participles, however, particularly the ablative absolute, are often only *Adverbial Clauses;* i. e. they do not really define or describe the thing with which they are joined, but show the manner or cause of something done; as, *hunc sequens tutus eris,* by following him.

3. *Adverbial Clauses.*—An adverbial clause qualifies another like an adverb; and answers to the questions, *when, why, how,* &c. It is properly introduced by a conjunction; as, *simul ac me conspexit.*

Obs. 1. By abbreviation adverbial clauses may be expressed by participles, specially the ablative absolute,—or substantives with or without a preposition,—or adverbs; as, *negotium, curâ adhibitâ,* or *omni curâ,* or *accuratè, confecit.*

Obs. 2. The conjunctions which introduce adverbial clauses are, Consecutive, *ut* so that;—Intentional, *ut, ne,* in order that;—Causal, *quod, quia, quum,* because, since;—Temporal, *cum, quando, simul ac,* when;—Conditional, *si, nisi,* if, unless;—Admissive, *etsi, quamvis,* although, &c.

N.B. For the use of the different moods in the different clauses, see *Moods.*

§ 66. Some usages in the structure of Sentences.

(*a*) *Apposition.*

1. When a substantive is used to explain or describe another, it is put in the same case; as,

effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum,
riches, the incentives to vice, are dug out of the earth.
amor literarum, rei tum novæ,
the love of learning, which was then a new thing.

The substantive is then said to be put in *Apposition.*

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. Several varieties of Apposition may be noticed:

i. A noun limiting an agent with respect to *age*, *office*, &c., where in English *when* or *as* is used; as, *C. Junius ædem Salutis, quam consul voverat, censor locaverat, dictator dedicavit*, Liv. x. 1. C. Junius dedicated as dictator, &c. So *ante me consulem*, before I was consul, &c.

ii. A noun in apposition with a personal pronoun understood; as, *hoc tibi juventus Romana bellum indicimus*, Liv. ii. 12.

iii. A noun in the Gen. in apposition with a possessive pronoun; as, *tuum hominis simplicis pectus vidimus*, Cic. Ph. ii. 43.

iv. A generic term in apposition with a specific name; as, *Virgines Vestæ legit, Albâ oriundum sacerdotium*, Liv. i. 20. So with names of places, *se contulit Tarquinios, in urbem Etruriæ florentissimam*, Cic. Ver. v. 51; but in expressing *at a place*, *urbs*, *oppidum*, &c., is always Abl. though the name of the town may be Gen. [or Dat.]; as, *natus est Antiochiæ, celebri quondam urbe*, Cic. p. Ar. 3.

v. A specific name in apposition with a generic term; as, *nihil urbe Româ visere majus*, Hor. C. S. 11. Yet the specific name is very often in the Gen.; as, *virtus continentiæ; vitium ignorantiæ; urbs Romæ*, &c. [see § 73. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1]: but *urbe Mycenæ*, Virg. Æ. v. 52, is peculiar.

vi. A noun in apposition with a *fact* or *action*; as, *ingenti subiere feretro, triste ministerium*, Virg. Æ. vi. 222.

Obs. 2. Nouns in apposition resemble, in some respects, adjectives agreeing with substantives; hence

i. Two or more singular nouns will have a plural in apposition; as, *Eupolis atque Cratinus, Aristophanesque, poetæ*, Hor. S. i. 4. 1. So with family names; as, *cum Quinto et Cnæo Postumiis*, Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 39.

ii. Substantiva mobilia, or substantives with two forms of different genders, like *inventor*, *inventrix*, must agree in *gender* and *number* with the word to which they refer; as, *oleæque Minerva inventrix, uncique puer monstrator aratri*, Virg. G. i. 18; *omnium doctrinarum inventrices Athenæ*, Cic. d. Or. i. 4.

Obs. 3. When a sentence, (a substantival clause), is in apposition with another, it commonly has *ut* with Subj.; as, *quod natura hortabatur fecit, ut filiam bonis suis heredem institueret*, Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 41.

2. An interrogative, and the word which answers to it, are in the same case; being a kind of apposition; as,

quis te ista docuit?—pater meus.
who taught you those things?—my father.
cujus rei cupidus est?—doctrinæ.
of what is he desirous?—of learning.

Obs. The case of the answer must be varied, if words of a

Digitized by Google

different construction are used; as, *quanti emptæ?—parvo. quanti ergo?—octussibus.* Hor. S. ii. 3. 156.

(*b*) *Correction.*

A word or clause is sometimes used to correct another, or to restrict it to a particular meaning; as,

hoc virum indicat, quis sit,
this shows the man—[I mean shows]—who he is.

Obs. Several varieties of *Correction* may be noticed;

i. A part put in apposition with the whole, instead of being used partitively with a Gen.; as, *onerariæ, pars maxima ad Ægimurum, aliæ ad Calidas Aquas delatæ sunt,* Liv. xxx. 24.

ii. So when a whole is divided into its component parts, though a Gen. could not be substituted; as, *Tarquinios reges ambos,—patrem vovisse, filium perfecisse,* Liv. i. 55. Especially with *quisque* each; as, *domum suam quemque inde abituros,* Liv. i. 50; and even with the 1st or 2nd Pers.; as, *quisque suos patimur manes,* Virg. Æ. vi. 743, we bear, each one his own shade's doom.

iii. A second Acc. restricting the first; as, *nec te, tua funera, mater produxi,* Virg. Æ. ix. 486, have laid thee out in death; literally "have laid out thee, i. e. thy corpse."

iv. A correction introduced by an indirect interrogative; as, *semet ipse aperiret, quis esset,* Liv. ii. 12. See *Attraction.*

All corrections are species of Apposition.

(*c*) *Attraction.*

A word sometimes loses its appropriate place or construction, and is attracted to some other; as,

judice, quo nósti, populo,
the people, whom you know, being judge.

for *judice, quem nosti, populo; quem* being attracted to the case of *populo.*

Obs. 1. Several kinds of Attraction take place in the *number, gender,* or *case,* of words in grammatical concords;

i. A verb attracted to a predicate noun. See § 67, 8.

ii. A verb attracted to one of several subjects. See § 67. 3. *obs.* 3.

iii. An adjective attracted to one of several substantives. See § 68. 2. *obs.* 1. *vi.*

iv. A relative attracted to a predicate noun. See § 69. 2.

v. A relative attracted to the case of the antecedent. See § 69 3. *obs.* 1.

vi. An Inverted Attraction, when an antecedent is drawn to the relative clause. See § 69. 3. *obs.* 2.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 2. Several other kinds of Attraction are also found;

i. The subject of a dependent clause attracted to the principal one; as, *semet ipse aperiret, quis esset,* for *ipse aperiret, quis* [*ipse*] *esset.* See *Correction.*

ii. A name attracted to the *case* of the person to whom it is given; as, *puero ab inopiâ Egerio inditum nomen,* Liv. i. 34, the name of Egerius.

iii. The clause, which follows *quam* than, attracted to the case or construction of the clause before it; as, *decet cariorem esse patriam nobis, quam nosmet ipsos,* Cic. Fin. iii. 19, for *quam nosmet ipsi sumus.*

So after a relative; as, *te suspicor iisdem rebus, quibus me ipsum, commoveri,* Cic. Sen. 1, for *quibus ego ipse commoveor.*

iv. Two nouns or clauses attached to a verb, which properly agrees with only one of them; as, *sæpe velut qui, currebat, fugiens hostem, persæpe velut qui Junonis sacra ferret,* Hor. S. i. 3. 10, he often ran as one would who was fleeing from an enemy;—often [walked as slowly] as one was carrying the sacred things of Juno.

This is called *Zeugma;* it is common in poets, and in Sallust and Tacitus.

CONCORDS.

There are three kinds of grammatical concord or agreement:

1. Between the *Subject* and its *Verb.*
2. Between the *Substantive* and its *Adjective.*
3. Between the *Antecedent* and its *Relative.*

§ 67. First Concord—*The Subject and Verb.*

1. A verb agrees with its subject in number and person; as,

ego te audio, I hear thee. *vos puerum monuistis,* you advised the boy.

sera nunquam est ad bonos mores via, the way to good manners is never too late.

Obs. When a town has a plural name, the verb should be plural; as, *cum Fidenæ aperte descissent,* Liv. i. 27.

2. When the subject is a noun of multitude, the verb may be in the plural; as,

turba ruit, the crowd rushes. or *turba ruunt,* the crowd rush.

Obs. 1. The plural verb with a collective noun, or noun of multitude, is frequent in poetry: of prose writers Cicero does

Digitized by Google

not use it, except when the collective noun is in another clause; as, *ut hoc idem generi humano evenerit, quod in terra collocati sint*, Cic. N. D. ii. 6. But Livy uses the plural very boldly; as, *ingens turba circumfusi fremebant*, Liv. xxvi. 35.

So with *alius, pars, uterque, quisque*, &c. in partitive expressions; as, *dum alius alium, ut prœlium incipiant, circumspectant*, Liv. ii. 10. And this even where singularity seems to be intended; as, *pergunt domos eorum, apud quem quisque servierant*, Liv. ii. 22.

The Adv. *partim*, some, is used even by Cicero as a plural; as, *quum partim e nobis ita timidi sint,—partim ita a reipublicâ aversi*, Phil. viii. 11.

This agreement is called *Synĕsis*, or agreement with the sense instead of the form of the noun. See § 68. 1. *obs.* 3.

Obs. 2. When collective nouns are formed by using a sing. for a plur. (as, *eques, miles, Romanus*, for *equites, milites, Romani*), the verb is always singular; as, *Romanus Tiberim transit*, Liv. i. 15. This is perhaps a technical or military phrase.

3. Two or more subjects in the singular will require the verb to be in the plural; as,

rex et regina sunt beati,
the king and queen are happy.

Obs. 1. The verb may be plural, even if an act is performed separately by each subject; as, *Palatium Romulus, Remus Aventinum, capiunt*, Liv. i. 6. So when two nouns are joined by *cum* with; as, *ipse dux cum aliquot principibus capiuntur*, Liv. xxi, 60.

Obs. 2. When *et* or *tum*, both, is repeated, the verb should agree with the last subject only; as, *tum ætas viresque, tum avita quoque gloria animum stimulabat*, Liv. i. 22.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the verb agrees with the nearest subject, by *Attraction*, especially in things without life; as, *Tarquinienses nomen ac cognatio movet*, Liv. ii. 6.

4. If the subjects are of different persons, the 1st is preferred to the 2nd, and the 2nd to the 3rd; as,

ego et tu delectamur, I and thou are delighted. *si tu et Tullia valetis,* If thou and Tullia are well.

Obs. 1. The verb in this case, as in the preceding Rule, is sometimes attracted to the nearest subject; as, *vos ipsi et senatus restitit.* Cic.

Obs. 2. The pronouns *ego* and *nos* are of the first person, *tu* and *vos* of the second; all other nouns are of the third person, except where one of these pronouns is understood; as, *consul dixi*, i. e. *ego consul.*

Digitized by Google

5. Sometimes a sentence is the subject of a verb; as,

me juvat ire sub umbras, — it pleases me to go under the shades.
certum est quid velit, — it is well known what he wishes.

Obs. A sentence which is the subject of a verb, is a Substantival clause, (see § 65. *d.* 1): its most usual form is an Infinitive with an Acc.; as, *Tarquinios esse in exercitu auditum est,* Liv. ii. 19; but in abbreviated clauses other words may supply its place; as, *ni degeneratum in aliis huic quoque decori offecisset,* Liv. i. 53, had not the fact that he had degenerated in other things, &c. For Adv. of quantity with Gen. see § 73. *c.* 3. *Obs.* 2.

6. The subject of a verb is not expressed—

when it is a personal pronoun, without emphasis; as,

spero, — I hope.
but *ego spero,* — I hope—though no one else does.

when it is some unknown or imaginary agent, and the *action* only is regarded; as,

pluit, — it rains,
ningit, — it snows,
tonat, — it thunders.

Obs. 1. A personal pronoun without any emphasis of meaning is commonly treated as emphatic, when another pronoun is the object of the verb; the two pronouns being then placed together in contrast; as, *huic ego homini denuntio.* Cic. Div. 25.

Obs. 2. In some customary and familiar expressions the subject is omitted though not unknown; as, *lucescit, advesperascit,* with *dies* understood.

Obs. 3. Omission of the Verb.

i. The verb *sum* is often omitted in the Perfects of the passive voice, specially in the 3rd Person; as, *amatus* for *amatus est.*

ii. The verb *sum, fio,* &c., is often omitted in familiar or proverbial expressions; as, *rari quippe boni.* Juv. xiii. 26.

iii. In the expressions *quid aliud quam* or *nisi, nihil aliud quam* or *nisi,* &c., *facio* or some other verb is omitted; as, *quid aliud quam admonemus.* Liv. iv. 3. what else do we *do* but remind them. Hence such phrases slid into a sort of Adverb, and signified "merely;" as, *lictore nihil aliud quam prehendere prohibito,* Liv. ii. 29. the lictor being *merely* hindered.

7. The subject of an impersonal verb is either a sentence or a substantive not expressed; as,

spectat ad omnes bene vivere, — to live well is the duty of all.
tædet me vitæ; i. e. *possessio vitæ,* — life wearies me, *or* I am wearied of life.

Digitized by Google

Obs. Almost all impersonal verbs are found used as personal ones by the oldest writers; as, *me hæc conditio nunc non pœnitet*, Plaut. Stic. i. 1. 50. When they are used as impersonals, the *subject* of the verb seems to be thrown into obscurity and the *action* alone regarded: when an equivalent for the subject is not found in a sentence, it must either be supplied, as in *possessio vitæ tædet* for *vitæ tædet*, or the verb must be considered as having absorbed the subject; as *tædet* for *tædium premit*, &c.

8. The verb sometimes agrees with a noun in the Predicate instead of the subject; as,

pectus quoque robora fiunt,
his breast also becomes oak.

This is common in old English; as in the Bible translation, The wages of sin *is* death. Rom. vi. 23.

Obs. 1. The verbs which are attracted to the number of a predicate noun (see § 66. *c.*) are *Copulative* verbs, i. e. verbs which serve to unite the subject and predicate; they are followed by the nominative case, (see § 70. 2.), and thus the verb is said to stand between two nominatives.

Obs. 2. The predicate noun to which the verb is attracted is considered to be the more important or emphatic word; it is also generally placed *nearer* to the verb than the subject; as, *amantium iræ amoris integratio est*, Ter. An. iii. 3. 23. yet not always; as, *patricii progenies eorum appellati*, Liv.i. 8. See § 69.2.

§ 68. Second Concord—*Substantive and Adjective.*

1. Adjectives, pronouns and participles agree with their substantives in gender, number and case; as,

rara avis in terris, nigroque simillima cycno,
a rare bird in the earth, and very much like a black swan.

Obs. 1. An Adjective is sometimes an *Epithet*, and stands in the same part of the proposition as the substantive; as, *viri boni moriuntur:* — but sometimes the Adj. is a *Predicate*, while its substantive is the subject of a proposition; as, *viri sunt boni.*

Obs. 2. The Adj. as a *predicate* is sometimes *neuter*, though the substantive is mas. or fem.; as, *triste lupus stabulis*, Virg. E. iii. 80. The neut. Adj. then expresses the quality abstractedly, where in English the word *thing* is supplied; as, "the wolf is a sad thing," or "something sad." So with neuter pronouns; as, *nunc scio quid sit amor.* Virg. E. viii. 43.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 3. The gender and number of an Adj. is sometimes determined by the *meaning* of its substantive, without regard to its grammatical form; as, *capita conjurationis virgis cæsi*, Liv. x. 1. this is called *Synĕsis*, see § 67. 2. *Obs.* 1.

So with collective nouns; as, *clamor inde populi mirantium quid rei esset*, Liv. i. 41. Hence the remarkable concord in Virg. Æ. vii. 624, *pars arduus altis pulverulentus equis furit*, one (for *some*) mounted on tall steeds.

Obs. 4. An Adj. or pronoun is put in the Gen. to agree with a personal pronoun implied in a possessive; as, *ut sua unius in his gratia esset*, Liv. ii. 8. See *Possessives*.

Obs. 5. An Adj. is sometimes used partitively and takes its substantive in the Gen. instead of agreeing with it; as, *superis deorum gratus et imis*, Hor. O. i. 10. 19.

Obs. 6. Substantives are sometimes used in poetry for adjectives or participles; *populum late regem*. Virg. Æ. i. 25. for *late regnantem*.

For the agreement of *Substantiva mobilia*, see § 66. *a*. 1. *Obs.* 2.

Obs. 7. Even in prose a substantive with a Gen. depending on it is used for an Adj.; as, *a tanta fœditate spectaculi*, Liv. i. 28. for *tam fœdo spectaculo*.

2. Two or more substantives in the singular take their adjective in the plural; as,

pater et mater morientes dixerunt,
his father and mother when dying said.

The gender of an Adj. agreeing with many substantives.

Obs. 1. When the adjective or participle is a *predicate*, the following particulars may be noticed:—

i. If all the substantives are of the same gender, the Adj. takes that gender; as, *T. Lartium dictatorem primum, Sp. Cassium magistrum equitum, creatos invenio*, Liv. ii. 18.

ii. If the substantives are of different genders, and denote living things, the mas. is preferred to the fem., and the fem. to the neut.; as, *Juventas Terminusque moveri se non passi sunt*, Liv. v. 54.

iii. If the things are without life, and of different genders, the Adj. should be neut.; as, *Labor et voluptas, dissimillima naturâ, inter se conjuncta sunt*, Liv. v. 4.

iv. If the things are without life, and of the same gender, the Adj. is sometimes neut.; as, *nox et præda castrorum hostes remorata sunt*, Sall. Jug. 38.

v. If some of the things are living, and some without life, the Adj. is either neut. or the gender of the living thing; as, *regem regnumque Macedoniæ sua futura sciunt*, Liv. xl. 10, and *Jane, fac æternos pacem pacisque ministros*, Ov. Fast. i. 287.

vi. Sometimes the Adj. takes the gender and number of the word nearest to it; as, *ultro illi gloriam regnumque venturum esse*, Sall. Jug. 8.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 2. When the Adjective is an *epithet*—

i. The Adj. commonly agrees in gender and number with the nearest substantive, and is placed either before or after them *all*; as, *omnis dominatio regnumque judiciorum*, Cic. Ver. i. 12, or *officio et dignitati meæ*, Cic. Ver. i. 9; hence *hanc contentionem certamenque nostrum*, Cic. Div. 12, where *hanc* and *nostrum* refer to both nouns.

ii. The Adj. may be repeated with each substantive; as, *summis opibus, summo studio, defendatur*, Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 1.

3. An adjective sometimes agrees with a sentence, and is then put in the neuter gender; as,

dulce et decorum est pro patria mori,
to die for one's country is sweet and honourable.

Obs. 1. An adjective thus used is always a *predicate*.

Obs. 2. A demonstrative pronoun referring to a sentence, and followed by a noun in the predicate, always agrees with the predicate noun, and not with the sentence; as, *sed revocare gradum—hoc opus, hic labor est*. Virg. Æ. vi. 127.

Obs. 3. When no sentence is referred to, the demonstrative does not agree with the predicate noun; thus—

i. In a negative clause, where a name is declared to be inappropriate, the demonstrative is neuter; as, *nec sopor illud erat*, Virg. Æ. iii. 173.

ii. When the demonstrative means a person, it will be mas. or fem.; as, *scire licet hunc lumen quondam rebus nostris futurum*, Liv. i. 39. Yet it *may* agree with the predicate; as, *negat Epicurus, hoc enim vestrum lumen est*, Cic. Fin. ii. 22.

4. An adjective is often used alone, a substantive being understood from which it takes its gender; as,

mortalis a mortal, m. f. (*homo* understood).
dextra the right hand, f. (*manus* understood).

An Adj. placed alone is often neuter, where *negotium* 'thing' is commonly said to be understood.

Obs. 1. Some common instances of substantives omitted are,

aqua; as, *calida, gelida*, Hor. S. ii. 7. 91. Juv. v. 63.
caro: as, *agnina, bovina, ferina*, Hor. E. i. 15. 35. Virg. Æ. i. 215.
castra; as, *æstiva, hiberna, stativa*, Virg. G. iii. 472.
hora; as, *quarta, octava*, Hor. S. i. 6. 122. Juv. i. 49.
navis; as, *biremis, oneraria*, Virg. Æ. i. 182. Liv. xxv. 27.
partes; as, *primæ, secundæ*, Cic. d. Or. ii. 35. Hor. S. i. 9. 46.
homo is freely omitted with any kind of Adj. especially in the plur.; as, *boni, mali, docti, improbi*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Neuter adjectives* placed alone cannot always be assigned to *negotium* or any other substantive; but the neut.

Digitized by Google

Adj. is used as a kind of Abstract noun, or rather expresses the quality as attached to an *indefinite* subject, so as to fix the attention upon the quality itself, leaving the person or thing which possesses it out of view. Hence many adjectives have come to be regarded altogether as substantives; as, ***bonum, malum, altum, insigne,*** &c.

The following usages of neuter adjectives may be noticed.

i. Philosophical or technical expressions; as, ***honestum, pulcrum, turpe, utile,*** &c. Hor.O.iv.9.41. Hor.S.i.2.3.

ii. Expressions marking locality or condition; as, ***in obliquum,*** Virg.G.i.98. ***in solido,*** G.ii.231. ***ad plenum,*** G.ii.244. So in the plur. ***extrema pati,*** Virg.Æ.i.219. ***prima peto,*** Æ.v.194.

iii. Neuter plurals with Gen. where ***loca*** might be supplied; as, ***angusta viarum,*** Virg.Æ.ii.332. ***telluris operta,*** Æ.vi.140. See § 73, *c.* 1. *Obs.* 5.

iv. In poetry neuter adjectives used even where ***persons*** are meant; as, ***non inferiora secutus,*** Virg.Æ.vi.170. So ***prima virorum,*** Lucr.i.87.

v. The use of neuter adjectives as adverbs is very common in poetry; as, ***immane sonat,*** Virg.G.iii.239. ***horrendum stridens,*** Æ.vi.288. Or plur. ***apprima tenax,*** G.ii.134. ***torva tuentem,*** Æ.vi.467.

§ 69. THIRD CONCORD—*Antecedent and Relative.*

1. The Relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,

adsum ego, qui feci, — here am I, who did it.
vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur, — a man is wise, who speaks little.

The Antecedent is a noun in a preceding clause, which is understood, but seldom expressed, with the relative; thus *ego* and *vir* are antecedents.

Obs. 1. The Relative having the nature of an Adj. follows many rules of the Second Concord in its *gender* and *number*,—

i. It is ***plural*** with several antecedents, (§ 68. 2); as, ***Euryalus,—Nisus,—quos deinde secutus,*** Virg.Æ.v.296.

ii. Its ***gender*** with several antecedents follows the rules in § 68. 2. *Obs.* 1.; as, ***crebro funali et tibicine, quæ sibi sumpsit,*** Cic.Sen.13.

iii. It agrees with the ***meaning*** of an antecedent, (§ 68.1. *Obs.*3); as, ***fatale monstrum quæ,*** Hor.O.i.37.21, meaning Cleopatra.

iv. It agrees with a ***sentence*** and is then neuter, (§ 68. 3); as, ***in tempore ad eam veni, quod rerum omnium est primum,*** Ter.Heaut. ii.3.123. When a sentence is thus referred to, ***id quod*** or ***quæ res*** is often used parenthetically; as, ***carpento certe*** (***id quod satis constat***) ***invecta,*** Liv.i.48.

Obs. 2. The noun with which the Relative agrees is commonly expressed in the antecedent clause alone; but—

Digitized by Google

i. Sometimes the noun is found in both clauses; as, *erant duo itinera, quibus itineribus exire possent*, Cæs. B. G. i. 6.

ii. Sometimes the noun is omitted in the antecedent clause, and expressed with the relative; as, *populo ut placerent quas fecisset fabulas*, Ter. And. Pr.

iii. Sometimes the noun is omitted in both clauses, especially when the relative and antecedent are in the same case; as, *si bene qui cœnat bene vivit*, Hor. E. i. 6. 56.

Hence the following table may be made.

1. *vir bonus est, quem virum spectas*, occasional form.
2. *vir bonus est, quem* —— *spectas*, usual form.
3. — *bonus est, quem virum spectas*, occasional form.
4. — *bonus est, quem* —— *spectas*, occasional form.

Obs. 3. The Relative clause is sometimes placed *before* the antecedent, which makes the relative more emphatic; as, *a quibus placide oratio accepta est, his literas reddunt*, Liv. ii. 3. The antecedent noun is then usually attracted to the relative; as, *quas res luxuries in flagitiis, crudelitas in suppliciis, efficere potuisset, eas sese pertulisse*, Cic. Div. 3.

Obs. 4. A Relative may have for its antecedent a personal pronoun implied in a possessive; as, *laudare fortunas meas, qui natum haberem*, Ter. And. i. 1. 70. See *Possessives*.

Obs. 5. Ordinal numbers and superlatives cannot be antecedents to relatives, as they may in English; but they must be put in the relative clause, or the sentence must be turned so as to exclude the relative clause altogether; as, I sent the most faithful servant that I had, *servum, quem habui fidelissimum, misi;* I am the first who, *or* to, perceive it, *ego primus sentio.*

So any Adj., though not specially referred to by the relative, is often attracted to the relative clause; as, *consiliis pare quæ nunc pulcherrima Nautes dat senior*, Virg. Æ. v. 728.

Obs. 6. The Relative (pronoun or conjunction) can never be omitted in the relative clause as it may be in English; as, the man I saw was wise, *vir quem vidi sapiens erat.*

Obs. 7. All other relatives *quantus, qualis*, &c., follow the same rules as the simple *qui*, when they refer to the same person or thing, as their correlatives *tantus, talis;* but when they refer to different objects each agrees with its own; as, *tanta ei industria est quantum ingenium.*

2. A relative sometimes agrees with a substantive in its own predicate, instead of the antecedent; as,

homines tuentur illum globum quæ terra dicitur,
men regard that globe, which is called the earth.

Obs. This attraction to the predicate is used especially with *appellative* verbs; as, *agrum quæ postea sunt Mucia prata appellata*, Liv. ii. 13. See § 67, 8. *Obs.*

Digitized by Google

3. The Case of the relative is determined by the words in its own clause, not by the antecedent; as,

Ille, qui nos creavit, cujus sumus, cui parent omnia, quem non cernimus oculis, a quo tamen pendemus, æternus est.

He, who created us, whose we are, to whom all things obey, whom we see not with our eyes, upon whom however we depend, is eternal.

Some Attractions of relative and antecedent may be noticed.

Obs. 1. The Relative is sometimes attracted to the case of the antecedent; as, *quibus quisque poterat elatis*, Liv. i. 29, for *iis quæ*. A Greek usage.

i. Sometimes a whole relative clause is attracted to the construction of the antecedent; as, *cum primores civitatis in quibus fratrem suum ab avunculo interfectum audisset*, Liv.i.56, for *in quibus frater suus esset, interfectos*.

ii. So in the Grecism *immane quantum discrepat*, Hor. O.i.27.6, for *tantum, quantum immane est*, or *immane est quantum*, &c. See Gr. Gr.

Obs. 2. Inverted Attraction—takes place when the antecedent is drawn to the relative clause; as, *quas fecisset fabulas*. See above 1, *Obs.* 1.

i. Hence such expressions as, *velis tantummodo, quæ tua virtus, expugnabis*, Hor. S.i.9.54, such is your merit; for *virtute quæ tua est*, the antecedent being united to the relative. Or the relative may be drawn to the antecedent; as, *qua est iste sagacitate*, Cic. Ver. ii. 1.41.

ii. Hence also the union of *est* or *sunt* with *qui*, making a compound equivalent to *quidam*, some one; as is plain by *erit quæ*, Hor. A.P.361. Thus *est-qui, sunt-qui*, are declined throughout,

N. *est-qui*, G. *est-cujus*, D. *est-cui*, A. *est-quem*, Ab. *est-quo*.
sunt-qui, *sunt-quorum*, *sunt-quibus*, *sunt-quos*, *sunt-quibus*.

This idiom is very common in Horace; as, *est-qui spernit*, O.i.1.18. *sunt-quos juvat*, Od.i.1.3.

The Indicative mood distinguishes such expressions from *sunt, qui* there are some, who.

So with Conjunctions; as, *est-ubi peccat*, Hor.E.ii.1.63. sometimes errs.

4. The relative in its use sometimes *limits* or *defines* the antecedent, and sometimes only joins an additional circumstance to it; as,

novi hominem de quo loquitur,
I know the [particular] man of whom he speaks.
conveni hominem, qui hæc mihi nunciavit,
I met a man, who [and he] told me these things.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. The Relative limiting the antecedent.

When the relative thus limits the antecedent it is united to it more closely in *meaning* and cannot be removed without altering the sense; hence

i. Attraction takes place between the relative and antecedent only when the antecedent is limited by it. See *above.*

ii. The antecedent *when limited* by the relative is sometimes omitted, the relative sufficiently indicating what is meant. See *above.*

Obs. 2. The Relative *not* limiting the antecedent.

When the relative does not limit the antecedent it may be considered as equivalent to a *conjunction* with a *personal* or *demonstrative* pronoun; and it may be thus translated in English; as, *quem qui scire velit,* Virg. G. ii. 104, *and* he who wishes to know *it.* See § 79. *d.*

SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 70. The Nominative Case.

1. The subject of a verb is in the Nominative case; as,

turba ruit, a crowd rushes. *cecinêre poetæ,* poets have sung.

Hence the subject is sometimes called the *Nominative case* to the verb.

Obs. The Infinitive Mood has its subject in the Accusative, or some other case. See *Infin.*

2. A noun in the predicate is in the same case as the subject, when it is required to complete the meaning of the verb; as,

Romulus erat rex, Romulus was king. *nemo verè bonus est,* no man is truly good.

Such verbs are sometimes said to have the same case *after* them as they have *before* them.

Obs. 1. These verbs are called Copulative verbs, because they serve to unite a subject and predicate together. See § 67, 8; § 69, 2.

Obs. 2. The Nom. is of course the most usual with the copulative verb; but with the Infinitive Mood the Acc. is the regular case;

Digitized by Google

as, *te rediisse incolumem gaudeo.* Sometimes the predicate is in the Dat.; as, *licet esse beatis,* Hor. S. i. 1. 19; or even an Abl., with a participle; as, *magistro equitum creato filio suo,* Liv. xlv. 21.

3. Verbs, which require a noun to complete their meaning, are verbs which denote

(*a*) being; as *sum, fio, existo;*

(*b*) "to be named" or "called;" as, *dicor, vocor;*

(*c*) "to be chosen" or "elected;" as, *creor, eligor;*

(*d*) "to seem" or "be thought;" as, *videor, existimor.*

Obs. 1. Any verb, in which a copulative meaning is involved, takes a Nom. in the predicate; as, *rexque paterque audisti,* Hor. E. i. 7. 38.—*incedo regina,* Virg. Æ. i. 46.—*Epicureus evaserat,* Cic. Brut. 35.—*monstror fidicen,* Hor. O. iv. 3. 23.—*legatus venio,* Liv. i. 32.

Obs. 2. Any verb whatever may take a Nom. adjective, if it describes a state or condition of the subject; as, *nauta stertit supinus,* Hor. S. i. 5. 19. *invitus quidem feci,* Cic. Sen. 12.

Obs. 3. With *nomen est, datum est,* &c., the name is
often Nom. as, *cui nomen Arethusa est,* Cic. Ver. ii. 4. 53.
rarely Gen. „ *nomen Mercurii est mihi,* Plaut. Am. Prol. 19
usually Dat. „ *cui Servio Tullio nomen fuit,* Liv. i. 39.

Correspondingly the active expressions *nomen dare, facere,* &c., take usually a Dat., Liv. i. 1. or Acc. Liv. i. 49. In Ov. Met. *lactea nomen habet,* i. 169, and *cui fecimus aurea nomen,* xv. 96, the Nom. is used as the actual name, without inflection.

Obs. 4. Active verbs denoting a *causation* take two accusatives, one of which is a predicate to the other; as, *te victorem reddo,* i.e. *te esse victorem.*

So *utor* may have two ablatives; as, *ille me facili utetur patre,* Ter. Heaut. ii. 1. 5, he shall find me [to be] an easy father.

Obs. 5. Verbs denoting to esteem or reckon, (*ducere, habere,* &c.), may vary their expression; as, *te hostem,—te pro hoste,—te in loco hostis,—te in hostium numero,—duco.*

§ 71. The Vocative Case.

The Vocative is used when a person is addressed; and is not connected with any other word in the sentence; as,

Turne, in te suprema salus,
O Turnus, in thee is our last resource.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. In poetry and in some old formulæ the Nom. is sometimes used as a Voc.; as, *audi tu, populus Romanus*, Liv. i. 24. where *populus* must be regarded as a Voc. undistinguished from the Nom. as in other declensions; or rather *populus* is a Nom. in apposition with *tu*, instead of being a Voc. by itself.

So a Particip. or Adj. which belongs to the Vocative is sometimes put in the Nom. to agree with *tu*; as, *tu succinctus patriâ, Crispine, papyro*, Juv. iv. 24.

Obs. 2. An Adj. attached in meaning to the verb, and making a part of the predication, will properly be in the Nom.; as, *adsis, O! placidusque juves*, Virg. Æ. iv. 578. So even if the Adj. is attached to a participle which is itself in the Voc.; as, *salve primus omnium parens patriæ appellate*, Plin. N. H. vii. 31.

§ 72. The Oblique Cases.

1. The oblique cases are especially used to express the *Object* of an action or feeling.

2. The object is either *immediate* or *remote*.

the immediate object is the thing *produced* or *acted upon*; as,

facio hoc,	*amo illum*,
I do this.	I love him.

the remote object is the thing or person *for* which an action is done, or towards which it is directed; as,

dat mihi,	*illi timeo*,
he gives to me.	I fear for him.

Obs. 1. Each of the Oblique cases has an appropriate force and meaning of its own; and when any of them is used, it is not because the word which is said to govern it has any peculiar *affinity* to that case, but because the *meaning* intended to be expressed requires that particular case to be employed. It is necessary therefore to mark not only *what case* a word governs, but *what it is* which is put in that case.

Obs. 2. The Genitive in its *primary meaning* appears to denote an object *to which anything belongs*.—Hence it signifies, the possessor,—the quality which marks the class to which anything belongs,—the whole from which a part is taken,—and the object of an action or feeling.

Obs. 3. The Dative in its *primary meaning* appears to denote

Digitized by Google

the *remote object of an action*, or the thing or person *to whom something is given*.—Hence it signifies, the receiver,—the object towards which anything is directed,—and the object to which anything is near or united.

Obs. 4. The Accusative in its *primary meaning* appears to denote the *immediate object of an action*,—whether it be a thing *produced* by the action, or a *previously existing* object immediately affected by it.—Hence the Accusative is used with transitive verbs.

Obs. 5. The Ablative in its *primary meaning* appears to denote an object *from which something proceeds*.—Hence it signifies, the author or agent,—the cause or instrument,—the price,—and the thing of which any one is full or empty.

§ 73. The Genitive Case.

The use of the Genitive may be thus divided.

(*a*) The Genitive of the *Possessor*.
(*b*) The Genitive of the *Quality*.
(*c*) The Genitive of *Participation*.
(*d*) The Genitive of the *Object*.

(*a*) *Genitive of the Possessor.*

The Genitive denotes the thing or person to whom anything belongs, whether as a duty, office, or possession.

Obs. This Gen. is called the *Subjective* Genitive, as marking the subject, or person who possesses; for Objective Gen. see *below, d.* 1.

Some particular Rules come under this head.

1. The Genitive of the possessor depends upon another substantive; as,

pueri liber,	*urbis porta.*
the boy's book.	the gate of the city.

Obs. 1. The *Genitivus exegeticus* or explanatory Genitive.

This comes under the head of the Possessor, but is a sort of substitute for an Apposition, see § 66. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *v*: thus, *carum ipsum verbum est amoris, ex quo amicitiæ nomen est ductum*, Cic. N. D. i. 44. So especially in enumerating several particulars after a general

Digitized by Google

term, *causa, genus*, &c.; as, *ex utroque genere, et juris dicundi, et sartorum tectorum exigendorum*, Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 40, from either class, namely &c.

Obs. 2. The Genitive alone—elliptical.

i. The word *domus, templum*, &c. is commonly left out with proper names, as in familiar English; as, *habitabat rex ad Jovis Statoris*, Liv. i. 41.

ii. In drinking healths a peculiar Gen. is used, where *in honorem* may be supplied; as, *sume, Mæcenas, cyathos amici sospitis centum*, Hor. O. iii. 8. 13. But this is a Grecism.

iii. So other words are occasionally omitted in common expressions; as, *non operæ est referre*, Liv. i. 24, for *operæ pretium*. See Rule 2.

Obs. 3. A Dative put for the Genitive of the possessor.

A Dat. dependent on a verb or Adj. is often put instead of the Gen. dependent on a noun; as, *per pectora cunctis insinuat pavor*, Virg. Æ. ii. 228, for *cunctorum*. The Dat. marks a more lively interest. See § 74. *a*. 1. *obs*. 2. iii.

2. The Verb *sum* takes a Genitive case, when it marks duty, office or possession; as,

adolescentis est majores natu revereri,
it is the duty of a young man to reverence his seniors.

Obs. A noun understood with *sum* denoting possession.

With the verb *sum, fio*, &c. a substantive *officium, signum, munus*, may be supplied; for such words are sometimes expressed; as, *neutiquam officium liberi esse hominis puto*, Ter. And. ii. 1. 30. Yet sometimes such a word will hardly suit; as, *eorum sententiæ esse*, Liv. i. 8, to be of their opinion: *non opis est nostræ*, Virg. Æ. i. 601, it is not in our power.

3. The impersonal verbs *interest* and *refert* require the Genitive of the person concerned; as,

interest magistratûs tueri bonos, it concerns a magistrate to defend the good. *hominum refert*, it concerns men.

Obs. The Gen. depends on *negotia* understood with *interest;* and *re* or *rem* contained in *refert*, which has the *rē* long as standing for *rem* the Acc. of *res* a thing.

i. The *thing in which* one is interested or concerned is expressed by an Infinitive, or *ut* with Subj.; as, *tueri bonos* or *ut bonos tueatur*.

ii. The degree of importance is expressed by adverbs, or neuter adjectives; as, *magis* or *plus refert;* so *minime, multum, quid, nihil*, &c. *Tanti, quanti*, &c. are also used as with words of price.

iii. The object for which a thing is of importance is expressed by *ad;* as, *magni interest ad honorem nostrum*.

The Dat. in *quid referat viventi*, Hor. S. i. 1. 50, is peculiar.

Digitized by Google

4. Instead of a *personal* pronoun a *possessive* is used to denote the Genitive of the possessor; as,

non est meum contra auctoritatem senatûs dicere,
it does not belong to me to contradict the authority of the senate.

liber tuus, your book. *nihil nostra refert,* it does not at all concern us.

Obs. The possessive pronoun stands precisely in the place of a Gen. in all the instances, [see *Pronouns.*]—Notice also

i. Possessive adjectives, where they exist, may be used instead of the Gen. of common nouns; as, *crudelitas regia*, Liv. i. 4, for *c. regis* the king's cruelty. So with *sum*, &c.; as, *humanum est irasci* for *hominis*. See Gen. of Object.

ii. With *interest* and *refert* the possessive ends in *a, mea, tua, nostra*, &c. which with *interest* may be neut. plur. to agree with *negotia* understood; and with *refert* the fem. sing. to agree with *rem* in *refert*; thus, *mea interest* it is among my businesses; *meā rĕfert* it brings my affair. In *meā rĕfert* the *m* is lost from *meā* and *rē*, leaving the vowel long. The possessives *mea, tua*, &c. are more commonly used with *refert*, and genitives with *interest*.

(*b*) *Genitive of the Quality.*

The quality or character of a person or thing is expressed in the Genitive or Ablative; as,

ingenui vultûs puer, a boy of an ingenuous aspect. *vir nullâ fide,* a man of no integrity.

Obs. 1. The word which describes the quality must have an Adj. joined with it; as, *juvenis verè indolis regiæ*, Liv. i. 39. *boves mirâ specie*, Liv. i. 7.

When the qualifying Adj. is omitted, the substantive, which was in the Gen. or Abl., becomes an Adj. agreeing with the object; as, *puer pudicus*, not *puer pudoris*, a boy of modesty. Yet in *domus sanie dapibusque cruentis*, Virg. Æ. iii. 618, *sanie* looks like an Abl. used alone.

Obs. 2. The different construction of the Gen. and Abl.

The Gen. of the Quality may be considered as depending upon the substantive described by it; and if none is expressed it must be supplied; as in, *notus in fratres animi paterni.* Hor. O. ii. 2. 6. Thus it nearly resembles the Gen. of the possessor.

With the Abl. *præditus* may be supplied, and is sometimes expressed; as, *homo singulari cupiditate præditus*, Cic. Div. 2.

Obs. 3. In their use there is no marked distinction between the force and meaning of the Gen. and Abl.

The Gen. is rather more comprehensive; hence descriptions of *measure* and *number* must be in the Gen. not Abl.; as, *mille numero navium classis*, Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 48, a fleet of 1000 ships.

Digitized by Google

On the other hand the Gen. expresses inherent qualities, and the Abl. both inherent and accidental ones; hence some forms are only in the Abl.; as, *bono animo esse*, Liv.i.41. *magno natu*, Liv.ii.8, of great age.

Obs. 4. When *genus* is used with *hoc*, *id*, *quod*, &c. to describe the quality it is commonly in the Acc.; as, *concredere nugas hoc genus*, Hor. S. ii. 6. 44, of this sort. So *id ætatis* of that age; and *id auctoritatis*, Tac. Ann. xii. 18, for *eâ auctoritate*.

(*c*) *Genitive of Participation.*

1. All words used as partitives take a Genitive to denote the whole class of objects from which a part is taken; as,

militum pauci fugiunt, a few of the soldiers flee. *optimè omnium vixit*, he lived in the best way of all.

manuum fortior est dextra, the right is the stronger one of the hands.

Obs. 1. The partitive word is sometimes omitted; as, *fies nobilium tu quoque fontium*, Hor. O. iii. 13. 13. So with a relative; as, *qui patrum in foro erant*, Liv. ii. 23. Hence also *sancte deorum*, Virg. Æ. iv. 576.

Obs. 2. The Gen. of the whole class is commonly Plur., and the partitive word is of the same gender; as in *militum pauci*.

i. The Sing. may be used with a Collective noun, and the partitive Adj. then agrees in gender with the persons implied; as, *stirpis maximus erat*, Liv. i. 3. *ultimos orbis Britannos*, Hor. O. i. 35. 29. This is a species of *synesis* or agreement with the meaning. See § 68. 1. *obs.* 3.

ii. In a similar manner, when the Gen. is Plur. the partitive may differ in gender; as, *nemorum quæ maxima frondet*, Virg. G. ii. 16. *dulcissime rerum*, Hor. S. i. 9. 4.

iii. Hence probably are to be explained such expressions in Tacitus; as, *severitatis et munificentiæ summus*, Ann. i. 46, for *severorum* et *munificentium*.

Obs. 3. Instead of a Gen. with partitive words, a preposition *de*, *ex*, *inter*, *ante*, is often used; as, *ex servis unus*, Liv. ii. 4. *de mille modiis unum*, Hor. E. i. 16. 55.

Obs. 4. For the whole in apposition with a part, see *Correction*.

Obs. 5. A substantive is used as a kind of partitive, when it marks a portion taken off from a whole; as, *concha salis puri*, Hor. S. i. 3. 14. So *rivus aquæ*; *graminis herba*, &c.

So neuter adjectives are used as a kind of partitive substantives;

Digitized by Google

as, *cujus disputationis fuit extremum*, Cic. Am. 4. and writers later than Cicero used such adjectives freely either Sing. or Plur.; as, *rem ad ultimum seditionis erupturam*, Liv. ii. 45. *ut belli reliqua perficeret*. Liv. xxvi. 1.—So *angusta viarum*, Virg. Æ. ii. 332. See § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. iii.

Obs. 6. When there is no *partition*, but the Adj. includes the whole amount, the Gen. is not used in Latin, though it appears in English; as, *trecenti conjuravimus*, Liv. ii. 12, three hundred of us.

2. Neuter adjectives and pronouns, denoting quantity, take a Genitive of the whole amount; as,

paululum pecuniæ, very little money. *aliquid mali*, some mischief.

Obs. 1. Some idiomatic usages with this Gen. may be noticed;

i. Instead of *nullum*, *nihil* is used; as, *nihil laxamenti*, Liv. ii. 3.

ii. The neuter Adj. omitted; as, *vastatur agri, quod* &c. Liv. i. 14.

iii. Some familiar expressions; as, *quid causæ est?* Hor. S. i. 1. 20, what reason is there?—*quid rei est?* Liv. i. 41, what is the matter?

iv. This neut. with Gen. is only Nom. or Acc.; and without a preposition.

Obs. 2. The Gen. Plur. is used with *persons;* as, *quicquid deorum hominumque*, Liv. ii. 5.

3. Adverbs of quantity, time, and place take a Genitive of the whole amount; as,

satis eloquentiæ, enough of eloquence. *ubi gentium*, where in the world. *tunc temporis*, at that time.

Obs. 1. *Minimè gentium* is only a strong negation, "by no means." And *loci* or *locorum* sometimes denotes time; as, *interea loci*, Ter. Eu. ii. 2. 24. *ad id locorum*, Liv. ix. 45.

Obs. 2. An Adv. of quantity with a Gen. is treated like a substantive, and becomes the subject or object of a verb; as, *pœnarum exhaustum satis est*, Virg. Æ. ix. 356.

4. Adjectives denoting participation, and their contraries, take a Genitive of the object shared; as,

particeps consilii, sharing in the design. *expers fraudis*, devoid of deceit.

Obs. Adjectives of this kind are nearly allied to the meaning of *fulness* or *want*, § 76. *d.* 2. The most strictly *participatory* are, *particeps*, Liv. ii. 28. *expers*, Cic. d. Or. ii. 1. Abl. rare. Sall. Cat. 33. *consors*, Cic. Brut. 1. *exsors*, Virg. Æ. vi. 428.

Digitized by Google

(*d*) *Genitive of the object.*

1. Any substantive takes a Genitive to denote the object of an action or feeling; as,

crescit amor nummi,
the love of money increases.

Obs. 1. This Gen. is called the *Objective* Genitive, as marking the object; see above, *a. Obs.*

i. The Gen. of the Object depending on a substantive may be easily distinguished from the Gen. of the Possessor, by its allowing a kindred verb to be substituted for the governing noun; as, *amor nummi* and *amat nummum*, which cannot be done with *pueri liber, urbis porta*, &c.

ii. The Gen. of the Possessor is expressed in English by the possessive case or "of;" but the Gen. of the Object may be rendered by many different prepositions; thus,

of—*hostium victor*, Hor. O. i. 6. 1.	to —*precatio deûm*, Liv. ii. 8.
at—*ira prædæ amissæ*, Liv. i. 5.	for —*certamen regni*, Liv. i. 16.
in—*segetis fides*, Hor. O. iii. 16. 30.	from—*quorum fuga*, Hor. O. v. 16. 65.

Obs. 2. A Dat. put for the Gen. of the Object. See *a.* 1. *Obs.* 3. A Dat. depending on a Verb or Adj. is sometimes put instead of the Gen. of the Object; as, *monumentum ei fuere miraculo*, Liv. i. 45.

Obs. 3. Prepositions used for the Gen. of the Object.

i. A preposition *may* be used instead of the Objective Gen.; as, *amor patriæ*, Virg. Æ. vi. 823. and *amor erga me*, Cic. Fam. ix. 11. *dictatoris mentio*, Liv. ii. 18. *de uxoribus mentio*, Liv. i. 57. *Galliæ imperio*, Cæs. B. G. i. 2. *imperium in Latinos*, Liv. i. 50. *reverentia legum*, Juv. xiv. 177. *r. adversus homines*, Cic. Off. i. 28.

ii. A preposition must be used when an act is directed *against* or *towards* an object; as, *scelera in se*, Liv. i. 6, *provocatio adversus magistratus*, Liv. ii. 8. Or when motion to or from a place is expressed; as, *ad flumen reditus*, Liv. ii. 11. *fuga ex eo loco*, Liv. v. 53. In such cases a kindred verb would also require a preposition.

A striking instance of prepositions with dependent nouns is seen in *de provocatione adversus magistratus ad populum leges*, Liv. ii. 8.

Obs. 4. A possessive Adj. is sometimes used for the Objective Gen.; as, *soluta regio metu*, Liv. ii. 1. freed from fear of the king.

2. The impersonal verbs, *pœnitet, tædet, miseret, pudet, piget*, take a Genitive of the object which excites the feeling, and an Accusative of the person who feels it; as,

sortis suæ eum pœnitet, he repents of his condition.
pudet eos incepti, they are ashamed of the attempt.
miseret me tui, I pity thee.
tædet me vitæ, I am weary of life.
piget te facti, you are grieved at the deed.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. This Gen. seems to depend on a noun understood. § 67. 7.

Obs. 2. The cause which excites the feeling, may be a substantive *clause* in the Infin., with *quod*, or an indirect interrogative; as, *nec lusisse pudet*, Hor. E. i. 14. 36. *pœnitet quod te offendi; non pœnitet me quantum profecerim*, Cic. Att. xi. 13; xii. 27.

Obs. 3. *Pertæsus* from *tædet* takes an Acc. or Gen.; as, *pertæsus ignaviam suam*, Suet. Jul. 7. *lenitudinis eorum pertæsa*, Tac. An. xv. 51.

3. *Misereor* and *miseresco* take a Genitive, and *miseror* an Accusative of the pitied object; as,

miserere tuorum, pity your friends.
generis miserescе tui, pity your own race.
longum miserata dolorem, having pitied her lingering pain.

Obs. The verbs *misereor* and *miseresco* are sometimes used impersonally like *miseret;* as, *ecquando te reipublicæ miserebitur*, Quadrig. ap. A. Gell. xx. 6. *te nunc miserescat mei*, Ter. Heaut. v. 4. 3.

4. Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, memory, and other affections of the mind, take a Genitive of the object to which they refer; as,

est natura hominum novitatis avida,
the disposition of men is fond of novelty.

Obs. 1. The most prevalent, and truly Latin, constructions under this Rule are with adjectives denoting

i. Desire; as, *nullius avaris*, Hor. A. P. 324. *avidum libertatis*, Liv. ii. 1. *otii cupidis*, Liv. i. 32. *studiosus nobilitatis*, Cic. Ac. iv. 40.

ii. Knowledge; as, *conscii culpæ*, Cic. Off. iii. 18. *rerum inscius*, Cic. Brut. 85. *gnarus et prudens malorum*, Cic. p. Sext. 16. *imperitus fœderis, rudis exemplorum, ignarus belli*, Cic. p. Balb. 20.

iii. Memory; as, *gloriæ memor*, Liv. i. 32. *libertatis im.* Liv. ii. 10.

With a Dat. *conscius* means "privy to," or "a witness to;" as, *esse temeritati et mendacio meo conscios*, Cic. Ver. ii. 4. 56.

Obs. 2. Poets, and prose writers who use poetical language, put this Gen. with adjectives expressing *any kind of feeling.*

Virgil, *fessi rerum*, Æ. i. 178. *securus amorum*, i. 350. *certus eundi*, iv. 554. *ingratus salutis*, x. 666. *lætus laborum*, xi. 73. *tui fidissima*, xii. 659.

Horace, *lasso maris*, O. ii. 6. 8. *militiæ piger*, E. ii. 1. 124. *timidus procellæ*, A. P. 28. *sagax rerum, divina futuri*, A. P. 218.

Tacitus frequently; as, *modicus voluptatum*, Ann. ii. 73. *ferox scelerum*, iv. 12. *segnis occasionum*, xvi. 14.

Digitized by Google

The more usual prose construction of such words is with an Abl. or a preposition, *ab, ad, de, in,* &c.; as, *fessus inediâ,* Cic. p. Plan. 10. *timidus ad mortem,* Cic. Fin. ii. 20. *securior ab Sabinis,* Liv. ix. 22.

Obs. 3. It is sometimes difficult to say whether a Gen. belongs to this Rule or not. After separating the adjectives denoting *participation,* and *fulness* or *want,* the usual distinction is, if the Adj. expresses a *feeling,* the Gen. belongs to this Rule; if not,—then the Gen. belongs to the "Part affected," § 76. *b.* 2.

But often this Gen. is only a Grecism, the "Genitive of Relation," and may be well rendered "with respect to;" as, *medius pacis et belli,* Hor. O. ii. 19. 28. *felix cerebri,* S. i. 9. 11. See Gr. Gram.

5. Participles, used as adjectives and denoting a permanent quality, take a Genitive of their object, as,

alieni appetens, eager after another's. *diva potens Cypri,* the goddess who presides over Cyprus.

Obs. Participles thus used are mostly in the present active: their *adjectival* force is best seen by comparing it with their use as real participles; thus,

patiens solem enduring the sun,—actually bearing it; an *act.*

patiens solis endurant of the sun,—able to bear it; a *habit,* power, or permanent quality.

i. The participles most frequently thus used are *abstinens, amans, appetens, colens, cupiens, diligens, efficiens, experiens, fugiens, intelligens, metuens, negligens, observans, patiens, impatiens, potens, impotens, retinens, sciens, sitiens, temperans, intemperans, timens, tolerans,* &c.

ii. A few Perfect participles passive are similarly used; *sui profusus,* Sall. Cat. *indoctus pilæ,* Hor. A. P. 380. So *consultus, expertus, inexpertus, invictus.*

iii. These adjectival participles admit of degrees of comparison; as, *servantissimus æqui,* Virg. Æ. ii. 427. *juris consultissimus,* Liv. i. 18.

6. Verbs and adjectives of accusing, condemning, or acquitting, take a Genitive of the offence or charge; as,

qui alterum accusat probri, he who accuses another of dishonesty. *cædis reus,* accused of murder.

Obs. 1. The Gen. may be said to depend upon *crimine* or *nomine;* which is sometimes expressed; as, *commotæ crimine mentis absolves,* Hor. S. ii. 3. 278.

Obs. 2. The Abl. with *de* is sometimes used, instead of the Gen.; as, *de majestate damnatus est,* Cic. Ver. i. 13.

Obs. 3. The Abl. or Gen. expresses the punishment; as, *tertiâ parte agri damnati,* Liv. x. 1. *damnatus longi laboris,* Hor. O. ii. 14. 19.

Digitized by Google

i. The Abl. always with a definite *sum;* as, *decem millibus æris est damnatus*, Liv. vii. 16.

ii. The Prep. *ad* or *in* is also used; as, *damnatus ad metallum*, Plin. E. ii. 11. So, *ad bestias, in opus*, &c.

iii. *Damnare voti* or *voto* to condemn one to fulfil one's vow, is equal to *granting one's prayer;* as, *damnabis tu quoque votis*, Virg. E. v. 80. *voti reus*, Æ. v. 237.

Obs. 4. The periphrastic expressions *diem dicere, in judicium vocare, nomen deferre, reum facere*, have the same construction as *accuso;* as, *capitis diem dicit*, Liv. iii. 11. *nomen hujus de parricidio deferre*, Cic. p. S. R. 10.

Obs. 5. The Adjectives belonging to this Rule denote accusation or guilt; as, *reus, compertus, noxius, insons, manifestus.*

7. Verbs of reminding, remembering, and forgetting, take a Genitive or Accusative of the thing remembered or forgotten; as,

admoneto illum pristinæ fortunæ,
remind him of his former fortune.

si rite audita recordor, if I duly remember what I heard. *amicorum obliviscitur,* he forgets his friends.

Obs. 1. The use of the Genitive or Accusative;

i. Neuter pronouns and adjectives are used only in the Acc.; as, *hæc olim meminisse juvabit*, Virg. Æ. i. 203. *externa libentius quam domestica recordor*, Cic. Off. ii. 8. Hence a double Acc. with verbs of *reminding;* as, *sed eos hoc moneo*, Cic. Cat. ii. 9.

ii. With a real substantive the Gen. is common; as, *oblivisci temporum meorum et meminisse actionum*, Cic. Fam. i. 9. Only verbs of remembering and forgetting, (not reminding), can take it in the Acc.; as, *numeros memini*, Virg. E. ix. 45.

iii. The Acc. of a *person* is not common with any of these verbs; as, *obliviscere Graios*, Virg. Æ. ii. 148, except *memini* I remember one living in my time, which always has an Acc.; as, *memineram Paulum*, Cic. Am. 2.

Obs. 2. Verbs of reminding and remembering sometimes have an Abl. with *de;* as, *de porticu Catuli me admones*, Cic. Ad Fr. iii. 1. 4.

With *memini* I mention, *de* is specially used; as, *meministi ipse de exulibus*, Cic. Ph. ii. 36.

Obs. 3. The phrase *mihi venit in mentem* is equal to *reminiscor;* as, *illius temporis mihi venit in mentem*, Cic. Div. 13. Or else as a common verb, *ea res tibi in mentem venire potuisset*, Cic. Att. xii. 37.

Digitized by Google

§ 74. The Dative Case.

The use of the Dative may be thus divided,

(*a*) The Dative of the *Receiver*.
(*b*) The Dative of the *object to which a direction* [*is made*.
(*c*) The Dative of *Union*.

(*a*) *Dative of the Receiver.*

1. Most verbs take a Dative of the object to whose benefit or injury anything is done; as,

si tibi placeo, if I please you. *nocet homini voluptas,* pleasure is injurious to man.

Obs. 1. Verbs which denote *benefit* or *injury*, and take a Dat., are, *noceo*, Virg. E. vii. 25. *parco*, Æ. i. 526. *placeo*, Cic. Ph. ii. 5. *displiceo*, Cic. d. Or. 1. 34. See below for *auxilior, opitulor, obsum, prosum, officio.*

i. The three verbs *juvo, lædo, delecto*, are used as transitives, and take an Acc.; as, *multos castra juvant*, Hor. Od. i. 1. 23. *lædo*, Virg. E. x. 48. *delecto*, Cic. Att. ii. 4.

ii. Verbs formed with *bene, satis, male*, take a Dat.; as, *cui benedixit unquam bono?* Cic. p. Sext. 52. *satisfacio*, Cic. Div. 14. *maledico*, Hor. S. ii. 3. 140. So with *est*: as, *si ventri bene, si lateri est*, Hor. E. i. 12. 5.

Obs. 2. Not only verbs denoting benefit or injury, but verbs *of all kinds* may have a Dat. of the *Receiver*, when a person is interested in an action, or is specially referred to; as, *hunc hominem Veneri absolvit, sibi condemnat*, Cic. Ver. ii. 2. 8. *Veneri* with reference to Venus; *Sibi* with reference to himself. So *sordent tibi munera nostra*, Virg. E. ii. 44, are mean in your eyes. Some particular cases of this may be noticed;

i. Some verbs habitually take this Dat., their meaning requiring an object of reference; as, *nubo* veil myself for, i. e. am married to; as, *his duobus nupserant*, Liv. i. 46. *vaco* have leisure for, Cic. Divin. i. 6: but with Abl. am free from, Virg. Æ. iii. 123.

ii. Deponents = a noun with *sum*.—Many deponents, most of which are equivalent to a noun with *sum*, take a Dat. of the object referred to; as, *scurror ego ipse mihi*, Hor. E. i. 17. 19. *scurror* = *scurra sum*. So, *auxilior*, Cic. Fam. v. 4. *blandior*, Liv. xxi. 1. *famulor*, Plin. ii. 63. *gratificor*, Cic. Off. i. 14. *insidior*, Virg. Æ. ix. 59. *lenocinor*, Cic. Div. 15. *opitulor*, Sall. Cat. 33. *palpor*, Hor. S. ii. 1. 20. but *palpo*, Acc. Juv. i. 35.

Some of these are found with Dat. or Acc.; as, *adūlor*, (or *-lo*), *adulari Antonio*, C. Nep. Att. 8. and *adulans omnes*, Cic. in Pis. 41.

Digitized by Google

So, *æmulor*, Dat. Cic. Tusc. i. 19. Acc. Hor. O. iv. 2. 1. *medeor*, Dat. Cic. Ver. ii. 4. 51: Acc. rare, Ter. Phor. v. 4. 2. *medicor*, (or *-co*), Dat. Virg. G. ii. 134: Acc. Æn. vii. 756. *præstolor*, Dat. Cic. Cat. i. 9: Acc. Ter. Eu. v. 5. 5.

iii. Dative for Genitive. See § 73. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3.—A Dat., marking a more lively interest, is often used where a Gen. might be put dependent upon a noun; as, *ibi ei carpento sedenti aquila pileum aufert*, Liv. i. 34. very common in Livy. Hence often *mihi*, *tibi*, for *meus*, *tuus*, in poetry; as, *mihi mens ardebat*, Virg. Æ. viii. 161. Also a Dat. *apparently* dependent on a noun; as, *pectori tegimen*, Liv. i. 20. *colloque monile*, Virg. Æ. i. 654.

iv. The Dat. of a personal pronoun is used *redundantly* to mark interest; as, *quid mihi Celsus agit*, Hor. E. i. 3. 15.

2. *Sum*, with its compounds, except *possum*, takes a Dative of the object to which it refers; as,

nos causa belli viris ac parentibus sumus,
we are a cause of war to our husbands and parents.

Obs. 1. The simple verb *sum* in governing a Dat. is accompanied by a predicate noun, which marks its reference to its object; as, *causa belli* with *sumus* above.

i. When no such *directing noun* is used, *sum* with its Dat. stands for *habeo* or *possum*; thus,

est mihi for *habeo*; as, *est mihi domi pater*, Virg. E. iii. 33.

est mihi for *possum*; as, *neque est te fallere cuiquam*, G. iv. 300.

hence *fio* as the causative of *sum* gets the sense of *do*; as, *ut loco dignitas fieret*, Liv. i. 44.

ii. In Sallust and Tacitus a Grecism occurs in the use of *est* with *volens*, *invitus*, *cupiens*, &c. See Gr. Gr. P. 183: thus, *quibus bellum volentibus erat*, Tac. Agr. 18, to whom the war was agreeable.

Obs. 2. The compounds of *sum*—take a Dat. even where they could not do so merely as compounded with a preposition; as, *nec dextræ erranti deus abfuit*, Virg. Æ. vii. 498; also *abest virtute*, Abl. Hor. A. P. 371. So *desum*, Liv. i. 36. *Obsum*, *prosum*, Ov. Trist. v. 1. 66. belong in meaning to Rule 1. *Obs.* 1.

3. Verbs of giving, paying, and entrusting, require a Dative of the receiver; as,

fortuna multis dat nimis, satis nulli,
fortune gives too much to many, enough to none.

æs alienum mihi numeravit, he paid me the debt. *id mihi crede*, trust that to me.

Obs. 1. Verbs of this Class are numerous; those which are transitive take an Acc. of the immediate object, besides the Dat. of the receiver; as, *addit sceleri scelus*, Liv. i. 3. *commisit pelago ratem*, Hor. O. i. 3. 11.

Digitized by Google

i. Verbs of *giving*—are principally *do* and its compounds *addo, dedo, indo, prodo, reddo, trado:* as, *membris dat cura quietem*, Virg. Æ. iv. 5. *captum regi tradidisse*, Liv. i. 5.

Verbs equivalent to *do* or expressing a gift; *divido, ignosco, indulgeo, largior, mitto, præbeo, relinquo, restituo, tribuo*, &c.; as, *pastoribus rapta dividere*, Liv. i. 4. *ut ei plurimum tribuamus*, Cic. Off. i. 15.

Any verbs with which a receiver is implied; as, *consilium viribus parat*, Liv. i. 8, adds skill to force. *emancipatus fœminæ*, Hor. O. v. 9. 11, enslaved to.

ii. Verbs of *paying*—are *numero, pendo, repono, solvo*, &c.; as, *nummi numerati sunt Cornificio*, Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 57. *Verres civitatibus nihil solvit*, Cic. Ver. ii. 3. 72.

iii. Verbs of *entrusting*—are *commodo, commendo, credo, fido, confido, diffido*, &c.; as, *culturæ commodet aurem*, Hor. E. i. 1. 40. *diffisi rebus*, Liv. i. 2. *Fido, confido*, may also have an Abl.; as, *fortunæ stabilitate confidere*, Cic. Tusc. v. 14.

Obs. 2. *Dono* is like the English verb, to present; either Acc. with Dat.; as, *puero annulum donat*, Liv. xxvii. 19, or Abl. with Acc.; as, *novam virtutem statuâ equestri donavere*, Liv. ii. 13.

Obs. 3. Sometimes *ad* or *in* is used with Verbs of giving.

i. For a Dat. if motion to a place is implied; as, *omnes Romam ad propinquos restituit*, Liv. ii. 13,—or to express an end or consequence; as, *dabit se in tormenta*, Cic. Tusc. v. 28.

ii. When *in manum, in mentem*, &c., is used with a Dat.; as, *res regi in manum traditur*, Liv. i. 54.

4. Verbs of promising, threatening, and declaring, require a Dative of the receiver; as,

quæ tibi promitto, which things I promise you. *utrique mortem minatus est.* he threatened both with death.

cui dicas sæpe videto, often consider to whom you are speaking.

Obs. 1. Some of the commonest Verbs of this Class are—

i. Verbs of *promising—polliceor, promitto, recipio, spondeo, despondeo*, &c.; as, *nihil tibi ego pollicebar*, Cic. p. Plan. 42.

ii. Verbs of *threatening—convicior, intento, minor, comminor, minitor, mala precor*, &c.; as, *minatus urbi vincula*, Hor. O. v. 9. 9.

iii. Verbs of *declaring — aperio, dico, memoro, narro, nuntio, respondeo, scribo, suadeo*, &c., with various compounds; as, *Romulo rem aperit*, Liv. i. 5. *hæc renuntiant Tullo*, Liv. i. 22.

Obs. 2. Many other kinds of verbs come under this Rule, from some promise or declaration being implied; such as,

i. To vow or devote, *consecro, immolo, operor, sacro, voveo*, &c.; as, *ædem Castori vovisse fertur*, Liv. ii. 20.

ii. To prove, show, or display, *probo, improbo, confirmo, demonstro, ostendo*, &c.; as, *ego tibi hoc confirmo*, Cic. Fam. vi. 3.

Digitized by Google

iii. To recommend or persuade, *suadeo, persuadeo,* &c.; as, *an C. Trebonio persuasi, cui ne suadere quidem ausus essem,* Cic. Ph. ii. 11.

iv. To congratulate, *gratulor, grator,* &c.; as, *Mettus Tullo devictos hostes gratulatur,* Liv. i. 28.

Obs. 3. Some of these verbs may have *ad* with Acc.; as, *quod ad te scripsi,* Cic. Att. xiii. 32. (*motion* implied). *ad hæc respondere,* Cic. Ver. ii. 3. 72. (reference to *things* not *persons*); hence both Dat. and *ad;* as, *ego tibi respondebo ad singula,* Cic. Fin. iii. 4.

Obs. 4. The verbs of this Class which are *transitive* take an Acc. of the immediate object.

Obs. 5. A few Adjectives belong to this Rule; as, *oppositis foribus minaces,* Hor. O. iii. 26. 8.

5. Verbs of commanding, obeying, and resisting, require a Dative of the receiver; as,

imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique,
money collected together commands or serves every one.
ignavis precibus fortuna repugnat,
fortune repulses idle prayers.

Obs. 1. Some of the commonest Verbs of this Class are—

i. Verbs of *commanding—edico, impero, imperito, præcipio, præscribo,* &c.; as, *sociis tunc arma capessant edico,* Virg. Æ. iii. 234.

ii. Verbs of *obeying* or *yielding—assentior, cedo, dicto audiens sum, ministro, morigeror, obedio, obtempero, pareo, servio,* &c.; as, *infesto cessit hosti,* Liv. ii. 20. *ni pareat patri,* Liv. i. 20. *cedo, concedo,* may have *in* with Acc.; as, *concessit in iras,* Virg. Æ. vii. 305: especially *cedo* meaning "to fall into;" as, *in Romanum cesserit imperium,* Liv. i. 52.

iii. Verbs of *resisting* or *refusing—adversor, nego, recuso, repugno, resisto,* &c.; as, *Romanis armis resistere,* Liv. i. 16.

Obs. 2. Peculiarities may be noticed in some Verbs,—

i. Jubeo, rego, guberno, are transitives, and take an Acc.; as, *cum rempublicam regeret, orbemque terrarum gubernaret,* Cic. p. S. R. 45. *Jubeo* is generally accompanied by an Infinitive; as, *equites hastas erigere jubet,* Liv. i. 27.

ii. Tempero and *moderor* have a Dat. meaning "to set bounds to" or "check;" an Acc. meaning "to regulate" or "sway;" as, *qui non moderabitur iræ.* Hor. E. i. 2. 59. *auditam moderere arboribus fidem,* Hor. O. i. 24. 14. *tempero* Dat. Hor. O. iii. 24. 18. Acc. Hor. O. i. 8. 7. So *tempero* with Dat. "to abstain from" or "spare;" as, *si cuiquam temperaverit,* Cic. Ver. ii. 2. 6; or Abl. with *a;* as, *temperet a lacrimis,* Virg. Æ. ii. 8. Also *ausculto* with Dat. "listen to;" with Acc. "hear."

iii. Impero takes an Acc. of that which one is commanded to furnish; as, *cum frumentum imperavisset,* Cic. Div. 10.

Digitized by Google

6. Adjectives and adverbs denoting utility, pleasantness, ease, and their contraries, require a Dative of the object affected; as,

si facis ut patriæ sit idoneus, utilis agris,
if you take care that he is fit for his country, useful to the land.
turba gravis paci, placidæque inimica quieti,
a crowd injurious to peace, and hostile to quiet rest.

Obs. 1. Adjectives of this Class are very numerous,—such as'

i. Useful or pleasing, *amicus, aptus, benignus, decorus, facilis' gratus, idoneus, jucundus, sacer, utilis,* &c.; as, *nunc mihi nunc alii benigna,* Hor. O. iii. 29. 52.

ii. Hurtful or displeasing, *difficilis, gravis, indecor, infensus, infestus, ingratus, inimicus, inutilis, molestus, periculosus,* &c.; as, *periculosum libertati esse,* Liv. ii. 2.

Obs. 2. Sometimes a Dat. seems to stand alone, an Adj. of this class being understood; as, *qui oneri ferendo essent,* Liv. ii. 9, were fit for or capable of.

Obs. 3. The *purpose* for which anything is fit, useful, &c., is expressed by *ad;* as, *ad nullam rem utilis,* Cic. Off. iii. 29.

i. So to express a *consequence:* as, *faciles in perniciem suam,* Liv. ii. 15, to their own ruin.

ii. Some Adj. take *ad* or *in* apparently equivalent to a Dat.; as, *id gratum plebi fuit,* Liv. i. 17, and *gratæ in vulgus leges,* Liv. ii. 8.

Obs. 4. Some of these Adj. may be used with a Gen. like substantives, such as *amicus, inimicus,* and even *sacer;* as, *insula eorum deorum sacra,* Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 18. The Gen. in *vini somnique benignus,* Hor. S. ii. 3. 3. is a Gen. of Relation; kindly with respect to, or bountiful of, wine.

(*b*) *Dative of the object to which a direction is made.*

1. Verbs take a Dative of the object towards which they express a direction; as,

parvumque patri tendebat Iulum,
and she stretched forth the little Iulus to his father.

Obs. 1. Verbs of this Class are such as *appareo, immineo, impendeo, occurro, pateo, propinquo, redeo, tendo, venio,* &c.; as, *cui enim non apparere,* Liv. i. 50. Also any verbs expressing motion to an object; whence some put down under the former head, as *mitto, scribo,* &c., would be equally appropriate here.

Obs. 2. The Dative of a *purpose* belongs to this Rule. It may be joined to any verb, especially with a gerundial adjective; as, *comitia collegæ subrogando habuit,* Liv. ii. 8. Or *ad* may be used; as, *armatos ad custodiam corporis habuit,* Liv. i. 15.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 3. With *actual motion*, *ad* or *in* is more correct than a Dat.; as, *arma ad cœlum tollens*, Liv. i. 12. Yet in poets a Dat. is common; as, *it clamor cœlo*, Virg. Æ. v. 451. for *ad cœlum*.

So the verbs *attinet*, *pertinet*, *spectat*, meaning to "belong to," or "concern," take *ad;* as, *ad quos ejus injuriæ pars pertinebat*, Liv. i. 10: or an adverbial form; as, *eodem pertinentia*, Liv. i. 50.

2. Some verbs expressing feelings or passions take a Dative of the object towards which the feeling is entertained; as,

adolescenti nihil est quod succenseam,
there is no reason why I should be angry with the young man.

Obs. 1. Verbs of this Class are such as, *faveo*, *invideo*, *irascor*, *metuo*, *palleo*, *succenseo*, *timeo*, &c.; as, *Servii rebus favisse*, Liv. i. 49.

i. The verbs *invideo*, *metuo*, *timeo*, may have a Dat. of the *person*, and an Acc. of the *thing;* as, *Ascanio-ne pater Romanas invidet arces*, Virg. Æ. iv. 234: *tantam molem sibi metuebant*, Liv. i. 9. *Invideo* has the Dat. of the *thing*, when the person is not expressed; as, *invidit honori*, Virg. Æ. v. 541. The Gen. *sepositi ciceris invidit*, Hor. S. ii. 6. 84, is a bold Grecism.

ii. Verbs of *hating* take an Acc.; as, *sedemque odere Sibyllæ*, Virg. Æ. iii. 452.

Obs. 2. Adjectives are also found; as, *invidus ægris*, Hor. E. i. 15. 7.

3. Many verbs compounded with a preposition take a Dative of the object to which the preposition refers; as,

pacem bello antefero, — I prefer peace to war.
postpono famæ pecuniam, — I esteem money less than fame.

Obs. 1. Prepositions found in composition with a Dat. are,
ad; as, *pecori aspergere virus*, Virg. G. iii. 418. So *affero*, *annuo*, &c.
ante; as, *quæ quibus anteferam*, Virg. Æ. iv. 371. So *antecello*, &c.
con; as, *me constare mihi scis*, Hor. E. i. 14. 16. So *confero*, *consono*, &c.
in; as, *Æneæ bellum intulerat*, Liv. i. 2. So *incubo*, *ingero*, *inuro*, &c.
inter; as, *huic orationi intervenisset*, Liv. i. 48. So *intersum*, &c.
ob; as, *alter alteri obstrepere*, Liv. i. 40. So *objicio*, *obrepo*, &c.
post; as, *libertati opes postferrent*, Liv. iii. 64. So *postpono*, &c.
præ; as, *animum præferre pudori*, Juv. viii. 84. So *præficio*, &c.
sub; as, *infelici arbori suspendito*, Liv. i. 26. So *subjicio*, &c.
super; as, *superpositum capiti decus*, Liv. i. 34. So *supersto*, &c.
hence *supero* "to survive" = *supersum* has a Dat. Virg. Æ. ii. 643.

Some verbs mentioned under preceding rules might be classed here; as, *officio*, *obsum* and other compounds of *sum*, *invideo*, &c.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 2. When the preposition does not refer to the object, the verb governs its own case; as, *invocans fidem*, Liv. i. 7. *pontem obtineret*, Liv. ii. 10.

Obs. 3. Some adjectives, as *obvius, superstes*, and some adverbs, as *obviam, præsto*, belong to this Rule; as, *illi obvius armato*, Virg. Æ. vi. 880. *mihi obviam* and *præsto*, Cic. Ver. ii. 2. 27.

4. Prepositions in composition often retain their usual force, and take the case they would otherwise require; as,

detrudunt naves scopulo, they thrust down the ships from the rock. *prætereo te insalutatum,* I pass you by unsaluted.

Obs. 1. Prepositions found with this government are,
ab; as, *abstinuit tactu*, Virg. Æ. vii. 618. So *abduco, abripio*, &c.
circum; as, *Mettum circumsistunt*, Liv. i. 28. So *circueo*, &c.
de; as, *cœlo delapsus*, Liv. i. 16. So *deduco, detrudo*, &c.
ex; as, *agro Romano excessit*, Liv. ii. 13. So *effundo*, &c.
per; as, *percurrit pectine telam*, Virg. G. i. 294. So *pervolo*, &c.
præter; as, *ripas flumina prætereunt*, Hor. O. iv. 7. 3.
And some which also take a Dative.
super; as, *unda supervenit undam*, Hor. E. ii. 2. 175.
ad; as, *populum alloquitur*, Liv. i. 41. So *advenio*, &c.
in; as, *urbem invehitur*, Liv. ii. 31. So *innubo*, &c.

Obs. 2. The following prepositions are often repeated with their cases, especially in the earlier prose writers, *ab, ad, cum, de, ex, in, inter, trans;* as, *nec procul ab sese abesse*, Liv. i. 25.
So *adhibeo*, Liv. i. 7. *confero*, Liv. i. 33. *dejicio*, Cic. Off. i. 23. *evoco*, Liv. i. 48. *intendo*, Liv. i. 25. *intersum*, Liv. i. 3. *transjicio*, Liv. ii. 11.
Sometimes a different preposition follows the compound; as, *desiliunt ex equis*, Liv. ii. 20.

5. Some verbs compounded with prepositions become transitives, and take an Accusative; as,

invadunt urbem, they attack the city. *tardum præcesserat agmen,* he had preceded the slow band.

Obs. 1. Many of these verbs are compounded with prepositions which would require an Acc.; as, *invadunt* they attack, *i. e.* they *go into*, the city.

i. Yet many of these are proved to be real *transitives*, by their having a personal passive; as, *ineamus aliquam viam* and *utrinque ratio initur*, Liv. i. 23. So with *adeo*, act. Liv. ii. 12: pass. Liv. i. 4. *circumvenio*, act. Liv. ii. 26: pass. Liv. ii. 24. *convenio*, act. pass. Liv. i. 58.

Digitized by Google

ii. Others have prepositions which cannot govern an Acc.; as, *præfodiunt portas*, Virg. Æ. xi. 473. So *despicio*, Virg. Æ. i. 224. *prospicio*, Virg. Æ. i. 154.

Obs. 2. Some verbs thus used as transitives slide into a secondary meaning; as, *avertor* loathe; *fontes avertitur*, Virg. G. iii. 499.

So *circumfero* sprinkle, Virg. Æ. vi. 229. *exeo* avoid, Virg. Æ. v. 438. *induco* cover, Virg. E. ix. 20. *præverto, -or*, outstrip, Virg. Æ. vii. 807.

6. Some verbs compounded with a preposition admit of various constructions; as,

certant illudere capto, — they are eager to deride the captive.
illudis illud acumen, — you deride that subtlety.

Obs. 1. The varieties seen in compound verbs are principally,

i. A Dat. or Acc.; as, *cui mentem Delius inspirat*, Virg. Æ. vi. 11. Acc. rare, *foramen inspirantes*, Plin. x. 43.

ii. A Dat. or the Prep. repeated; as, *auguriis honos accessit*, Liv. i. 36. *id quoque ad gloriam accessit*, Liv. i. 48. So *illigo, incido*, &c.

iii. An Acc. or the Prep. repeated; as, *Spartam aspiciet*, Virg. Æ. ii. 576. *aspice ad me*, Plaut. Cap. iii. 4. 38. So *inspicio*.

iv. A Dat. or Acc. or the Prep. repeated; as, *virorum dignitati illudere*, Cic. p. S. R. 19. *illud nimium acumen illuderes*, Cic. d. Or. i. 57. *in Albucium illudens*, Cic. d. Or. iii. 43. So *incedo*, &c. *Subeo* has Dat. Liv. xxvii. 2: Acc. Virg. Æ. iii. 113: Abl. rare, Stat. Theb. i. 406.

v. Some compound verbs have, like *dono*, a Dat. and Acc. or else an Acc. and Abl.; as, *pecori aspergere virus*, Virg. G. iii. 419, and *ne aram sanguine aspergeret*, Cic. D. iii. 36. So *inscribo, inspergo, impertio, circumdo, circumfundo*. The verb *interdico* has Dat. and Acc.; as, *feminis purpuræ usum interdicemus*, Liv. xxxiv. 7. or Dat. and Abl.; as, *interdicitis patribus commercio plebis*, Liv. v. 3. To these may be added *induo* and *exuo;* though with these the usual construction is, *induit corpori vestem* or *induit vestem; exuit corpus veste* or *exuit corpore vestem*.

Obs. 2. Some have different constructions with different meanings, of which *consulo* shows the greatest variety; as,

Gen. *consulere boni*, Ov. Pont. iii. 8. 24, to take in good part.
Dat. *consulere alicui*, Cic. Off. i. 25, to provide for the interests of.
Acc. of person; *consulere aliquem*, Cic. Ver. i. 11, to consult.
Acc. of thing; *consulere rem*, Virg. Æ. xi. 343, to discuss.
in with Acc. *consulere in aliquem*, Liv. viii. 13, to take measures against.
So *abhorreo*, Abl. with *ab*, to be inconsistent with: Acc. to dread.
convenio with Dat. to suit: with Acc. to meet.
incumbo, Dat. to lean on: Acc. with *id* or *in*, to apply to.
intervenio, Dat. to interrupt: Acc. with *inter*, to come in between.

Digitized by Google

7. Any Adjectives take a Dative of an object to which a reference is expressed; as,

omnibus supplex, suppliant to all. *sceleri proclivis,* prone to wickedness.

Obs. 1. Adjectives of all kinds may have this Dative of Reference; as, *dives tibi pauper amicis,* Juv. v. 113.

Obs. 2. Adjectives of this class often have *ad* or *in* instead of a Dat.; as, *in obsequium pronus,* Hor. E. i. 18. 10.

The Rule might belong to the *Dat. of the Receiver,* or *of Union.*

8. Many Verbs take a second Dative to express the effect or destination; as,

ampla domus sæpe domino dedecori fit,
a large house often becomes a disgrace to the master.

Obs. 1. Some of the commonest words thus used are *crimini, culpæ, curæ, decori, dedecori, exitio, laudi, ludibrio, odio, vitio.*

i. Some idioms may be noticed; e. g. *cordi esse* to be dear; as, *quod diis cordi esset,* Liv. i. 39. and *melli esse* to be sweet; as, *hoc juvat et melli est,* Hor. S. ii. 6. 32.

ii. Some monoptots are used only in this construction; as, *bona interemptorum divisui fuere,* Liv. i. 54. See § 16. iii. 2. 2.

Obs. 2. The second dative may be derived from expressions used in keeping accounts, signifying literally *set down under the head of* gain or loss: *apponi* or *apponendum* is then understood, as it is sometimes expressed; as, *postulat id gratiæ apponi sibi,* Ter. And. ii. 1. 31.

(*c*) *Dative of Union.*

1. Verbs denoting union or companionship take a Dative of the object to which another is joined, or else an Ablative with *cum;* as,

multos sibi conciliat, he attaches many to himself. *cum illis jungitur,* he is joined with them.

Obs. 1. Verbs of union are mostly compounds of *cum,* as *communico, comparo, concilio, conjungo,* &c. Other verbs are *hæreo, jungo, loquor, misceo,* &c.

i. Verbs of this class more commonly have the Abl. with *cum* in prose; as, *quæ cum quæstore suo communicavit,* Cic. Div. 11: Dat. rare. So with *loquor;* as, *ita sum cum illo locutus,* Cic. Fam. i. 2: Dat. poets.

ii. Some however have only a Dat.; as, *multos sibi conciliavit,* Liv. i. 49. So *hæreo;* as, *potest homini huic hærere peccatum,* Cic. Ros. Com. 6.

Obs. 2. Some other constructions may be noticed;

i. ad; as, *tempus ad id ipsum congruere,* Liv. i. 5.

Digitized by Google

ii. inter with *nos, vos, se;* as, *eæ sæpe inter se comparentur,* Cic. Off. i. 43.

iii. hæreo often has *in* with Abl.; as, *peccatum hæret in eo,* Cic. d. Div. i. 16: also Abl. alone; as, *hæret pede pes,* Virg. Æ. x. 361.

Obs. 3. The *Ablative* of Union.—The Abl. is sometimes used alone to denote accompaniment, specially in military expressions; as, *iere obviam tumultuario milite,* Liv. i. 37.

2. Verbs of fighting and contending take *cum* with an Ablative in prose, and a Dative in poetry; as,

pugnant nobiscum, they fight with us. *tibi certet Amyntas,* let Amyntas contend with you.

Obs. The *cum* is sometimes omitted in poetry with the Abl.; as, *æquore fervido deprœliantes,* Hor. O. i. 9. 10.

3. Adjectives and adverbs denoting union, similarity, equality, affinity, and their contraries, take a Dative of the object to which they refer; as,

patri similis, like his father. *est finitimus oratori poeta,* a poet is near akin to an orator.

Obs. 1. Adjectives of this class are numerous; such as,

i. Union, *communis, comes, proprius, vicinus,* &c.; as, *omni ætati mortem esse communem,* Cic. Sen. 19: but *communis* has often *cum,* like verbs of union, either with or without a Dat.; as, *laudem communem ait sibi esse mecum,* Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 7. So *concolor,* Virg. Æ. viii. 82.

ii. Similarity, *similis, dissimilis, contrarius,* &c.; as, *proximo regi dissimilis,* Liv. i. 22.

iii. Equality, *æqualis, æquus, par,* &c.; as, *cuilibet superiorum regum par,* Liv. i. 35.

iv. Affinity, *affinis, alienus, finitimus, maturus,* &c.; as, *huic facinori affines,* Cic. Cat. iv. 3.

Obs. 2. Some of these Adj. may be used with a Gen. like substantives, such as, *affinis, æqualis, par;* as, *illarum affines esse rerum,* Ter. Heaut. ii. 1. 3, to be partakers of.

i. Similis and *dissimilis* may have a Gen. mostly in the sense of resemblance in internal character; as, *domini similis es,* Ter. Eun. iii. 2. 43.

ii. Alienus may have a Gen.; as, *non aliena consilii,* Sall. Cat. 41: and also an Abl. either with or without *ab.*

iii. Communis and *proprius* have a Gen. only when neuter. See § 68. 4. *Obs.* 2.

Obs. 3. *Prope* near, as a Prep., governs an Acc.; but its comparative and superlative *propior, proximus,* may have either Dat. or Acc.; as, *et faciem tauro propior,* Virg. G. iii. 57. *propior montem,* Sall. Jug. 53. The Adverbs *propius* and *proximè* have the same constructions.

Digitized by Google

§ 75. The Accusative Case.

(*a*) *A single Accusative.*

All transitive verbs, whether active or deponent, take an Accusative of the immediate object; as,

versus facit, he makes verses. *aper agros depopulatur,* a boar lays waste the fields.

Obs. 1. Some Adjectives with a participial meaning take this Acc.; as, *vitabundus castra hostium*, Liv. xxv. 13.

Obs. 2. The *Cognate Accusative* with neuter verbs.

All verbs may have an Acc. of a *cognate* noun; as, *ludum insolentem ludere*, Hor. O. iii. 29. 50. *longam ire viam*, Virg. Æ. iv. 468. An Adj. usually accompanies a substantive thus used.

Instead of a really cognate noun any word may be used, synonymous with it, or substituted for it to mark some particular character or species; thus in *opus cædis furebas*, Stat. Theb. ix. 5, *opus cædis* is a substitute for *furorem*. Hence several particulars of the Cognate Acc. may be noticed.

i. The nature of a contest or victory; as, *coronari Olympia*, Hor. E. i. 1. 50. So *vincere causam,—judicium,—sponsionem*, Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 53.

ii. The object which anything smells or tastes of; as, *pastillos Rufillus olet*, Hor. S. i. 2. 27. *mella herbam sapiunt*, Plin. xi. 8.

iii. The nature of a stream, wind, voice, &c.; as, *manare mella*, Hor. E. i. 19. 44. *spirantes frigora*, Virg. G. iii. 356. *nec vox hominem sonat*, Virg. Æ. i. 328.

iv. A character acted, danced, &c.; as, *agit lætum convivam*, Hor. S. ii. 6. 111. *saltaret Cyclopa*, Hor. S. i. 5. 63. So *Ilionam edormit*, Hor. S. ii. 3. 61. *Curios simulant*, Juv. ii. 3.

v. An object moved over or through; as, *quorum æquora curro*, Virg. Æ. v. 235. *natat freta*, Virg. G. iii. 260.

Many similar constructions are used in English; as, "which all the while ran blood:" "to play the fool:" "she walks the waters."

Obs. 3. Neuter verbs *used as transitives* with an Accusative.

i. Some neuters are used as *transitives* or *causatives* in poetry; as, *resonat lucos*, Virg. Æ. vii. 12, makes the groves resound. So *nitor*, Virg. Æ. xii. 386. *ruo*, G. ii. 308. Contrariwise transitives are sometimes used as neuters; as, *cum venti posuere*, Virg. Æ. vii. 27.

ii. Many verbs are freely used as transitives in Latin, which in English are neuter and require the addition of a preposition; as, *occasionem expectabat*, Liv. ii. 4, he was waiting-for an opportunity. So *cano* sing of, *ignoro* am ignorant of, *rideo* laugh at, &c. Hence such passives as *triumphatâ Corintho*, Virg. Æ. vi. 837. See § 80. 1. *Obs.* 2.

iii. Neuters expressing a feeling, emotion, or state, take in poetry an Acc. of the object with which the feeling is connected; as, *medias*

Digitized by Google

fraudes palluit, Hor. O. iii. 27. 27. So *ardeo, sitio, taceo, tremo*, &c., and hence *lateo* to escape the notice of, has Acc., Virg. Æ. i. 130.

iv. Verbs denoting to dine, sup, &c., take an Acc.; as, *si pranderet olus*, Hor. E. i. 17. 13.

v. A few words such as *audeo, malo, possum*, take an Acc. where *facere* seems to be understood; as, *ultima audere*, Liv. i. 48.

Obs. 4. An Accusative *restricting the meaning* of a Verb.

i. An Acc. is sometimes used to restrict the action of the verb to a particular object or degree; corresponding to the Acc. with κατὰ understood in Greek; as, *cum suam vicem functus officio sit*, Liv. i. 9, for his part *or* as far as his part was concerned. *Magnam* or *maximam partem* in a great *or* very great degree, is often used in this way; as, *magnam partem occupati sunt*, Cic. Tusc. iv. 5.

ii. To this head may be referred the use of the neuter pronouns *hoc, id, illud*, &c.; as, *nunc id operam do*, Ter. And. i. 1. 130, I am striving after this.

iii. This Acc. is rare with an Adj.; as, *clari genus*, Tac. Ann. vi. 9, a completely Greek construction.

Compare this with the Acc. of the *Part affected*, § 77. *b*. 2. *Obs. ii.*

(*b*) *A double Accusative.*

1. Verbs of asking, teaching and concealing, may take two Accusatives, one of the *person* and the other of the *thing;* as,

posce deos veniam, beg pardon of the gods.
dedocebo te istos mores, I will unteach you those manners.
ea ne me celet consuefeci filium, I have accustomed my son not to hide those things from me.

Obs. 1. The verbs which admit of this construction are principally *interrogo* ask, *percontor* enquire, *oro* pray, *rogo* beg, *posco* demand, with *reposco, flagito; doceo* teach, with its compounds; and *celo* hide.

i. The person, from whom anything is asked or concealed, may be in the Abl. with *a, ab*; as, *non debebam abs te has literas poscere*, Cic. Ver. ii. 4, 16, with *celo, ab* is more usual in the passive. *Peto, postulo*, also have *ab;* and *quæro, ab, de, ex:* these three verbs never have the double Acc.

ii. The object, about which enquiry is made or information given, may be in the Abl. with *de;* as, *ego te eisdem de rebus interrogem*, Cic. Or. Par. 1.

iii. With *erudio* the double Acc. is rare; as, *te leges erudiit*, Stat. Theb. x. 506: the Abl. of the *thing* is more usual; so with *instituo*. Even *doceo*, though it has the Acc. of any art, must have an Abl. of the thing on which the art is practised; as, *Socratem fidibus docuit*, Cic. Fam. ix. 22.

Digitized by Google

iv. Some verbs compounded with *trans* are found with two accusatives, one governed by the verb and one by the preposition; as, *Cæsar equitum partem flumen transjicit*, Cæs. B. C. i. 83. So *transduco, transporto*, &c.

Obs. 2. Double Acc. with *neuter Pronouns* and *Adjectives*.

Several other verbs may have a neuter Pron. or Adj. as a second Acc., though they do not admit of a substantive thus used: thus *hortor, moneo* and its compounds: as, *si te unum illud monuerimus*, Cic. A. Her. i. 1: whence such an Acc. with *auctor sum* I advise; as, *idne estis auctores mihi*, Ter. Ad. v. 8. 16.

So with *censeo;* as, *quid censes munera terræ*, Hor. E. i. 6. 5.

Obs. 3. Verbs governing *either one* of two Accusatives.

Some verbs, though they have not two Accusatives, may have either one of two objects in the Acc. with a slight difference of meaning; as, *cingit corpus* he surrounds his body, *cingit vestem* he girds on his garment. So *exuit se* or *exuit vestem, induit se* or *induit vestem, inscribit statuam* or *inscribit nomen, pascit boves* or *pascit herbam*. See § 74. *b*. 6. *obs.* 1. *v.*

2. The Accusative of the *thing* remains with such verbs in the passive voice; as,

posceris exta bovis, — you are asked for the entrails of an ox.
dulces docta modos, — having been taught sweet strains.

Obs. Even verbs, which have only one of two accusatives in the active, may have an Acc. in the passive in poetry; as, *inutile ferrum cingitur*, Virg. Æ. ii. 510. So *exuor, induor, inscribor, pascor.*

3. Active verbs denoting any kind of causation may have two Accusatives, either with or without *esse*, one of which is a predicate of the other; as,

te judicem facio — I make you a judge
or
te esse judicem, — to be a judge.

Obs. 1. Verbs of this class are principally the actives or causatives of those Passives which take two Nominatives. See § 70, 2 and 3.

i. To make or cause to be; as, *tertia dona facit geminos ex ære lebetas*, Virg. Æ. v. 266.

ii. To think or reckon; as, *totius mundi se incolam et civem arbitrabatur*, Cic. Tusc. v. 37.

iii. To choose or appoint; as, *Ancum Marcium regem populus creavit*, Liv. i. 32.

iv. To call or name; as, *solem Asiæ Brutum appellat*, Hor. S. i. 7. 24.

Obs. 2. Any other verbs denoting a *causation* may be so used; as, *illum non labor Isthmius clarabit pugilem*, Hor. O. iv. 3. 4.

Or any verbs capable of introducing a predication; as, *quem ego hominem judicem non retinuissem*, Cic. Ver. i. 10.

Digitized by Google

§ 76. The Ablative Case.

The use of the Ablative may be thus divided,

(*a*) The Ablative of the *Agent* or *Origin*.
(*b*) The Ablative of the *Instrument*.
(*c*) The Ablative of the *Price*.
(*d*) The Ablative of *Fulness* or *Want*.

(*a*) *Ablative of the Agent or Origin.*

1. With passive verbs the Agent, by whom the action is performed, is put in the Ablative with *a* or *ab*, and sometimes in the Dative; as,

laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis,
he is praised by these, he is blamed by those.

2. Passive participles more often take the Dative of the agent, instead of the ablative with *a* or *ab*; as,

formidatus Othoni, dreaded by Otho. *mihi exorandus est,* he must be prevailed on by me.

Obs. 1. The Dat. may be used with Verbs, mostly in poetry; as, *neque cernitur ulli*, Virg. Æ. i. 440. And the Abl. with Participles; as, *ab se auctæ multitudini*, Liv. ii. 1.

Obs. 2. Verbal adjectives in *bilis*, being used passively, have a Dat. like participles; as, *multis ille bonis flebilis occidit; nulli flebilior quam tibi*, Hor. O. i. 24. 9.

Obs. 3. Neuter-passives have the same construction as passive verbs; as, *rogatus an ab reo vapulasset*, Quin. ix. 2.

3. The Ablative, either with or without a preposition, expresses the Author or Origin from which anything proceeds; as,

fortes creantur fortibus, the brave are born of the brave. *a Galliæ finibus oriuntur,* they arise from the borders of Gaul.

Participles of this class are common; as, *natus, oriundus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, editus.*

Obs. The prepositions used in this construction are *a, de, ex.*

4. The material of which anything is made is put in the Ablative; as,

cibus lacte et melle confectus,
food made of milk and honey.

Obs. A preposition, *de, ex*, is often used; as, *templum de marmore, pugnam ex auro*, Virg. G. iii. 13. 26.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) *Ablative of the Instrument.*

1. Verbs and nouns take an Ablative to denote the instrument, cause, or manner of existence; as,

dente lupus, cornu taurus petit,
the wolf attacks with his tooth, the bull with his horn.

pallidus irâ, *nomine grammaticus,*
pale from anger. by name a grammarian.

Obs. 1. The *cause*, or the *means* by which anything is done, often take a preposition, *ab, ex, ob, per, præ;* as, *inopi tum urbe ab longinquâ obsidione*, Liv. ii. 14. *per fas ac fidem decepti*, Liv. i. 9.

Obs. 2. The *manner* of an action is often expressed by an Adv.; as, *diligentissimè laboriosissimèque accusârunt*, Cic. Div. 21, with the greatest diligence and exertion.

Obs. 3. The Instrument is distinguished from the Agent by the *a* or *ab;* as, *a proximis sceleratâ conjuratione pulsum*, Liv. ii. 6.

2. The part affected by a verb or adjective is put in the Ablative, Accusative, or Genitive; as,

ægrotat animo magis quam corpore, *tremit artus,*
he is more sick in mind than in body. he trembles in his limbs.

absurdè facis qui angas te animi,
you act absurdly in distressing yourself in mind.

Obs. The different cases of the Part-affected.—

i. The Ablative is the usual case in Latin prose; as, *non solum commoveor animo, sed etiam toto corpore perhorresco*, Cic. Div. 13.

ii. The Accusative is common, both with verbs and adjectives, in poetry, in imitation of the Greek; as, *tremit artus*, Virg. G. iii. 84. *os humerosque deo similis*, Virg. Æ. i. 589. In prose this Acc. is hardly used except with passive participles, *oblĭtus, ictus*, &c.; as, *adversum femur tragulâ ictus*, Liv. xxi. 7. or *restrictively* with adjectives; as, *cætera egregium*, Liv. i. 32. See § 75. *a.* end.

iii. The Genitive, like the Acc., is mostly poetic, and is much more frequent with adjectives than with verbs; as, *integer vitæ*, Hor. O. i. 22. 1. In prose it is hardly used, except in the case of *animi;* as, *pendet animi*, Cic. Tusc. iv. 16: so *ægram animi*, Liv. i. 58.

(*c*) *Ablative of the Price.*

Verbs and adjectives of buying, selling, and valuing, take an Ablative of the price or cost; as,

teruncio seu vitiosâ nuce non emerim,
I would not buy it at a farthing or a rotten nut.

gemmis venale nec auro,
to be sold neither for jewels nor gold.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. Some peculiarities with verbs of Price may be noticed;

i. Some substantives denoting a mean value, *flocci, nauci, nihili, pili, assis, hujus,* &c., are pu tin the Gen. with *pretio* understood; as, *qui illum flocci fecerim,* Ter. Eun. ii. 3. 10.

Hence the expressions *æqui bonique facio,* or *boni consulo,* to take in good part.

ii. Some adjectives denoting an indefinite value, *tanti, quanti, magni, parvi, pluris, minoris, maximi, minimi,* are put alone in the Gen. *æris pretio* being understood; as, *cum tanti, quantum habeas, sis,* Hor. S. i. l. 62. Hence the expressions *tanti est* it is worth while, Cic. Cat. i. 9; and *nil tanti est* it does not matter, Hor. A. P. 304.

iii. A few adjectives, *vili, parvo, minimo, magno, plurimo,* are used in the Abl.; as, *Crispinus minimo me provocat,* Hor. S. i. 4. 14.

Obs. 2. Besides verbs actually denoting buying or selling, such as, *vendo, veneo, mercor, æstimo,* &c., any word may take the Abl. to mark the price or value; as, *olitoris aget mercede caballum,* Hor. E. i. 18. 36.

Obs. 3. Verbs of exchanging, *muto, verto,* &c., are commonly like verbs of *selling,* the thing given in the Acc. and the thing received in the Abl.; as, *mutat quadrata rotundis,* Hor. E. i. 1. 100. But sometimes they are like verbs of *buying,* with the thing given up in the Abl.; as, *Lucretilem mutat Lycæo Faunus,* Hor. O. i. 17, leaves Lycæum for Lucretilis.

(*d*) *Ablative of Fulness or Want.*

1. Verbs denoting fulness or want take an Ablative of the object which abounds or is wanting; as,

Germania rivis fluminibusque abundat,
Germany abounds in streams and rivers.

amicorum consuetudine caret,
he is without the society of his friends.

Obs. 1. Verbs of this class are principally

i. To fill, *compleo, expleo, impleo, cumulo, onero, orno, satio;* as, *cæde incendioque cuncta complent,* Liv. ii. 17.

ii. To abound, *abundo, affluo, floreo, redundo, scateo,* &c.; as, *villa abundat porco, agno, gallinâ, lacte,* Cic. Sen. 16.

iii. To deprive, *fraudo, nudo, orbo, privo, spolio, viduo,* &c.; as, *fraudans se ipse victu suo,* Liv. ii. 10.

iv. To want, *careo, egeo, indigeo, vacò,* &c.; as, *pluviâ ventisque carebunt,* Virg. G. i. 435.

Obs. 2. The verbs *compleo, impleo,* and *egeo, indigeo,* sometimes have a Gen.; as, *adolescentem temeritatis suæ implet,* Liv. i. 46. *minime alterius indigeant,* Cic. Am. 14.

Digitized by Google

2. Adjectives denoting fulness or want take an Ablative or Genitive; as,

res plena timoris, a thing full of fear. *et melle et felle fecundissimus,* very abundant both in honey and in gall.

Obs. 1. Adjectives of fulness or want show some variety.

i. Some take only a Gen. *capax, inanis, inops, pauper, prodigus,* &c.; as, *animæ magnæ prodigum,* Hor. O. i. 12. 37.

ii. Some only an Abl. *captus, creber, densus, orbus, præditus,* &c.; as, *natum tali ingenio præditum,* Ter. And. i. 1. 71.

iii. Some either Gen. or Abl. *dives, fecundus, ferax, fertilis, opulens, plenus,* &c.; as, *acerra thuris plena,* Hor. O. iii. 8. 2. *pleni adhortantium vocibus,* Liv. i. 25.

iv. Some besides a Gen. or Abl. may have an Abl. with *ab,* like words of *separation* or *removal,* thus, *immunis, liber, nudus, purus, vacuus,* &c.; as, *ager frugum vacuus,* Sall. Jug. 95. *vacuæ occursu hominum viæ,* Liv. v. 41. *hora nulla vacua a furto,* Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 12.

Obs. 2. Adjectives of fulness or want are nearly allied to the meaning of *participation,* see § 73. *c.* 4.

3. *Fungor, fruor, potior, utor, vescor, dignor, gaudeo,* take an Ablative like verbs of fulness or want; as,

justitiæ fungitur officiis, he discharges the duties of justice. *alienâ frui insaniâ,* to profit by the madness of another.

Obs. 1. In old writers *fungor, fruor,* &c., are found with Acc.

Obs. 2. *Potior* also takes a Gen.; as, *cui fatum foret urbis potiri,* Sall. Cat. 48. Also its kindred adjectives *compos* and *impos;* as, *animi compos,* Ter. Ad. iii. 2. 12. Abl. rare, Liv. iii. 70.

In imitation of *potior,* Tacitus uses *rerum adeptus est,* &c. Ann. iii. 55. *Regnavit populorum,* Hor. O. iii. 30. 12. is a Grecism.

4. *Dignus, indignus, contentus, fretus,* take an Ablative of the object to which they refer; as,

dignus es odio, you are worthy of hatred. *sorte tuâ contentus,* contented with your lot.

Obs. 1. *Dignus, indignus,* sometimes take a Gen.; as, *magnorum indignus avorum,* Virg. Æ. xii. 649.

Obs. 2. When the object which follows *dignus* is an act or state, it is expressed by a verb in the Subj. with *qui;* as, *dignum qui secundus numeretur,* Liv. i. 17. The Infin. is also used, especially in poetry; as, *erat tum dignus amari,* Virg. E. v. 89.

Obs. 3. *Fretus* is found in Livy with a Dat. as connected in meaning with *fido;* as, *nulli rei freta,* Liv. vi. 13.

Digitized by Google

5. *Opus* and *usus*, [need], take an Ablative of the thing required; as,

auctoritate tuâ nobis opus est,
we have need of your authority.

Obs. Opus est may be considered a kind of *impersonal* verb "there is work," "there is need." But sometimes it is used *personally*, the thing required being then in the Nom. as its subject; as, *quæ curando vulneri opus sunt*, Liv. i. 41.

i. A doubtful Gen. is found with *opus* in Liv. xxii. 51. *temporis opus esse.*

ii. When an act depends on *opus*, instead of an Infinitive, the Abl. of the Perf. participle is often used, with or without a noun; as, *opus sibi esse domino ejus convento*, Liv. vii. 5, he wanted to see his master. So with *consulto, facto, maturato, properato*, &c.

6. Words denoting separation or removal generally take an Ablative with *a, de, ex;* as,

hunc a tuis aris arcebis,
you will drive this man from your altars.

Obs. 1. Verbs of separation are of various kinds;

i. To separate or divide, *abscindo, divido, separo*, &c.; as, *tunicam ejus a pectore abscidit*, Cic. Ver. ii. 5. 1.

ii. To take away or remove, *aufero, moveo, amoveo, rapio*, &c.; as, *a Syracusanis statuas auferes*, Cic. Ver. ii. 2. 59.

iii. To keep off or defend, *arceo, absterreo, defendo, pello, prohibeo*, &c.; as, *ab effusâ fugâ flumen arcebat*, Liv. i. 27.

iv. To depart or be distant, *abeo, absum, cedo, decedo, disto*, &c.; as, *civitate cessit*, Liv. ii. 2.

v. To abstain or cease, *abstineo, cesso, desino*, &c.; as, *cessatum a levibus præliis est*, Liv. iv. 27.

vi. To distinguish or differ, *abhorreo, differo, distinguo, secerno*, &c.; as, *ab horum turpitudine abhorreret*, Cic. p. Sext. 52.

vii. To deliver or loose, *libero, laxo, solvo, vindico*, &c.; as, *ipsam a crudelitate regiâ vindicant*, Liv. i. 4.

Obs. 2. Many different sorts of words are found with this Abl.

i. Verbs.—See *Obs.* 1.

ii. Adjectives—*quietus, sanus, securus, tutus*, &c.; as, *cum quieta omnia a bello essent*, Liv. ii. 34. So *immunis*, &c. See *above* 2. *Obs.* 1.

iii. Substantives—*nulla tamen ab armis quies dabatur*, Liv. i. 31. So *aquâ et igni interdictio.*

iv. Adverbs—*castra haud procul ripâ Tiberis locata*, Liv. ii. 13. So *prope* with *propius, proxime.*

Obs. 3. Some particular verbs may be noticed;

Abdĭco has Abl. of office, with Acc. of person; as, *cum se præturâ abdicasset*, Cic. Cat. iii. 3. or simply Acc. of office; as, *abdicare consulatum*, Liv. ii. 28.

Digitized by Google

Defendo and *prohibeo* have the person or the danger in the Abl.; as, *defendit æstatem capellis*, to ward off, Hor. O. i. 17. 3. or *ab inimicorum telis vitam defendere*, to defend, Cic. Mil. 2. A Dat. is poetic; as, *solstitium pecori defendite*, Virg. E. vii. 47.

Interdico has Dat. of person, and may have Acc. of thing, § 74. *b*. 6. *Obs.* 1. but more usually the thing forbidden is Abl.; as, *quibus cum aquâ et igni interdixisset*, Cæs. B. G. vi. 44.

Obs. 4. The different cases with Verbs of separation;

The simple Abl. without *ab*, *de*, *ex*, is used freely with *things*, but *persons* should have *ab* to mark separation.

i. A Dative is frequent even in prose with verbs denoting "to take away" or "to differ;" as, *non tamen eripuere se hosti*, Liv. i. 14. *infido scurræ distabit amicus*, Hor. E. i. 18. 4. In poetry other verbs have a Dat.; as, *huic liquuntur guttæ* from this, Virg. Æ. iii. 28. So *cedo*, *decedo*, from the original meaning "yield to," may have a Dat. in the sense of "retire from;" as, *decedere calori*, Virg. G. iv. 23.

ii. The Genitives *desine querelarum*, Hor. O. ii. 9. 17. *abstineto rixæ*, iii. 27. 70, are merely Grecisms.

§ 77. Cases not Governed by other Words.

(*a*) *Place.*

Names of towns are used in appropriate cases, without a preposition, to express *at*, *to*, *from* a place.

1. At a place is expressed in the Genitive, if the Town is of the 1st or 2nd Dec. and the Sing. number, —otherwise, in the Ablative; as,

quid Romæ faciam? what shall I do at Rome?

Carthagine vixit, he lived at Carthage.

Obs. 1. Correctly speaking, "at a place" is neither Gen. nor Abl., but a Dative or Locative case, which originally ended in *i*; as, *Romæ* at Rome, for *Romaï*; *Tyri* at Tyre, like Dat. *nulli*, *toti*; *Tiburi* at Tibur, subsequently softened into *Tiburĕ*, and then regarded as an Abl.; as, *Romæ Tibur amem ventosus Tibure Romam*, Hor. E. i. 8. 12. In the Plur. no difficulty appears, as the Dat. and Abl. of all nouns are alike.

i. This Dative, or Locative in *i*, appears more distinctly in the older writers; as, *Carthagini* at Carthage, Plaut. Cas. prol. 71. and instances occur in Cicero and Livy, &c. The Dat. in *o* also in Dec. 2. is sometimes used; as, *Tyro* at Tyre, Virg. Æ. iv. 36. *Lavinio* at Lavinium, Liv. v. 52.

ii. In the old writers a Dat. was freely used with common nouns to express at or in a place; as, *proximæ viciniæ habitat*, Plaut. Bac. ii. 2. 27. Some of these forms continued in common use, and fell into a semi-adverbial form; as, *belli* or *-o*, *militiæ*, *domi*, *foris*,

Digitized by Google

ruri or *-e*. So even in expressions of time; as, *heri* yesterday, *vesperi* in the evening, *tempori* or *temperi* early, whence *temperiùs*.

iii. An Adj. is not joined with the name of a Town, expressing at a place, unless it can be treated as an Abl.; thus, *Tyriâ Carthagine*, Virg. Æ. iv. 224. but *in ipsâ Alexandriâ* not *ipsi Alexandriæ*, Cic. Att. xi. 16. Yet instances are found, where the Adj. has become a part of the appellation; as, *Teani Appuli*, Cic. Clu. 9. at the Appulian Teanum. *Carthagini novæ*, Liv. xxviii. Epit.

Obs. 2. The names of islands are sometimes used like Towns; as, *Pompeium Cypri visum*, at Cyprus, Cæs. B. C. iii. 106. Also the names of *countries* in poets; as, *non Libyæ non ante Tyro*, Virg. Æ. iv. 36.

2. To a place is expressed in the Accusative; as,

Romam rediit, he returned to Rome. *Carthaginem misit*, he sent to Carthage.

Obs. 1. With a verb of motion an Acc. must be used, even where "at" may appear in English; as, he sends to his father at Rome, *Romam ad patrem mittit*, Liv. i. 47.

Obs. 2. *Ad* with a Town means "near;" as, *castra ad Cybistra locavi*, Cic. Fam. xv. 2; or "to the neighbourhood of;" as, *ad Suessam Pometiam legionibus ductis*, Liv. ii. 25.

Obs. 3. Poets use common nouns in the Acc. like Towns; as, *devenére locos*, Virg. Æ. i. 365.

3. From a place is expressed in the Ablative; as,

nisi ante Româ profectus esses, if you had not gone from Rome before.

Obs. 1. In dating letters the Abl. is used for "at," because the writer represented himself as sending the letter *from* the place; hence common nouns take *ex;* as, *A. d.* v. *idus Quintiles, ex castris, Naronâ*, Cic. Fam. v. 9.

Obs. 2. A preposition *ab*, *ex*, is sometimes used with Towns, especially in Livy; as, *consilium migrandi ab Tarquiniis*, i. 34. To express *distance* a Prep. *must* be used; as, *castra a Fidenis mille passuum locat*, Liv. i. 14.

4. The names of countries, and common nouns, take a preposition to express *at, to, from;* as,

in Italiâ. *ad Italiam.* *ex Italiâ.*

Obs. 1. The following common nouns are used like Towns:

domi at home. *domum* homeward. *domo* from home.
foris abroad [at the doors]. *foras* abroad [to go to the doors].
humi on the ground, or, to the ground. *humo* from the ground.
ruri,-e in the country. *rus* to the country. *rure* from the country.

Obs. 2. Poets use the Dat. of a common noun, [Dative of Direction], instead of *ad;* as, *it clamor cœlo*, Virg. Æ. v. 451.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) *Space.*

1. The measurement of distance is expressed in the Accusative or Ablative; as,

jam mille passus processeram,
I had now proceeded a mile.

abest ab urbe quingentis millibus passuum,
he is distant from the city five hundred miles.

Obs. The Abl. is not common in marking the *space passed over;* as, *mille passus*, not *mille passibus, processeram;* but the Abl. as well as the Acc. may mark the *distance.* The words *intervallo* and *spatio* are always in the Abl.

i. When the place, from which the distance is reckoned, is not expressed, *ab* is put as if the Abl. of distance depended on it; as, *a quingentis fere passibus castra posuit*, Liv. xxiv. 46, half a mile off.

ii. With the Gen. *abest bidui*, &c., *iter* or *spatium* is understood.

2. The measurement of size is expressed in the Accusative, Ablative, and sometimes Genitive; as,

turris centum pedes alta, a tower one hundred feet high. *fons latus pedibus tribus,* a fountain three feet wide.

area lata pedum denûm,
a floor ten feet wide.

(*c*) *Time.*

1. A point of time is expressed in the Ablative; as,

nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit,
no mortal is wise at all times.

Obs. 1. Words not in themselves denoting time may have the Prep. *in.;* as, *non in bello solum sed etiam in pace*, Liv. i. 15. But some of these, which had become familiar, are used exactly as expressions of time, without *in;* as, *ludis* at the games; so *Saturnalibus, gladiatoribus*, &c.

Obs. 2. Of a day, with morning or evening, is put in the Abl.; as, *hoc die mane;* so *ludis mane*, Liv. ii. 36, on the morning of the games.

2. Duration of time is expressed in the Accusative; as,

Romulus septem et triginta regnavit annos,
Romulus reigned thirty seven years.

Obs. 1. The Abl. is occasionally found with duration of time,

Digitized by Google

but rarely in Cicero; as, *triginta annis vixisse Panætium*, Cic. Off. iii. 2.

Obs. 2 Several other idioms about Time must be noticed;

i. When an act is marked as still continuing, after having lasted throughout a period, an ordinal number is used with *jam*, the verb being Pres. or Imperf.; as, *Mithridates annum jam tertium et vicesimum regnat*, Cic. L. Man. 3, has been reigning for 23 years.

ii. The time *within* which an event happens is put in the Abl.; as, *Agamemnon vix decem annis unam cepit urbem*, Nep. Ep. 5, compare *decem quondam annos urbs oppugnata est*, Liv. v. 4. The prepositions *in*, *intra*, may then be used; *in* especially when a number of times is marked; as, *bis in anno*.

iii. Times *before* and *after* are put in the Abl. followed by *ante* and *post*, or in the Acc. governed by them; hence various idioms; as,

tribus annis ante,
tertio anno, or *triennio*, *ante*,
or *tribus ante annis*,
tertio ante anno,

or, *ante tres annos*, three years before.
ante tertium annum or *triennium*.
tres ante annos.
tertium ante annum. So with *post*.

A comparison between two points of time may be expressed by *quam* with one of the above forms; as, *tribus ante annis quam venerat*: or by *quam*, *quo*, *ex quo*, *quum*, used alone instead of *post quam*; as, *die vicesimo*, *quam creatus est*, Liv. vi. 29.

iv. Times *past* and *future* measured from the present moment are expressed by *abhinc* with Acc. or Abl.; and by *in* with Acc.; as, *quatuordecim abhinc annos* or *annis*, Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 12: Att. xii. 18, fourteen years ago: *in ducentos annos*, Liv. i. 53, for two hundred years. So *in præsens*, *in futurum*, *in æternum*, &c.

v. A person's age is commonly expressed by *natus* with Acc.; as, *eques annos* XC *natus*, Cic. Ver. ii. 3, 25, ninety years old. Or a Gen. of the quality may be used, *annorum* XC, without *natus*.

Obs. 3. The use of some prepositions must be noticed;

ad up to, as much as; as, *annos ad quinquaginta*, Cic. p. Clu. 40.
de during, or before the end of; as, *de die*, *de nocte*, *de multâ nocte*.
ex after; as, *diem ex die* day after day: So *ex quo*, *ex illo*.
in with Acc. or Abl.; see above.
per throughout, said of *long* times; as, *per triennium*, Cic. Div. 4.
sub about, near; as, *sub Trojæ funera*, Hor. O. i. 8. 15.

Obs. 4. For *militiæ*, *belli*, *vesperi*, &c., see *Place*.

(*d*) *Ablative Absolute.*

A substantive or pronoun is often joined to a participle in the Ablative case, without their depending on any other word; as,

Tarquinio Superbo regnante, in Italiam venit,
he came into Italy, when Tarquinius Superbus was reigning.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. The Ablative Absolute exhibits the general varieties of meaning which the Participle does, [see Participles];

The Ablative Absolute is mostly an abridged Adverbial clause, either Temporal, Causal, Conditional, or Admissive. The temporal clauses are the most frequent, whence probably the Abl. was used, as a definition of time; as, *æquato jure omnium*, Liv. ii. 3, when the rights of all had been equalised.

Obs. 2. Some idioms to be noticed in the Ablative Absolute.

i. The participle put absolutely with a sentence; as, *excepto quod non simul esses, cætera lætus*, Hor. E. i. 10. 50. Sometimes, though rarely, the absolute participle stands quite alone, being used impersonally, as, *multum certato, pervicit Bardanes*, Tac. Ann. xi. 10.

ii. As the participle, *ens* being, does not exist in Latin, the absolute clauses, where it might be found, are put without any participle; thus, with an Adj.; as, *inopi tum urbe*, Liv. ii. 14.—with a Substantive of a verbal force, *auctor, comes, dux, judex*, &c.; as, *auctore me, te judice.*—with words of office, *consul, prætor*, &c.; as, *Q. Fabio et C. Julio consulibus.*

iii. Another participial clause cannot be joined to an Abl. Absol.; as, *quum Caius, de cælo tactus mortuus est*, but not *Caio de cælo tacto mortuo.*

Obs. 3. The Abl. Absol. is only used, when a *new subject* is introduced; as, I shall be safe while I reign *ego regnans*, or *dum regno, tutus ero;* but I shall be safe, while he reigns, *ego, illo regnante, tutus ero.* Yet the Abl. Absol. is (rarely) used without a change of subject, for the sake of emphasis; as, *nemo erit qui credat, te invito, provinciam tibi esse decretam*, Cic. Ph. xi. 10.

§ 78. ADJECTIVES.

For the agreement of adjectives with substantives see § 68.

1. Some adjectives, though used as epithets, have a partitive force in themselves; as,

summus mons,	*primo mense*,
the top of the mountain.	in the first part of the month.

Obs. The adjectives are principally *primus, extremus, postremus, ultimus, summus, imus, intimus, medius, cæterus, reliquus.*

2. An adjective is often used in Latin, where an adverb is required in English; as,

invitus fecit,	*audax insiste*,
he did it reluctantly.	press on boldly.

Digitized by Google

(*a*) *The Comparative Degree.*

1. The comparative compares one object with another by means of the conjunction *quam;* as,

otium melius quam desidiam puto,

I think leisure better than idleness.

Obs. 1. The two nouns joined by *quam* are in the same case, when they are both subjects of the same verb, or both governed by the same word; as, *otium* and *desidiam* both subjects of *esse:* so in *nulli flebilior quam tibi*, Hor. O. i. 24. 10, more to be lamented by no one than [he is to be lamented] by you.

Otherwise the cases will differ; as, *meliori viro, quam tu es, dedi*, not *quam tibi*. Yet even then, if an Acc. precedes, *quam* may follow with the same case; thus we have both these constructions in Cic. Fam. v. 7. *ut tibi multo majori, quam Africanus fuit, me non multo minorem, quam Lælium, facile adjunctum esse patiare:* where it could not be *quam Africano*, but might be *quam Lælius fuit*. For *quam* followed by a verb see Conjunctions.

i. Other words having a comparative force; as, *alius, aliter, contrarius, diversus, multiplex*, &c. may be followed by *quam;* as, *non aliter quam qui* &c., Virg. G. i. 201. So an Abl. with *quam* omitted; as, *alius Lysippo*, Hor. E. ii. 1. 240.

ii. Poets use *ac* or *atque* for *quam;* as, *altius ac nos præcinctis*, Hor. S. i. 5. 5.

iii. Sometimes *quantus* is redundant after *quam;* as, *majorem pecuniam polliceri quam quantam hic dedisset*, Cic. Ver. ii. 2. 29. See *Obs.* 3.

Obs. 2. When a quality exists in too high a degree for some *act to ensue*, then *quam* is followed by *ut* or *qui* with a Subj.; as, *hoc videtur esse altius quam ut id nos suspicere possimus*, Cic. d. Or. iii. 6. *major sum quam cui possit fortuna nocere*, Ov. Met. vi. 195.

The positive may be used with *ad* and a gerund or gerundial adjective; as, *respublica ad resistendum imbecilla est*, Cic. Att. vii. 3. Or in poetry with an Infin.; as, *ferre jugum pariter dolosi*, Hor. O. i. 35. 28.

Obs. 3. When a quality exists in too high a degree for it to *accord with*, or *be proportionate to, another object*, then *quam* is followed by *pro;* as, *prœlium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium*, Liv. xxi. 29. Or *quantus* may be used; as, *majore animo pacis opera inchoata, quam quantâ mole bellum gesserat*, Liv. i. 38.

Obs. 4. When two qualities possessed by the same subject are compared, both adjectives or adverbs are in the comparative; as, *Pauli concio fuit verior quam gratior populo*, Liv. xxii. 38, more true than pleasing. Or else both in the positive with *magis—quam;* as, *ne quis me magis accusatorie quam liberè dixisse arbitretur*, Cic. Ver. ii. 2. 72.

Digitized by Google

2. *Quam* is often omitted after a comparative, and the latter substantive put in the Ablative case; as,

vilius argentum est auro,
silver is of less value than gold.

Obs. 1. *Quam* must not be omitted, if any ambiguity would ensue; hence the Abl. should not be used, unless the things compared are subjects of the same verb, or Accusatives governed by the same verb; thus *nulli flebilior quam tibi* must not be *te.*

Obs. 2. The Abl. instead of *quam* must be used in the case of a *negative* word or a *relative* pronoun; as, *nullo sapientior est,* not *quam nemo: quo non præsentius ullum,* Virg. G. ii. 127, not *quam quod.*

3. *Quam* is often omitted without an Ablative, after *amplius, plus,* and *minus;* as,

amplius sunt sex menses,
there are more than six months.

Obs. The comparative thus used seems to be put in apposition with, or to qualify, the noun; thus, there are six months—and more. Hence this idiom may be used with all cases.

(*b*) *Superlatives.*

1. *Quam* or *vel* set before superlatives denotes the greatest possible degree; as,

quam celerrimus, the quickest possible. *vel optimus,* the very best.

Obs. 1. With *quam* the verb *possum* may be supplied, and is sometimes expressed; as, *convivium, quam maxime possumus, producimus,* Cic. Sen. 14.

i. Quam qui is sometimes used with an ellipse of the preceding word; as, *tam sum amicus reipublicæ quam qui maxime,* Cic. Fam. v. 2.

ii. Instead of *quam* sometimes *quantus* is used; as, *quantâ maximâ poterat vi,* Liv. ix. 10. So with adjectives having a superlative force; as, *quantâ eximiâ celeritate poterat,* Liv. xlii. 15.

iii. Unus also increases the force of a superlative; as, *justissimus unus qui fuit,* Virg. Æ. ii. 426. So without a superlative, *unum Tritonia Pallas quem docuit,* Virg. Æ. v. 704, above all.

Obs. 2. A superlative with *quisque* is often nearly equivalent to the positive with *omnes;* as, *optimus quisque* all good men; yet it sometimes keeps its full superlative force. When followed by another superlative, they are nearly equivalent to two comparatives with *quo* and *eo;* as, *sapientissimus quisque æquissimo animo moritur,* Cic. Sen. 23, the wiser the man the more patiently he dies.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 3. A superlative used alone denotes a very high degree; as, *optimus* very good, excellent.

2. To denote the *measure of excess* or the *degree* in which one object is surpassed by another, the ablatives *tanto, quanto, hoc, eo,* and *quo,* with some others, are used with comparatives and superlatives; as,

quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt,
the more they have, the more they desire.

quanto tu optimus omnium patronus,
in how great a degree are you the best patron of all.

Obs. Any word capable of denoting the measure of excess may be thus used; as, *uno plus Etruscorum cecidisse,* Liv. ii. 7, more by one.

i. These ablatives may be used with any words which have a comparative force; as, *tanto dissimilem,* Hor. S. ii. 3. 313.

ii. The Accusative form *tantum, quantum,* &c., is usually joined with positives; as, *multum similis metuenti,* Hor. S. ii. 5. 92. Yet comparatives sometimes take it; as, *multum hic robustior illo,* Juv. x. 197.

(*c*) *Numerals.*

1. The plural of *unus* is used with nouns which have no singular, or whose plural has a distinct meaning; as,

una litera, one letter *a* or *b*. *unæ literæ,* one letter, an epistle.

Obs. 1. *Unus* is used as a common Adj. in the sense of *alone,* or *the same;* as, *nec unus in te ego hos animos gessi,* Liv. ii. 12, I alone. It then has a regular plural; as, *unis moribus vivunt,* Cic. p. Flac. 26, the same manners.

Obs. 2. *Alter* is often used for "a second:" yet it differs from *secundus* in meaning a second instead of a first, *secundus* being a second in addition to a first; hence *altera natura consuetudo,* not *secunda,* use is a second nature.

2. *Mille* is an undeclined *adjective* in the singular, and a declinable *substantive* in the plural; as,

mille homines, -um, a thousand men. *hominum sex millia, -ium,* six thousand men.

Obs. Mille is sometimes used as a substantive, and takes its noun in the Gen.; as, *mille ovium,* Hor. S. ii. 3. 197.

Digitized by Google

3. Distributives are generally used in the plural; as,
Scipio et Hannibal cum singulis interpretibus,
Scipio and Hannibal with an interpreter each.

Obs. 1. Distributives are often repeated; as, *singulos singuli populi lictores dederunt*, Liv. i. 8.

i. In multiplication distributives are used, as the same number is taken more than once; as, *pueri bis seni*, twice six.

ii. Poets use distributives in the Sing. for multiplicatives; as, *terno ordine*, Virg. Æ. v. 120, in a triple rank: or as cardinal numbers; as, *centenâ arbore*, Virg. Æ. x. 207, a hundred oars.

Obs. 2. Distributives are used with *pluralia tantum* like the plural of *unus;* as, *binæ literæ* two epistles.

§ 79. PRONOUNS.

(*a*) *Personal Pronouns.*

1. The Nom. of Personal pronouns is not expressed except with emphasis; see § 67.

Obs. 1. The Oblique cases are expressed, though unemphatic; see *Infinitive Mood.*

Obs. 2. The Personal and other pronouns are used with prepositions to signify 'house' or 'home;' as, *a me* from my house; *apud vos* at your house.

Obs. 3. Personal and other pronouns are fond of being grouped together; as, *nec unus in te ego hos animos gessi*, Liv. ii. 12.

2. *Nos* and *vos* have two forms in the genitive: *nostrum, vestrum,* are used with partitive words, and *nostri, vestri,* in other constructions; as,

unus nostrum, one of us.
optimus vestrum, the best of you.
nil nostri misereris, you pity us not at all.
similis vestri, like you.

Obs. Vestrum is sometimes found where *vestri* would be usual; as, *tam cupidus vestrum*, Cic. Ver. ii. 3. 96.

3. *Sui* and *suus* are reflective pronouns, and refer to an agent whose action affects himself; as,
Petrus nimium admiratur se; parcit erroribus suis,
Peter admires himself too much; he spares his own faults.

Digitized by Google

Sui and *suus* refer to the *principal word* in the sentence; thus *se* and *suus* refer to *Petrus*.

Obs. 1. The principal word is properly the subject of the proposition in which the reflective pronoun is found; as, *Petrus admiratur se:* therefore when a *second* subject appears, the demonstrative *is* will be used in referring to the *first;* as, *Hannibal velut Italia ei provincia decreta esset, inferre bellum statuit,* Liv. xxi. 5.

Obs. 2. When no ambiguity can arise from it, the reflective pronoun may make other references; thus—

i. Sui and *suus* may refer to the subject of a preceding proposition, specially if some thought or purpose of the preceding subject is expressed; as, *metuens ne se casus aliquis opprimeret,* immediately following the former example in Liv. xxi. 5. Even the Object of a preceding proposition may be referred to, if it is a person whose sentiments are expressed; as, *his indignitas crescebat, si ne a Tarquinio quidem ad se rediret regnum,* Liv. i. 40.

ii. Sui and *suus* may refer to the object of their own proposition; the object then generally stands first, and *suus* agrees with the subject; as, *utrumque regem sua multitudo consalutaverat,* Liv. i. 7.

iii. In the *oratio obliqua, sui* and *suus* always refer to the person whose words and sentiments are related; as, *id primo se agro paterno exuisse,* Liv. ii. 23, and so *passim.*

Hence *sui* and *suus* are Subjective in their use.

Obs. 3. *Sui* and *suus* may refer to an indefinite subject, 'self' or 'one's self;' as, *cæcus amor sui,* Hor. O. i. 18. 14.

Obs. 4. When the pronoun is emphatic, yet *sui* or *suus* would cause ambiguity, *ipse* must be used; as, *Jugurtha legatos misit, qui ipsi liberisque vitam peterent,* Sall. Jug. 46.

4. *Ipse* lays an emphasis on the word to which it is joined; as,

hoc ipsum mihi molestum est,
this very thing is troublesome to me.

Obs. 1. *Ipse,* with another pronoun, agrees either with it or with the subject of the verb, according as the one or the other is meant to be emphatic; as, *me ipse consolor* I [without the aid of any one else] console myself; *me ipsum consolor* I console myself [though not any one else.]

Obs. 2. *Ipse* has some slightly various meanings:

i. of one's own accord; as, *ipsæ considunt,* Virg. G. iv. 65, they will settle of themselves.

ii. entire, whole, in exact definitions; as, *decem ipsos dies,* Cic. Fam. ii. 8, for ten whole days.

iii. an important person; as, *ipse dixit,* He, i. e. Pythagoras.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) *Possessive Pronouns.*

A possessive pronoun has the same meaning as a personal pronoun in the Genitive.

1. A possessive is used to denote the Genitive of the Possessor; as,

liber meus, my book. *tuum est hæc dicere,* it is your part to say these things.

Obs. 1. The possessive pronoun may be used for all the varieties of the Genitive of the Possessor, see § 73. *a.* 4. Its equivalence to a Gen. is most clearly seen, when another Gen. appears in the sentence; as, *laudes egregii Cæsaris et tuas,* Hor. O. i. 6. 11.

Obs. 2. The Possessive is particularly distinguished in its use from the Gen. of the personal pronoun, when they depend upon a Substantive. The former is then seen to be Subjective, marking the Possessor; the latter Objective, marking the object of an action or feeling, [§ 73. *d.* 1.]; thus,

desiderium tuum, your regret, ***which you feel.***
desiderium tui, regret for you, ***of which you are the object.***

Yet sometimes the Possessive expresses the object; as, *non sua solum ratio habenda est, sed etiam aliorum,* Cic. Off. i. 39. Sometimes the Genitive, especially *nostrum, vestrum,* is used for the possessive; as, *frequentia vestrum* or *vestra,* Cic. Phil. iv. 1. Particularly with *omnium;* as, *voluntati vestrum omnium,* Cic. d. Or. iii. 55.

2. A possessive takes an adjective in the genitive, to agree with the personal pronoun which is implied; as,

meum solius peccatum, the fault of me alone. *vestræ paucorum laudes,* the praises of you few.

3. A relative may have for its antecedent the personal pronoun implied in the possessive; as,

laudare fortunas meas qui natum habebam,
to praise the fortunes of me, who had a son.

Obs. 1. These idioms show that a Possessive is exactly equivalent to the Gen. of a personal pronoun, see also § 66. 1. *obs.* 1.

Obs. 2. The Genitives of the personal pronouns *mei, tui, sui,* &c., are like the possessives in form, and partly so in usage; thus a Gerundial adjective with them never varies in gender or number; as, *non tam sui conservandi quam tuorum consiliorum reprimendorum causâ profugerunt,* Cic. Cat. i. 3.

Digitized by Google

(c) *Demonstrative Pronouns.*

1. The three demonstratives *hic, iste, ille,* belong respectively to the *first, second* and *third* persons; *hic* denotes something connected with *me,* the speaker.
iste „ „ *you,* the person spoken to.
ille „ „ *him,* the person spoken of.

The finest classical passage, for marking the force of these pronouns, is found in Ter. And. Act. i. at the end.

Obs. 1. Some varieties of meaning may be noticed:
i. With *homo, caput,* &c., *hic* is used for *ego;* as, *hunc hominem velles si tradere,* Hor. S. i. 9. 47, your humble servant. So *hoc fore caput,* Liv. i. 41, you.
ii. The adverbs *hic, istic, illic,* become equivalent to personal pronouns; as, *est hic,* Virg. Æ. ix. 205, in me. *istic cum ignaviâ scelus est,* Liv. i. 47, with you.
iii. Hic and *ille* equivalent to *here* and *there,* or *now* and *then;* as, *quid hoc rei est,* Liv. i. 48, what is the matter here? *ipse, en ille, incedit,* Liv. ii. 6, there he walks himself.——*horum operum,* Liv. i. 55, of the works of the present day. *domos suas ultimum illud visuri,* Liv. i. 29, then for the last time.

Obs. 2. When *hic* and *ille* refer to two things mentioned before, *hic* commonly denotes the *latter,* as being nearest, and *ille* the former; as,

quocunque aspicias, nihil est nisi pontus et aer;
nubibus hic tumidus, fluctibus ille minax. Ovid. Tr. i. 2. 24.

Yet this order is sometimes reversed; as, *sic deus et virgo est, hic spe celer illa timore,* Ov. Met. i. 539.

Obs. 3. Two demonstratives are sometimes united in one clause, with the omission of a relative; *hic ille* being equal to *hic est ille qui;* as, *hunc illum poscere fata,* Virg. Æ. vii. 272, that this is the man whom the fates demand.

2. The demonstrative *is* has less force than *ille,* and is used nearly as a personal pronoun; as,

is qui venit, he who comes. *corpus ejus,* his body.

Is either refers to something preceding; or serves to introduce a relative, *is qui, ea quæ, id quod.*

Obs. 1. A Gen. cannot depend upon a demonstrative, *ille* or *is,* as the representative of a noun already mentioned, as *that* is used in English, but the Gen. must stand alone, or else the noun must be repeated; as, the authority of the laws is more powerful

Digitized by Google

than *that* of men, *imperia legum potentiora quam hominum*, Liv. ii. 1.

Whenever a demonstrative is found in apparent connexion with a Gen. it has really a *demonstrative* force, and must remain even if the noun were repeated; as, *quum omnis arrogantia odiosa est, tum illa ingenii et eloquentiæ multo molestissima*, Cic. Div. 11. meaning *illa ingenii arrogantia* that particular species of arrogance which makes one boast of one's abilities.

Obs. 2. Some other particular idioms may be noticed:

i. A demonstrative expressing the object of an act or feeling=a Gen.; as, *hac ira*, Liv. ii. 22, from anger at this. *ea signa*, Virg. Æ. ii. 171, signs of that.

ii. Is or *ille* redundant, in order to give force to an expression; as, *erant adolescentes aliquot, nec ii in tenui loco orti*, Liv. ii. 3. So with *quidem*; as, *de maximâ quidem illâ, sed tamen parte civitatis*, Liv. ii. 24.

iii. In eo esse ut to be on the point of; as, *quum jam in eo esset ut in muros evaderet miles*, Liv. ii. 17.

(*d*) *Relative Pronouns.*

For Relative and Antecedent see *Third Concord.*

A Relative is often equivalent to a conjunction with a personal or demonstrative pronoun; as,

qui cum dixisset,
and when he had said. See § 69. 4.

Obs. 1. This use of the Relative has a great influence in Latin sentences. *Qui* being of all persons is equivalent to *et ego, et tu, et is;* and so with any other conjunction: hence according to the force of the conjunction implied, the Relative forms,

Co-ordinate sentences, when *qui* is equal to *et is, aut is, sed is*, and other conjunctions which introduce co-ordinate sentences: [see § 65. *c.* 1. *Obs.* 2:] thus, *constantes amici sunt eligendi, cujus generis magna est penuria*, Cic. Am. 17: but of this kind. *Qui* then has the Indicative.

Subordinate sentences, when *qui* is equal to *ut is, quia is, si is*, and other conjunctions which introduce subordinate sentences: [see § 65. 3. *Obs.* 2:] thus, *mercemur servum qui dictet nomina*, Hor. E. i. 6. 50: to tell or that he may tell. *Qui* then has the Subjunctive.

Under this head of the Relative may be noticed:

i. Two Relatives in the same clause, which cannot occur in English; as, *quem qui scire velit*, Virg. G. ii. 105.

ii. A Relative and interrogative in the same clause; as, *quem tu quanti facias scio*, Cic. Tusc. i. 17.

iii. A Relative at the beginning of a principal sentence to show its *logical* connexion with what goes before; as, *quæ cum ita sint, quo facto*, &c. in Cicero *passim*. So *quod* is used even before conjunctions; as, *quod si, quod nisi*, &c. but if, but unless.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 2. *Relative* and *Correlative* sentences.—When a Relative refers to an antecedent Noun, it makes a Relative sentence; but when it refers to an antecedent Demonstrative expressed or understood, it makes a Correlative sentence.

i. A Relative sentence cannot be introduced by a conjunction, *quoniam, igitur*, &c., as it may be in English; because the relative contains the force of the conjunction in itself; thus, the books of Xenophon are very useful, which I therefore beg you to read, *perutiles Xenophontis libri sunt, quos legite quæso*, Cic. Sen. 17. not *quos igitur*. Yet see the next *Obs.*

ii. A Correlative sentence may be introduced by a conjunction, when the relative stands first; but the conjunction really belongs to the following demonstrative clause; as, *quibus enim nihil opis est in ipsis, iis omnis gravis est ætas; qui autem omnia bona a se ipsis petunt, iis nihil potest malum videri*, Cic. Sen. 2.

Obs. 3. Relative attracted to *Subordinate* clause.—When a Relative sentence has another clause subordinate to it, the relative is usually attracted to the construction of the subordinate clause; as, *Heraclitum non omnes interpretantur uno modo, qui quoniam intelligi noluit, omittamus*, Cic. N. D. iii. 14. for *quem, quoniam is* &c.

i. A demonstrative is often inserted, for the sake of clearness, specially if any other case but a Nom. or Acc. is required; as, *qui mos quum a posterioribus non esset retentus, Arcesilas eum revocavit*, Cic. fin. ii. 2. for *quem morem*, &c.

ii. Sometimes the attracted Relative has no sentence of its own, and cannot then be literally rendered in English; as, *mens enim et ratio in senibus est, qui si nulli essent, nullæ omnino civitates essent*, Cic. Sen. 19.

Obs. 4. Some idiomatic uses of the pronoun *Quod:*

i. Quod for *quantum*, used restrictively; as, *quod sciam, quod meminerim*, as far as I know.

ii. Quod for *propter quod* or *quare:* as, *quid est quod tu alios accuses?* Cic. Ver. ii. 2. 20. what is the reason why?

iii. Quod at the beginning of a sentence referring to what follows; as, *quod mihi de nostro statu gratularis*, Cic. fam. i. 7, as to your congratulating me. See Gr. Gr. § 129. *d.*

iv. Tantum quod for *vix* or *vix dum*, scarcely or only just; as, *tantum quod veneram*, Cic. fam. vii. 23. So *tantum quod non* all but, Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 45.

Obs. 5. The conjunction *unde* is sometimes used for the pronouns *a quo, a quibus*, see Hor. O. i. 12. 17: S. i. 6. 12.

For the Universal Relatives *quicunque*, &c., see Etymology.

(*e*) *Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns.*

1. *Quis* and *quid* are used as Substantives and stand alone; but *qui, quæ, quod*, are used as Adjectives

Digitized by Google

agreeing with a substantive expressed; as,

quis est ?—quid est ? *qui vir ?—quod nomen ?*
who is he?—what is it? what man?—what name?

Obs. 1. The distinction between *quid* and *quod* is invariably observed; but *quis* and *qui* are sometimes confounded.

i. Quis for *qui*, with a substantive; as, *quisve locus*, Liv. v. 40.

ii. Qui for *quis* in indirect questions; as, *qui sis reputa*, Liv. i. 41.

Obs. 2. Interrogative pronouns are strengthened by the addition of an interrogative particle, specially in Horace; as, *uterne fidet sibi certius ?* S. ii. 2. 107. So *quîne, quantane.*

2. Questions are called *indirect* or *oblique*, when the interrogative depends on some other word; as,

quis est ?——novi quis sit,
who is he?——I know who he is.

Obs. 1. The Subjunctive marks indirect questions, see § 84. *a.*

Obs. 2. *Nescio quis* with an Indicative, becomes an indefinite pronoun "some one or other;" as, *nescio quis certe est*, Virg. E. viii. 107.

3. The interrogative *quis* may be used as an Indefinite with *si, ne, num*, and other such particles; as,

si quis, *ne quis veniat,* *num quis dicit ?*
if any one. lest any one should come. does any one say?

Obs. 1. The fem. Sing. and neut. Plur. of *quis*, used indefinitely, is usually *quă*; as, *si qua fides*, Virg. Æ. ii. 142. So *aliquis* some one, *aliqua.*

Obs. 2. The usual affirmative indefinite is *aliquis* some one, together with its other compounds, *aliquantus*, &c.; as, *aliquo tempore anni*, Liv. v. 2.

Yet *aliquis* may be used in negative and dubitative clauses, with *si, ne, num*, when it retains its *partitive* force, "some;" as, *ne additus honos aliquid libertati officeret*, Liv. ii. 2, might do *some* injury.

Obs. 3. *quisquam* and *ullus*, any one, have an *exclusive*, not *partitive*, force; hence they are used *negatively* and *dubitatively*, with *si, ne, num*, &c., in conditional negative or interrogative clauses; as, *quisquam numen Junonis adoret ?* Virg. Æ. i. 48. would any one?

Yet *quisquam* may be used in affirmative clauses, when it retains its *exclusive* force, "any one;" as, *ut in illâ quisquam ætate esse poterat*, Liv. i. 18.

i. Quisquam is commonly used as a substantive, *ullus* as an adjective, like *quis* and *qui*; as, *nec quisquam unus*, Liv. ii. 9. *nec ullo casu potest contingere, ut ulla intermissio fiat*, Cic. Am. 2. *Ullus* is often without a Subst. in poetry; sometimes in prose; as, *nemo ullius nisi fugæ memor*, Liv. ii. 59.

Digitized by Google

ii. Nullus conforms to the usage of *ullus*, the Substantive being *nemo;* but instead of the Gen. *neminis*, Abl. *nemine*, and the Plural, *nullius, nullo, nulli, -orum*, &c., are used; as, *si neminem læsit, si nullius aures violavit, si nemini odio fuit*, Cic. Mur. 40. and *etiamsi a nullo laudetur*, Cic. Off. i. 4.

iii. Omnis is rarely used for *ullus;* as, *sine omni periculo*, Ter. And. ii. 3. 17.

(*f*) *Adjective Pronouns.*

1. When two things are declared to be the same, *idem* is used with *qui, ac*, or *atque;* as,

vita eadem est, quæ fuit, or *ac fuit*,
his life is the same as it was.

Obs. 1. A Dat. is found with *idem*, like *par* or *similis;* as, *idem facit occidenti*, Hor. A. P. 467.

Obs. 2. With a Verb or Adj. equality may be expressed by *æque ac* or *atque;* as, *æque nauseat ac locuples*, Hor. E. i. 1. 93. In poetry *non secus ac*.

Obs. 3. *Idem* may be used for *item* or *etiam* "also;" as, *quem Iulum eundem nuncupat*, Liv. i. 3. It is then sometimes repeated; as, *fuisse quosdam, qui iidem ornatè, iidem versutè dicerent*, Cic. Or. 7.

2. When a thing is declared to be different from another, *alius* or one of its derivatives is used with *quam, ac* or *atque;* as,

aliud dicit quam, or *ac, sentit*,
he speaks differently from what he thinks.

Obs. 1. For *alius* with Abl., see § 78. *a*.

Obs. 2. *Alius*, repeated in different clauses, denotes diversity; one,—another; some,—others; as, *quum alii malos scandant, alii per foros cursent, alii sentinam exhauriant*, Cic. Sen. 6.

i. Sometimes a noun is repeated instead of *alius;* as, *ab scelere ad aliud scelus*, Liv. i. 47.

ii. Two things may be thus contrasted as with *aliud quam;* as, *longe aliud est virgines rapere, aliud pugnare cum viris*, Liv. i. 12.

3. *Alius*, with one of its own cases or a derivative, denotes a diversity in different things; as,

aliud aliis videtur,
one thing seems good to one person and another to another.

Obs. Alius alius also gains the meaning of reciprocity, "each other;" as, *alius alium confirmant*, Liv. ii. 24, they encourage each other.

Alter alter is used with two persons; as, *alterum in alterius sanguine*, Virg. Æ. ii. 667.

Digitized by Google

VERBS.

§ 80. *The Voices.*

1. The *immediate object* of the Active verb becomes the *subject* of the Passive; and thus the Accusative case is changed to the Nominative; as,

amo illum,———*ille amatur a me,*
I love him.———he is loved by me.

thus only *transitive* verbs have a regular Passive.

Obs. 1. In English very many verbs are both transitive and neuter; as, to join, move, turn, &c., but in Latin few verbs admit of both meanings; as, *abstineo, verto,* &c. Also verbs, which are transitive in English, are not always transitive in Latin; as, he spares me, *parcit mihi;* he persuades me, *persuadet mihi.*

Obs. 2. Neuter verbs, which govern a Cognate or other Acc. may have a Passive in the same sense; as, *tota mihi dormitur hiems,* Mart. xii. 59. [see § 75. *obs.* 2. *obs.* 3.] So *invehor,* Cic. Ver. ii. 4. 4, I am assailed; although to assail is *invehor in aliquem.*

Obs. 3. A middle voice.—Passives have often a *reflective* meaning, like the Greek Middle voice,—to do something to or for one's self; as, *quin accingeris?* Liv. i. 47, prepare yourself. So *cingor, congregor, inducor, pascor, purgor, vertor,* &c.

Hence some, with a slight deviation of meaning, govern an Acc. and look like Deponents; as, *avertor* I turn myself away from, and so, *loathe,* [see § 74. *b.* 5. *Obs.* 2.]

2. Verbs, which govern only a Dative in the Active, have no Passive voice, except as impersonals; as,

credit mihi,———*creditur mihi* not *credor,*
he trusts me. I am trusted.

Obs. 1. By the addition of the Dative pronouns such Passives are conjugated throughout:

Sing.	*creditur mihi,*	*creditur tibi,*	*creditur illi.*
Plur.	*creditur nobis,*	*creditur vobis,*	*creditur illis.*

Obs. 2. A personal Passive used with such verbs is a mere Grecism; as, *imperor, invideor,* Hor. E. i. 5. 21: A. P. 56.

Obs. 3. Verbs which in one sense govern a Dat. may in another take an Acc. and so admit of a personal Passive; as, *arma his imperata,* Liv. i. 43: where the Active would be *arma his, imperavit.* So *credo* I believe, *credor* I am believed.

Digitized by Google

3. The true Impersonal verbs do not admit of a Passive voice; as, *licet, oportet,* &c.

Obs. Some Impersonals approach to a personal usage in having a neuter Adj. or Pron. as their subject, or being used in the Plur.; as, *id ei licet, hæc te pudent.* And *decet, dedecet,* are freely used with a noun as their subject; as, *arcta decet sanum comitem toga,* Hor. E. i. 18. 30: *quem tenues decuere togæ,* Hor. E. i. 14. 32.

4. Passive impersonals become equivalent to active verbs by adding the pronouns as agents; as,

statur a me, i. e. *sto.* *statur ab illis,* i. e. *stant.*

Obs. Passive impersonals are all formed from personal actives, [Rule 2], and they describe an act in the most abstract or general manner; as, *in forum curritur,* Liv. i. 59, a rush is made into the forum. But when a particular agent is added, the general statement is thereby limited; as, *ni maturatum ab dictatore esset,* Liv. ii. 22. Thus by adding the personal pronouns as agents the expression becomes equivalent to the different persons of an active verb; as, *mihi elaboratum est,* Cic. Div. 12, I have toiled. =*elaboravi.*

§ 81. The Moods.

1. The use of the different Moods in Latin depends very much upon the structure of sentences, and the connexion of clauses with each other.

2. The structure of sentences is explained § 65. *c. d.* The following particulars, relating to compound sentences, should be borne in mind in studying the Moods.

(*a*) The Principal clause and its Co-ordinates.

Conjunctions which join Co-ordinates to the Principal clause are 1. copulative, *et;* 2. disjunctive, *aut;* 3. adversative, *sed;* 4. argumental, *nam;* 5. illative, *igitur.*

(*b*) The Subordinate clauses; which are,

1. Substantival, consisting of { indirect assertion,—Acc. with Infin. / indirect petition,—*ut* with Subj. / indirect question,—interrog. with Subj.

2. Adjectival,—introduced by *Qui.*

3. Adverbial, which are introduced by these conjunctions, { consecutive, *ut, ut non.* / causal, *quia, quod.* / temporal, *quum.* / intentional, *ut, ne.* / conditional, *si.* / admissive, *quamvis.*

Digitized by Google

3. *Indicative* distinguished from *Subjunctive.*—

The Indicative is *objective*, describing acts as they are in themselves;—the Subjunctive or Potential is *subjective*, describing acts as thought of in the mind; as,

tam crudelis est ut omnes eum timeant,
he is so cruel that all fear him.

where *est* expresses what he is in himself, *timeant* a consequence inferred by the mind.

Obs. The principle, which distinguishes the Indicative from the Subjunctive [or Potential] Mood, has been stated to be as follows; [see Greenlaw on the Doctrine of the Subjunctive Mood.]

The Indicative is used (in dependent propositions), when the clause is attached to the Subject of another proposition;

The Subjunctive is used, when the clause is attached to the Predicate of another proposition;

as, *stultus es qui huic credis,* and, *stultus es qui huic credas,*
you are foolish, who believe him. you are foolish for believing him.

where *qui credis* is attached to *tu* the Subject; and *qui credas* is attached to *stultus es* the Predicate.

But though this principle is very observable in some constructions, especially with relatives, yet it does not hold good throughout; thus in, *si me audies, sperabis;* and, *si me audias, speres;* the moods cannot be so distinguished. But the Indicative, being Objective, will often attach itself to the subject of a proposition, to describe some fact connected with it; and the Subjunctive, being Subjective, will often attach itself to the Predicate, to describe some reason or consequence, &c. which is perceived by the mind.

§ 82. *The Indicative Mood.*

1. The Indicative is used in all independent assertions; as,

Alexander vicit Darium.
Alexander conquered Darius.

Obs. 1. In compound sentences the Principal clause and its co-ordinates commonly have the Indicative.

Hence the relative *Qui* has the Indicative, when it is equivalent to any of the conjunctions which join co-ordinate clauses to the principal one. [see § 79. *d. obs.* 1.]

Obs. 2. In one view the Indicative is the *only* Mood that is found in *really independent* clauses; and when other moods seem to be independent, some verb may be supplied to govern them: yet the force of this governing verb is *contained in the mood;* and therefore the Imperative or Potential may sometimes in this way be regarded as independent, though they cannot be used in a direct categorical proposition.

Obs. 3. For some usages of the Indicative, where the Potential might be expected, see § 84. *b.*

Digitized by Google

2. The Indicative is used in dependent clauses, when anything is spoken of simply as a fact; as,

vir sapit qui pauca loquitur,
the man is wise who speaks little.

qui loquitur expressing a fact connected with *vir.*

si me audies, vitabis inimicitias,
if you will hear me, you will avoid enmities.

si audies expressing a fact, without noticing its probability.

Obs. The Indicative in subordinate clauses is simply objective, and is used whenever there is no conjunction or pronoun requiring a Subjunctive from the nature of its dependence, and no indefiniteness or possibility requiring a Potential. Hence the Indicative in the *Oratio recta* may be noticed with,

i. Relatives limiting the antecedent, and marking a *definite object* or *simple fact;* as, *vir bonus omne forum quem spectat,* Hor. E. i. 16. 57.

ii. Causal particles *quia, quod;* as, *centum creat senatores, quia is numerus satis erat,* Liv. i. 8.

iii. Particles of time, when no *uncertainty* or *indefiniteness* is intended; as, *cum primum adolevit ætas,* Liv. i. 4. So *postquam, ubi, ut, simul ac, donec,* &c.

iv. Conditional particles, when no *probability* or *possibility* is marked; as, *dicam si potero,* Hor. S. ii. 2. 8. So *etsi, nisi,* &c.

v. Admissive particles, specially *quanquam,* in stating a fact; as, *quanquam festinas,* Hor. O. i. 28. 35.

§ 83. *The Imperative Mood.*

1. The Imperative is used in addresses, entreaties, or commands; as,

animum rege, govern your temper. *ite domum,* go home.

N.B. If the Imperative be regarded as always *dependent,* some verb of commanding or entreating, as *jubeo, oro,* must be supplied: but as the force of such a verb is practically contained in the Imperative itself, it may be considered as virtually *independent.*

Obs. 1. The *Present* and *Future* Imperative.—The two forms of the Imperative, such as *ama* and *amato, amate* and *amatote,* are often regarded, (and not without reason,) as the less and more emphatic expression of a command: they may, however, be more correctly considered as having a *present* and a *future* force; thus,

i. The Present, or shorter form, expresses an act that is to be done *now, at once;*—the Future, or longer form, expresses an act that is to be done *hereafter,* when something else shall take place; as,

Phillida mitte mihi, meus est natalis, Iolla;—send *now.*

Cum faciam vitulâ pro frugibus, ipse venito. Virg. E. iii. 77.

Digitized by Google

The future action, referred to, is not always *expressed* with the Imperative; as, *signa tibi dicam, tu condita mente teneto*, Virg. Æ. iii. 388. i. e. *cum dixero*.

ii. Hence the Future Imperative is used in *laws*, or any *legal forms*, which direct an act to be done at any future time, whenever occasion shall require; as, *caput obnubito, infelici arbori suspendito*, Liv. i. 26. Yet immediately afterwards, when referring to a particular and present execution of the law, the words are *caput obnube, infelici arbori suspende*.

iii. Any precept may of course be expressed in the legal style, which thus gives it a formal, and so an emphatic character; as, *laudato ingentia rura, exiguum colito*, Virg. G. ii. 412. But this is not necessary; as, *nudus ara, sere nudus*, Virg. G. i. 299.

Obs. 2. Substitutes for the Imperative.—Several other moods and tenses are used as equivalents for the Imperative, from their implying some command or wish; thus,

i. The Pres. Indic. with *quin* or *cur non* in a question; as, *quin conscendimus equos?* Liv. i. 57, why do we not? i. e. let us mount.

ii. The Fut. Indic.; as, *tu nihil invitâ dices facieve Minervâ*, Hor. A. P. 385, you will not say, i. e. do not say anything.

iii. The Pres. Subj. in all persons; as, *flumina amem*, Virg. G. ii. 486: *te precor, accipias*, Liv. ii. 10. [see § 84. *c.* 1. *obs. iii.*] The third Person Subj. is the *only* form for the Present Imperative; as, *amet, moneat*, &c.

iv. The Perf. Subj. is common with a negative; as, *tu ne quæsieris*, Hor. O. i. 11. 1, do not thou seek.

Obs. 3. The Imperative in the *Oratio obliqua* becomes the Pres. Subj.; as, *memoret, quæ sit fiducia capto*, Virg. Æ. ii. 75. let him tell, for "tell thou." Or more commonly the Imperfect, as dependent on past time; as, *mollirent modo iras*, Liv. i. 9, only let them moderate their resentment.

Obs. 4. An Imperative of the Perf. Pass. is found, though very rarely; as, *at vos admoniti nostris quoque casibus este*, Ovid. Tr. iv. 8. 51.

2. With negatives the Imperative uses *ne* not, and *neu neve* nor; as,

ne fugite hospitium, neve ignorate Latinos,
shun not our hospitality, nor be ignorant of the Latins.

Obs. 1. *Non* and *nec* with the Imperative are not usual; as, *nec tu horresce*, Virg. Æ. iii. 394. but with the Subj. used as an Imperative they are often found.

Obs. 2. In prohibitions, or negative commands, the Imperative, or Pres. Subj., is commonly used by the old writers, (as Plautus,) and by the later poets; as, *ne crede* or *ne credas:* but in prose *noli* with an Infinitive is preferred; as, *noli hæc contemnere*, Cic. Div. 12. Also *cave* with the Subj. may be used.

Digitized by Google

§ 84. *The Subjunctive Mood.*

The use of the Subjunctive may be thus divided,

(*a*) The *true* Subjunctive—expressing a *fact*.

(*b*) The Potential—expressing *what may be*.

(*c*) The Potential used *independently*.

Obs. A general view of the Subjunctive mood.

It should be observed that the distinction of Subjunctive and Potential does not arise from anything in the Latin language itself; but from the difference observable in English. What we call Subjunctive and Potential is in Latin only one Mood, though it is sometimes convenient to name one of its usages Subjunctive and another Potential; thus,

i. tam acutus est, ut omnes videat, he is so sharp-sighted, that he sees them all: where *videat* is called Subjunctive, being rendered in English by the Indicative, *he sees*.

ii. venit huc, ut omnes videat, he comes hither, that he may see them all: where *videat* is called Potential, being rendered in English by the Potential, *he may see*. Yet in both cases *videat* is the same word, and is subjoined to the other clause by the same particle *ut*.

1. The essential character and use of the Latin Subjunctive is to mark an act, not as it is in itself, but as it is subjoined to, or dependent on, some other assertion; this dependence being perceived by the mind of the speaker, and stated *subjectively* as a thought or perception of his mind: thus in the examples given above the mood of *videat* marks it as subjoined to *tam acutus* and to *venit huc*, and expresses it as so viewed by the mind in this connexion.

i. Further, when *videat* depends on *tam acutus est*, it declares a *fact*—a result which actually occurs; and it is therefore rendered in English by the Indicative; though in Latin it is not marked as a fact, but only as a perceived consequence resulting from *tam acutus*; and it is from the force and meaning of the principal clause *tam acutus est*, that the *actuality* of the dependent *videat* is seen. This is the true Subjunctive or subjoined mood.

ii. But, when *videat* depends on *venit huc*, it describes not a fact, but an *intention* or *purpose*,—a contingency which may or may not occur; and it is therefore rendered in English by the Potential; though in Latin it is not the contingency or potentiality of *videat*, that is primarily marked, but its perceived dependence upon *venit*; and it is from the force and meaning of the principal clause *venit huc*, that the *potentiality* of the dependent *videat* is distinctly seen. This is the Subjunctive used *potentially*, or the Potential Mood.

2. Secondly, since the Subjunctive describes an act, not *objectively* as it is in itself, but *subjectively* as it is perceived in its dependence upon something else, it conveys the idea of *contingency* or *possibility*; for dependent existence seems to be connected with uncertainty—something that may or may not be. This contingency is *made apparent* in the potential usage of the Subjunctive, and is distinctly brought out in the English; as, *ut videat* that he may see. But in

Digitized by Google

the true Subjunctive also there is a *latent* contingency involved, for the fact is regarded as having a *dependent* existence; though this does not appear in the English; as, *ut videat* that he sees.

3. The Subjunctive, from its essential character, is a *dependent* mood; and in complete sentences it is subjoined to another clause by a pronoun or conjunction, which marks its dependence. The Subjunctive, however, in its Potential usage, is sometimes found alone, without any other verb being expressed, on which it can depend; as, *flumina amem* let me love rivers: *eloquar an sileam* should I speak out or be silent?——Such sentences are elliptical; and the principal verb, on which their force depends, may be supplied; as, *oro ut amem, oportetne ut eloquar?*——Yet as this elliptical use belongs to certain definite idioms, and the meaning of the omitted verb may be considered as virtually involved in the Potential, it is probably as well, for practical purposes, to regard the mood as *independent*, and to call it the Potential used independently.

(*a*) *The true Subjunctive Mood.*

N.B. Since the Subjunctive especially describes an act as dependent on another *assertion*, the true Subjunctive *is always attached to the Predicate*,—or asserting part,—of another proposition; and *makes an essential part of the predication.*

i. [Subjunctive in *Substantival* clauses.]

1. The Subjunctive is used in all *Indirect questions;* as,

quid sit futurum cras, fuge quærere,
avoid enquiring what will be to-morrow.

All interrogatives, whether pronouns or conjunctions, take the subjunctive, when they depend upon some other word. Examples occur in every Author.

Obs. 1. Many *seeming* exceptions to this Rule are found, wherein the Indicative mood is used; but these may be explained in one of the following ways:

i. The question is really direct; as, *quis justius induit arma, scire nefas,* Lucan. i. 126. which ought to be written *quis justius induit arma?——scire nefas.*

ii. The interrogative and the verb on which it depends are joined into a sort of compound word; as, *nescio quis teneros oculus mihi fascinat agnos,* Virg. E. iii. 103; where *nescio-quis oculus* is "some eye or other," and the whole is one independent assertion. So *quis-scit-an* perhaps, Ovid. Ep. x. 86: *haud-scio-an* for anything I know, Ter. And. iv. 5. 33: *nonne-vides-ut* don't you see, Virg. G. i. 56: and some others, when thus combined, regularly take the Indicative.

iii. The apparent interrogative is really a relative, and thus requires the Indicative; as, *vidisti quo Turnus equo, quibus ibat in armis,* Virg. Æ. ix. 269; for *vidisti equum quo;* the antecedent being attracted to the relative.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 2. In Rhetorical questions, used for emphasis without expecting an answer, the Infinitive is often used; as, *plebs fremit, quid se vivere? quid in parte civium censeri?* Liv. viii. 18.

2. The Subjunctive is sometimes used in *Indirect assertions;* as,

restat ut ipse me consoler,
it remains for me to console myself.

Obs. 1. The Subj. with *ut* is thus used particularly in *appositions;* as, *quorum alterum mihi, ut te diligam, facere necesse est,* Cic. fam. i. 7. one of which, namely, loving you,—I must do.

Obs. 2. The indirect assertion with *ut* is instead of the Infinitive mood; [see § 85. *b.* 2. *Obs.* 1.]; The clause with *ut* has a *consecutive* force; see below *iii.* 1.

ii. [Subjunctive in *Adjectival* clauses.]

1. The Subjunctive is used with Relative pronouns and conjunctions in the *oratio obliqua;* as,

[*dixit,*] *se, quia ea res exemisset illum diem, postero die acturum esse quæ constituisset,*
[he said,] that because this business had deprived them of that day, he would do on the following day what he had determined on.

Obs. 1. The *antecedent* clauses in the *oratio obliqua* have either the Infinitive or Subjunctive mood, [§ 65. *d.*]; hence,

i. Relative after Infinitive——Whenever the antecedent clause has the Infin., the Relative, making part of the same assertion, has the Subj.; as, *si quis miratur, me, qui in causis ita sim versatus, &c.—ad accusandum descendere,* Cic. Div. 1.

ii. Relative after Subjunctive——Whenever the antecedent clause has the Subj., the Relative, making part of the same assertion, has the Subj.; as, *quum eam causam moræ haberent legati, quod spatium ad vehicula comparanda a consulibus sumpsissent,* Liv. ii. 4.

Obs. 2. The most marked and important species of *oratio obliqua* is the "narrated speech:" it naturally belongs to *past* time, and the relatives are therefore followed by the Imperf. or Pluperf. Yet often a sort of compromise takes place, between the direct and indirect form; thus,

i. The *Present* or *Perfect* Subj. is used; as, *esse quæ agere de rebus communibus velit* and *ipsum qui concilium indixerit, non adesse,* Liv. i. 50; where the direct form would have *volo* and *indixit.*

ii. Sometimes a sentence changes suddenly from the indirect to the direct form, and uses the Indicative; as, *eam esse voluntatem omnium, ut, qui libertati erit in illâ urbe finis, idem urbi sit,* Liv. ii. 15.

Obs. 3. Some apparent exceptions may be noticed.

i. Relative with Infinitive——The Relative Pronoun or Conjunction sometimes has the Infin. as if it were attracted to, or co-ordinate with,

Digitized by Google

the antecedent; as, *fugere senatum testes, quum interim plebem objectari hostibus*, Liv. vi. 27.

ii. Relative with Indicative——The Relative Pronoun or Conjunction must have the Indicative if it *does not make an essential part of the predication*, but is inserted parenthetically as a separate remark; as, *Siculos hoc dicere, quum eidem sint irati, cui tu te inimicum esse dicis, sese tamen non affuturos*, Cic. Div. 28. where *cui dicis* is a separate remark of Cicero's, and not a part of what the Sicilians said. [see Rule 2.]

2. A Relative expressing the sentiments of another, and not of the writer himself, has the Subjunctive; as,

equum æneum animadvertit, cujus in latere fores essent,
he perceived a brazen horse, with a door in its side.

where *essent* is equivalent to *esse animadvertit*, and expresses the sentiments of the person who saw the horse, not of the writer Cicero.

Obs. 1. This is called the *Virtual oratio obliqua*—the relatives and conjunctions taking the same construction as in the preceding Rule.

Obs. 2. A species of *Virtual oratio obliqua* takes place, when a clause with *quod*, (though not exactly expressing the sentiments of another), is *so closely attached to* the antecedent verb, as to make with it *one predication;* as, *ego quæ tu commisisti, Verri crimini daturus sum, quod te non prohibuerit*, Cic. Div. 35. for not having prevented you;—where *quod prohibuerit* is specially attached to *crimini daturus sum*, as the alleged ground or substance of the accusation; but *quod prohibuit* would be an additional assertion containing the reason, in Cicero's mind, why he should accuse him.

From this use of *quod*, an Indic. or Subj. is found with it somewhat capriciously, the difference being no greater than in the corresponding English expressions—

laudo quod venit I praise him because he comes.
laudo quod veniat I praise him for coming.

3. When *qui* expresses a consequence, cause, or concession, it has the Subjunctive; as,

nulla vis tanta est, quæ mihi nocere possit,
no force is so great, that it can hurt me.

stultus es, qui huic credas,
you are foolish for believing him.

Ciceronem amat, quem nunquam viderit,
he loves Cicero, though he has never seen him.

Obs. 1. In all such clauses the Relative is evidently connected with the preceding *Verb*, and makes an essential part of the predication;—hence the Subjunctive.

Digitized by Google

But sometimes Relatives, which might be regarded as consecutive, causal, or admissive, are purposely stated as additional assertions, and attached to the *subject* of the preceding proposition; and then the Indicative is used; as, *habeo senectuti magnam gratiam, quæ mihi sermonis aviditatem auxit*, Cic. Sen. 14. which has increased *for* because it has increased. So *infelix, qui non audierat!* Virg. Æ. ii. 345. for *audiisset*.

Obs. 2. When *qui* is *consecutive*—the antecedent has usually some intensive word, pointing to the consequence, *is, talis, tantus* &c. [see below *iii.* 1.]

i. Hence *dignus, indignus, idoneus*, have *qui* with Subj.; as, *idonea visa est, quæ de amicitiâ loqueretur*, Cic. Am. 1.

ii. The intensive word is sometimes omitted; as, *est qui vinci possit*, Hor. S. i. 9. 55, he is such a one that he can be prevailed on.

iii. When *is, talis*, &c. are merely demonstratives particularising a definite object, the Indicative follows, [*b. ii.* 2.]; as, *si tu is es, cui me nuptam esse arbitror*, Liv. i. 47, if you are *the* man.

Obs. 3. Note that when *qui* is *causal* or *admissive* it has the Subj.; though *quod*, because, has the Indic., except in the real or virtual *oratio obliqua;* and admissive conjunctions have the Subj. only in a potential meaning. [See below *b. iii.*]

Instead of *qui* in a causal sense, *ut qui* or *quippe qui* may be used; as, *quippe quibus nec domi spes esset*, Liv. i. 9, since they had.

Obs. 4. In all these usages *qui* is equivalent to an *Adverbial* clause, *ut is, quod is, quanquam is:* and as a General Rule *qui* has the Subj. when it stands for any of the Adverbial clauses which make subordinate sentences, [§ 65. *d.* 3.]; thus in, *cui sit conditio*, Hor. E. i. 1. 51. *cui=si ei*, if he had the choice.

4. When *qui* follows the verb *sum*, used alone or with a qualifying word, and makes with it only *one* assertion, it has the Subjunctive; as,

sunt qui dicant,	*solus est qui dicat,*
there are some who say.	he is the only one who says.

Obs. 1. The qualifying words joined with *sum* are such as *aliquis, quisquam, multi, pauci, solus, nemo, nihil*, &c., and interrogatives implying a negation, as, *quis est qui dicat?=nemo dicit.*

The Relative in these idioms may be considered as equivalent to *talis ut* of such a nature that: Hence somewhat similar expressions are found with *habeo, invenio*, &c.; as, *tu unus inventus es, qui dominum habere velles*, Cic. Ph. ii. 34.

Obs. 2. When the Indicative is used, it shows that *qui* is attached to the Subject, which alters the meaning; as,

solus est qui dicat he is the only one that says.

solus est qui dicit he who says so is the only one.

Est-qui, sunt-qui, when united, are equivalent to *quidam*, and have an Indicative, § 69. 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*

Digitized by Google

Obs. 3. The pronominal particles *qua, quo, ubi,* &c., when used as relatives have the same constructions as *qui.*

iii. [Subjunctive in *Adverbial* clauses.]

1. The Subjunctive is used to express a *consequence* or *result;* as,

tam crudelis erat, ut omnes eum timerent,
he was so cruel, that all feared him.

Obs. 1. Consecutive clauses are introduced by *ut, ut non, ut nemo,* &c. [See *b. iii.* 1.] An intensive word, in a demonstrative form, usually precedes, such as *ita, sic, tam, adeo, is, talis, tantus,* &c.

Indirect assertions [*above, i.* 2.], being really consecutive clauses, use the consecutive forms, *ut, ut non,* &c. Yet negative assertions have *ut ne* for *ut non,* when the consequence is potential [*b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 2.]; thus,

quis tam ferreus, ut non sentiret, that he did not feel.
quis tam ferreus, ut ne sentiret, that he would not feel.

Obs. 2. For *qui* expressing a *consequence,* see *above, ii.* 3.

i. The relative particle *quin* is consecutive, and has a Subj.:—

when used for *qui non,* after a negative or interrogative; as, *nemo est quin vota fecerit,* Cic. fam. vi. 7.

when used for *quod non, ut non,* after a negative or interrogative, expressing *doubt* or *deficiency;* as, *non dubitabat quin ei crederemus,* Cic. Att. vi. 2.

ii. Quin used for *cur non,* after a negative or interrogative *cause,* is just like any other dependent interrogative; as, *quid causæ est quin Jupiter buccas inflet?* Hor. S. i. 1. 20.

Sometimes *quin* is a mere substitute for *quod non* "because not," without any consecutive force; as, *non, quin potuerit,* &c. Liv. ii. 15. For *quominus,* and *quin* for *quominus,* see *b. iii.* 1. *obs.*

Obs. 3. *Tantum abest ut,* is followed by another *ut* consecutive, —it is so far from being so,—that so; as, *tantum abest ut istos ornem, ut effici non possit quin oderim,* Cic. Ph. xi. 14.

For the former *ut* may be used *ab eo ut, ab* with Abl. noun, or *ne* if a negative: and for the latter *ut* with Subj. an Indic. with a direct assertion; as, *tantum aberat ut binos scriberent, vix singulos confecerunt,* Cic. Att. iii. 21.

2. *Quum,* [since *or* although], has the Subjunctive; but *quod* or *quia,* [because], the Indicative; as,

quum sit nobis consilium, ratio, prudentia,
since we have judgment, reason, foresight.

dis te minorem quod geris, imperas,
you rule, because you hold yourself inferior to the gods.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. Causal Particles.—their difference.

Quum [or *cum*] is *subjective*, and expresses the *logical* cause, i. e. the reason, in the mind, why a sentiment is entertained,—hence the Subjunctive.

Quod and *quia* are *objective*, and express the *real* [or *moral*] cause, i. e. the external cause [or motive] which makes a fact to be as it is,—hence the Indicative.

Obs. 2. In *quum* since, its *logical* force in assigning a *reason* is obvious; hence the expression *quæ quum ita sint*, so frequent in Cicero, in concluding an argument.

i. Quum, although or whereas, is used in *marking contrasts*, and its *logical* force is not so obvious, but may be thus explained; *quod me quum sæpe rogaret, non tulit Antigenes*, Virg. E. v. 88. *although* he often asked me for it, i. e. Antigenes did not obtain it, [a circumstance worthy of remark], *quum* since—he often asked me for it. So with *quum mea nemo scripta legat*, Hor. S. i. 4. 22, whereas no one reads my writings.

ii. Quum—tum introduce two statements, of which the latter is the more important; and *quum* has the sense of "whereas;" as, *quæ quum manu munitissima esset, tum loci naturâ terrâ marique claudebatur*, Cic. Ver. ii. 2. 2. The Subj. is used when a *logical connexion* between the two statements is implied: otherwise the Indicative; as, *quum omnium rationem diligenter habere debetis, tum præcipue Siciliæ*, Cic. Ver. ii. 2. 1.

iii. With expressions of joy, grief, praise, &c. the *reason* is also the *cause* of the feeling, and *quum* may have the Indic. like *quod;* as, *gratulor tibi, quum tantum vales apud Dolabellam*, Cic. fam. ix. 14.

Obs. 3. *Quod* and *quia* have the Subj. only in the real or virtual *oratio obliqua:* see *above ii.* 1.

i. Quod [not *quia*], sometimes slides into the mere statement of a fact; as, *non tibi objicio, quod hominem spoliâsti*, Cic. Ver. ii. 4. 17, *that* you have robbed. *Quod* is in an *intermediate* state with expressions of joy, grief, praise, &c., the object or fact being also a cause; as, *gaudeo quod rediisti.*

ii. Quoniam, quando, quandoquidem, siquidem, since,—are properly particles of *time;* they refer to *a finished act*, and *ground a statement upon it:*—they have the Indic.; as, *quoniam convenimus*, Virg. E. v. 1.

3. *Quum* [when] has the Subjunctive, with past time, when the coincidence of two acts is not *strongly marked*,—otherwise the Indicative; as,

quum Aristides audivisset, in concionem venit,
when Aristides had heard, he came into the assembly.

quum ego docebo, tu disces,
when I shall teach, you shall learn.

The use of the Moods is not very precise with *temporal* particles;—but the following points may be noticed.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. *Quum*, as a strict particle of *time*, has the Indicative.

i. As a particle of *time*, with the Indic. *quum* expresses—

the *coincidence* of two facts; as, *tum decuit, quum sceptra dabas*, Virg. Æ. iv. 597.

the *close consequence* of one act upon another; as, *vix ea fatus eram, gemitu quum talia reddit*, Virg. Æ. ii. 323.

the *nature* of a time, circumstance, &c.; as, *fuit quoddam tempus quum homines vagabantur*, Cic. Inv. i. 2.

the *continuance* of an act throughout a period, already begun but not ended; as, *multi anni sunt, quum ille in ære meo est*, Cic. fam. xv. 14. since he has been.

ii. In narratives *quum* has a Subj. [Imperf. *or* Plup.], when the idea of time is not so strongly marked; as, *hæc quum agerent, nuntii veniunt*, Liv. iii. 31 :—*quum Aristides audisset, in concionem venit*, Cic. Off. iii. 11.

The Subj. with *quum* when, is connected with its *causal* meaning: thus in many cases the *reason* and the *time* are combined, as in *quum Aristides audisset;* and then they slid into using the Subj. even when no reason was involved, if the time was not strongly marked.

iii. Ut, ubi, postquam, when,—properly mark an act begun or finished, in past time, before another begins; as, *postquam facinus audivit, rogitat, qui vir esset*, Liv. i. 7. In narratives the Perfect Indic. [not Pluperf.] is the usual tense.

Obs. 2. *Dum, donec, quoad*, mean both *whilst* and *until.*

i. Dum whilst, has usually the Indic.; as, *dum loquimur*, Hor. O. i. 11. 7. A Subj. may be used if a *cause* or *purpose* is implied; as, *die insequenti quievere, dum præfectus arma inspiceret*, Liv. xxiv. 40.—— *Dum* is fond of a Pres. Indic. even in the midst of *past* tenses; as, *dum pauca mancipia retinere vult, fortunas omnes perdidit*, Cic. Div. 17. and even in the *oratio obliqua;* as, *dum ad se omnia trahunt, nihil relictum esse in medio*, Liv. ii. 57.

ii. Dum until, has usually the Subj. as marking an act *proposed* or *looked forward to;* as, *usque laborantes dum ferrum molliat ignis*, Hor. S. i. 4. 20.——When an act is regarded as past and over, or, simply stated without any purpose implied, the Indic. may be used; hence in Liv. i. 7. both *donec Pinarium genus fuit*, whilst; and *donec genus omne Potitiorum interiit*, until.——A Pres. Indic. is common; as, *dum redeo* until I return = while I am returning.

iii. For *dum* provided that, see conditional clauses, *b. iii.* 3.

Obs. 3. *Antequam, priusquam*, have usually the Indic. Yet often the Subj. [Imperf. or Plup.] is used by a Latin idiom, which states an act as if *caused* or *purposed*, though not really so; as, *priusquam dimicarent, fœdus ictum est*, Liv. i. 24.

Obs. 4. A Subj. is often used with *temporal* and other particles, to mark a *repeated* or *customary* action, where otherwise the Indic. would be used; as, *id ubi dixisset, hastam emittebat*, Liv. i. 32. These particles have of course the Subj. in the *Oratio obliqua.*

Digitized by Google

(*b*) *The Potential Mood.*

N.B. Since the Subjunctive, in its *Potential* usage, conveys the idea of *contingency*, its presence in some constructions is *arbitrary*—i. e. it depends upon the design of the writer, who may use the Indicative or the Potential, according as he wishes to state *what is*, absolutely,—or *what may be*, possibly.

i. [Potential in *Substantival* clauses.]

The Potential is used in *Indirect petitions;* as,

oro ut redeat,
I pray that he may return.

Obs. The indirect petition with *ut* and Poten. is a substitute for the Infinitive, [see § 85. *b.* 2. *Obs.* 2. *ii.*]. The clause with *ut* has an intentional force; see *below, iii.* 1.

ii. [Potential in *Adjectival* clauses.]

1. The Potential is used with all Relatives to express a *purpose* or *intention;* as,

misit legatos, qui dicerent,
he sent ambassadors, who should say,—[or to say].

Obs. The Relative *intentional*,—may be referred to the Adverbial clauses, [*iii.*1.]; being equivalent to *ut ego, ut tu, ut is*, &c. It may be well rendered in English by the Infinitive; as, *habes qui assideat*, Hor. S. i. 1. 81, some one to sit by you.

2. When *qui* has an *indefinite* antecedent, it takes the Potential; where with a *definite* antecedent the Indicative is used; as,

ea, quæ opus essent, parabantur,
the things [whatever they were], which might be necessary, were prepared.
ea, quæ opus erant, parabantur,
the [definite] things, which were necessary, were prepared.

Obs. 1. Any kind of indefiniteness may be thus expressed; as, *præ eâ urbe, quæ conderetur*, Liv. i. 6. indefinite, because not yet built.

The Indic. and Poten. are well contrasted in Liv. i. 32.
quicunque est, nominat, he mentions his name, whoever he is,—being really a definite person, the herald.
quicunque ei obvius fuerit, whoever may have met him—any chance person, whoever he may be.

Obs. 2. Hence *qui* with Poten. in parenthetical clauses; as, *quod sciam* as far as I know; and others in which *quidem* is often added; as, *antiquissimi sunt, quorum quidem scripta constent, Pericles atque Alcibiades*, Cic. d. Or. ii. 22.

Digitized by Google

iii. [Potential in *Adverbial* clauses.]

1. The Potential is used to express a *purpose* or *intention;* as,

venio, ut videam, I come, that I may see. *veni, ut viderem,* I came, that I might see.

Obs. 1. The *intentional* use of the Subj. is nearly the same as when it denotes a *consequence* or result [*a. iii.* 1.]; only when a result is future and depends upon an agent, it becomes uncertain, and the Subj. is *potential.*

Obs. 2. Intentional clauses,—are introduced by *ut, ne, ne quis,* &c.; the negative forms differing from those used in *consecutive* clauses [*a. iii.* 1. *Obs.* 1.]; thus,

Consecutive	*ut non,*	*ut nemo,*	*ut nullus,*	*ut nihil,* &c.
Intentional	*ne,*	*ne quis,*	*ne ullus,*	*ne quid,* &c.

Indirect petitions [above *i.*], being really *intentional* clauses, use the intentional forms *ut, ne, ne quis,* &c. Yet a negative petition sometimes has *ut ne* for *ne,* as if it were a consequence [*a. iii.* 1. *obs.* 1.]; as, *contendit ut ne hæc mihi delatio detur,* Cic. Div. 22.

Obs. 3. For *qui* expressing an *intention,* see *above ii.* 1. Some relative particles may also be noticed.

i. Quo for *ut eo,* [that thereby], in order that; as, *quo magis hic credas,* Hor. S. ii. 2. 112. generally with a comparative, but not always.

ii. Non quo for *non quod,* [not because], is used with Subj. though it does not seem to have any *intentional* force, and may be in close connexion with *quod* or *quia* with Indic.; as, *non quo libenter male audiam, sed quia causam non libenter relinquo,* Cic. d. Or. ii. 75.

iii. Quominus for *ut eo minus,* [that thereby the less], that—not, follows verbs expressing any kind of impediment or hindrance; as, *nihil te deterreo quominus id disputes,* Cic. Att. xi. 6, I do not deter you from affirming—*that* you should *not* affirm.

With such verbs *ne* forbids, and *quin* prevents, which distinguishes them from *quominus;* as, *potuisti prohibere ne fieret,* Cic. Div. 33, you could have forbidden it to be done:——*prorsus nihil abest quin miserrimus sim,* Cic. Att. xi. 15, there is nothing wanting, but that I am—to prevent me from being—most wretched. Comp. *nihil desideramus quominus Epirum possidere videamur,* Cic. Att. ii. 24. [see *a. iii.* 1. *obs.* 2.]

iv. Nedum often has the Potential: it follows a negative statement, and means, much less,—*à fortiori* not; as, *mortalia facta peribunt, nedum sermonum stet honos,* Hor. A. P. 69.

2. Conditional sentences have sometimes the Indicative, sometimes the Potential; as,

si venit, eo; if he comes, I go. *si veniat, eam;* if he should come, I should go.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 1. The *conditional* and *consequent* clauses.

The conditional clause, with *si* or *nisi*, is called the *protăsis;* the consequent or principal clause is called the *apodŏsis;* as,

si venit, the *protasis*,—*eo*, the *apodosis.*

Conditional sentences may be stated in three ways;—

i. The condition *simply stated*,——*sumptio dati.*

Any tense of the Indicative may then be used; as,

si venit, eo; if he comes, I go.

si veniebat, ibam; if he came, I went.

so with the rest;—similar tenses being placed together.

The Imperative, or the Potential taken dubitatively or optatively, may be used in the *apodosis;* as,

si venit, ito; if he comes, do thou go.

si venit, eam? if he comes, should I go?

ii. The condition *possible* or *probable*,——*sumptio dandi.*

The Present or Perfect Potential is then used; as,

si veniat, eam; if he should come, I should go.

si venerit, iverim; if he should have come, I should have gone.

The Future Indic., or the Imperative, are used in the *apodosis;* as,

si veniat, ibo; if he should come, or comes, I shall go.

si veniat, ito; if he should come, or comes, do thou go.

even the Present Indic. is sometimes used.

iii. The condition *supposed* but *non-existent*,——*sumptio ficti.*

The Imperfect or Pluperfect Potential is then used; as,

si veniret, irem; if he came, or were to come, [which he does not], I should go.

si venisset, ivissem; if he had come, [which he did not], I should have gone.

Sometimes the *sumptio ficti* has a *frequentative* instead of *non-existent* meaning; as, *si peteret,—si collibuisset*, Hor. S. i. 4. 5. where *si* may be rendered, *whenever.*

Obs. 2. Some deviations from the regular forms are found.

i. In the *sumptio ficti* the Indicative is sometimes used in the *apodosis* to express a consequence with more force and vivacity; as, *si mens non læva fuisset, impulerat*, Virg. Æ. ii. 55. This is especially the case in expressions of *duty, necessity, possibility*, &c. [see below, *c.* 2. *obs.*]; as, *si unum diem morati essetis, moriendum omnibus fuit*, Liv. ii. 38, you must all have died.

ii. Poets sometimes mix different forms; as, *ni jam vela traham, canerem*, Virg. G. iv. 117. for *traherem.*——Or they put one form for another; as, *ni mea cura resistat, jam flammæ tulerint*, Virg. Æ. ii. 600. for *resisteret, tulissent.* So *omnia perlegerent, ni jam præmissus Achates afforet*, Virg. Æ. vi. 34. for *perlegissent, affuisset.*

iii. Some conditional sentences appear irregular, from the real *apodosis* being understood; as, *numeros memini, si verba tenerem*, Virg. E. ix. 45. i. e. *et canerem, si.*

So when, with *nisi*, what would have happened is omitted; as, *pons sublicius iter pene hostibus dedit, ni unus vir fuisset*, Liv. ii. 10.

iv. Sometimes *si* is omitted with the condition; as, *partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes*, Virg. Æ. vi. 30. for *si sineret.*

Digitized by Google

Obs. 3. *Si* in the *oratio obliqua* has the Subjunctive for all forms; thus, *si venit, eo,* becomes *aio me, si veniat, ire,* or *aiebam me, si veniret, ire.*

i. A peculiar species of *indirect question* is used with *si,* when the sentence is elliptical, [to see if, to try if, &c.]; as, *tentata res est, si primo impetu capi Ardea posset,* Liv. i. 57, i.e. *ut posset, si posset.*

ii. Sometimes *si* appears more decidedly as if it were an interrogative = *num* whether; as, *aspice si quid loquamur,* Hor. E. i. 17. 5. Yet even then an Indicative is used, if no *probability* is expressed; as, *inspice, si possum donata reponere,* Hor. E. i. 7. 39.

Obs. 4. Some other particulars may be noticed.

i. Difference between *nisi* and *si non;*——*nisi* [unless], is *exclusive,* i. e. excepts the case referred to; *si non* [if not], is *negative,* i. e. supposes the case referred to not to be. *Nisi si* is emphatic for *nisi;* and *si minus, sin minus,* &c., are used for *si non.*

ii. When *dum, dummodo,* &c., are conditional, [provided that], they have the Potential; as, *dum hostem vulneraret,* Liv. ii. 6.

iii. Other conditional forms are *si forte, nisi forte, si modo, si quidem, quod si, sin,* &c.

3. Admissive sentences have sometimes the Indicative, sometimes the Potential; as,

quanquam venit, although he comes. *quamvis veniat,* although he may come.

Obs. 1. Admissive, [or concessive], clauses nearly resemble *conditional* ones, both in meaning and construction; and many of them are compounds of *si;* as, *etsi, tametsi.* In the *apodosis* of admissive clauses *tamen* is expressed or understood.

Obs. 2. The usages of different admissive conjunctions.

i. Quamvis, quantumvis, licet, ut, quum, generally have the Potential; as, *homines, quamvis in turbidis rebus sint, tamen animis relaxantur,* Cic. Ph. ii. 16. Yet *quamvis* has Indic. in historians and poets; as, *quamvis, Scæva, satis per te tibi consulis,* Hor. E. i. 17. 1.

ii. Quanquam, utut, have generally the Indicative; as, *quanquam festinas,* Hor. O. i. 28. 35.

iii. The compounds of *si,* such as *etsi, tametsi, etiamsi,* follow the usages of conditional clauses; as, *etsi te id modice laturum scio,* Cic. Sen. 1, like a *sumptio dati:*——*etsi ejusdem ætatis fuisset,* Liv. i. 18, like a *sumptio ficti.*

Etsi like *si* is sometimes dropped; as, *naturam expellas furcâ, tamen usque recurrat,* Hor. E. i. 10. 24, for *etsi expellas.*

Obs. 3. Comparative clauses, with *quasi, ceu, velut,* used as conjunctions, are akin to admissive clauses, and usually have the Potential; as, *quasi sua res agatur, ita morem gerunt,* Cic. p. Qu. 2.

i. Quasi is sometimes merely an Adverb; as, *quasi cognomen habebat sapientis,* Cic. Am. 2, he had as it were the name.

ii. Several comparative particles are only conditional ones; as, *ut si, ac si,* &c.; before which *ita, perinde, similiter,* &c., are used.

Digitized by Google

(c) *The Potential used independently.*

1. The Potential, used independently, expresses possibility, doubt, permission, or a wish; as,

ita laudem invenias, — so you may obtain praise.
quid facerem? — what should I do?
sapias, — be wise.
valeant amici mei! — may my friends be well!

Obs. For an explanation of the independent Potential, see § 84. *obs.* The four meanings assigned to it are nearly allied to each other, and are often intermingled. Yet it is necessary to distinguish them.

i. The Potential marks possibility,——*S. conditionalis.*
In this usage a *condition* seems to be always more or less distinctly referred to; whence the name *subjunctivus conditionalis.*

Thus it stands in the *apodosis* or principal clause of a regular conditional sentence; as, *si foret in terris, rideret Democritus,* Hor. E. ii. 1. 194, would laugh. Or else without any condition actually expressed; as, *ita laudem invenias,* Ter. And. i. 1. 30, you may obtain praise, or would, [if you acted thus]:—*quid facerem?* what could I do? [if I tried].

Hence the Present Potential is used as a *softened* statement for the Pres. or Fut. Indic.; as, *quisquam numen Junonis adoret?* Virg. Æ. i. 48, would, [i.e. will], any one adore?—The Perfect Potential is frequent in this sense; as, *nil ego contulerim jucundo sanus amico,* Hor. S. i. 5. 44, I should, or can, compare.

With this usage *est ut* may be supplied; as in *est ut viro vir latius ordinet arbusta,* Hor. O. iii. 1. 10.

ii. The Potential marks doubt *or* duty,—— *S. dubitativus.*
This usage expresses both *doubt* and *duty,* being usually in the form of a question asking what ought to be done; thus, *eloquar an sileam?* Virg. Æ. iii. 39, should I speak out?——or without both alternatives expressed; as, *ego timerem?* Liv. ii. 7, was I to fear? It may be rendered in English by should,—ought,—or am I to?

With this usage *oportet* may be supplied; as, in *valeat possessor oportet,* Hor. E. i. 2. 49.

iii. The Potential marks permission *or* command,——*S. concessivus* or *hortativus,*—Subjunctive used *permissively,* hortatively, or as an Imperative; see § 31. 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*

This usage arises out of the idea of *duty* involved in the former meaning; as, *quid facias illi?—jubeas miserum esse,* Hor. S. i. 1. 63, what should you do to him?—bid him, or you should bid him, be miserable. Hence with negatives it may be rendered "need;" as, *nec trepides in usum,* Hor. O. ii. 11. 4, nor need you be alarmed.

The Perf. may be used with a negative; as, *ne respexeris,* Virg. E. viii. 102.

Digitized by Google

With this usage *jubeo, precor*, &c., may be supplied; as in *te precor, accipias*, Liv. ii. 10.

To this head belongs the use of the Perf. in the sense of *suppose* or *grant that*; as, *fuerit Lucilius inquam comis et urbanus*, Hor. S. i. 10. 64.

iv. The Potential marks a wish,——*S. optativus.*

This usage is closely connected, and often identical, with the preceding; as, *sit mihi mensa tripes*, Hor. S. i. 3. 13, may I have, or let me have.

Various particles are used, *utinam, si, o si, ut, sic*; as, *sit meæ sedes utinam senectæ*, Hor. O. ii. 6. 6.——*ut pereat telum*, Hor. S. ii. 1. 43.

A wish for the *future* has the Present Potential,—a wish respecting the *past* has the Pluperfect; as, *fecissent utinam*, Virg. Æ. ii. 110.

With this usage *opto* may be supplied; as in *careat successibus opto*, Ov. Ep. ii. 85.

2. The Indicative is sometimes used where a Potential might be expected; as,

poteram ego te appellare,
I might have called you.

Obs. 1. The Indicative is thus used in expressions of duty, necessity, possibility, fitness, advantage, with the verbs *debeo, necesse est, oportet, possum*, &c.—with *par, fas, æquum est*, or *æquius, melius, satius est*, &c.—and the circumlocutory conjugations, [see § 30. § 36.] And the tenses are in past time, Imp. Perf.-Aor. Pluperf.

i. The Imperf. then marks an act which has not been done, but the time for which *is not yet passed*; as, *perturbationes animorum poteram ego morbos appellare*, Cic. fin. iii. 10, I might have called,—and I might call them still.

ii. The Perf. and Pluperf. mark an act which has not been done, and the time for which *is passed*; as, *nonne fuit satius pati*, Virg. E. ii. 14, would it not have been better,—then, when I might have done so.

This Indicative for Potential is specially seen, when it is in the *apodosis* of a conditional sentence, [see *above, b. iii. 2. obs. 2. i.*]

iii. In all these expressions the *completed act* is marked, in English by the *Infinitive* verb, but in Latin by the *Indicative* verb; as,
facere potui I might have done, *facere debui* I ought to have done.

Obs. 2. The Pres. Indic. *possum* is commonly used for *possem* I could, when the act is really one which can be now performed; as, *possum sexcenta decreta proferre*, Cic. Ver. i. 47. So *difficile est, longum est*, &c. it would be difficult, &c.

Obs. 3. When the words *may, could, should, ought*, &c., are emphatic, they cease to be mere auxiliaries, and must be rendered in Latin by distinct verbs, *licet, possum, debeo, oportet*, &c.; as, *debes hoc etiam rescribere*, Hor. E. i. 3. 30, you should write back this.

Digitized by Google

§ 85. *The Infinitive Mood.*

1. The Infinitive is in reality a *verbal substantive*, and is used as a Nominative or Accusative case; as,

Nom. *me juvat ire*, to go delights me. Acc. *te videre cupio*, I wish to see you.

Obs. 1. The other cases of such verbal substantives are supplied by the Gerunds and Supines. Yet, by a Grecism, poets and later writers sometimes use the Infin.; as, *cantare pares*, Virg. E. viii. 5. for *cantando.—niveus videri*, Hor. O. iv. 2. 59. for *visu*.

Obs. 2. The Infin. may be so entirely a substantive, as to have an Adj. agreeing with it; as, *scire tuum nihil est*, Pers. i. 27, though this is affected or purposely ludicrous. Or it may be governed by a Prep.; as, *præter plorare*, Hor. S. ii. 5. 69.

2. The Infinitive is commonly dependent upon another verb; as,

me juvat ire, it delights me to go. *te videre cupio*, I wish to see you.

Obs. Poets often use the Infin. dependent on adjectives; as, *et cantare pares et respondere parati*, Virg. E. viii. 5.—*indocilis pauperiem pati*, Hor. O. i. 1. 18.

i. In prose the Infin. is seldom used, except with participial adjectives *paratus*, *suetus*, &c., or those which involve a verbal meaning; as, *conscius adversus se exemplum capi posse*, Liv. i. 49. Even with *dignus*, *idoneus*, *aptus*, an Infin. is not common.

ii. The Infin. seems sometimes to depend on a Substantive, *tempus*, *consilium*, &c.; as, *tempus abire tibi est*, Hor. E. ii. 2. 215. but it may be considered as the subject of *est*, and *tempus* the predicate.

3. The Infinitive is sometimes used alone, without depending on any other verb; as,

illi regem quærere, scrutari omnia, clausa perfringere,
they sought the king, searched all places, broke open doors.

Obs. 1. The Infinitive is used alone in *vivid descriptions*, especially where a number of particulars are enumerated. It is called *Infinitivus historicus*, historic Infinitive.

i. The subject of the historic Infin. is in the Nom. case, just as if the verb was in the Indic.; as, *ipse belli auctor esse*, Liv. i. 54.

ii. With this Infin. the verb *incipio* is said to be understood; but this will not always make sense. It is better to regard the Infin. as the verb used in its most *bare* and *simple* form, because the *action* is alone attended to, and *tense*, *number*, and *person* are disregarded.

Obs. 2. The Infin. is used alone in exclamations; as, *mene incepto desistere victam!* Virg. Æ. i. 37. The subject is then in the Acc. A verb *putandum est*, *æquum est*, &c., may be supplied.

Digitized by Google

(*a*) *The Infinitive and its Subject.*

1. When the Infinitive has a subject of its own, it is put in the Accusative case; as,

audio te sapientem esse,
I hear that you are wise.

Obs. The Accusative with the Infinitive.

When a verb is changed from the Indicative to the Infinitive, its subject is changed from the Nominative to the Accusative. This is probably a species of *attraction*, i.e. the Infin., when governed by another verb, is regarded as an Acc. and so its subject is put in the Acc. also:—and then this case, being thus associated with the Infin., remained, by the force of custom, even when the Infin. was not governed by another verb. Hence the subject of an Infinitive, *when expressed*, is always in the Accusative.

2. The Infinitive is joined to some verbs without any subject of its own; as,

me juvat ire, — it delights me to go.
te videre cupio, — I wish to see you.

Obs. 1. The Infin. used alone, or without a subject of its own expressed, is joined with such verbs as the following:—

i. The Infin. may be the subject of *est* or an impersonal verb; as, *juvat ire sub umbras*, Virg. Æ. iv. 660. The *subject* of the Infin. is then the same as the *object* of the principal verb; thus *me* is the object of *juvat* and subject of *ire*.

ii. The Infin. may be the object of such verbs as these,—
verbs of wishing, &c., *volo, malo, nolo, cupio, timeo, audeo*, &c.; as, *quendam volo visere*, Hor. S. i. 9. 17.
verbs of custom, duty, power, &c., *soleo, debeo, possum*, &c.; as, *qui mentiri solet pejerare consuevit*, Cic. Ros. Com. 16.
verbs of beginning, continuing, or ceasing to act, &c., *conor, disco, incipio; pergo; cesso, desino*, &c.; as, *succurrere disco*, Virg. Æ. i. 630.
also occasionally verbs expressing a purpose or *indirect petition*; as, *da mihi fallere*, Hor. E. i. 16. 61.

The *subject* of the Infin. is then the same as the *subject* of the principal verb; thus *volo visere* I wish to visit, is *ego volo me visere*; otherwise the subject must be expressed, as *volo te visere* I wish you to visit.

iii. The Infin. may be the Predicate of passive verbs, [of the *copulative* class, see § 70], *videor, credor, narror*, &c.; as, *errare videor*, Hor. O. iii. 4. 7. The *subject* of the Infin. is then the same as the *subject* of the principal verb.

N.B. This *predicative* use of the Infin. is better than making the principal verb impersonal with the Infin. as its *subject*; as, *Siciliam C. Verres depopulatus esse dicitur*, Cic. Div. 11, better than *C. Verrem depopulatum esse*.

Digitized by Google

Obs. 2. The subject of the Infin., when a personal pronoun, is sometimes omitted in poetry, where it ought (strictly) to be expressed; as, *spero supplicia hausurum*, Virg. Æ. iv. 383. for *te hausurum esse*.

Obs. 3. The Case of the Subject, *when not expressed*, depends on the following points:—

i. If the subject of the Infin. is the same as the subject of the principal word, it is *always* supposed to be in the *same case* as that subject, i. e. usually the Nom. This is proved by an Adj. or other word agreeing with it; as, *prodigus esse dicatur*, Hor. S. i. 2. 4. So even when the subject is *unusually* omitted; as, *cum pateris sapiens emendatusque vocari*, Hor. E. i. 16. 30, for *te sapientem*; or *sensit medios delapsus in hostes*, Virg. Æ. ii. 377, for *se delapsum esse*.

ii. If the subject of the Infin. is the same as the *object* of the principal verb, it is *often* supposed to be in the *same case* as that object, i. e. the case which the principal verb governs. This is proved by an Adj. or other word agreeing with it; as, *licet esse beatis*, Hor. S. i. 1. 19. The Acc. however *may* be used; as, *dederim quibus esse poetas*, Hor. S. i. 4. 39.

iii. If the subject of the Infin. is *not the same* as the *subject* or *object* of the principal verb, it is supposed to be in the Acc. This is proved by an Adj. or other word agreeing with it; as, *turpe est doctrinæ expertem esse*.

(*b*) *Connexion of the Infinitive with other Verbs.*

1. The Infinitive with its Subject, is made the Subject of another verb; as,

bonis expedit salvam esse rempublicam,

it is advantageous to good men that the state should be safe.

Obs. The Infinitive with its Acc. is found as Subject with—

i. Many *impersonal* verbs, or verbs used *impersonally*; such as, *apparet, constat, decet, juvat, licet, oportet, restat*, &c.

ii. The verb *est* with a neut. Adj.; such as, *æquum est, certum est, melius est, falsum est, rectum est, turpe est, verum est*, &c.

iii. The verb *est* with a Substantive; such as, *fama est, fides est, lex est, necesse est, opinio est, scelus est, tempus est*, &c.

2. The Infinitive, with its Subject, is made the Object of another verb; as,

illum rediisse nuntio,

I announce him to have returned; [or his having returned].

Obs. 1. The Infinitive with its Acc. is found as Object with

Digitized by Google

verbs expressing *sentiment* or *feeling*,—or involving an assertion,—called *Verba sentiendi et declarandi*.

i. Verba sentiendi are such as, *audio, credo, doleo, existimo, gaudeo, intelligo, miror, puto, scio, sentio, spero, video*, &c.

ii. Verba declarandi are such as, *aio, confirmo, certiorem facio, dico, doceo, fateor, moneo, narro, nuntio, promitto, scribo*, &c.

When such verbs are Passive, the Infin. is used subjectively or predicatively, [see *above, a.* 2. *Obs.* 1. *iii.*]

Obs. 2. The Infinitive and its *Substitutes* in a sentence.

The Infinitive, being a sort of verbal Substantive, naturally forms a *substantival clause* [§ 65. *d.* 1.]; and all such clauses contain an Infinitive, or what may be considered a Substitute for it; thus—

i. The *Indirect Assertion*, especially, has the Infin. either as subject [Rule 1.] or object [Rule 2.]; as, *fama est Remum transiluisse muros*, Liv. i. 7.—*nuntiat regi abire Latinos*, Liv. i. 27.

(*a*) *Ut* a substitute,——when an assertion has a *consecutive* force, *ut* with Subj. may be used, instead of an Infin.

Thus *ut* may be used subjectively with verbs denoting *consequence, casualty, custom, duty*; hence very often with *est, fit, fieri potest, restat, lex est*, &c.; as, *est ut viro vir latius ordinet arbusta*, Hor. O. iii. 1. 9.——Often also with *accidit, accedit, evenit, expedit, licet, placet, æquum est, necesse est, oportet*, &c.; as, *ad Appii senectutem accedebat ut cæcus esset*, Cic. Sen. 6. *Necesse est* and *oportet* then commonly omit the *ut*; as, *valeat possessor oportet*, Hor. E. i. 2. 49.

But *ut* with Subj. is not used for the Infin. with *verba sentiendi et declarandi*. And when *ut* follows such verbs it is an *indirect question*; as, *vides ut altâ stet nive candidum Soracte*, Hor. O. i. 9. I, you see *how*, &c.

So *ut* with verbs of *fearing* really means "how;" as, *vereor ut veniat* I fear *how* he may come, i.e. I fear that he *may not* come: *vereor ne veniat* I fear that he *may* come.

(*b*) *Quod* a substitute,——when an assertion has a *causal* force, or expresses the ground of a predication, *quod* with Indic. may be used instead of an Infin.

Thus *quod* is especially used, subjectively or objectively, with verbs denoting *joy, sorrow, praise*, &c.; hence with *dolet, juvat, gaudeo, indignor, lætor, laudo*, &c.; as, *lætor quod vivit in urbe*, Hor. S. i. 4. 98.——*Quod* may also introduce a definite fact, (yet still with some reference to it as a *cause*), with such verbs as *accidit, accedit*, (used also with *ut*), *apparet, prodest, addo, animadverto, nihil moror, mitto, omitto*, &c.; as, *adde quod pubes tibi crescit omnis*, Hor. O. ii. 8. 17.

But *quod* is rarely thus used with verbs of *opinion, knowledge, affirmation*; as, *scituros quod redigi in concordiam res nequeant*, Liv. iii. 52, which should not be imitated.

(*c*) Both *ut* and *quod* may form an *apposition* to a noun or neut. pronoun; as, *placebat illud ut eum adjuvares*, Cic. fam. i. 7.——*illa me res consolatur, quod hæc est existimanda*, Cic. Div. 5.

Digitized by Google

ii. The *Indirect Petition* usually substitutes *ut* [or *qui*], with Subj. for the Infin.; a *purpose* being implied, [see § 84. *b. i.*]—The verbs which make an *indirect petition* are principally,

(1) Verbs of asking, advising, commanding, &c., *adduco, auctor sum, cogo, contendo, decerno, edico, flagito, hortor, impero, moneo, oro, peto, postulo, precor, rogo, suadeo,* &c.; as, *edixit ut omnes adessent,* Liv. i. 44.

(2) Verbs of caring, effecting, striving, &c., *adipiscor, assequor, caveo, cogito, committo, consulo, curo, facio, laboro, operam do, nitor, statuo,* &c.; as, *si facis ut patriæ sit idoneus,* Juv. xiv. 71.

(3) Verbs of desiring or wishing, *censeo, cupio, opto, studeo, volo, malo, nolo,* &c.; as, *cœlestes ita velle ut Roma caput orbis terrarum sit,* Liv. i. 16.

(4) Verbs of allowing or permitting, *concedo, do, patior, permitto, sino,* &c.; as, *quod nostræ ætati dii dederunt ut videremus,* Liv. i. 19.

(5) And any verbs, which can introduce a purpose; as, *auro corrupit ut sineret,* Liv. i. 51, bribed him to permit.

(*a*) Many of these verbs admit of an Infin. like the *indirect assertion,* especially in poetry; as, *hortor amare focos,* Virg. Æ. iii. 134. *quod cures proprium fecisse,* Hor. E. i. 17. 5. Hence a considerable variety is found in the construction of such verbs, which should be learned by observation. The following are some of the points which may be noticed,

(1) *Caveo ut faciam* is, I take care to do it; *caveo ne faciam* or *caveo faciam* I take care not to do it.

(2) *Facio, committo, id ago,* &c., with *ut,* form an emphatic *periphrasis;* as, *invitus quidem feci ut ejicerem,* Cic. Sen. 12, it was with reluctance that I turned out.

(3) *Jubeo* almost always has an Infin. with Acc.; but sometimes with an indefinite subject the Infin. stands alone; as, *flores amœnæ ferre jube rosæ,* Hor. O. ii. 3. 14.

(4) *Moneo* remind, *concedo* allow *a fact, efficio* prove, *fac* suppose, have the Infin. with Acc. But *moneo* advise, *concedo* give permission, *efficio facio* bring about, have *ut* with Subj.

(5) *Suadeo, persuadeo,* to persuade or convince *about anything,* have Infin. with Acc. or Acc. of a pronoun; as, *nisi mihi suasissem nihil esse in vitâ,* Cic. p. Arch. 6. *quid mî igitur suades,* Hor. S. i. 1. 101. but if they mean to persuade *to any action,* they have *ut* with Subj.; as, *persuadet uti mercetur agellum,* Hor. E. i. 7. 81.

(6) *Volo, cupio,* &c. have a great variety; as, *volo tibi narrare, volo illum tibi narrare, volo tibi narratum, volo ut tibi narretur, velim tibi narretur.*

(*b*) Connected with the *indirect petition* are some constructions with *participles, gerunds,* and *supines.*

(1) The Fut. part. pass. is used to express *an end that is to be accomplished;* particularly with verbs denoting to *give, receive, undertake, let, hire,* &c.; as, *diripienda plebi data sunt,* Liv. ii. 5, to plunder *or* to be plundered. So with *curo* to *get* anything done; as, *funus ei faciendum curavi,* Cic. fam. iv. 12. *Ad* with a gerundial construction may also be used; as, *nemini se ad docendum dabat,* Cic. Brut. 89.

Digitized by Google

The Infin. thus used in poetry is a Grecism; as, *dederatque comam diffundere ventis*, Virg. Æ. i. 319.

(2) With Verbs expressing or implying *motion* the Fut. part. act.—or the Supine in *um*—or *ad* with a gerundial construction, may be used, in a similar sense; thus, "he comes to see these things" may be, *venit, hæc visurus—hæc visum—ad hæc videndum—ad hæc videnda.*

iii. The *Indirect Question* almost always substitutes an interrogative with Subj. for the Infinitive, [see § 84. *a. i.* 1.]—The Infin. appears sometimes in Rhetorical questions.

Obs. 3. Difference between the Latin and English Infinitive. The Latin Infin. without a subject, is stated in English by *the Infin.* The Latin Infin. with a subject, is stated in English by *that*, with Indic. or Potent. The Infin. however is much more extensively used in English, than in Latin; and the two languages agree only in *simple assertions of fact;* as, I wish to see, *volo videre.* They differ in expressing

a *consequence;*	as, it is necessary *to see*, is,	*necesse est ut videat.*
a *purpose;*	„ he comes *to see*,	*venit ut videat.*
a *cause;*	„ he is glad *to see*,	*gaudet quod videt.*
a *comparison;*	„ he is too little *to see*,	*minor est quam ut videat.*

§ 86. *The Participles.*

Participles are *verbal adjectives*, expressing an *act* or *state*, and governing the cases of their verbs; as,

duplices tendens ad sidera palmas,
stretching both his hands to the stars.

Obs. The *verbal* force of participles is seen in their *governing cases*, like verbs, and in their expressing *acts*, which are necessarily *limited to some definite time*, whereas *Adjectives* express only *qualities*, *habits*, or *states*, which are not so limited; [see § 73. *d.* 5.]

i. Some Participles have dropped into mere Adjectives; as, *negligens, patiens, sapiens, doctus, venerandus*, &c.

ii. Some have gained the meaning of Substantives; as, *amans, adolescens, dictum, factum, præceptum, satum*, &c.

(*a*) *The force of the different Participles.*

1. The active and passive voice have each two Participles; as,

Act. *amans, amaturus.* Pass. *amatus, amandus.*

Obs. 1. The Latin and English Participles compared.—The Latin Verb has no participle for the Perf. Act. or the Pres. Pass. The English verb has two simple participles, the Pres. Act. *loving;* and the Past Pass. *loved;* and also the Perf. Act. *having loved;*

Digitized by Google

the Pres. Pass. *being loved;* and the Perf. Pass. *having been loved;* formed by auxiliaries: but the English has no future participles, and therefore the Latin future participles may be rendered by a circumlocution; as, *amaturus* about to love *or* one who is going to love; *amandus* to be loved *or* one who ought to be loved.

	Active.		Passive.	
Pres.	*amans.*	loving.	[none].	being loved.
Perf.	[none].	having loved.	*amatus.*	having been loved.
Fut.	*amaturus.*	[none].	*amandus.*	[none].

Obs. 2. The Deficiency of the Participles supplied.—

i. The Perfect Active is supplied either by the Passive participle in the Abl. absolute, or else by a conjunction, *quum, postquam, ubi, ut,* with the Perf. or Pluperf. of the verb; as, *quum Fidenæ aperte descíssent, Tullus Metto exercituque ejus ab Albâ accito, contra hostes ducit,* Liv. i. 27, where *both* constructions are found. These forms often give variety to a sentence; and *quum,* &c. with its verb may be equivalent to "and" with a participle; as, *juvenes agmine ingressi, quum avum regem salutâssent,* Liv. i. 6, having entered *and* having saluted.

ii. The Present Passive is supplied by a conjunction with the Pres. or Imperf. of the verb; as, *quum Etrusci vates adhiberentur,* Liv. i. 56, Etrurian prophets being employed. The Perf. Part. however is often used where in English the Pres. would be found. Sometimes too the Fut. gets the meaning of a Pres.; as, *volvenda dies,* Virg. Æ. ix. 7, revolving time. So *oriundus* for *ortus.*

2. Deponent verbs have *four* Participles; as, *morans, moratus, moraturus, morandus.*

Obs. Deponents having a Perf. Part. in an active sense do not need the substitutes which verbs in *o* employ; thus in the example above *ingressi* corresponds with *quum salutâssent.*

i. The Perf. Part. of some deponents and neuter-deponents is often used as a Pres.; as, *offerendum ultro rati,* Liv. i. 17. So *ausus, fisus, gavisus, solitus, usus, veritus.*

ii. The Perf. Part. of some deponents may be used in a *passive* sense; such as, *adeptus, comitatus, conatus, confessus, dignatus, expertus, frustratus, meditatus, mensus, oblitus, pollicitus, populatus, testatus,* &c.

iii. The Fut. Part. in *dus* is always passive; as, *morandus* one who must be delayed.

3. The Future participle passive does not express mere futurity, but duty or necessity; as,

restat Chremes qui mihi exorandus est,

Chremes remains who must be prevailed on by me.

Obs. 1. Neuter verbs, admitting only an *impersonal* passive, [§ 80. 2.], use the Fut. Part. in *dus* impersonally in the neuter gender; as, *resisto, resistendum; venio, veniendum.*

Digitized by Google

Yet *fungor, fruor, medeor, potior, utor,* having in the old language governed an Acc. may be used as transitives; as, *utendus,-a,-um.*

i. The neut. Part. then governs the case which the active verb does, i. e. Gen., Dat., Abl. [not Acc.]; as, *illi resistendum; utendum est ætate.*

ii. The following passage shows several varieties; *resistendum senectuti est, ejusque vitia diligentiâ compensanda sunt: pugnandum tanquam contra morbum, sic contra senectutem, habenda ratio valetudinis, utendum exercitationibus modicis,* Cic. Sen. 11.

Obs. 2. The Agent is put, with the Part. in *dus,* in the Dat. or the Abl. with *ab,* as with other passives; as, *mihi exorandus est.*

i. Hence such forms become equivalent to "must" with the active; as, I must advise you *tu mihi monendus es:* I must come *mihi veniendum est.*

ii. The Part. in *dus* answers to the Greek verbal in τέος, and like it, in neuter verbs, can take the passive construction with the Agent, and yet govern the case of the active verb; as, *mihi utendum est ætate* I must use my time.

In the old language transitive verbs had the same construction; as, *æternas quoniam pœnas in morte timendum,* Lucr. i. 112, for *pœnæ timendæ.*

(*b*) *Participial Constructions.*

1. A Participle agrees with the subject or object of another verb; as,

hæc locutus abiit, — having thus spoken he departed.

illum vidi venientem, — I saw him coming.

2. When a Participle has a distinct subject of its own, it makes the *Ablative absolute.* [§ 77. *d.*]

Obs. 1. The *Infinitival* and *Participial* Constructions.

The difference between the Infinitive and Participle in dependent clauses, so observable in Greek, [Gr. Gr. § 135.], is not much regarded in Latin; thus, *illum vidi venire* and *illum vidi venientem* are nearly the same. The participle however shows more distinctly that its *subject* is the real subject or object of the other verb, and thus sometimes its meaning will differ from the Infinitive; as,

audio illum venientem I hear him coming, *or* when coming.

audio illum venire I hear of his coming, *or* that he comes.

Obs. 2. Some particular idioms with Participles.

i. A Perf. Part. Pass. is used for a verbal substantive; as, *cujus familiæ decus ejecti reges erant,* Liv. ii. 20, the expulsion of the kings. So *post urbem conditam,* &c.

ii. A Perf. Part. Pass. expresses a completed action continuing in its consequences, after *habeo, teneo,* &c.; which is an approach to the

Digitized by Google

use of *habeo* as a mere auxiliary; as, *fides mea, quam habent spectatam jam et diu cognitam*, Cic. Div. 11.

iii. A participle and verb may often be rendered in English by two verbs; as, *obrutam armis necavere*, Liv. i. 11, they overwhelmed her with their arms and killed her.

iv. Participial clauses may express the force of "without" followed by a verbal; as,

Active. He departed without speaking a word, *ne verbo quidem dicto*, —or *quum ne verbum quidem dixisset*,—or, with a Deponent, *ne verbum quidem locutus,—abiit.*

Passive. He came without being called, *nullo vocante*,—or *a nullo vocatus*,—or *invocatus,—venit.*

So with a negative, [*non, nunquam, nunquam nisi*, &c.], in the independent clause; as, *nunquam nisi verbum aliquod locutus, abiit*, &c. Or *nunquam nisi vocatus venit.* See *non castris positis*, Liv. i. 15. *nunquam nisi potus*, Hor. E. i. 19. 7.

Obs. 3. The *Case* of the Participle; see § 85. *a.* 2. *Obs.* 3.

i. When the subject of the Part., not being *expressed*, is the same as the *Subject* of the preceding Verb, the Part. is put in *the same case* as that subject; i. e. the Nom.; as, *fertur Prometheus coactus*, Hor. O. i. 16. 13. *esse* is then expressed or understood; as, *coactus* = *coactus esse.*

ii. When the subject of the Part. is the same as the *Object* of the preceding verb, the Part. is put in *the case which the verb governs*; as, *spero* [*te*] *supplicia hausurum*, Virg. Æ. iv. 383.

iii. When the subject of the Part. is *not the same* either as the *Subject* or the *Object* of the preceding verb, the *Ablative Absolute* is used.

Obs. 4. Participles = *Adjectival* or *Adverbial* clauses.

Participles are often used as Abbreviations of *Adjectival clauses*, and are equivalent to *qui* with a verb; as, *spretæque injuria formæ*, Virg. Æ. i. 27. *spretæ* = *quæ spreta fuerat.*

Participles are often used as Abbreviations of *Adverbial clauses*, and are equivalent to a conjunction, *quum, quod, si, quamvis*, &c. with a verb. The Adverbial clauses most commonly thus abbreviated are,—

i. Temporal clauses,—Participle = *quum*, when, while, &c.; as, *sol quoque et exoriens et quum se condet in undis*, Virg. G. i. 438.

ii. Causal clauses,—Participle = *quod* because, &c.; as, *spernebant Etrusci Lucumonem exule advenâ ortum*, Liv. i. 34. Hence the Part. is used exactly as an Abl. noun, to express the instrument, cause, or manner; as, *hoc faciens, vivam melius*, Hor. S. i. 4. 135, by doing this. *superbo exacto rege*, Liv. ii. 1, by driving out.

iii. Conditional clauses,—Participle = *si* if; as, *ne, non reddita, belli causa,—reddita, belli adjumentum essent*, Liv. i. 3.

iv. Admissive clauses,—Participle = *quamvis* although, &c.; as, *armorum periculo liberatus, animum tamen retinet armatum*, Cic. p. Mar. 10.

Digitized by Google

§ 87. The Tenses.

Tenses describe the *time*, and the *state*, of an action.

(*a*) *Tenses with respect to the* Time *of an action.*

With reference to the *time*, the Tenses are divided into two classes, *Principal* and *Historic*.

The *principal* tenses refer to *present* or *future* time.

The *historic* tenses „ *past* time.

1. Tenses belonging to the same class are called *Similar;* and may be thus arranged;

Principal.		Historic.	
Indic.	*amo.*	Indic.	*amabam.*
	amavi I have loved.		*amavi* I loved.
	amabo.		*amaveram.*
	amavero.		
Subj.	*amem.*	Subj.	*amarem.*
	amaverim.		*amavissem.*

2. Similar tenses "go together," i. e. are connected with each other by pronouns or conjunctions; as,

gaudeo quod rediisti, — I am glad that you have returned.
gaudebam quod redieras, — I was glad that you had returned.
venio ut videam, — I come to see.
veni ut viderem, — I came to see.

Obs. 1. Similar Tenses depend on each other with more exactness in Latin than they do in English; thus, there are some who said *sunt qui dixerint*, not *dicerent*. Yet *dissimilar* tenses may unite, if different times are *really* referred to; thus,

i. An *historic* may follow a *principal* tense; as, *cum dicat me, si multa dixissem, sublevaturum fuisse eum*, Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 9.

ii. A *principal* may follow an *historic* tense; as, *Siciliam ita vexavit, ut ea restitui nullo modo possit*, Cic. Ver. i. 4.

Obs. 2. The *Historic Present.*——In lively descriptions the Present is often used in speaking of *past* time.

The Historic Present *may* be followed by the *principal* tenses, but more commonly takes the *historic*, in accordance with its meaning; as, *rogat Diodorum, ut ad propinquum suum det literas:—— Diodorus ad propinquum suum scribit, ut iis, qui a Verre venissent, responderet*, Cic. Ver. ii. 4. 18.

Obs. 3. The *Perfect* and *Perfect-aorist.*——The Perfect, [*amavi* I have loved *and* I loved], belongs to the *principal* or the *historic* tenses, according to its meaning; as, *rogavi ut venias* I have asked you to come; *rogavi ut venires* I asked you to come.

Digitized by Google

i. In the Subjunctive, the Imperfect, [*amarem*], is commonly used as the *Aorist*, and the Perfect, [*amaverim*], as a *Perfect* only; as, *rogabam quid diceres; rogo quid dixeris.*

ii. Yet, on the one hand, the Imperf. Subj. is often found after the Perf. Indic. used as a *Perfect;* as, *sæpe vidimus fractos pudore, qui ratione nullâ vincerentur*, Cic. Tusc. ii. 21, we have often seen, &c.

And, on the other hand, the Perf. Subj. is often found, (especially in consecutive clauses), after the Perf. Indic. used as an *Aorist;* as, *tam denso regem operuit nimbo, ut conspectum ejus concioni abstulerit*, Liv. i. 16. So where a consecutive clause expresses "would have been," "might have been," "ought to have been," and where a Pluperf. might be expected; as, *ut, nisi fugæ speciem timuisset, Galliam repetiturus fuerit*, Liv. xxii. 32. comp. § 84. *c.* 2.

Obs. 4. The *Futures.*—The use of the Futures is more accurate in Latin than in English: they are required whenever an act really belongs to future time, though it may be expressed in English by the Pres. or Perf.; as,

dicam si potero I will tell if I can.——*faciam si dixero.*

When, in the *oratio obliqua*, a future act must be expressed in the Subjunctive, two methods are observed;—

i. If another Future precedes, the Fut. becomes a Pres. or Imperf. Subj.; and the Fut. Perf. becomes a Perf. or Pluperf. Subj.; as,

dicit, se dicturum si possit, —facturum si dixerit.
dixit, se dicturum si posset,——facturum si dixisset.

ii. If no other Future precedes, the Fut. or Fut. Perf. becomes a Future participle with the Subjunctive of *sum;* as,

non dubito quin rediturus sit,——quin rediturus fuerit.
non dubitabam quin rediturus esset,——quin rediturus fuisset.

In the Passive Voice *futurum* with *ut* must be used; as, *non dubito quin futurum sit ut laudetur.*

(*b*) *Tenses with respect to the* State *of an action.*

With reference to the *state* of an action the Tenses may be divided into three classes, *Imperfects, Perfects, Indefinites.*

1. The Imperfects are the *Present-imperfect* and *Past-imperfect,* commonly called the Present and Imperfect; they describe an act as *going on*; as,

amo illum,	*amabam illum,*
I am loving him.	I was loving him.

Obs. 1. The Imperfects must be attended to in Latin, because the English verb has no tenses exactly equivalent to them. The Latin imperfects, *amo, amabam,* may be rendered by "I am loving," "I was loving," when the continuance of the act is at all plainly marked; otherwise the English Present and Preterite, "I love," "I loved," may be used; as, *quid faciat rogo*, I *ask* what he *is doing.*

Digitized by Google

Obs. 2. The commonest usages of the Imperfects are—

i. An act *described as going on;* as, *cum versus facias*, Hor. S. i. 10. 25, when you are making verses.—*vela dabant læti*, Virg. Æ. i. 35.

ii. A *continued* act or state; as, *contristat Aquarius annum*, Hor. S. i. 1. 36, saddens the year.—*multosque per annos errabant*, Virg. Æ. i. 31. Hence the Imperf. is often joined in the narratives with an Aorist, where one act is *momentary* and the other *continuous;* as, *Æqui se in oppida receperunt, murisque se tenebant*, Liv. ii. 48.

iii. A *repeated* or *habitual* act; as, *num vesceris istâ, quam laudas, plumâ*, Hor. S. ii. 2. 27.—*rancidum aprum antiqui laudabant*, Hor. S. ii. 2. 89, used to praise.

iv. Sometimes an act *begun, attempted,* or *desired,* though after all it may not be done; as, *nil mutat Lucilius*, Hor. S. i. 10. 53, *is for changing*, desires to change. *et simul curiam relinquebat*, Tac. Ann. ii. 34, he *began to leave;* though in fact he did not go.

Obs. 3. The Imperfects are used to describe an act *begun some time before* but *still continued;* thus, *amo* I have been loving, *amabam* I had been loving. This is mostly seen—

i. With the Adverbs *jamdudum, jampridem*, &c.; as, *jamdudum ausculto*, Hor. S. ii. 7. 1, I have been long listening.

ii. With a reference to a finished act in another clause, or a period of time now past; as, *postquam omnis res mea fracta est, aliena negotia curo*, Hor. S. ii. 3. 19, I have been attending to. So with *quum;* see § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 1.

Obs. 4. By a peculiar idiom the Pres. Indic. gets the meaning of *futurity* or *duty* in a question, "what shall I do?" or "what am I to do?" as, *quam prendimus arcem*, Virg. Æ. ii. 322.

Obs. 5. Letter-writers used the Imperf. of acts which were *going on* at the time of writing, but would be past when the letter was read; as, *hæc ego dictabam*, Hor. E. i. 10. 49. And so with the other tenses which the time of *reading* would require.

2. The Perfects are the *Present-perfect, Past-perfect, Future-perfect,* commonly called the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-perfect; they describe an act as *completed;* as,

amavi eum,	*amaveram eum,*	*amavero eum,*
I have loved him.	I had loved him.	I shall have loved him.

Obs. 1. When two acts are so connected that one is completed, before the other takes place, one of the Perfects must be used in Latin, though this is often neglected in English; as, *ut ad ea quæ dixerint respondeam*, Cic. Div. 15, the things which they may say:—*quum Aristides audisset, in concionem venit*, Cic. Off. iii. 11:—*quum venerit ille, canemus*, Virg. E. ix. 67.

Obs. 2. Some peculiarities in the use of Perfects;—

i. The Perfect may express a present or continuing state, con-

Digitized by Google

sequent upon a completed act; as, *perii* I have perished = I am undone. Hence, *novi*, *memini*, have habitually the force of Presents.

ii. The Perfects, from describing an act as *completed*, may give the idea of *rapidity* or *immediate performance*; as, *fugêre feræ*, Virg. G. i. 330. *dum loquimur fugerit invida ætas*, Hor. O. i. 11. 7.

iii. The Perfects may imply that a thing *is no more*, the act or state being *finished*, and so *over*; as, *fuimus Troes, fuit Ilium*, Virg. Æ. ii. 325.

Obs. 3. The passive perfects are formed with *sum* or *fui*, &c.: but the form with *fui* is not used as an Aorist, but only as a real Perfect; hence *amatus fui*, I *have been* loved, or I *was* loved, but *am so no longer*.

3. The Indefinites are the *Past-indefinite* and *Future-indefinite*, commonly called the Perfect and Future; they describe an act *simply as an act*, without noticing whether it is going on or completed; as,

amavi illum,	*amabo illum*,
I loved him.	I shall love him.

Obs. The Perfect Indic. being used as an Aorist as well as a real Perfect, the difference must be noticed from the context.

(*c*) *Tenses in the Infinitive and Participles.*

In the Infinitive Mood and Participles the tenses do not describe the *time*, but only the *state*, of an action, either as *continuing*, *completed*, simply *acted*, or *intended*; as,

dico illum venire—venisse—venturum esse,
I say that he is coming—has come—will come.
dixi illum venire—venisse—venturum esse,
I said that he was coming—had come—would come.

So also in the Passive Voice.

Obs. 1. The Infin. and Participles do not express *time*;

i. Hence the same tense serves for Present and Imperfect, *amare*;—Perfect and Pluperfect, *amavisse*,—present and past intention, *amaturum esse*.

ii. These tenses may depend upon *principal* or *historic* tenses, and they take their time from the verb on which they depend.

Obs. 2. The Futures, both active and passive, in the Infinitive do not express *future time*, but a present or past *intention* or *expectation*.

i. In the Active voice the Future is only a tense of the *intentional* conjugation, [§ 30. *obs.* 1.]. A Future-perfect is sometimes used in the Infin.; as, *quum dicat me sublevaturum fuisse eum*, Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 9, that I should have assisted him.

Digitized by Google

ii. In the Passive voice the Future is formed with the Supine, and *iri*, the Infin. Pass. of *eo*, used impersonally; as, *tibi aram hic dicatum iri*, Liv. i. 7, that an altar will be dedicated to thee, i.e. that *there is a-going to dedicate*; so that *aram*, which seems to be the subject of the verb, is in reality an object, governed by the Supine.

Instead of this Infinitive *fore ut* or *futurum esse ut*, is often used; as, *fore putant ut leges administrentur*, Cic. Div. 21.

§ 88. The Gerunds and Supines.

The Gerunds and Supines are verbal substantives, having the *cases* of nouns, and expressing the *action* of verbs.

(*a*) *The Gerunds.*

1. Gerunds govern the cases of their verbs; as,

efferor studio patres vestros videndi.
I am transported with the desire of seeing your fathers.

Obs. In a few instances Gerunds appear to have a *passive* sense; as, *censendi causâ hæc frequentia convenit*, Cic. Ver. i. 18. *alitur vitium vivitque tegendo*, Virg. G. iii. 451. But these may be considered as actives with an *indefinite* subject; thus, *tegendo* by *some one's* concealing it=by the concealing of it.

2. The Gerund in *di* is a Genitive case, and depends on substantives, and on adjectives which govern a Genitive of the Object; as,

studio videndi, with a desire of seeing. *bellum gerendi peritus,* skilled in carrying on war.

Obs. Some idioms of the Gerund in *di* may be noticed;

i. Instead of an Acc. governed by the Gerund, a Gen. Plur. is used, which seems to be governed by the other noun, and the gerund to be put in apposition with it, or used as a Correction; as, *earum rerum nullam sibi defendendi facultatem reliquit*, Cic. Ver. ii. 4. 47, for *eas res defendendi*, no power of defending those things,—no power *over those things*, namely, *of defending* them.

ii. The Gerund in *di* is sometimes put *alone* in a peculiar manner, in Tacitus; as, *Vologesi vetus et penitus infixum erat arma Romana vitandi*, Ann. xv. 5. *studium* or a similar noun may be understood, but it is rather to be considered as an instance of the *Genitivus exegeticus*, [§ 73. *a.* 1. *obs* 1.], an inveterate habit—namely, *that of avoiding*.

3. The Gerund in *dum* is an Accusative case, and is generally governed by a preposition; as,

locus ad agendum amplissimus,
a place most honourable for pleading in.

Digitized by Google

Obs. A Gerund in *dum*, without a noun, and governed by *inter*, is equivalent to *during* or *while*; as, *inter agendum*, Virg. E. ix. 24.

4. The Gerund in *do* is an Ablative case, and expresses the *Instrument*, or is governed by a preposition; as,

mens discendo alitur, the mind is nurtured by learning. *in suum cuique tribuendo*, in giving each his own.

Obs. 1. When a substantive in the Acc. depends on a Gerund in *do* governed by a preposition, the construction with the *gerundial adjective* should be used; as, *de accipiendis regibus*, Liv. ii. 3. not *de accipiendo reges*.

Obs. 2. The Gerund in *do* is occasionally used as a Dative, and is then governed by an Adj. such as *aptus*, *par*, *utilis*; as, *aqua utilis bibendo*, Plin. N. H. xxxvi. 6. In the phrase *solvendo esse* to be solvent, such an Adj. is understood.

5. Instead of the Gerunds in transitive verbs, a *Gerundial Adjective* may be used, which agrees with the noun that would be governed by the gerund; as,

consilia urbis delendæ for *urbem delendi*,
designs of destroying the city.

ad accusandos homines for *accusandum homines*,
to accuse men.

in consulibus creandis for *consules creando*,
in creating consuls.

Obs. 1. The *Gerundial adjective*, or *Gerundivum*, is only a *passive* construction with the Participle in *dus*, instead of the *active* construction with the Gerund; thus, *consilia urbis delendæ* is, designs of the city to be destroyed, instead of *urbem delendi* of destroying the city. Being used however precisely as a Gerund in meaning, this idiom is distinguished by a gerundial name.

i. The verbs *fungor*, *fruor*, *medeor*, *potior*, *utor*, though not transitives admit of the Gerundial adjective. Comp. § 86. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1.

ii. The Gerundial adjective should not be used with a neuter Pron. or Adj., when the neut. might be mistaken for a mas.; thus *studium plura videndi* not *plurium videndorum*.

Obs. 2. The Gerundial adjective is found in all the usages of the Gerund; and some other peculiarities may be noticed.

i. A Gen. used with *esse*, in the sense of "tending to," "serving the purpose of;" as, *hæc prodendi imperii et tradendæ Hannibali victoriæ sunt*, Liv. xxvii. 9. It may probably be considered as a Gen. of the Possessor.

Digitized by Google

ii. Dat. used with *esse*, where *par*, *idoneus*, &c. may be understood; as, *qui oneri ferendo essent*, Liv. ii. 8, who were able to bear the burden. This Dat. sometimes depends on other verbs besides *esse*, and expresses a *purpose* or *destination*; as, *perducendo ad culmen operi destinatæ erant*, Liv. i. 55. So with the names of *offices* or *authorities* with a verb understood; as, *comitia regi creando*.

iii. An Abl. used, where a simple Gerund in *do* could not be; as, *nec jam possidendis publicis agris contentos esse*, Liv. vi. 14.

(*b*) *The Supines.*

1. Supines in *um* govern the cases of their verbs; as,

scitatum oracula Phœbi mittimus,
we send to consult the oracles of Apollo.

Obs. The Supines in *um* and *u* are in the Acc. and the Abl. cases, and are commonly called *active* and *passive*. The supine in *u* does not govern any case.

2. The Supine in *um* depends upon verbs of motion, as an Accusative case; as,

spectatum veniunt,
they come to the seeing, i. e. to see. [supply *ad*.]

Obs. The Supine in *um* expresses the object or purpose of the movement; as, *lusum it Mæcenas dormitum ego Virgiliusque*, Hor. S. i. 5. 8. Hence it is nearly equivalent to the Fut. Part. or to *qui* or *ut* with Subj.

i. In certain expressions with *do*, *trado*, &c. motion is only *implied*; as, *ei filiam nuptum dat*, Liv. i. 49.

ii. *Eo* with the Supine sometimes appears as a periphrastic future, like the English, I am going to; as, *quid agis? cur te is perditum?* Ter. And. i. 1. 107. In dependent clauses this form becomes a mere circumlocution for the simple verb; as, *ultum ire injurias festinat*, Sall. Jug. 68.

3. The Supine in *u* depends on some substantives and adjectives as an Ablative case; as,

nefas est dictu, — it is wrong in the saying, i. e. to be said.
factu fœdum, — base to be done.

Obs. The substantives used with the Supine in *u* are *fas*, *nefas*, *opus*; as, *dictuque nefas*, Virg. Æ. iii. 365. the adjectives are such as mean *good* or *bad*, *easy* or *difficult*, *pleasant* or *unpleasant*, *worthy* or *unworthy*, &c.; as, *nec visu facilis, nec dictu affabilis ulli*, Virg. Æ. iii. 621.

Digitized by Google

PARTICLES.

§ 89. Adverbs.

1. Adverbs are used to qualify verbs or adjectives, and describe the *manner* of an act or state; as,

diu dormit, he sleeps long. *splendidè mendax*, nobly false.

2. The Rules for the construction of Adverbs have been mostly given under the Cases.

Obs. 1. Some further idioms with Adverbs may be noticed.

i. Neuter *Pronouns* are sometimes used as Adverbs, as neut. Adj. so often are; as, *aliquid libertati officeret*, Liv. ii. 2, in some degree. *nihil aliud a proposito aversus*, Liv. ii. 8, in no other respect.

ii. Some Adverbs govern a Gen. from being really cases of nouns; as, *illius ergo*, Virg. Æ. vi. 570. *instar montis*, Virg. Æ. ii. 15.

iii. An Adverb in *è* is used of a language spoken or understood; as, *ut Latinè loquerentur*, Liv. vi. 42. *Latinè sciebant*, Liv. i. 27.

Obs. 2. The *differences* observable in some Adverbs of *time*.

i. Tunc and *tum*, though sometimes confounded, are not exactly alike: *tunc* is then, *at that time*, the opposite of *nunc*;—but *tum* is then, *under those circumstances*, the correlative of *quum*.

ii. Jam, besides *now* or *already*, means,—in an enumeration, "moreover," or "in the next place;" as, *jam varias pelagi volucres*, Virg. G. i. 383: ——with a Future, "soon;" as, *jam plus hostium in Palatio fore*, Liv. ii. 10:——with a negative, "no longer;" as, *non jam prima peto*, Virg. Æ. v. 194.

iii. Indies and *quotidie* differ, in that *indies* is said of an act, *changing* from day to day, hence usually with comparatives, or words denoting increase or diminution; and *quotidie* is said of an act, *continuing* or *repeated*; as, *convivium quotidie compleo* and *multa indies addiscentem*, Cic. Sen. 14.

Obs. 3. Negative Adverbs.—*Non* is the usual negative.

i. Haud has properly a subjective force, "not, as I think," "not exactly;" but it is often used precisely as *non*; especially with expressions of measure or quantity; as, *haud magnus, haud multus*, &c.: ——*Immo* is a *qualifying* or *correcting* negative, "nay," "nay rather," removing one thing to substitute another; as, *filium unicum adolescentulum habeo,—immo habui, Chreme, nunc habeam necne incertum est*, Ter. Heaut. i. 1. 41.

ii. Ne = *ut non* is used with intentional and prohibitory clauses:—with verbs of fearing it is rendered "lest," but still implies its proper meaning, *ut non*, as the thing feared is desired *not to be*:—*ne—quidem* is "not even," and the word referred to always stands between them; as, *ne Italicæ quidem stirpis*, Liv. i. 40.

Digitized by Google

iii. Nec is a conjunction, *et non*. But it is used as a simple negative in expressing *opposites*; as, *nec opinatus; nec obediens; quod nec bene vertat*, Virg. E. ix. 6.——a remnant of the old usage, *ne* or *nec* for *non*.

iv. Two negatives counteract each other, as in English; as, *non te nullius exercent numinis iræ*, Virg. G. iv. 453.——But when a general negative assertion is divided into two or more particulars, a negative, *nec—nec*, must be repeated with each; as, *non tulit populus, nec patris lacrimas, nec ipsius animum*, Liv. i. 26. So when *ne quidem* follows; as, *se absolvere non rebantur eâ lege, ne innoxium quidem, posse*, Liv. i. 26.

v. Non is sometimes omitted with *non modo*, for *non modo non*; as, *non modo civicæ sed ne Italicæ quidem stirpis*, Liv. i. 40.

§ 90. Conjunctions.

1. Conjunctions connect words and sentences; as,

ego aut tu, — I or you.
trepidant hostes et terga vertunt, — the enemies are alarmed and turn their backs.

For the meaning of the different Conjunctions, see § 53.

2. A clause attached by a Conjunction is either *co-ordinate* or *subordinate*, [see § 65. *c. d.*]

(*a*) *Conjunctions with Co-ordinate clauses.*

1. The *Copulative* conjunctions are, affirmative *et, que, atque, ac*; negative *neque, nec*; and double *et—et, nec—nec*, &c.

i. Affirmatives——*et* is simply *copulative* and joins things naturally distinct, while *que* is *adjunctive*, and joins things naturally connected with each other; as, *circuitus solis et lunæ reliquorumque siderum*, Cic. N. D. ii. 62. *Atque* is *ad que* "and in addition," hence it joins things on a footing of equality, but with *emphasis*; as, *datum atque oblatum vobis videtur*, Cic. Ver. i. 1. it is mostly used before vowels. *Ac* is a short form of *atque*, hence it loses its emphatic force, but still joins things on a footing of equality; it is therefore preferred in *subdivisions*, the main propositions having *et*; as, *tantam causam et memoriâ complecti, et voce ac viribus sustinere*, Cic. Div. 12. it is used only before consonants. All the four conjunctions are found in one sentence, *nunc in ipso discrimine*, &c., Cic. Ver. i. 1.

Et may have the meaning of "too," "also;" as, *non solum Romæ sed et apud exteras nationes*, Cic. Ver. i. 1.—In this sense, with more emphasis, are used *etiam* "and further," adding a *new* thing; and *quoque* "and so also," adding a thing of a similar kind. For *atque ac*, "as," "than," in comparisons, see § 79. *f*.

ii. Negatives——*neque, nec*, are used for *et non*; and *et non* is itself used, when only one idea or word in a sentence is to be

Digitized by Google

negatived; as, *patior et non moleste fero*, Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 1. There is a great tendency in Latin to combine negatives with conjunctions, hence *nec quisquam* for *et nemo*, *nec quidquam* for *et nihil*, &c. And in poets *nec* is used for *et non* when the negative belongs to one word only; as, *nec turpi ignosce senectæ*, Virg. G. iii. 96, for *et non-turpi*.

iii. The copulatives are *doubled* in order to bring subdivisions more emphatically under one common idea; in English, both—and, or, as well—as. The usual form for affirmatives is *et—et*; *et—que* is not often, and *que—et* is never found in Cicero; *que—que* is mostly poetic; *atque—atque* is rare, and very emphatic; as, *atque deos atque astra vocat*, Virg. E. v. 23. For negatives *neque—neque*, *nec—nec*; *neque—nec*; or *nec—neque*; are used: or if one clause is affirmative, *neque—et*; *et—neque*.

2. The *Disjunctive* conjunctions are *aut, vel, ve; sive* or *seu*.

i. Aut marks a difference in the *object*, and *vel* a difference of *expression*: hence *vel* is usually *corrective*, and means "or rather;" as, *a virtute profectum, vel in ipsâ virtute positum*, Cic. Tusc. ii. 20. it is commonly joined with *dicam, etiam, potius*, &c. From this comes the meaning of *vel* "even," with superlatives and other words: as, *vel merito*, Hor. S. i. 6. 22.——Besides this *vel* and *ve* signify that one thing is equal to another, and that it matters not which is taken; as, *leporem sectatus, equove lassus ab indomito*, Hor. S. ii. 2. 9. Again *aut* and *ve* continue a negation in a negative sentence, where, if the sentence were affirmative, *que* might be used; as, *nec laterum dolor aut tussis*, Hor. S. i. 9. 32. *non ubivis coramve quibuslibet*, Hor. S. i. 4. 74. So in *questions* implying a negative, or after *comparatives*.

ii. In the double forms, *aut—aut* marks an opposition of two things, one of which excludes the other; as, *ut aut eos spes falleret, aut ego ad accusandum traducerer*, Cic. Div. 2: *vel—vel* shows that it matters not which of two things is taken; as, *vel bello vel paci paratus*, Liv. i. 1.

iii. Sive or *seu*, repeated, is "whether"—"or," and is the same as *vel si—vel si*: it therefore denotes that either supposition amounts to the same thing; as, *seu stabit iners, seu profluet humor*, Virg. G. iv. 25. When *sive* is joined with *nouns*, different appellatives of the same thing are introduced, and it is doubted which is right. Sometimes *utrum—an* are similar to *seu—sive*; see *below*, 6.

3. The *Adversative* conjunctions are *sed, autem, verum, vero; at, ast, atqui*, &c.; *tamen, attamen*, &c.

i. Sed marks a *direct opposition*, while *autem* marks a transition in an argument or narrative involving both a *connexion* and an *opposition*; as, *tantâne inopiâ videor esse amicorum, ut mihi non ex his, sed de populo subscriptor addatur? vobis autem tanta inopia reorum est?* Cic. Div. 16. *Verum* and *vero* are to each other nearly as *sed* to *autem*: *verum*, being literally *truth*, introduces an opposition containing an explanation or assurance, "but in truth;" while *vero*, with a

Digitized by Google

less direct opposition, marks a transition to a point more important or certain; as, *verum illud, quod institueram dicere, ejusmodi est*: and *nunc vero——hoc me profiteor suscepisse*, Cic. Ver. i. 12.

Enimvero is merely an asseveration, "in good truth;" as, *enimvero ferendum hoc non est*, Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 26.

ii. At, with its compounds, is "yet," and expresses a *rejoinder* or *objection* to a statement already mentioned or supposed; as, *at est bonus*, Hor. S. i. 3. 32, yet [whatever his faults may be], he is a good man. Hence *at* is often used with objections stated by the speaker himself, either ironically, or for the purpose of refuting them; as, *ipse nihil est: at venit paratus cum subscriptoribus exercitatis*, Cic. Div. 15. *Atqui* "but yet," or "notwithstanding," introduces a statement made in spite of a preceding admission; as, *magnum narras, vix credibile: atqui sic habet*, Hor. S. i. 9. 52.

iii. Tamen, with its compounds, is a correlative to *quamvis*, &c., hence it is very similar to *atqui*, only it has a more marked reference to the preceding admission:—*quamvis* must always be supplied, even when *tamen* seems to stand alone; as, *tamen his invitissimis te offeres?* Cic. Div. 6, will you, [notwithstanding], obtrude yourself?

4. The *Argumental* conjunctions are *nam, enim, namque, etenim*, &c.; they are called *demonstrative*, as distinguished from the *Causal* conjunctions *quod*, &c., which are *relative*.

i. When distinguished from each other, *nam* is *conclusive*, an objective reason;—*enim* is *confirmatory*, a subjective reason. *Namque* and *etenim* only mark a closer connexion and have the copulatives *que*, *et*, joined to them; as is the case in *neque enim* for *non enim*.

ii. Nam and *enim* introduce a *proof*, as well as a reason; as, *rerum bonarum et malarum tria genera sunt, nam aut in animis, aut in corporibus, aut extra esse possunt*, Cic. Or. Part. 11. When the proof, as above, is only an enumeration of particulars, *nam* approaches to the meaning of "namely."

iii. Nam is sometimes *elliptical*, assigning a reason for something not expressed; it may then be rendered "why" or "pray;" as, *nam quis te jussit*, Virg. G. iv. 445.

iv. Nempe, nimirum, scilicet, videlicet, are a kind of argumental particles, as they are connected with explanations; all of them giving force and emphasis to a remark. *Nempe* is "to be sure:" as, *nempe dixi*, Hor. S. i. 10. 1: or, when taking up the concession of another, "yes" or "namely;" as, *nempe tuo, furiose*, Hor. S. ii. 3. 207. *Nimirum* is "no doubt," "certainly;" as, *nimirum hic ego sum*, Hor. E. i. 15. 42. *Scilicet* "you may know," and *videlicet* "you may see," are nearly alike: *scilicet* is "forsooth," mostly ironical; as, *scilicet is superis labor est*, Virg. Æ. iv. 379. *videlicet* is "no doubt" or "of course;" as, *licebat enim videlicet legibus*, Cic. Ver. ii. 2. 55. both have sometimes the sense of "namely" or "that is to say;" as, *semper agens aliquid, tale scilicet*, &c. Cic. Sen. 8. *castè jubet lex adire ad deos, animo videlicet*, Cic. Leg. ii. 10.

Digitized by Google

5. The *Illative* conjunctions are *ergo, igitur, itaque, eo, ideo, proinde,* &c.

i. Ergo and *igitur* may both be rendered "therefore," "then;" and are often used indiscriminately; but properly *ergo* denotes the sequence of an *effect* from a *cause*, and *igitur* that of a *conclusion* from *premises: ergo* often begins a sentence, and states a consequence from some cause not expressed; it may be rendered "so then;" as, *ergo Quintilium perpetuus sopor urget*, Hor. O. i. 24. 5. *Itaque*, nearly equivalent to *ergo*, marks the result of some act, and may be rendered "accordingly;" as, *itaque ipse mea legens*, Cic. Am. 1. *Ideo* is "on this account," and introduces an effect referred to its cause; as, *ideo valet ista ratio in Asiâ*, Cic. Ver. ii. 3. 83. *Eo*, when illative, retains something of its literal meaning, and states a result referred either to a purpose or a cause; as, *eo Sullanus factus est*, Cic. Ver. i. 14, for this purpose: *eo nulla pugna mirabilis fuit*, Liv. ii. 48, on this account. *Proinde*, literally "thenceforward," is used mostly with exhortations in the sense of "consequently;" as, *proinde, si saperet, videret quid sibi esset faciendum*, Cic. Ver. ii. 2. 29.

ii. The relative conjunctions signifying "wherefore," *quare, quamobrem*, &c., need no special remarks.

6. The *Interrogative* particles may be added here; *an, nĕ, num, utrum;* with *anne, nonne;* and so *numne, utrumne.*

Obs. The interrogative particles are not always Conjunctions, nor do they always introduce co-ordinate clauses.

i. In single questions the particles have no *conjunctive* force, but merely indicate the nature of the sentence.

ii. In double questions *an* and *ne* are *conjunctive*, in joining the second clause as *co-ordinate* to the first: they then belong to the disjunctive conjunctions.

iii. In indirect questions the clauses introduced by the interrogatives are *subordinate*, and have the Subj. Mood.

(*a*) In *single* questions,—direct or indirect.

i. Num usually expects a negative answer,—*nonne* an affirmative one,—and *ne* is used for either; as, *num vides* do you see?—*nonne vides* do you not see?—*videsne* do you see? *or* do you not see?

ii. An is properly "or," and introduces the second part of a double question; yet it appears to be used in single questions elliptically;

—when a former question is implied in a preceding assertion, so that *an* still means "or;" as, *an iste unquam de se bonam spem habuisset?* Cic. Ver. i. 14, or would he ever have had?

—when a preceding question, [or assertion], is taken up again by *an*, with the meaning of "is it;" as, *quid enim dices?—an, quod dictitas?* Cic. Div. 16, is it what you are continually saying? Sometimes, when the reference to a former question is to be supplied by the mind, *an* or *anne* seems quite equivalent to *num* or *ne;* as *anne aliquas ad cœlum hinc ire putandum est?* Virg. Æ. vi. 719.

Digitized by Google

N.B. *An* is not used by the best Authors as "whether," in indirect questions; except in expressions of doubt, *dubito an, nescio an,* &c., which are *softened affirmatives,* "I rather think that;" or else run into a kind of compound Adv. "perhaps," "probably;" as, *nescio an modum excesserint,* Liv. ii. 2.——If a negative conclusion is wanted, another negative must be used; as, *dubitat an turpe non sit,* Cic. Off. iii. 12, he rather thinks that it is not base: Or the same sense is gained by using *quisquam, ullus,* &c., which are appropriate to negative clauses, *quâ haud scio an quidquam melius datum sit,* Cic. Am. 6.

(*b*) In *double* questions,—direct or indirect.

In expressing doubts, or double questions, the first clause is introduced by *utrum,*—or *nĕ,*—or *num,*—or with no particle; the second clause has *an,* [never *aut*],—or, if no particle has preceded, *ne* may be used with the second clause, in indirect questions;

1. *utrum hoc crimen prætermittes,—an objicies?* Cic. Div. 10.
2. *tu-ne insanus eris, qui acceperis,—an magis excors?* Hor. S. ii. 3. 67.
3. *num furis,—an prudens ludis me?* Hor. S. ii. 5. 58.
4. *auditis,—an me ludit amabilis insania?* Hor. O. iii. 4. 5.
5. *Tarquinii filius, neposne fuerit, parum liquet,* Liv. i. 46.

When the second clause is merely the first with a negative, *annon* is used; as, *pater ejus rediit,—annon?* Ter. Phor. i. 2. 97.—Or in an indirect question, *necne;* as, *quid interest proferantur,—necne,* Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 45.

Obs. Sometimes *utrum,—an,* seem to be used for *sive—seu;* as, *ego utrum nave ferar magnâ an parvâ, ferar unus et idem,* Hor. E. ii. 2. 200.

(*b*) *Conjunctions with Subordinate clauses.*

The Conjunctions which introduce subordinate clauses have been noticed with the Moods.

1. The *Consecutive* conjunctions are *ut, ut non, quin,* [§ 84. *a. iii.* 1.]

2. The *Causal* conjunctions are *quod, quia, quum, quippe, quoniam, quando, quando-quidem, siquidem;* [§ 84. *a. iii.* 2.]

i. Siquidem, written as one word, has lost its conditional force, and means "since;" as, *antiquissimum genus est poetarum, siquidem Homerus fuit ante Romam conditam,* Cic. Tusc. i. 1.

ii. Quippe "inasmuch as" is mostly joined with a relative; as, *quippe qui testificetur,* Cic. fin. ii. 3. inasmuch as [he is a person] who; hence *quippe qui* is equivalent to "since he:"—then, in abbreviated clauses, without a verb; as, *sol Democrito magnus videtur quippe homini erudito,* Cic. fin. i. 6. like the Greek ὡς:—sometimes it stands alone, and is followed by *enim;* as, *a te apte dicta sunt; quippe; habes enim a rhetoribus,* Cic. fin. iv. 5. and with good reason:—lastly, it drops into the use and meaning of "for," or "since."

Digitized by Google

3. The *Temporal* conjunctions are *quum, ut, ubi, postquam, priusquam, quando; dum, donec, quoad,* &c. [§ 84. *a. iii.* 3.]

i. ***Quum*** is a ***relative*** particle denoting the coincidence of two points of time; while *quando* means any indefinite time, and may be used *interrogatively, relatively,* or *indefinitely;* hence "when" in questions, whether direct or indirect, must be *quando,* not *quum;* as, *o rus, quando te aspiciam,* Hor. S. ii. 6. 60.

ii. The words *dum, donec, quoad,* have the double sense of "as long as" and "until." ***Donec*** is not found in Cæsar, and only once in Cicero, *donec ad rejiciendos judices venimus,* Ver. i. 6.

4. The *Intentional* conjunctions are *ut, ut ne, ne, neve* or *neu, quo, quominus,* &c. [§ 84. *b. iii.* 1.]

5. The *Conditional* conjunctions are *si, sin, nisi* or *ni, modo, dum, dummodo,* &c. [§ 84. *b. iii.* 2.]

Nisi differs thus from *si non:—nisi* is ***exceptive*** or ***exclusive,*** and calls attention to the excepted case, as contrasted with every other; but *si non* simply states a negative condition with its consequence; thus, *nisi feceris, peribis,* you will perish, if you have not done it, [but if you *have,* you *will be safe*]; but *si non feceris, peribis,* you will perish, if you have not done it.

i. Hence it often matters not whether *nisi* or *si non* is used; as, *memoria minuitur, nisi eam exerceas,* Cic. Sen. 6. or *si non.*

ii. ***Si non*** must be used in abbreviated clauses with no verb; as, *si quid novisti rectius istis, candidus imperti; si non, his utere mecum,* Hor. E. i. 6. 68. or when in any other way opposites are directly contrasted.

6. The *Admissive* or *Concessive* conjunctions are *quamvis, quanquam, etsi, ut, licet,* &c. [§ 84. *b. iii.* 3.]

i. A concession may be *real* or *imaginary,* hence the Indic. or Subj. may be used: a distinction plainly seen in *quanquam* and *quamvis.*

ii. ***Quanquam*** or ***tametsi,*** [not *quamvis*], may be used in the sense of "and yet," the concession to which they refer being understood; as, *quanquam quid loquor!* Cic. Cat. i. 9. *tametsi minus id quidem laborandum est,* Cic. Ver. ii. 2. 31.

7. The *Comparative* conjunctions may be added here, *ut, sicut, velut, ceu, quam, tanquam, quasi,* with *ac, atque,* &c.

Obs. When these particles are simply ***comparative*** their clauses are co-ordinate, specially with *ut, sicut, quam:* but when a ***doubt*** or ***condition*** is involved, they are subordinate, and have the Subj.

N.B. The conjunctions, *autem, enim, quidem, quoque, vero,* must not be placed at the beginning of a sentence; but generally after the first word.

Digitized by Google

§ 91. Prepositions.

1. Prepositions govern an Accusative or Ablative.

Obs. The difference between prepositions and adverbs is not so clearly marked as in Greek; but usually in Latin those Particles are called Prepositions which govern an Acc. or Abl.; while particles of similar import, which govern no case, or which take a Gen. or Dat., are called Adverbs.

i. The following prepositions are sometimes used adverbially, *ante, adversum, citra, circa, circum, contra, coram, extra, infra, intra, juxta, pone, præter, subter, super, supra, ultra;* as, *quin tu ante perfunderis flumine*, Liv. i. 45. *quid ultra provehor*, Virg. *Æ.* iii. 480.

ii. The adverbs *clam, palam, procul, simul, usque*, are sometimes used, (mostly by poets or late writers), as prepositions;

Clam secretly—without the knowledge of; as, *clam uxore meâ*, Plaut. Merc. iii. 2. 2. Also in Comedy with a Gen., Dat., or Acc.

Palam openly—in the presence of; as, *palam populo*, Liv. vi. 14. the others become prepositions merely by omitting *ab, cum, ad;*

Procul afar,—with *ab* omitted, far from; as, *haud procul seditione res erat*, Liv. vi. 16.

Simul at the same time,—with *cum* omitted, together with; as, *simul his*, Hor. S. i. 10. 86.

Usque even or still,—with *ad* omitted, even to; as, *corpora usque pedes velant*, Curt. viii. 31.

iii. Neuter adjectives with a Prep. have often an *adverbial*, or otherwise *unusual* meaning; as, *in immensum* immensely, *in obliquum* across. So with nouns; as, *e vestigio* immediately.

2. Prepositions are usually placed immediately *before* the noun which they govern.

Obs. 1. Some words may be inserted between them.

i. An epithet Adj.; as, *in ingenti gloriâ esse*, Liv. ii. 22.

ii. A dependent noun in the Gen.; as, *in Termini fano*, Liv. i. 55.

iii. Any other words in immediate connexion with the case; as, *ad bene beateque vivendum*, Cic. Sen. 2.

iv. The personal Pronouns Nom. and Acc. may be put after *per*, in adjurations; as, *per ego te deos oro*, Ter. And. v. 1. 5.

Obs. 2. In some instances prepositions follow their case;

i. Tenus and *versus* always follow their cases.

ii. Of the rest, *ante, contra, inter, propter*, and some other dissyllables, are sometimes placed after relatives or other pronouns; as, *diem statuunt quam ante.* So sometimes the monosyllables, *ad, de, per, post.*——The same *ante, contra*, &c., with *cum, de, ex, in, ob, post*, are sometimes placed between an Adj. and Noun; as, *medios inter hostes, certis de causis.—Cum* is appended to the Abl. of personal pronouns, and often of *qui:* as, *mecum, tecum.* These forms occur in prose: Poets take greater liberties.

Digitized by Google

(*a*) *Prepositions governing an* Acc.

1. *Ad,* [motion to the exterior,] opposite of *ab.*

To,—of an object; as, *ad regiam venire,* Liv. i. 5 :—of time; as, *ad summam senectutem,* Cic. Sen. 7 :—of number; *exules ad quatuor millia,* Liv. iii. 15 :—of an addition, answer, comparison, reference, &c.; as, *ad id pastores quoque accesserant,* Liv. i. 6 : *ad hæc Tullus,* Liv. i. 22 : *nihil ad nostram hanc,* Ter. Eu. ii. 3. 69 : *ad muliebre ingenium efficaces,* Liv. i. 9.

Towards,—of an object; as, *ad regem impetum facit,* Liv. i. 5 : —of time; as, *ad lucem dormitare,* Cic. Divin. i. 28.

At,—of place, i. e. by *or* near; as, *rege ad Trojam amisso,* Liv. i. 1 :—of an event, i. e. upon *or* in consequence of; as, *ad hæc visa auditaque,* Liv. ii. 23 :—of time; as, *ad primam auroram,* Liv. i. 7.

For *or* to,—of a purpose *or* end referred to; as, *armatos ad custodiam corporis,* Liv. i. 15 : *evocasse ad colloquium,* Liv. i. 1.

Obs. Ad is very extensively used with almost every kind of *reference,* and may be rendered in English in various other ways to suit the context.——It occurs in many phrases; as, *ad amussim* exactly; *ad irritum cadere* to the ground; *ad lunam* by moonlight; *ad summum* at most; *ad ultimum* at last; *ad verbum* literally; *ad unguem* exquisitely, &c.

2. *Adversus* or *adversum,* [direction to an opposite].

Against,—of an object; as, *impetum adversus montem in cohortes faciunt,* Cæs. B. C. i. 46 :—of a hostile disposition; as, *adversus nobiles certavit,* Liv. ix. 46.

Towards,—of a friendly disposition; as, *pietas est justitia adversum deos,* Cic. N. D. i. 2.

3. *Ante,* [precedence,] opposite of *post, pone.*

Before,—of time; as, *ante mare et terras,* Ov. Met. i. 5 :—of place; as, *ante urbem in luco,* Virg. Æ. iii. 302 :—of rank *or* degree; as, *ante alios pulcherrimus,* Virg. Æ. iv. 141.

4. *Apud,* [nearness,—with], specially with *persons.*

Among *or* with; as, *nihil tutum nisi apud hostes,* Liv. i. 53.

With,—i. e. at the house of; as, *apud Vitellios,* Liv. ii. 4 :—in the mind of; as, *apud Tatium plus poterant,* Liv. i. 14.

Before,—i. e. in the presence of; as, *apud Penates deos,* Liv. i. 1.

In,—with persons, i. e. in the writings of; as, *apud quosdam veteres auctores,* Liv. ii. 8.

At,—with places; as, *apud forum audivi,* Ter. And. ii. 1. 2.

Phrases—*apud me, te, se, esse* to be in one's senses.

Digitized by Google

5. *Circa*, [about].

About,—of persons *or* places, i. e. around; as, *et circa regem*, Virg. G. iv. 75: *quicquid circa Collatiam*, Liv. i. 38:—of number; as, *oppida circa septuaginta*, Liv. xlv. 34:—of time; as, *circa eandem horam copias admovit*, Liv. xlii. 57:—of an object, i. e. concerning, in later writers; as, *circa bonas artes socordia*, Tac. Ann. xi. 2.

Obs. With places, *circa* often means *about*, in the sense of "anywhere in;" as, *circa vicinas gentes*, Liv. i. 9.

6. *Circiter*, [about,—said of *time* and *number*].

About; as, *octavam circiter horam*, Hor. E. i. 7. 47.

7. *Circum*, [around].

Around; as, *novas circum felix eat hostia fruges*, Virg. G. i. 345.

8. *Cis, citra*, [on this side], opposite of *trans, ultra*.

On this side; as, *cis Padum ultraque*, Liv. v. 35: *natus mare citra*, Hor. S. i. 10. 31.

Within,—of time, (not usual); as, *cis paucos dies*, Plaut. Truc. ii. 3. 27. Hence, *without*, i. e. short of, without reaching; as, *peccavi citra scelus*, Ov. Tr. v. 8. 23.

9. *Contra*, [coming together in opposition].

Opposite; as, *Carthago Italiam contra*, Virg. Æ. i. 13.

Against; as, *contra Palladis ægida ruentes*, Hor. O. iii. 4. 57.

10. *Erga*, [towards—said of the disposition].

Towards; as, *studio ac fide erga regem*, Liv. i. 2.

11. *Extra*, [without], opposite of *intra*.

Without,—of place; as, *extra mœnia ierat*, Liv. i. 11.

Beyond,—of a limit; as, *jacet extra sidera tellus*, Virg. Æ. vi. 795. Hence *without* or *clear of*; as, *extra culpam, extra periculum*.

12. *Infra*, [below], opposite of *supra*.

Below,—of place; as, *ad mare infra oppidum*, Cic. Ver. ii. 4. 23:—of rank *or* degree, [beneath]; as, *artes infra se positas*, Hor. E. ii. 1. 14:—of time, [later than]; as, *Homerus non infra Lycurgum fuit*, Cic. Bru. 10:—of measure *or* number, [less than]; as, *uri sunt paulo infra elephantos*, Cæs. B. G. vi. 27.

13. *Inter*, [extension within,—in the midst].

Between,—of place; as, *inter mare Alpesque*, Liv. i. 1.

Among *or* in the midst of; as, *inter pastores*, Liv. i. 4: *inter hunc tumultum*, Liv. i. 59.

Digitized by Google

During,—of time; as, *inter tot annos*, Liv. i. 10. So *inter agendum*, Virg. E. ix. 24, while driving.

14. *Intra*, [within], opposite of *extra*.

Within,—of place; as, *intra pomœrium*, Liv. i. 26:—of time; as, *intra paucos dies moritur*, Liv. ii. 8:—of a limit; as, *intra spem veniæ cautus*, Hor. A. P. 266.

15. *Juxta*, [joined to,—nearness].

Near,—of place; as, *oceani finem juxta*, Virg. Æ. iv. 480.

Next,—of order; as, *quem juxta sequitur jactantior Ancus*, Virg. Æ. vi. 815. Hence "akin to," "as much as."

16. *Ob*, [before,—in front of].

Before,—of place; as, *mors ob oculos versatur*, Cic. p. Sex. 21.

On account of,—i. e. "for" an end to be gained; as, *ob commoditatem itineris*, Liv. i. 33:—"owing to" a cause, or event which has happened; as, *ob seditiones profugus*, Liv. i. 34.

17. *Penes*, [in the power of,—resting with].

In the power of; as, *vis omnis penes primores esset*, Liv. i. 43.

18. *Per*, [through, passage from one end to another].

Through,—of place; as, *per totam Italiæ longitudinem*, Liv. i. 2: sometimes "over" or "across;" as, *per patris corpus carpentum egit*, Liv. i. 48:—of time, i. e. throughout *or* during; as, *per multas ætates*, Liv. i. 7:—of an agent *or* instrument, i. e. by means of; as, *per eum fortunas nostras defendere*, Cic. Div. 6: *per eas nuptias multos sibi conciliat*, Liv. i. 49:—of a motive *or* cause, i. e. from, owing to; as, *nihil per iram actum est*, Liv. i. 11: *nihil quod aut per naturam fas esset, aut per leges liceret*, Cic. p. Mil. 16.

By,—in adjurations; as, *per caput hoc juro*, Virg. Æ. ix. 300.

Phrases—*per se* of *or* by oneself; *per me licet* as far as I am concerned; *per te stetit quominus* it was owing to you that—not.

19. *Pone*, [behind,—only of places].

Behind; as, *pone castra pabulatum ibant*, Liv. xl. 30.

20. *Post*, [posteriority], opposite of *ante*.

After,—of time; as, *post Tatii mortem*, Liv. i. 17:—of rank *or* degree; as, *erat Lydia post Chloen*, Hor. O. iii. 9. 6.

Behind,—of place; as, *post fanum putre Vacunæ*, Hor. E. i. 10. 49.

21. *Præter*, [passing by,—extension in front].

By, along, *or* before; as, *præter castra copias transduxit*, Cæs.

Digitized by Google

B. G. i. 48 : *præter oram Etrusci maris*, Liv. xl. 41 : *præter oculos Lollii omnia ferebant*, Cic. Ver. ii. 3. 25.

Besides ; as, *nihil præter arma et naves*, Liv. i. 1.

Beyond,—of a limit ; as, *non præter solitum leves*, Hor. O. i. 6. 20.

Contrary to ; as, *præter ipsius voluntatem*, Cic. Cat. ii. 7.

22. *Prope*, [near], opposite of *procul*.

Near,—of place ; as, *prope flumen tenuere*, Liv. i. 27 :—of time ; as, *prope puberem ætatem*, Liv. i. 35.

23. *Propter*, [near,—extension near].

Near,—alongside of ; as, *propter aquæ rivum*, Virg. E. viii. 86.

On account of ; as, *propter aquam*, Hor. S. i. 5. 7.

24. *Secundum*, [following the course of].

Along ; as, *plena secundum flumina*, Virg. G. iii. 143.

After, next to,—of degree ; as, *secundum deorum opes*, Liv. i. 4 : —of time ; as, *secundum pœnam nocentium*, Liv. ii. 5 :—of position ; as, *vulnus in capite secundum aurem*, Cic. fam. iv. 12.

According to ; as, *secundum legem*, Liv. i. 26.

In favour of ; as, *secundum eum possessio datur*, Cic. Ver. ii. 1. 44.

25. *Supra*, [above], opposite of *infra*.

Above,—of place ; as, *supra me habitatis*, Liv. ii. 7 :—of rank *or* degree ; as, *supra hominis fortunam*, Cic. Leg. ii. 16 : so *supra modum*, *supra vires* :—of time, [older than] ; as, *supra hanc memoriam*, Cæs. B. G. vi. 18 :—of measure *or* number, [more than] ; as, *tres prohibet supra tangere*, Hor. O. iii. 19. 15 : so *supra belli Latini metum*, over and above, in addition to.

26. *Trans*, [across, to the other side], opp. *citra*.

Across,—with motion ; as, *trans mare currunt*, Hor. E. i. 11. 27.

On the other side ; *trans Tiberim longe cubat*, Hor. S. i. 9. 18.

Obs. Trans is used with rivers, hills, seas, &c., which must be *crossed*.

27. *Ultra*, [beyond, forth *or* further on], opp. *citra*.

Beyond,—of place ; as, *ultra terminum vagor*, Hor. O. i. 22. 10 : —of measure *or* degree ; as, *vires ultra sortemque senectæ*, Virg. Æ. vi. 714.

28. *Versus*, *versum*, [towards], after its case.

Towards ; as, *Romam versus*, Liv. i. 20.—It is used in the best writers with *ad* or *in*, except with the name of a Town.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) *Prepositions governing an* Abl.

1. *A, ab, abs,* [motion from the exterior], opp. *ad.*

From,—of motion; as, *ab Alpibus ad fretum,* Liv. i. 2:—of distance; as, *passus sexcentos a castris,* Cæs. B. G. i. 49:—of separation *or* removal; as, *sospes ab ignibus,* Hor. O. i. 37. 13:—of a source *or* cause; as, *natus ab Inacho,* Hor. O. ii. 3. 21: *ab simili clade profugus,* Liv. i. 1:—of time; as, *cujus a morte tertius est annus,* Cic. Sen. 6. so *ab initio, a puero,* &c.:—of a consequent number, [after]; as, *ab Romulo secundus,* Liv. i. 17.

By,—of an agent; as, *ab Evandro edocti,* Liv. i. 7.

On the side of,—from the idea of acting *from* a place; as, *ab Sabinis pugnabat,* Liv. i. 12. Hence *a fronte, a tergo,* &c.

In,—in point of, with regard to; as, *Antonius ab equitatu firmus est,* Cic. fam. x. 15.

Obs. Many phrases are used with *ab*: as, *ab aliquo facere* to make for one's side, *ab re esse* to be irrelevant, &c. Many names for the offices of servants or attendants; as, *servus ab epistolis* a letter-carrier,—*a bibliothecâ* a librarian,—*a pedibus* a footman, &c. *Regi a secretis consiliis esse* to be privy-counsellor to the king, &c.

2. *Absque,* [without,—in the absence of].

Without; as, *propositio absque approbatione,* Cic. Inv. i. 36.

Obs. Rarely used except in Comedy; and then often "but for," "if it were not for;" as, *absque eo esset,* Ter. Phor. i. 4. 11.

3. *Coram,* [in the presence of].

Before; as, *coram rege tacentes,* Hor. E. i. 17. 43.

4. *Cum,* [union *or* co-existence].

With,—i. e. together with, whether of friendly or unfriendly relations; as, *ipse cum legionibus sequebatur,* Liv. ii. 6: *cum rege ipso certasse,* Liv. i. 35:—of any accompanying circumstance; as, *multâ cum libertate notabant,* Hor. S. i. 4. 5; so *cum clamore,* &c.

5. *De,* [down from,—descent *or* origin].

From,—i. e. down from; as, *de templo descendit,* Liv. i. 18:—of a source *or* cause; as, *de pueris quærit,* Hor. S. ii. 8. 81: *surgunt de semine,* Virg. G. ii. 14:—of deprivation *or* removal; as, *singula de nobis anni prædantur,* Hor. E. ii. 2. 55.

From *or* out of; as, *imo tollere de gradu,* Hor. O. i. 35. 2: *de paterâ fundens,* Hor. O. i. 31. 2:—so with partitives; as, *spinis de millibus una,* Hor. E. ii. 2. 212.

Of *or* from,—of a material; as, *de marmore,* Virg. G. iii. 13.

At *or* by,—of time, i. e. before the time specified is over; as, *surgunt de nocte,* Hor. E. i. 3. 32. *de medio potare die,* Hor. S. ii. 8. 3.

About *or* of,—i. e. concerning; as, *decretum de tributis,* Cic. Ver. ii. 3. 42: *querentem puellis de popularibus,* Hor. O. ii. 13. 25.

Obs. Phrases,—*de industriâ* on purpose, *de improviso, de more.*

Digitized by Google

6. *E, ex,* [motion from the interior], opp. *in.*

Out of; as, *ex Paphlagoniâ pulsi,* Liv. i. 1 :—often "from," with a reference to "out of;" as, *dejicere e saxo,* Hor. S. i. 6. 39.

From,—of a source *or* origin; as, *ex infimo nasci,* Liv. i. 9 :—of a cause; as, *ex lictoribus consulem esse cognovit,* Liv. ii. 6 :—of a change *or* transition; as, *ex favore invidia,* Liv. ii. 7 :—of time; as, *ex Metello consule,* Hor. O. ii. 1. 1.

Out of *or* from; as, *ex humili attollit,* Juv. iii. 39. so with partitives; as, *uni ex Curiatiis,* Liv. i. 26.

Of *or* from,—of a material; as, *pugnam ex auro,* Virg. G. iii. 26.

According to; as, *ex consilio patrum legatos misit,* Liv. i. 9.

Obs. A great many phrases are formed with *ex;* as, *hæres ex asse* heir to the whole property; *ex equo pugnare* to fight on horseback; *ex pedibus laborare* to be diseased in the feet, &c. So *ex adverso, ex composito, ex industriâ, ex more, ex obliquo, ex ordine, e regione, ex se, ex sententiâ, e vestigio,* &c.

7. *Præ,* [before,—in front of].

Before,—of place, but usually with a personal pronoun; as, *præ se armentum agens,* Liv. i. 7. so metaphorically, *præ se ferre* to pretend to, or make a show of: and *præ manu* beforehand.

In comparison with; as, *parvam fore præ eâ urbe,* Liv. i. 6.

From *or* owing to,—of a hindrance; as, *nec loqui præ mœrore potuit,* Cic. p. Plan. 41. In the oldest writers "from" simply of a cause; as, *præ lætitiâ lacrimæ præsiliunt,* Plaut. Stic. iii. 2. 13.

8. *Pro,* [before,—in the place of].

Before,—of place; as, *pro antesignanis parmas objiciunt,* Liv. ii. 20. Hence "in," i. e. in front of; as, *pro rostris dicere.*

For,—of advantage, i. e. in behalf of; hence an opposite of *contra;* as, *pro republicâ dimicans,* Liv. ii. 7—of substitution, i. e. instead of; as, *scuta pro aureis donis,* Liv. i. 11—of retribution, i. e. in requital of; as, *at tibi pro scelere præmia reddant debita,* Virg. Æ. ii. 535.

As *or* for,—of equivalence; as, *abiere pro victis,* Liv. ii. 7.

According to *or* as befits; as, *pro domesticis copiis,* Liv. ii. 10.

Obs. Several phrases are formed with *pro;* as, *stare pro aliquo* to be on one's side; *pro eo* considering; *pro eo ac* just as; *pro imperio* authoritatively; *pro tempore* temporarily; *pro testimonio* in evidence; *pro virili parte* for one's own part.

9. *Sine,* [without,—deprivation].

Without; as, *vanam sine viribus iram esse,* Liv. i. 10.

10. *Tenus,* [as far as], follows its case.

As far as; as, *fœce tenus,* Hor. O. iii. 15. 16.

Tenus has a Genitive mostly in poets and in the Plural; as, *crurum tenus,* Virg. G. iii. 53. Yet Liv. xxvi. 24. has *Corcyræ tenus.*

Digitized by Google

(c) *Prepositions governing an* Acc. *or* Abl.

1. *In*, [inclusion], with motion *or* rest.

i. In, with Acc.—motion to the interior,—opp. *ex.*

Into,—of place; as, *in rivum mitti jubet*, Liv. i. 4 :—of change; as, *in pulverem vertit*, Hor. O. iii. 3. 20 :—of division; as, *Iliacum carmen deducis in actus*, Hor. A. P. 129.

After,—as if formed *into* the shape or manner of a model; as, *in regios mores se formarent*, Liv. i. 21: Hence *in modum*, *in morem*, *in vicem*, &c. where an Abl. might be expected.

To,—of actual motion; as, *in Siciliam delatus*, Liv. i. 1 :—of direction; as, *extructis in altum divitiis*, Hor. O. ii. 3. 19 :—of relation *or* disposition; as, *comis in uxorem*, Hor. E. ii. 2. 133.

Towards *or* over; as, *prospectu in urbem capto*, Liv. i. 18 : *regnum in aves vagas*, Hor. O. iv. 4. 2 :—of a feeling; as, *notus in fratres animi paterni*, Hor. O. ii. 2. 6.

Upon,—of place; as, *in quem egressi sunt locum*, Liv. i. 1 :—of an object; as, *in se sumptum facit*, Hor. S. i. 2. 18.

For,—of future time; as, *in centum annos*, Liv. i. 15 :—of an end *or* purpose; as, *in regnum quæritur hæres*, Virg. Æ. vii. 424.

Against,—of actual motion; as, *in Postumium equum admisit*, Liv. ii. 19 :—of direction; *in nosmet legem sancimus*, Hor. S. i. 3. 67.

Obs. 1. By an elliptical form of expression an Acc. follows *in* with a verb of rest; as, *in potestatem populi Romani esse*, Liv. ii. 14.

Obs. 2. Some phrases with *in*;—*in acta*,—*in verba*,—*jurare* to swear allegiance; *in adversum* uphill; *in dies*, *in horas* from day to day; *in numerum* rhythmically; *in perpetuum* for ever; *in tantum* so high; *in vicem* in turn, &c.

ii. In, with Abl.—rest within.

In,—actually contained in; as, *in iis locis*, Liv. i. 4: *quæ in legatione patravit*, Cic. Div. 12 :—within a given time; as, *in horâ sæpe ducentos dictabat versus*, Hor. S. i. 4. 9: So *in ore atque oculis*, Cic. Ver. ii. 2. 33, within *or* before the eyes:—of any circumstances, "amidst;" as, *in hac libidine hominum*, Cic. Div. iii.

On,—resting on; as, *stans pede in uno*, Hor. S. i. 4. 10 :—*ponte in Tiberi facto*, Liv. i. 33. "*on*," i. e. "over."

Among; as, *in magnis viris non est habendus*, Cic. Off. i. 19.

In the case of,—persons; as, *in ejusmodi reo*, Cic. Div. 12: so *in me*, *in te* :—of things; as, *in Termini fano*, Liv. i. 55.

Obs. Some phrases with *in*;—*in ære alieno*, *meo*, in debt, out of debt; *in eo est ut* on the point of; *in manibus*, at hand, extant; *in pretio* valued; *in promptu* at hand; *in sole* in the sun, &c.

Digitized by Google

2. *Sub*, [under].

i. Sub, with Acc.—motion implied.

Under,—of place; as, *sub jugum misit*, Liv. i. 26:—of subjection; as, *sub leges mitteret orbem*, Virg. Æ. iv. 231.

Up to,—from beneath; as, *sub auras erigit*, Virg. Æ. iii. 422.

About,—of time; as, *sub idem tempus*, Liv. i. 22:—Often "just before;" as, *sub noctem*, Virg. Æ. i. 662, at nightfall; more rarely "just after;" as, *sub recentem pacem*, Liv. xxi. 11.

ii. Sub, with Abl.—rest implied.

Under,—of place; as, *sub tegmine fagi*, Virg. E. i. 1:—of subjection; as, *rege sub Eurystheo*, Virg. Æ. viii. 292.

Close upon,—of place; as, *quo deinde sub ipso ecce volat*, Virg. Æ. v. 323:—of time; as, *sub hac victoriâ*, Liv. ii. 55.

At,—of time; as, *ne sub ipsâ profectione irrumperent*, Cæs. B. C. iii. 27:—of music; as, *sub cantu tibiæ*, Hor. O. iii. 7. 30.

The distinction of the Acc. and Abl. is not always observed.

3. *Subter*, [beneath,—extension under].

Subter has an Acc. and sometimes, in poets, an Abl.

Beneath; as, *occultas egisse vias subter mare*, Virg. Æ. iii. 695; —*subter densâ testudine*, Virg. Æ. ix. 514.

4. *Super*, [over *or* upon].

i. Super with Acc. signifies—

Over *or* above; as, *super carpentum volitans*, Liv. i. 34.

Upon; as, *super alius alium*, Liv. i. 25.

Beyond; as, *super Garamantas et Indos*, Virg. Æ. vi. 794.

Besides, over and above; as, *super omnia dona*, Virg. Æ. ix. 283.

ii. Super with Abl. signifies—

About,—of an object; as, *multa super Priamo*, Virg. Æ. i. 750.

Upon,—In poets; as, *super arbore sidunt*, Virg. Æ. vi. 203.

(*d*) *Prepositions understood.*

An Ablative is sometimes governed by a preposition understood; as,

habeo te loco parentis, i. e. *in loco.*
I have you in the place of a parent.

Obs. The prepositions most usually omitted are—
ab; as, *retortis littore Etrusco violenter undis*, Hor. O. i. 2. 13.
cum; as, *miles-ne Crassi conjuge barbarâ vixit*, Hor. O. iii. 5. 5.
de; as, *crebri cecidere cœlo lapides*, Liv. i. 31.
ex; as, *credo memoriâ intercidisse*, Liv. ii. 8.
in; as, *ut hostium loco essent*, Liv. ii. 4.

Digitized by Google

§ 92. Interjections.

Interjections have really no grammatical connexion with any words in a sentence; but the cases which follow them depend upon some other word, which is commonly omitted; thus,

1. The Nom. marks the *subject spoken of;* as,

O festus dies! i. e. *est* or *adest,*
O the joyful day!

Obs. A Gen. found with *O* and *heu,* in poets, is a Grecism; as, *O mihi nuntii beati!* Catul. x. 5.

2. The Dat. marks the *person to whom evil comes;* as,

væ misero mihi! i. e. *malum est,*
alas, wretched me!

Obs. This Dat. is mostly used with *hei* and *væ;* but it is found redundantly to give force to other interjections; as, *O mihi! ecce tibi!*

3. The Acc. marks the *object spoken of;* as,

heu, stirpem invisam! i. e. *dico,*
alas! the hated race.

Obs. The Acc. is thus used even without an interjection; as, *huncine hominem! hancine impudentiam!* Cic. Ver. ii. 5. 25.

4. The Voc. marks the *person spoken to;* as,

O formose puer!
O beautiful boy!

Obs. Some particular interjections may be noticed;

i. En and *ecce,* demonstrative interjections, are found with a Nom.; as, *en Priamus,* Virg. Æ. i. 461. Sometimes with an Acc.; as, *en quatuor aras!* Virg. E. v. 65. In the language of common life they combined with pronouns; as, *eccum* for *ecce eum, ellum* for *en illum,* in Comedy.

ii. Næ! assuredly, is joined only with pronouns; as, *næ! illi vehementer errant!* Cic. Cat. ii. 3.

iii. Some interjections are compounds with the names of gods; as, *mehercule! hercle!* &c. for *ita me juvet hercules.*

medius fidius! for *me juvet dius* [διὸς] *filius!* i. e. *hercules.*

edepol! pol! &c. for *ita me juvet deus pollux.*

Digitized by Google

PROSODY.

§ 93. Prosody teaches the laws and construction of Verse.

(a) *Construction of Latin Verse.*

1. The construction of Latin verse depends upon the *quantity* of syllables.

2. Quantity is either *long* or *short;* and
a long syllable is marked thus, [¯] ; as, *cōntrā.*
a short syllable ,, thus, [˘] ; as, *dŏmĭnŭs.*

3. A long syllable is considered equal in length of time or pronunciation to two short syllables.

4. Every verse may be divided into *feet.*

5. A foot is a union of two, three, or four syllables.

6. The most common feet are the following,

Spondee;	as, *vīrtūs.*	Anapæst;	as, *dŏmĭnō.*
Iambus;	,, *hŏnōs.*	Tribrach;	,, *rĕgĕrĕ.*
Trochee;	,, *tēndĕ.*	Choriambus;	,, *ōppŏsĭtīs.*
Dactyl;	,, *scrībĕrĕ.*	Ionic-a-minore;	,, *mūsĕrārūm.*

(b) *Scanning.*

1. Scanning a verse is dividing it into its feet; as,
ārmă vĭ|rūmquĕ că|nō Trō|jæ quī | prīmŭs ăb | ōris.

Obs. If a verse is complete with all its feet it is called *acatalectic:*—if a syllable is deficient, *catalectic:*—if two syllables are deficient, *brachycatalectic:*—if a syllable is redundant, *hypercatalectic.*

2. Every foot has an emphasis on one syllable; as,
árma virúmque canó, Trojæ qui prímus ab óris.

Obs. The emphasis or elevation of voice, with which one syllable at least, in every foot, is pronounced in scanning, is named the *Arsis;* also called the *Ictus* or metrical accent. The lowered tone, or want of emphasis, in the other syllables is named the *Thesis.*

Digitized by Google

3. In scanning the following Rules,—commonly called *Figures*,—must be observed.

i. Synalœpha.—A final vowel is cut off in scanning, before a vowel in the following word; as,

pĕrgĕ mŏ|d' ātq' hīnc | tē rē|gīn' ād | līmĭnă | pĕrfĕr.
for *modo, atque, reginæ.*

H is considered no letter in scanning;—and the interjections *ah, heu, O,* are never cut off.

Obs. 1. *Synalœpha* sometimes occurs at the end of a line; as,
jactemur, doceas; ignari hominūmquĕ lŏ|cōrūmq'ue erramus.——Virg. Æ. i. 336.

Obs. 2. A *hiatus*, or meeting of vowels, is sometimes allowed;
i. When there is a stop, or decided pause, in the sense; as,
et vera incessu patu|īt dĕă. | Ille ubi matrem, Virg. Æ. i. 409.
ii. When, in imitation of Greek verse, a long vowel, instead of being cut off, remains long or is made short, according as it has the *ictus* or not; as,
ter sunt cona|tī īm|ponere | Pēlĭŏ | Ossam, Virg. G. i. 281.

ii. Echthlipsis.—A final *m* and its vowel are cut off before a vowel in the following word; as,

mōnstr' hōr|rēnd' īn|fōrm' īn|gēns cuī | lūmĕn ă|dēmptum.
for *monstrum, horrendum, informe.*

Obs. 1. *Echthlipsis* sometimes occurs at the end of a line; as,
jamque iter emensi, turres ac tēctă Lă|tīnōr'um ardua cernebant.—Virg. Æ. vii. 160.

Obs. 2. A *hiatus* is very rarely found with *m*; as,
quam laudas plumâ coc|tō nŭm ăd|est honor idem, Hor. S. ii. 2. 28.

Obs. 3. In early Roman poetry, the final *s* of a short syllable was cut off before a consonant; as, *senio confĕctŭ' quĭ|escit*, Enn.

iii. Cæsura.—When a word ends in the middle of a foot, it makes a *cæsura;* the foot being cut in two; as,

ārmă vĭ|rūmquĕ că|nō Trō|jæ quī | prīmŭs ăb | ōrīs.
where the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, and 5th feet are divided.

Obs. 1. The Cæsura is of two kinds:—
i. The *strong* or *masculine Cæsura*—after a *long* syllable or *arsis;* as, in *ca|nō* and *Tro|jæ.*
ii. The *weak* or *feminine Cæsura*—after a *short* syllable or *thesis;* as, in *ārmă, vi|rūmquĕ,* and *prīmŭs.*

Obs. 2. Sometimes a *short* syllable is made long in the Cæsura, by the *ictus* falling on it; as,
pectori|bŭs ĭnhĭ|ans spirantia consulit exta, Virg. Æ. iv. 64.

Digitized by Google

More rarely when the syllable ends in a vowel; as,
limina|quĕ laū|rusque dei; totusque moveri, Virg. Æ. iii. 91.

N.B. Almost every kind of verse must have one or more Cæsuras in each line.

iv. Incision.—When a foot ends with a word, it is called an *incision;* as,
prīmă quŏd | ād Trō|jām prō | cārīs | gēssĕrăt | Argīs.
where the 1st, 3rd, 4th, and 5th feet end with words.

4. Some other Figures are sometimes used in scanning;

i. Synærĕsis—when two vowels are pronounced as one; as,
ālveārĭă for *ālvĕārĭă*. *aūrēis* for *aūrĕis*.

Obs. 1. In the usual *synæresis*, the former vowel is *e;* which was either absorbed in sound by the following vowel, or was thrust upon it with something of the consonant sound of *y*, like the *synizēsis* in Greek; thus, *alvāria* for *alvĕăria*, *auryis* for *aurĕis*.

The *i* in words like *ingenî* for *ingenii* is a real contraction, and written as one letter.

Obs. 2. Another sort of *synæresis* is when *i* and *u* take their consonant sound, thus throwing two syllables into one; as, *ārĭĕtĕ*, i. e. *āryĕtĕ*, for *ărĭĕtĕ; tēnuĭā*, i. e. *tēnwĭă*, for *tĕnŭĭă*.

Obs. 3. Two syllables of any kind may be run into one in the verse of Comedy, (or common life), by slurring over a short vowel in the middle of a word; as, *āb'rit* for *ăbĕrit*, *ān'mus* for *ănĭmus*.

ii. Diærĕsis—when one syllable is resolved into two; as,
Nāĭădes for *Naădes*. *sŭētus* for *suētus*.

Obs. The *diæresis* generally separates a diphthong into its component vowels; but another kind of *diæresis* is formed by giving to *v* its vowel sound; as, *ēvŏlŭisse* for *ēvōlvisse*, *sīlŭæ* for *sīlvæ*.

iii. Diastŏle——when a short vowel is lengthened; as, *Prĭămĭdes* for *Prĭămĭdes*.

iv. Systŏle——when a long vowel is shortened; as, *stetĕrunt* for *stetērunt*.

§ 94. METRES.

1. Metre, or measure, is the arrangement of a verse according to its respective feet.

2. The metre of any verse takes its name from the principal feet which it contains.

3. The principal metres used by Latin poets are the *Dactylic, Iambic, Trochaic, Choriambic, Ionic;* and the *mixed* metres used in Lyric poetry.

Obs. Other metres are sometimes used in Dramatic poetry.

Digitized by Google

4. Each pair of feet in Trochaic and Iambic lines, and each foot in other verses is called a *metre*.

Hence if a verse has one metre it is called a *monometer*.
if two metres, a *dimeter*. | if four metres, a *tetrameter*.
three ,, a *trimeter*. | five ,, a *pentameter*.
if six metres, an *Hexameter*, &c.

(*a*) *Dactylic Metre.*

1. The *Hexameter* contains six feet, of which the fifth is a dactyl, the sixth a spondee, and the others either dactyls or spondees indifferently; as,

ārmă vĭ|rūmquĕ că|nō Trō|jæ quī | prīmŭs ăb | ōrīs.

(*a*) Sometimes a spondee is in the fifth place; as,

cāră dĕ|ūm sŏbŏ|lēs māg|nūm Jŏvĭs | īncrē|mēntūm.

(*b*) When a poem consists of Dactylic Hexameters, it is called *Heroic Verse*.

Obs. Some Rules to be observed in writing Heroic verse.

i. Endings of lines.

1. A line should end with a word of two or of three syllables; as,

conderet urbem. *primus ab oris.* *unde Latinum.*

or two monosyllables, with a pause before, and no stop after them; as,

astrum quo segetes gauderent frugibus,—et quo
duceret, &c. Virg. E. ix. 48.

2. A quadrisyllabic ending is harsh:—therefore the long syllable of the 5th foot must not make a *Cæsura*, unless it is a monosyllable, with a pause before it, and no stop at the end; as,

parcite oves nimium procedere;—non bene ripæ
creditur, Virg. E. iii. 94.

3. If there is any stop at the end of a line, the last word must be an emphatic one, i. e. generally a Verb or Substantive. If there is no stop, the last word may be of any kind.

ii. Incisions and Cæsuras.

1. Neither the 2nd nor the 3rd foot must end with a word, unless the foot has been divided by a *Cæsura*; as,

in tenui labor, | at tenuis non gloria, si quem, Virg. G. iv. 6.
quos rami fructus, quos | ipsa volentia rura, Virg. G. ii. 500.

2. The 3rd foot must not be all included in a word, with no *Cæsura*.

iii. Rhythmical Structures.

1. It improves the versification, when Epithets are slightly separated from their Substantives; as,

vi superûm; sævæ memorem Junonis ob iram, Virg. Æ. i. 4.

Digitized by Google

specially when between the Adjective and Substantive is inserted an Apposition, an Ablative absolute, or other parenthesis; as,

tantum inter densas, umbrosa cacumina, fagos, Virg. E. ii. 3.
aut ibi flava seres, mutato sidere, farra, Virg. G. i. 73.

2. Hence Adjectives are drawn to the *beginning*, and their Substantives to the *end;* the perfection of which is *the Golden line;* as,

mollia luteolâ pingit vaccinia calthâ, Virg. E. ii. 50.

Verses at all like the Golden Line in structure have a good rhythm.

3. Lines are generally very smooth, when every word ending in a *consonant* is followed by one beginning with a *vowel*, and *vice versâ;* as,

non omnes arbusta juvant humilesque myricæ, Virg. E. iv. 2.

Though this cannot be always observed, yet harsh meetings of consonants, and harsh elisions of vowels, must be avoided.

4. The following structures also make good rhythms—

a line divided into three parts by a *Cæsura* in the 2nd and 4th; as,

sponte suâ—veterisque dei—se more tenentem, Virg. Æ. vii. 204.

The 4th foot ending in a word of two syllables, both short; as,

illicibus crebris, sacrâ nĕmŭs | accubet umbrâ, Virg. G. iii. 334.

The 4th foot a dactyl all in one word, a monosyllable preceding; as,

frondibus hirsutis et | cărĭcæ | pastus acutâ, Virg. G. iii. 231.

iv. Various Pauses.

The sense must not end with the verse in several lines successively; but must often be carried on into the next line, making various Pauses, which add greatly to the strength and beauty of the versification; as,

ipse pater, mediâ nimborum in nocte, coruscâ
fulmina molitur dextrâ,—quo maxima motu
terra tremit,—fugêre ferœ,—et mortalia corda
per gentes humilis stravit pavor;—ille flagranti
aut Atho, aut Rhodopen, aut alta Ceraunia, telo
dejicit;—ingeminant austri et densissimus imber,
nunc nemora ingenti vento, nunc littora, plangunt. Virg. G. i. 334.

Above all Virgil [with Claudian] must be carefully studied.

2. The *Pentameter* contains five feet, and is divided into two halves called *penthemimers.*

(*a*) The first *penthemimer* has two feet, (dactyls, spondees, or one of each), with a long syllable; the second has two feet, (always dactyls), with a long syllable; as,

sīc nūl|lūm vō|bīs || tēmpŭs ăb|ībĭt ĭn|ērs.

(*b*) The Hexameter and Pentameter, placed alternately in pairs, make the *Elegiac Verse;* as,

venturæ memores jam nunc estote senectæ,
sic nullum vobis tempus abibit iners.

Digitized by Google

Obs. Some Rules to be observed in writing Elegiac verse.

i. The Pentameter.

1. The first penthemimer must end with a word without elision.

2. The second foot must not end with a word, unless the foot has been divided by a *Cæsura*; as,

a pecoris lux | est || ista notata metu, Ov. Fast. i. 328.

3. The pentameter should rarely begin with a spondaic word, and rarely have two spondees in it.

4. The pentameter should end with a Dissyllable.

No final monosyllable is allowed, but *est* with an elision; as,

et populus festo concolor ipse suo est, Ov. Fast. i. 80.

a final trisyllabic word is especially to be avoided; as also a monosyllable before a final dissyllable, which makes the same rhythm.

A word of four or five syllables may very rarely be used; as,

summaque dispersi per juga Pannonii, Ov. a. Liv. 390.

5. The word which ends a pentameter should be one of some importance, i. e. a verb, a substantive, a personal or possessive pronoun, a predicate adjective,—or any word which has a special emphasis upon it.

6. The pentameter should very rarely end with a short vowel; as,

imponit libum mixtaque farra salĕ, Ov. Fast. i. 128.

ii. In the Elegiac Distich remember——

1. The Hexameter is restricted to its best rhythms: avoid *spondees* in the 5th place, and endings of more than three syllables.

2. Elisions are to be sparingly and never harshly used, and must especially be avoided in the last part of the pentameter.

3. The Hexameter commonly has a comma or other stop at the end; but if the sense is carried on to the first word of the pentameter, that word is usually a dactyl or trochee.

4. Each pair must be complete in itself, containing a distinct sentence; so that the pentameter may end with a stop. If ever the sense is carried beyond one pair, it must be extended to the end of the next, and there must be still some kind of pause in the sense at the end of the first pentameter.

5. The Pentameter, in its perfection, may be regarded as a *reply* or *echo* to the Hexameter, as is well expressed in these lines,

In the Hexameter rises the fountain's silvery column,
In the Pentameter aye falling in melody back.

hence in the pentameter is often a *Contrast* to the former line; as,

gratulor Œchaliam titulis accedere vestris,
victorem victæ succubuisse queror, Ov. Ep. ix. 1.

often a *Repetition* of its words or thoughts; as,

Demophoon, ventis et verba et vela dedisti,
vela queror reditu verba carere fide, Ov. Ep. ii. 25.

very often an *Addition* of circumstances to the former; as,

tempora cum causis Latium digesta per annum,
lapsaque sub terras, ortaque signa, canam, Ov. Fast. i. 1.

Above all Ovid must be carefully studied.

Digitized by Google

3. Other *dactylic* lines, used by lyric poets, are,

(*a*) The *Tetrameter* with four feet; as,

aūt Ephĕ|sūm bĭmă|rīsvĕ Cŏ|rīnthī.

called the *Alcmanius*: the 3rd foot is a dactyl, the 4th a spondee.

Obs. Horace has a spondee in the 3rd with a proper name; as, *mēnsō|rēm cŏhĭ|bēnt Ar|chȳtā*, Hor. O. i. 28. 1.

(*b*) The *Dimeter* with a dactyl and spondee; as,

tērrŭĭt | ūrbēm.

Obs. The dimeter is used only in the Sapphic stanza.

(*c*) The *Dimeter hypercatalectic*, one penthemimer; as, *ārbŏrĭ|būsquĕ cŏ|mæ*,

called the *Archilochius minor*: it has two dactyls and a syllable.

(*b*) *Iambic Metre.*

1. The *Iambic Tetrameter* contains eight feet; as,

dēprēn|să nā|vĭs īn | mărī || vēsā|nĭēn|tĕ vēn|tō.

the line is *catalectic*, and the fourth foot ends with a word.

Obs. An *acatalectic* variety is also used in Comedy; as, *īnfēn|sūs sĕr|vāt nĕ|quām fŭcĭ|ām nūp|tĭīs | fāllā|cĭām*, And. i. 3. 7. which may be scanned as a trochaïc line with an *anacrusis*.

2. The *Iambic Trimeter* contains six feet; as,

sŭīs | ĕt īp|să Rō|mă vī|rĭbūs | rŭīt.

Obs. 1. The Iambic trimeter as used in Horace, admits a tribrach in every place but the last;—a spondee in the 1st, 3rd, and 5th; a dactyl in the 1st and 3rd;—an anapæst in the 1st, (rarely the 5th). It has the strong Cæsura in the 3rd, or 4th foot.

Obs. 2. Comic poets, in the Tetrameter and Trimeter, allow a tribrach, spondee, dactyl, or anapæst, in every place but the last.

Obs. 3. Other varieties of the Iambic trimeter are found;

i. A trimeter catalectic, with penthemimeral cæsura; as,

trăhūnt|quĕ sīc|cās || mā|chĭnæ | cărī|nās, Hor. O. i. 4. 2.

which may be scanned as iambic and trochaïc metre united,

trăhūnt|quĕ sīc|cās || māchĭ|næ că|rīnās.

ii. The Choliambus or Scazon; iambus in the 5th, spondee in the 6th; as, *īdēm|quĕ lōn|gē plū|rĭmōs | făcīt | vērsūs*, Cat. xxii.

3. The *Iambic Dimeter* contains four feet; as,

ĭnār|sĭt æs|tŭō|sĭūs.

It follows the forms of the *Trimeter* as far as it can.

Obs. An *Iambic dimeter hypercatalectic*, the *Alcaicus enneasyllabus*, is used in the Alcaïc stanza; see below, *g.* 2. *c.* *ii.*; as,

sȳlvæ | lăbō|rāntēs | gĕlū|que, Hor. O. i. 9.

Digitized by Google

(*c*) *Trochaïc Metre.*

1. The *Trochaïc Tetrameter* contains eight feet; as,

vēr nŏ|vūm vēr | jām că|nōrūm || vērĕ | nātŭs | ōrbĭs | ēst.

the line is *catalectic*, and the fourth foot ends with a word.

Obs. 1. The best trochaïc tetrameter admits a tribrach in every place but the 7th;—a spondee in the 2nd, 4th, and 6th;—an anapæst in the 2nd and 4th;—a dactyl in the 2nd.

Obs. 2. Comic poets allow a tribrach, spondee, anapæst, or dactyl in every place but the 7th; as,

quāndo hīnc | ăbĕrĭt | ŏdĭō|sa ēst hæc|ætās | ădvĕs|cēntŭ|lus.

They also neglect the division of the line at the 4th foot.

2. The *Trochaïc Dimeter* contains four feet; as,

nōn ĕ|bŭr nĕ|que aūrĕ|ūm.

the line is *catalectic:* it is used in lyric metres.

Obs. Other varieties of trochaïc lines are used by lyric poets.

(*d*) *Choriambic Metre.*

The *Choriambic Tetrameter* contains four feet; as,

ōbstŭpŭit | pēctŏrĕ cōn|sīstĕrĕ nīl | cōnsĭlī quīt.

Obs. Choriambic lines are very seldom *pure;* but a great many *mixed* varieties are used in lyric poetry, and are called by different names.

i. A *Tetrameter*, with three choriambi, preceded by a spondee and followed by an iambus;—the *Asclepiadeus major;* as,

tū nē | quæsĭĕrīs | scīrĕ nĕfās | quēm mĭhĭ quēm | tĭbī, Hor. O. i. 11.

ii. A *Tetrameter catalectic*, with two choriambi, preceded by a second epitrite and followed by an iambic dipodia catalectic,—the *Sapphicus major;* as,

tē dĕōs ō|rō Sўbărīn | cūr prŏpĕrās | ămāndo, Hor. O. i. 8.

iii. A *Trimeter*, with two choriambi, preceded by a spondee and followed by an iambus,—the *Asclepiadeus minor;* as,

Mæcē|nās ătăvīs | ēdĭtĕ rē|gĭbūs, Hor. O. i. 1.

iv. A *Trimeter catalectic*, with one choriambus, preceded by a second epitrite and followed by an iambic dipodia catalectic,—the *Sapphicus minor;* as,

jām sătīs tĕr|rīs nĭvĭs āl|quĕ dīræ, Hor. O. i. 2.

Or the line may be scanned as an irregular trochaïc; thus,

jām să|tīs tĕr|rīs nĭvĭs | ātquĕ | dīræ.

This is the common Sapphic line; see below, the *Lyric Metres.*

v. An irregular *Trimeter*, with one choriambus, preceded by an iambic dipodia and a long syllable, and followed by an iambus,—the *Alcaicus hendecasyllabus;* as,

vĭdēs ŭt āl|tā || stĕt nĭvĕ cān|dĭdŭm, Hor. O. i. 9.

Digitized by Google

Or the line may be scanned as an iambic dipodia and a long syllable, followed by two dactyls; as,

vīdēs | ŭt āl|tā || stĕt nīvĕ | cāndĭdŭm.

This is the common Alcaic line: see below, the *Lyric Metres*.

vi. A *Dimeter*, with one choriambus, preceded by a spondee, [or trochee], and followed by an iambus,—the *Glyconeus*; as,

mīlēs | tē dŭcĕ gēs|sĕrīt, Hor. O. i. 6.

vii. A *Dimeter catalectic*, with one choriambus, preceded by a spondee, [or trochee], and followed by a syllable—the *Pherecrateus*; as, *grātō | Pȳrrhă sŭb ān|trо*, Hor. O. i. 5.

viii. A *Dimeter*, with an iambic dipodia catalectic at the end; as,

Lȳdĭă dīc | pĕr ōmnes, Hor. O. i. 8.

ix. The *Glyconeus* and *Pherécrateus* united make the *Priapeus* of Catullus; as,

ō Cŏ|lōnĭă quæ | cŭpīs || pōntĕ | lūdĕrĕ lōn|gō, Cat. xvii.

(*e*) *Ionic Metre.*

The *Ionic Tetrameter* contains four feet; as,

mĭsĕrārum ēst | nĕque ămōrī | dărĕ lūdūm | nĕquĕ dūlcī.

Obs. The *Galliambicus* used by Catullus appears to be a variety of the Ionic metre; as,

sŭpĕr ăltă | vēctŭs Attīs | cĕlĕrī ră|tĕ mărĭă, Cat. lxiii.

(*f*) *Compound Metres.*

Compound Metres combine two different metres in one line, without mixing them together.

Obs. 1. If there is an Incision between the two metres, the verse is called *asynartetus*, i. e. unconnected.

Obs. 2. The most usual compound metres are the following:

i. Logoœdics—*dactylic* followed by *trochaic* metre;

(*a*) *Archilochius major*—four dactyls with three trochees; as,

sōlvĭtŭr | ācrĭs hȳ|ēms grā|tā vĭcĕ || vĕrĭs | ĕt Fă|vōnī, Hor. O. i. 4.

(*b*) *Phalæcius hendecasyllabus*—two dactyls with three trochees;

sōlēs | ŏccĭdĕ|re ĕt rĕ|dīrĕ | pōssūnt, Cat. v.

or with an iambus to begin; as, *mīnĭs|tĕr vĕtŭ|lī pŭ|ĕr Fă|lĕrnī.*

(*c*) *Alcaicus decasyllabus* – two dactyls with two trochees; as,

flūmĭnă | cōnstĭtĕ|rīnt ă|cūtŏ, Hor. O. i. 9.

ii. The *Iambelegus Archilochius*,—an iambic dimeter with a dactylic penthemimer; as,

tū vī|nă Tōr|quātō | mŏvē || cōnsŭlĕ | prēssă mĕ|ō, Hor. Ep. 13.

iii. Elegiambus Archilochius—a dactylic penthemimer with an iambic dimeter; as,

jŭssŭs ăb|īrĕ dŏ|mūm||fĕrē|băr īn|cērtō | pĕdē, Hor. Ep. 16.

Digitized by Google

(*g*) *Lyric Metres.*

1. Lyric poets use almost any of the verses already described, either singly in successive lines;—or alternately in pairs;—or in Stanzas, mostly of four lines.

Obs. A metre consisting of one sort of verse is called *monocōlon;*—if two sorts are combined, it is called *dicolon;*—if three sorts, *tricolon.* When lines are arranged in pairs, the metre is called *distĭchon;*—when in stanzas of four lines, *tetrastichon.*

2. The Odes in Horace contain the following:—

(*a*) Single lines successively—*metra monocola.*

1. Asclepiadeus minor—*Mæcenas atavis,* &c. O. i. 1 : iii. 30 : iv. 8.
2. Asclepiadeus major—*Tu ne quæsieris,* &c. O. i. 11 : 18 : iv. 10.
3. Ionic-a-minore—*Miserarum est neque amori,* &c. O. iii. 12.
4. Iambic trimeter—*Jam jam efficaci,* &c. Ep. 7.

(*b*) Lines in pairs—*metra dicola disticha.*

1. Asclepiadeum secundum—*Sic te diva potens,* &c. O. i. 3. [12 odes].
2. Sapphicum majus—*Lydia dic per omnes,* O. i. 8.
3. Alcmanium—*Laudabunt alii claram Rhodon,* &c. O. i. 7 : 28 : Ep. 12.
4. Archilochium primum—*Diffugĕre nives,* &c. O. iv. 7.
5. ,, secundum—*Horrida tempestas,* &c. Ep. 13.
6. ,, tertium—*Petti nihil me,* &c. Ep. 11.
7. ,, quartum—*Solvitur acris hyems,* &c. O. i. 4.
8. Hipponacteum—*Non ebur neque aureum,* O. ii. 18.
9. Iambic trim. dim.—*Ibis Liburnis inter alta,* &c. Ep. 1—10.
10. Pythiambicum primum—*Mollis inertia,* &c. Ep. 14, 15.
11. ,, secundum—*Altera jam teritur,* &c. Ep. 16.

(*c*) Lines in stanzas—*metra tetrasticha.*

Horace uses four stanzas, of which two are *dicola,* two *tricola.*

i. Tetrasticha dicola—three lines alike, the 4th different.

1. The Sapphic Stanza—*strophe Sapphica minor:* three lines the lesser Sapphic [*d. Obs.* iv.];—the 4th a dactyl and spondee, or *Adonius;* thus,

jām sătīs tēr|rīs||nĭvīs ātque dīræ
grāndĭnīs mī|sīt||patĕr ēt | rŭbēnte
dēxtĕrā sā|crās||jăcŭlā|tŭs ārces
tērrŭĭt ūrbēm. O. i. 2.

Horace has 26 Sapphic Odes.

Obs. The Sapphic line should have the strong Cæsura after the 5th syllable. Horace seldom uses the weak Cæsura; as,
Mercuri facūndĕ | nĕpos Atlantis, O. i. 10. 1.

Digitized by Google

The first half of the line must have the 2nd or 3rd syllable end with a word; as, *omne* | *cum Proteus.* *jam satis* | *terris.*

2. The first Asclepiad Stanza—*Asclepiadeum tertium:* three lines the lesser *Asclepiad,* [*d. Obs.* iii.]; the 4th a Glycon, [*d. Obs.* vi.]: thus,

scrībē|rīs Vărĭō |fōrtĭs ĕt hōs|tĭūm
vīctōr | Mæŏnĭī | cārmĭnĭs ā|lĭtī
quām rēm | cūnquĕ fĕrōx | nāvĭbŭs aūt | ĕquīs
mīlēs | tē dŭcĕ gēs|sĕrīt. O. i. 6.

Horace has 9 Odes in this measure.

ii. Tetrasticha tricola: two lines alike, the others different.

1. The Alcaïc Stanza,—*strophe Alcaïca;* thus,

vĭdēs ŭt āl|tā || stēt nĭvĕ cān|dĭdūm
Sōrāctĕ nēc|jām || sūstĭnĕānt | ŏnūs
sīlvæ | lăbō|rāntēs | gĕlū|quĕ
flūmĭnă | cōnstĭtĕ|rīnt ă|cūtŏ. O. i. 9.

Horace has 37 Odes in this measure.

Obs. In the Alcaïc stanza attend to the following points.

i. The two first lines, *Alcaïcus hendecasyllabus,* [*d. obs. v.*].

The first foot may have a spondee or iambus; but the latter is used sparingly.

The Incision after the 5th syllable must be preserved.

It is best to divide the first half of the line after the 2nd or 3rd syllable; as, *large* | *reponens.* *dissolve* | *frigus.*

but these are also allowed, *desiderantem,* or *non* | *verberatæ.*

A monosyllable must not end a line, except *et* with an elision.

ii. The third line, *Alcaïcus enneasyllabus,* [*b.* 3. *obs.*].

The first foot may be a spondee or iambus; but the latter is used very sparingly.

The line must not end with a word of four syllables; nor begin with one, unless with an elision; as, *funalia et vectes et arcus,* O. iii. 26. 7.

A monosyllable must not end a line, except rarely *et* or *in* with an elision.

The best rhythm divides the line into three equal parts; as,

deprome | *quadrimum* | *Sabina.*

the following also may be used; specially the first two,

dumeta | *natalemque* | *silvam.* *silvæ* | *laborantes* | *geluque.*
portus | *Alexandria* | *supplex.* *non* | *erubescendis* | *adurit.*

iii. The fourth line, *Alcaïcus decasyllabus,* [*f. obs.* 2. *ii. c.*].

Both dactyls must not end with a word.

The weak Cæsura in the second dactyl is to be avoided. Horace has not many such lines as, *O Thaliarche* | *merum diota,* O. i. 9. 8.

The best rhythms have a Cæsura after the 4th syllable; as,

compositâ | *repetantur horâ.* *nec veteres* | *agitantur orni.*
sperne puer | *neque tu choreas.* *nec virides* | *metuunt colubras.*

such as the following may also be used; *flumina constiterint acuto.*

mitte supervacuos honores. *funditus imprimeretque muris.*

Horace's Odes must be studied; specially in the 3rd and 4th Book.

Digitized by Google

2. The second Asclepiad Stanza—*Asclepiadeum quartum:* the first two lines the lesser Asclepiad [*d. Obs.* iii.];—the 3rd a Pherecrateus, [*d. Obs.* vii.];—the 4th a Glycon, [*d. Obs.* vi.]; as,

quīs mūl|tā grăcĭlīs | tē pŭĕr ĭn | rŏsā
pērfŭ|sūs lĭquĭdīs | ūrgĕt ŏdō|rĭbŭs
grātō | Pyrrhă sŭb ān|trō
cuī flā|vām rĕlĭgās | cŏmām. O. i. 5.

Horace has 7 Odes in this measure.

§ 95. QUANTITY.

1. Every syllable in pronunciation is either long or short.

2. Syllables which are sometimes pronounced long, and sometimes short, are called *common*.

3. The Rules for the quantity of syllables may be arranged under five heads;—*Nature, Position, Termination, Derivation, Authority.*

(*a*) *Nature.*

1. Diphthongs and contracted syllables are long; as, *aūrum, neūter, mensē; gradūs* for *graduŭs, nīl* for *nihĭl.*

Obs. 1. *Præ* is short before a vowel; as, *prăacutus, prăeo, prăustus.*

Obs. 2. Contracted vowels, followed by a final *t*, are short, except in the earliest poets; as, *ama-it*, [*amāt*], *amăt.*

2. In the formation of verbs some quantities are generally observed.

i. A final vowel of the root, *a, e, i, o, u,* is long before a consonant; as, *amābam, amāvi, amābo, amātum.*

Obs. 1. The verb *do* has *ă* short throughout; as, *dăbam, dăbo, dătum.* And the vowel is short in the six supines, *ĭtum, lĭtum, rătum, rŭtum, sătum, sĭtum.* The Supine *cĭtum* is from *cieo, cītum* from *cio.*

Obs. 2. The connecting vowel *i*, in the Supine of Conj. 2. and others, is short; as, *monĭtum, alĭtum.*

ii. In reduplicated Perfects the first syllable is short; as, *cĕcini, cŭcurri, dĕdi.*

Digitized by Google

iii. Dissyllabic Perfects and Supines have the first syllable long; as, *vĭdeo, vīdi, vīsum.*

Obs. Except the Perfects *bĭbi, fĭdi, scĭdi, tŭli,*—but *dĕdi, stĕti, fŭi,* do not belong to this Rule.

The short Supines *dătum,* &c. belong to Rule i. *Obs.*

(*b*) *Position.*

1. *Long by position.*—A short vowel before two consonants, or a double one in the same word, is *long* by position; as, *vĕnio, vēntum; nĕx, nĕcis.*

majōr sūm quām cui pōssīt fōrtuna nocere.

Obs. A short vowel makes a syllable long before *two consonants,* whether they are both in the same word with it, or in different words; as, *vēntum, majōr sum.*

i. A *double* consonant, *x, z,* makes a syllable long, only when it is in the same word; as, *nēx, Lāzarus;* but *tumidum super ēquŏră | Xerxem,* Luc. ii. 672, and *nemorōsă Zā|cynthos,* Virg. Æ. iii. 270.

ii. A short final vowel before a word beginning with *two* consonants, *sc, sp, sq, st,* remains *short* in familiar verse; as, *sæpĕ stīlum vertas,* Hor. S. i. 10. 72. and even with *three* consonants; as, *prædămă | scribæ,* Hor. S. i. 5. 35. But in heroic poetry such combinations must be avoided. When Virgil uses them, (very rarely), he makes the vowel long; as, *ferte citi flammas date | tēlă, scandite muros.*

2. *Common by position.*—A short vowel before a mute and liquid is *common* by position; as, *păter, pătris* or *pātris: volŭcer, volŭcris* or *volūcris.*

Obs. 1. A *mute and liquid* make a short vowel common, only when they belong to one syllable, and are in the same word as the vowel; as, *patris, volucris.*

i. If the mute and liquid are divided between two syllables they make a *long* position; as, *āb-luo, ōb-ruo.*

ii. If the mute and liquid are both in another word, the preceding short vowel can never become long except by the *ictus.* § 93. *b.* 3. iii.

Obs. 2. A vowel never remains short before *b, g, d,* followed by *l, m, n;* as, *pūblicus, īgnarus,* &c.

3. *Short by position.*—A vowel before another in the same word is *short* by position; as, *mĕus, tŭus.*

Obs. Many Exceptions to this Rule must be noticed:—

i. Genitives in *ius* have the *i* common; as, *unīus* or *unĭus.* But it is always short in *alterĭus,* and long in *alīus.*

ii. Vocatives of nouns in *aius* and *eius* have *a* and *e* long before *i;* as, *Caius Cāi, Pompeius Pompēi.*

Digitized by Google

iii. The Gen. and Dat. of the 5th Dec. have *e* long between two *i*'s; as, *diēi*: otherwise it is short; as, *rĕi*, *fidĕi*.

The Old Poets made *e* long in all such words; as, *rēi*, *fidēi*.

iv. The *i* is long in *fio*, except when *r* follows; as,

omnia jam fīent. fĭeri quæ posse negabam, Ov. Tr. i. 8. 7.

v. The first syllable in *dius* and *ĕheu* is long;—in *ohe* and *Diana* common.

vi. The *a* is long in the uncontracted form of the Gen. and Dat. of the 1st Dec.; as, *mensāi*, *pictāi*.

vii. Greek words generally retain the Greek quantity;

Hence a vowel is often long before another; as, *Ænēas* from *Αἰνείας*, *elegīa* from *ἐλεγεία*.

Some vary their quantity from two Greek forms; as, *ĕous* or *ēous* from *ἠῷος* or *ἠῶος*, *Malĕa* or *Malēa* from *Μαλέα* or *Μαλεία*.

A few exceptions occur; as, *platĕa* street, from *πλατεῖα*; *chorĕa* and *chorēa* dance, from *χορεία*; in late poets *academĭa* for *academīa*.

(*c*) *Termination.*

1. All monosyllables ending in a vowel are long; except the enclitics, *quĕ*, *nĕ*, *vĕ*, *cĕ*, *tĕ*, which are short.

2. Monosyllable *nouns* are long; except *cŏr*, *fĕl*, *mĕl*, *vĭr*, *ŏs*, (*ossis*), and probably *vas* (*vădis*) and *mas*.

i. Vowel Terminations.

1. All cases of nouns in *a*, except the Abl., are short; as, *mensă*, *carmină*, Abl. *mensā*.

Other words in *a* are long; as, *amā*, *contrā*, *ergā*.

(*a*) The Voc. of Greek nouns in *as* is long; as, *Æneā*: and numerals in *ginta* are generally long; as, *trigintā*.

(*b*) The particles *pută*, *ităquiă*, *ejă*, are short.

2. Words in *e* are short; as, *marĕ*, *nubĕ*, *regĕ*.

(*a*) The Abl. of Dec. 5. has the *e* long; as, *dies*, *diē*.

Obs. The *e* is also long in the contracted Gen. and Dat.; as, *diē* for *diei*, *fidē* for *fidei*:—in *famē* the Abl. of *fames*:—and in words formed from the Abl. of Dec. 5; as, *quarē*, *hodiē*.

(*b*) The Imperative of Conj. 2. has the *e* long; as, *docē*, *monē*.

(*c*) Adverbs in *e*, from feminine adjectives in *a*, are long; as, *doctē*, *rectē*: so *fermē*, *ferē*, *ohē!* but *benĕ*, *malĕ*, *infernĕ*, *supernĕ*, are short.

(*d*) Greek words in *e* are long; as, *Anchisē*, *Lethē*, *Tempē*.

3. Words in *i* are long; as, *dominī*, *amarī*.

(*a*) The final *i* is common in *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *ubi*, *ibi*.

Obs. Compounds have the *i* short, in *necubĭ*, *sicubĭ*, *ubĭnam*, *ubĭvis*;—long in *alibī*, *ibīdem*, *ubīque*.

Digitized by Google

(*b*) The particles *nisĭ* and *quasĭ* have the *i* short.

Obs. Uti has the *i* long: but it is short in the compounds *sicutĭ*, *utĭnam*, *utĭque*: so *si* in *sĭquidem*: the *i* also in *herĭ*, yesterday, is short.

(*c*) The Greek Dat. and Voc. in *i* are short; as, *Palladĭ*, *Alexĭ*.

4. Words in *o* are common, but generally long; as, *dico*, *sermo*.

Oblique cases in *o* are always long; as, *dominō*.

(*a*) Adverbs, formed from ablatives, are long; as, *falsō*, *vulgō*: but some of these are occasionally found short; as, *crebro*, *ergo*, *quando*, *sero*, &c.

(*b*) The *o* is short,—in *putŏ*, *sciŏ*, *nesciŏ*, usually,—in *duŏ*, *egŏ*, *homŏ*, *octŏ* almost always, [*ambo* is usually long],—in *citŏ*, *illicŏ*, *immŏ*, *modŏ* and its compounds, always.

Obs. The *o* in verbs and Nom. cases is naturally long, and is so used by the best poets of the best age. The practice of shortening the *o* increased in time. Horace has a few instances,—Ovid more,—Juvenal many. The later poets freely shortened *o*; and even Gerunds in *o* became short.

5. Words in *u* are all long; as *manū*, *genū*, *diū*.

Obs. Lucretius has *indŭ* for *in*, *nenŭ* for *non*, with *u* short.

6. Greek vocatives in *y* are short; as, *chelў*, *Tiphў*.

ii. Consonant Terminations.

1. Words in *b*, *d*, *t*, are short; as, *ăb*, *ăd*, *capŭt*.

Obs. The *ît* contracted from *iit*, in compounds of *eo*, is often long.

2. Words in *c* are long; as, *āc*, *sīc*, *illīc*, *dīc*.

(*a*) The pronoun *hic*, with its neut. Nom. *hoc*, is common.

(*b*) The Imperative *făc* from *făcio*, *nĕc* and *donĕc*, are short.

3. Words in *l*, *n*, *r*, are short; as, *animăl*, *ăn*, *Cæsăr*.

(*a*) The *l* is long in Hebrew words; as, *Michaēl*, *Gabriēl*.

(*b*) The *n* is long,—in monosyllables, *non*, *quin*, *sin*;—in Greek accusatives from nouns in *as*, *es*, *ē*; as, *Æneān*, *Anchisēn*, *Hermionēn*.

(*c*) Greek nouns in *n* and *er* are long; as, *Pæān*, *Hymēn*, *aēr*, *æthēr*, *cratēr*:—but *patĕr*, *matĕr* are short.

4. Words ending in *s*, making *as*, *es*, *is*, *os*, *us*, *ys*.

Nouns in *s* of Dec. 3. are short, if they increase

Digitized by Google

short,—and long, if they increase long,—in declining; as,

pietās,-ātis. So *quiēs.* *Samnīs.* *custōs.* *salūs.* *Trachȳs.*
anās,-ātis. *milĕs.* *lapĭs.* *compŏs.* *opŭs.* *chlamȳs.*

Obs. The *ēs* is long in *abiēs, ariēs, Cerēs,* and compounds of *pēs,* though they increase short.

Also *ēs* is long in *arbōs,* for *arbor, arbŏris;* and *ŏs, ōssis,* is short.

i. Words in *as* are long; as, *mensās, amās.*

The Greek Acc. Plur. of imparisyllabic nouns has *ăs* short; as, *Arcadăs.*

ii. Words in *es* are long: *sedēs, audiēs, patrēs.*

(*a*) The Preposition *penĕs,* and *ĕs* from *sum,* are short.

(*b*) Greek neuters and Nominative Plurals are short; as, *hippomanĕs, Cyclōpĕs, Naiadĕs.*

iii. Words in *is* are short; as, *panĭs, regĭs, tristĭs.*

(*a*) The Dat. and Abl. plural have *īs* long; as, *dominīs, vobīs.* So the adverbs, *gratīs, forīs;* but *ĭtis* is short.

(*b*) Verbs of Conj. 4. and others which make *īmus, ītis,* in the Plur. have *īs* long in the Sing.; as, *audīs, sīs, vīs, velīs.*

Obs. The *i* in the Fut.-Perf. Indic. and the Perf. Subj. is common; as, *dixerīs, dixerĭtis,* or *dixerĭs, dixerītis.*

iv. Words in *os* are long; as, *arbōs, honōs, dominōs.*

Words in *os,* which have short *o* in Greek, are short; as, Nom. *Argŏs, Epŏs;* Gen. *Palladŏs.*

v. Words in *us* are short; as, *servŭs, tempŭs, amamŭs.*

(*a*) The Gen. Sing. and Nom., Acc., Voc. Plur. of Dec. 4. have *ūs* long, being contracted; as, Nom. *gradŭs,* G. *gradūs.*

(*b*) All nouns spelt with the diphthong *ου* in Greek are long; as, *Panthūs, Sapphūs, Jesūs.*

(*d*) *Derivation.*

1. Derivatives generally retain the quantity of their primitives; as, *lĕgo, lĕgebam, lĕgam;* but *lēgi, lēgeram, lēgero.*

Obs. Some words derived from the same root differ in their quantity; as, *fĭdes, infīdus, perfĭdus; mācer, mācero; mōles, mŏlestus.*

Some *apparent* derivations are accounted for by contraction or compensation; as, *bos, bŏvis, bōbus* for *bŏvibus; jŭgum, jūmentum* for *jŭg-mentum.*

Digitized by Google

2. Compounds generally retain the quantity of the simple word; as, *sōlor, consōlor; pŏtens, impŏtens.*

Obs. Some compounds deviate from the rule; as, *dejĕro, pejĕro,* from *jūro; innŭba, pronŭba,* from *nūbo.*

(*e*) *Authority.*

The quantity of all syllables, which do not come under the preceding Rules, is determined by *Authority.*

Obs. By authority is meant that a syllable has been used by some Roman poet as *long, short,* or *common.*

§ 96. Grammatical Figures.

Deviations from usual forms are called Figures; to which different names have been given.

(*a*) *In Etymology.*

1. *Apocope*—When a letter is cut off from the end of a word; as, *men'* for *mene; satin'* for *satisne.*
2. *Paragoge*—When a letter is added to the end of a word; as, *med* for *me,* in old writers.
3. *Syncope*—The shortening of a word by omitting letters; as, *aspris, deûm, dixti,* for *asperis, deorum, dixisti.*
4. *Epenthesis*—The lengthening of a word by inserting a letter; as, *repperit, relligio,* for *reperit, religio.*
5. *Aphæresis*—When a letter or syllable is cut off from the beginning of a word; as, *'st, conia,* for *est, ciconia.*
6. *Prosthesis*—when a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a word; as, *gnatus, tetuli,* for *natus, tuli.*
7. *Archaïsmus*—When an old form of words is used; as, *aulaï, omnis, anuis,* for *aulæ, omnes, anûs.*
8. *Hellenismus*—When a Greek form is imitated; as, *Pallados* for *Palladis.*

(*b*) *In Syntax.*

1. *Ellipsis*—When words are omitted, which are required to complete the construction; as, *ego continuo mecum,—dixi* omitted.
2. *Pleonasmus*—When there is a redundancy of words in a sentence; as, *sic ore locutus. deceptam morte fefellit.*
3. *Hendiadys*—When one thing is expressed as two; as, *pateris libamus et auro* for *aureis pateris.*
4. *Periphrasis*—When many words are used to express one thing; a description for a name; as, *teneri fœtus ovium* for *agni.*

Digitized by Google

5. *Anacoluthon*—When the following and preceding clauses of a sentence do not agree together; as, *nam nos omnes, quibus est aliquis objectus labor,—omne quod est interea tempus lucro est.*

6. *Archaïsmus*—When an old form of construction is used; as,
operam abutitur for *operâ.*

7. *Hellenismus*—When a Greek construction is imitated; as,
sensit mediis delapsus Achivis for *se delapsum esse.*

8. *Hysteron Proteron*—When that is put first which is last in sense; as, *moriamur, et in media arma ruamus.*

9. *Hypallage*—When cases are mutually interchanged; as,
dare classibus austros for *classes austris.*

10. *Tmesis*—When a compound word is divided by the intervention of another; as, *per mihi gratum feceris* for *pergratum.*

11. *Parenthesis*—When a sentence is interrupted by inserting another clause in the middle of it; as,
Tityre, dum redeo (brevis est via) pasce capellas.

12. *Metaphora* or *Metaphor*—When a word is transferred from its natural meaning to another which is analogous to it; as,
Roma, orbis terrarum caput.

13. *Hyperbole*—An exaggerated expression; as,
rorantia vidimus astra. pleno se proluit auro.

14. *Aposiopesis*—An abrupt breaking off of a sentence; as,
quos ego—sed motos præstat componere fluctus.

15. *Prosopopœia* or *Personification*—When an inanimate object is represented as an animate one; as, *ipsa suas mirantur Gargara messes.*

(*c*) *In Prosody.*

1. *Synalœpha*—When a vowel is cut off before another; as,
Phillid'a am'o ant'e alias.

2. *Ecthlipsis*—When *m* and its vowel are cut off; as,
monstr'um horrend'um informe.

3. *Synæresis*—When two vowels are contracted into one; as,
dî, alvaria, ingenî, for *dii, alvearia, ingenii.*

4. *Diæresis*—When one syllable is resolved into two; as,
evoluisse, siluæ, for *evolvisse, silvæ.*

5. *Cæsura*—When a foot is divided between two words; as,
arma | virumque | cano.

6. *Incision*—When a foot ends with a word; as,
dum | conderet | urbem.

7. *Systole*—When a long syllable is shortened; as,
tulĕrunt for *tulērunt.*

8. *Diastole*—When a short syllable is lengthened; as,
Prīamides for *Priamides.*

Digitized by Google

INDEX I.

ETYMOLOGY.

Active Voice, remarks on, § 30.
Acc. Plur. *eis* or *is* for *es*, § 12. *obs.* 6.
Adj. of one termination, § 19.
——— two terminations, § 18.
——— three terminations, § 17.
—— defective, § 20.
Adverbs, § 52.
Adverbial numbers, § 22. *b.* 4.
Alphabet, old Latin, § 2. *a. obs.* 2.
Cases, § 5. *c.*
Casual affixes, § 6. 2.
Classes of Adjectives, § 60.
——— Particles, § 63.
——— Pronouns, § 61.
——— Substantives, § 59.
——— Verbs, § 62.
Comparison of Adjectives, § 21.
——— Adverbs, § 52. *b.*
——— defective, § 21. *c.*
——— irregular, § 21. *b.*
Compound Verbs, § 51.
——— Words, § 64.
Conjugations, § 27.
—— circumlocutory Act. § 30.
——— Pass. § 36.
Conjunctions, § 53.
Consonants, changes of, § 3. *c.*
Crudeform conjugations, § 27. *obs.* 3.
Declensions, § 8.
Defective Adjectives, § 20.
——— Nouns, § 16. *iii.*
——— Verbs, § 40.
Deponents, § 39.
——— irregular, § 46.
Diphthongs, § 2. *obs.*
Euphony, Rules of, § 3.
Formation of nouns, § 6.
——— persons, § 33. § 38.
——— tenses, § 31. § 37.
——— verbs, § 25.
Gen. Plur. in *ium* or *um*, § 12. *obs.* 5.
Gender of nouns, § 5. *b.*
———, Rules for, § 15.
Gerunds, § 52. *f.*
Imparisyllabic nouns, § 8.
Impersonal verbs, § 50.
Infinitive passive in *ier*, § 37. 4 *obs.*
Inseparable Particles, § 56.
Interjections, § 55.
Irregular comparison, § 21. *b.*
——— nouns, § 16.
——— verbs, § 42.
——— causes of, § 43.
——— lists of, § 44.
Letters, § 2.
——— division of, § 2. *b.*
Moods, § 24. *b.*
Neuter passives, § 40.
Nouns, § 5.
Numerals, § 22.
——— secondary, § 22. *b.*
Parisyllabic nouns, § 8. *obs.* 2.
Participles, § 24. *c.* 4.
Particles pronominal, § 63. *b.* 1.
——— compound, § 63. *b.* 2.
Passive Voice, remarks on, § 36.
Perfects, § 31. *b.*
Persons, formation of, § 33. § 38.
Pluralia tantum, § 16. *iii.* 2.
Prepositions, § 54.
——— in composition, § 54. *d.*
Present, § 31. *a.*
Pronominal particles, § 63. *b.*

Digitized by Google

Pronouns, § 23.
Pronunciation, § 2. *a.*
Punctuation, § 2. *c.*
Reduplication, § 31. *b. iii.*
Roots, § 57.
Substantives, § 57.
Supines, § 31. *c.*
Tenses, § 24. *c.*
——— derivative, § 32.
Verbs, § 24.
—— compound, § 51.
Verbs, contractions in, § 30.
—— defective, § 48.
—— endings of, § 29. § 35.
—— formation of, § 25.
Verbs, irregular, § 42.
—— of two Conjugations, § 27. *obs.* 4.
Voices, § 24. *a.*
——— active, § 28.
——— passive, § 34.
Words, classes of, § 58.

Syntax.

Ablative, § 76.
—— absolute, § 77. *d.*
—— of agent, § 76. *a.*
——— from a place, § 77. *a.* 3.
——— fulness or want, § 76. *d.*
——— instrument, § 76. *b.*
——— material, § 76. *a.* 4.
——— part affected, § 76. *b.* 2.
——— price, § 76. *c.*
——— quality, § 73. *b.*
——— removal, § 76. *d.* 6.
——— separation, § 76. *d.* 6.
——— size and space, § 77. *b.*
——— time, § 77. *c.* 1.
——— of union, § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 3.
——— primary meaning of, § 72. *obs.* 5.
Accusative, § 75.
—— cognate, § 75. *a. obs.* 2.
—— double, § 75. *b.*
—— single, § 75. *a.*
—— of part affected, § 76. *b.* 2.
——— place, § 77. *a.* 2.
——— restriction, § 75. *obs.* 4.
——— size and space, § 77. *b.*
——— time, § 77. *c.* 2.
—— primary meaning of, § 72. *obs.* 4.
—— with Adj. § 75. *a. obs.* 1.
——— Verbs causative, § 75. *b.* 3.
——— neuter, § 75. *a. obs.* 3.
——— passive, § 75. *b.* 2.
Adjective, § 78.
—— an epithet, § 68. 1. *obs.* 1.
—— a predicate, § 68. 1. *obs.* 1.
Adjective, neuter, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
—— partitive, § 73. *c.* 1.
—— and substantive, § 68.
—— neut. with Gen., § 73. *c.* 2.
Adjective used alone, § 68. 4.
—— Pronouns, § 79. *f.*
Adjectives meaning
—— accusation, § 73. *d.* 6.
—— affinity, § 74. *c.* 3.
—— desire, § 73. *d.* 4.
—— ease, § 74. *a.* 6.
—— equality, § 74. *c.* 3.
—— fulness, § 76. *d.* 2.
—— knowledge, § 73. *d.* 4.
—— memory, § 73. *d.* 4.
—— part affected, § 76. *b.* 2.
—— participation, § 73. *c.* 4.
—— pleasantness, § 74. *a.* 6.
—— quantity, § 73. *c.* 2.
—— reference, § 74. *b.* 7.
—— removal, § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 2.
—— separation, § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 2.
—— similarity, § 74. *c.* 3.
—— union, § 74. *c.* 3.
—— utility, § 74. *a.* 6.
—— want, § 76. *d.* 2.
Adverbs, § 89.
—— of affinity, § 74. *c.* 3.
——— ease, § 74. *a.* 6.
——— equality, § 74. *c.* 3.
——— pleasantness, § 74. *a.* 6.
——— quantity, time, and place, § 73. *c.* 3.
——— removal, § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 2.
——— similarity, § 74. *c.* 3.
——— time, § 89. 2. *obs.* 2.

Digitized by Google

Adverbs of union, § 74. *c.* 3.
——— utility, § 74. *a.* 6.
Antecedent and Relative, § 69.
—— omitted, § 69. 1. *obs.* 2.
Apposition, § 66. *a.*
Attraction, § 66. *c.*
—— of Relative, § 69. 3. *obs.* 1.
Attraction inverted, § 69. 3. *obs.* 2.
Cases not governed, § 77.
Clauses accessory, § 65. *b.* 2.
——— adjectival, § 65. *d.* 2.
——— adverbial, § 65. *d.* 3.
——— co-ordinate, § 65. *c.*
——— subordinate, § 65. *c.*
——— substantival, § 65. *d.* 1.
Comparatives, § 78. *a.*
——— two, § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 4.
——— with Abl. § 78. *a.* 2.
——————— *quam* omitted, § 78. *a.* 3.
——————— *quam ut* or *qui*, § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
——————— *quam pro*, § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3.
Complements of a sentence, § 65. *b.*
Concords, first, § 67.
——— second, § 68.
——— third, § 69.
Condition and consequent, § 84. *b. iii.* 2.
Conjunctions, § 90.
—— with co-ordinate clauses, § 90. *a.*
——————— subordinate clauses, § 90. *b.*
—— admissive, § 84. *b. iii.* 3.
—— adversative, § 90. *a.* 3.
—— argumental, § 90. *a.* 4.
—— causal, § 84. *a. iii.* 2.
—— conditional, § 84. *b. iii.* 2.
—— consecutive, § 84. *a. iii.* 1.
—— copulative, § 90. *a.* 1.
—— disjunctive, § 90. *a.* 2.
—— illative, § 90. *a.* 5.
—— intentional, § 84. *b. iii.* 1.
—— interrogative, § 90. *a.* 6.
—— temporal, § 84. *a. iii.* 3.
Construction of sentences, § 65.
Correction, § 66. *b.*
Dative, § 74.
Dative, alone, § 74. *a.* 6. *obs.* 2.
—— for Gen. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
—— of agent, § 76. *a.*
——— object to which direction is made, § 74. *b.*
——— person interested, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
——— place, § 77. 1. *obs.* 1.
——— purpose, § 74. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.
——— receiver, § 74. *a.*
——— union, § 74. *c.*
—— primary meaning of, § 72. *obs.* 3.
—— a second, § 74. *b.* 8.
Demonstratives, § 79. *c.*
—— two united, § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 3.
Dependent sentences, § 65. *c.*
Deponents, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
Distance, § 77. *b.*
Distributives, § 78. *c.* 3.
Epithet, § 68. 1. *obs.* 1.
—— agreeing with many nouns, § 68. 2. *obs.* 2.
Futures, use of, § 87. *a.* 2. *obs.* 4.
—— in the Infin., § 87. *c. obs.* 2.
Future part. pass., § 86. *a.* 3.
Genitive, § 73.
—— alone, § 73. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
—— exegetic, § 73. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
—— of object, § 73. *d.*
——— part affected, § 76. *b.* 2.
——— participation, § 73. *c.*
——— possessor, § 73. *a.*
——— quality, § 73. *b.*
—— primary meaning of, § 72. *obs.* 2.
Gerunds, § 88.
Gerundial adjective, § 88. 5.
Historic Infinitive, § 85. 3. *obs.* 1.
——— Present, § 87. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
——— Tenses, § 87. *a.*
Imperative, § 83.
—— in *oratio obliqua*, § 83. 1. *obs.* 3.
—— of Perfect Pass. § 83. 1. *obs.* 4.
—— Present and Future, § 83. 1. *obs.* 1.
—— substitutes for, § 83. 1. *obs.* 2.

Digitized by Google

Imperative, with negatives, § 83. 2.
Imperfects, § 87. *b*. 1.
Impersonal verbs, § 67. 7. § 73. *d*. 2.
—— passives, § 80.
Indefinites, § 87. *b*. 3.
Independent sentences, § 65. *c*.
Indicative, § 82.
Indicative, distinguished from Subj., § 81. 3.
—— for Potential, § 84. *c*. 2.
—— in dependent clauses, § 82. 2.
—— with admissive particles, § 84. *b*. *iii*. 3.
———— causal—§ 84. *a*. *iii*. 2. *obs*. 3.
———— conditional—§ 84. *b*. *iii*. 2.
———— relatives, § 82. 1. *obs*. 1. § 84. *b*. *ii*. 2.
———— temporal particles, § 84. *a*. *iii*. 3.
Indirect assertion, § 65. *d*. 1. *i*. § 85. *b*. 2. *obs*. 2. *i*.
——— petition, § 65. *d*. 1. *ii*. § 85. *b*. 2. *obs*. 2. *ii*.
——— question, § 65. *d*. 1. *iii*. § 85. *b*. 2. *obs*. 2. *iii*.
Infinitive, § 85.
—— alone, § 85. 3.
———— in exclamations, § 85. 3. *obs*. 2.
—— as Acc., § 85. 1.
——— Nom., § 85. 1.
—— and its subject, § 85. *a*.
—— case of subject, § 85. *a*. 2. *obs*. 3.
—— without a subject, § 85. *a*. 2.
—— connected with other verbs, § 85. *b*.
—— dependent on Adj., § 85. 2. *obs*.
—— difference between Eng. and Lat., § 85. *b*. *obs*. 3.
—— substitutes for, § 85. *b*. 2. *obs*. 2.
Infinitivus historicus, § 85. 3. *obs*. 1.
—— with Nom. § 85. 3. *obs*. 1. *i*.
Interjections, § 92.
Interrogatives, § 79. *e*.
—— and answer, § 66. *a*. 2.
Measure of excess, § 78. *b*. 2.
Middle Voice, § 80. 1. *obs*. 3.
Moods, § 81.
Names of Places, § 77. *a*.
—— with Adj., § 77. *a*. 1. *obs*. 1.
Negatives, § 89. *obs*. 3.
———— two counteracting, § 89. *obs*. 3. *iv*.
Neuter Adj. and Pron. with Double Acc., § 75. *b*. 1. *obs*. 2.
———— Verbs with Acc., § 75. *a*. *obs*. 3.
———————— passive, § 80. 1. 2.
Nominative, § 70.
—— in predicate, § 70. 2.
—— with Infin., § 85. *a*. 2. *obs*. 3.
Numerals, § 78. *c*.
Object immediate, § 72. 2.
——— remote, § 72. 2.
Objective Gen., § 73. *d*. 1. *obs*. 1.
Oblique cases, § 72.
Oratio obliqua, § 65. *c*. 2.
———— —— virtual, § 84. *a*. *ii*. 2.
———————— with Subj. § 84. *a*. *ii*. 1.
——— *recta*, § 65. *c*. 2.
Participles, § 86.
—— force of, § 86. *a*.
—— case of, § 86. *b*. *obs*. 3.
—— Eng. and Lat. compared, § 86. *a*. 1. *obs*. 1.
—— equal to *Adjectival* or *Adverbial* clauses, § 86. *b*. *obs*. 4.
Partitives, § 73. *c*. 1.
—— omitted, § 73. *c*. 1. *obs*. 1.
Passive voice, § 80.
—— impersonals, § 80. 2.
Perfects, § 87. *b*. 2.
Personal pronouns, § 79. *a*.
Place, § 77. *a*.
Possessives, § 79. *b*.
—— with Gen. of Adj., § 79. *b*. 2.
—— with Relatives, § 79. *b*. 3.
Potential, force of, § 84. *obs*.
—— mood, § 84. *b*.
—— independent, § 84. *c*.
Predicate, § 65. *a*. 2.

Digitized by Google

Predicate, Adjectives, § 68. 1. *obs.* 1.
——— neuter, § 68. 1. *obs.* 1.
—— Adj. agreeing with many nouns, § 68. 2. *obs.* 1.
—— noun in, § 70. 2.
—— relative agrees with, § 69. 2.
—— verb agrees with, § 67. 8.
Prepositions, § 91.
—— as adverbs, § 91. 1. *obs.*
—— verbs compounded with, § 74. *b.* 3.
—— understood, § 91. *d.*
Pronouns, § 79.
Propositions, § 65.
Questions indirect, § 79. 2.
——— with Subj., § 84. *a. i.* 1.
Relative pronouns, § 79. *d.*
—— and antecedent, § 69.
—— attracted, § 69. 3. *obs.* 1.
—— case of, § 69. 3.
—— limiting the antecedent, § 69. 4.
—— not limiting, § 69. 4.
—— with Subj., § 84. *a. ii.*
——— Infin., § 84. *a. ii.* 1. *obs.* 3.
Size, § 77. *b.* 2.
Space, § 77. *b.* 1.
Subject, § 65. *a.*
—— and verb, § 67.
—— a sentence, § 67. 5.
—— not expressed, § 67. 6.
—— of impersonals, § 67. 7.
——— Infinitive, § 85. *a.*
Subjunctive, force of, § 84. *obs.*
—— true, § 44. *a.*
Substantiva mobilia, § 66. *a. obs.* 2.
Substantive and Adj., § 68.
—— with many Adj., § 68. 2.
——— Gen., § 73. *a.* 1. § 73. *d.* 1.
Superlatives, § 78. *b.*
—— with *quisque*, § 78. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.
Supines, § 88. *b.*
Synesis, § 67. 2. *obs.* 1.
Tenses, § 87.
—— in the Infinitive, § 87. *c.*
—— marking the state of an action, § 87. *b.*
——— the time, § 87. *a.*
—— similar, § 87. *a.* 1.
Verbs, causative, § 75. *b.* 3.
Verbs, compounded with Prep., § 74. *b.* 3. 4. 5. 6.
—— *bene, satis, male*, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
—— *cum*, § 74. *c. obs.* 1.
—— copulative, § 70. 2. *obs.* 1.
—— expressing direction, § 74. *b.* 1.
——— feelings, § 74. *b.* 2.
——— ——— union, &c., § 74. *c.* 1.
—— omission of, § 67. 6. *obs.* 3.
—— with second Dat., § 74. *b.* 8.
——— double Acc., § 75. *b.*
—— transitive, § 75. *a.*
Verbs signifying to
—— abound, § 76. *d.* 1.
—— abstain, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— accuse, § 73. *d.* 6.
—— acquit, § 73. *d.* 6.
—— appoint, § 75. *b.* 3.
—— benefit, § 74. *a.* 1.
—— buy, § 76. *c.*
—— call, § 75. *b.* 3.
—— cause, § 75. *b.* 3.
—— cease, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— choose, § 75. *b.* 3.
—— command, § 74. *a.* 5.
—— communicate, § 74. *c. obs.* 1.
—— compare, § 74. *c.* 1.
—— condemn, § 73. *d.* 6.
—— congratulate, § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2.
—— contend, § 74. *c.* 2.
—— declare, § 74. *a.* 4.
—— defend, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— deliver, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— depart, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— deprive, § 76. *d.* 1.
—— devote, § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2.
—— differ, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— display, § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2.
—— distinguish, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— divide, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— entrust, § 74. *a.* 3.
—— envy, § 74. *b.* 2.
—— esteem, § 74. 3. *obs.* 5.
—— favour, § 74. *b.* 2.
—— fear, § 74. *b.* 2.
—— fight, § 74. *c.* 2.
—— fill, § 76. *d.*
—— forget, § 73. *d.* 7.

Digitized by Google

Verbs signifying to give. § 74. c. 3.
—— take. § 74. c. 3.
—— injure. § 74. c. 1.
—— keep off. § 74. c. 4.
—— loose. § 74. c. 4.
—— make. § 73. c. 3.
—— name. § 73. c. 3.
—— obey. § 74. c. 2.
—— pay. § 74. c. 3.
—— persuade. § 74. c. 4. obs. 2.
—— pity. § 73. c. 3.
—— present. § 74. c. 3. obs. 2.
—— promise. § 74. c. 4.
—— prove. § 74. c. 4. obs. 2.
—— recommend. § 74. c. 4. obs. 2.
—— reason. § 73. c. 3.
—— refuse. § 74. c. 2. obs. 1.
—— remember. § 73. d. 3.
—— remind. § 73. d. 3.
—— remove. § 76. c. 4.
—— resist. § 74. c. 2.
Verbs signifying to seem. § 74. 3.
—— sell. § 74. c.
—— separate. § 74. c. 4.
—— show. § 74. c. 4. obs. 2.
—— speak. § 74. c. 1. obs. 1.
—— stick. § 74. c. 1. obs. 1.
—— take away. § 74. c. 4.
—— think. § 73. c. 3.
—— threaten. § 74. c. 4.
—— value. § 74. c.
—— wish. § 74. c. 4. obs. 2.
—— want. § 74. c. 1.
—— weep. § 74. c. 2. obs. 1.
with be. § 70. 3.
—— be angry. § 74. c. 2.
—— called. § 74. 3.
—— chosen. § 74. 3.
—— elected. § 74. 3.
—— named. § 74. 3.
—— thought. § 74. 3.
Vocative case. § 71.

INDEX II.

Etymology.

Abus. D. and Ab. Pl. Dec. i. § 9. *obs.* 4.
accepso. § 29. *obs.* 3.
accumjer. § 37. 4. *obs.*
accupiter, -tris. § 12. *obs.* 2.
acer. § 13. 1. *obs.* 2.
ades, adest. § 47. 6. *obs.* 2.
adhuc. § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
adjuro. § 30. *obs.* 2.
Æneas. § 9. *obs.* 5.
æther, aer. Ac. *a.* § 12. *obs.* 7.
affinis. § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
ain. § 49. 1.
ajo for *aio.* § 2. 2. *obs.* 1.
alius. § 52. *a.* 2.
alis, alise. Gen. § 23. *f. obs.* 2.
Albus. § 11. *obs.* 2. *a.*
amâram. § 30. *obs.* 2.
amisti. § 39. *obs.* 2.
amnibus sum. § 36. *obs.* 2.
amarus mm. § 30. *obs.* 1.
amasse. § 16. III. 2. 2.
amnis. § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
amussis. § 11. *obs.* 2. *a.*
an. am. amâ. § 56.
ancile. -orum. § 11. *obs.* 4.
Anchises. § 9. *obs.* 5.
angnis. § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
annali. § 16. III. 2. 2.
anus. G. *anuis.* § 13. *obs.* 1.
apage. § 49. 5.
apis. § 11. *obs.* 2. *f.*
Aprilis. § 11. *obs.* 2. *c.*
Aquinas. § 19. 5. *obs.* 2.
arbosem for *arborem.* § 2. *a. obs.* 2.
Arcas. § 12. *obs.* 7.

Digitized by Google

astu, § 16. III. 2. 3.
Athos, § 10. *obs.* 8.
audii, audieram, § 30. *obs.* 2.
audisti, § 30. *obs.* 2.
ausim, § 30. *obs.* 3.
ave, § 49. 5.
avis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
Bacchanalia, -ium, -iorum, § 11. *obs.* 4.
basis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *a.*
biduum, § 22. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
biennium, § 22. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
bimus, § 22. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
binarius, § 22. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1.
bipennis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
bipes, § 19. 5. *obs.* 3.
bos, bov-is, § 12. *obs.* 4.
buris, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
Cacoethes, § 16. III. 2. 1.
cælite, § 16. III. 2. 2.
cætera, -um, § 20. 2.
calcar, § 11. *obs.* 4.
canis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *f.*
caro, carn-is, § 12. *obs.* 1.
casse, § 16. III. 2. 2.
cĕdo, § 49. 6.
celer, § 18. 1. *obs.* 2.
cepe, § 16. III. 2. 1.
cete, § 14. *obs.* 4.
chaos, § 10. *obs.* 8.
chelys, § 11. *obs.* 6.
cicur, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
civis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
classis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
clavis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
cœpi, § 48. 3.
compedis, § 16. III. 2. 3.
confit, confieri, § 47. 5.
consors, § 19. 5. *obs.* 3.
cornu, cornûs, § 13. *obs.* 1.
cucumis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
cucumis, -is or *eris*, § 12. *obs.* 3.
cupressus, § 10. *obs.* 7.
Decemviri, § 22. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
defit, defiunt, § 47. 5.
degener, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
dei, dii, dî, § 10. *obs.* 3.
Delos, § 10. *obs.* 1.
derisui, § 16. III. 2. 2.
deses, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
despicatui, § 16. III. 2. 2.
deus, Voc., § 10. *obs.* 2.
di, dis, § 56. 2.
dic, § 32. *b. obs.*
dicebo, for *dicam*, § 32. *a.* 2. *obs.*
diē for *diei*, § 14. *obs.* 2.
dis, ditis, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
diu for *die*, § 16. III. 2. 2.
diu, diutius, § 52. *b.*
diutissimè, § 52. *b.*
dives, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
divisui, § 16. III. 2. 2.
domus, § 13. *obs.* 5.
duc, § 32. *b. obs.*
duim for *dem*, § 32. *c.* 1. *obs.*
duo for *duos*, § 22. 1. *obs.*
duoviri, § 22. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
E for *ei*, Dec. 5. § 14. *obs.* 2.
eapse, eumpse, § 23. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
edim for *edam*, § 32. *c.* 1. *obs.*
egomet, § 23. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
epos, § 10. *obs.* 8.
erepsĕmus, § 30. *obs.* 2.
estur, § 47. 3.
ethos, § 10. *obs.* 8.
evâsti, § 30. *obs.* 2.
expugnassere, § 30. *obs.* 3.
exspes, § 16. III. 2. 2.
Fac, § 32. *b. obs.*
fames, famē, § 11. *obs.* 5.
fari, fatur, &c., § 49. 3.
[*faux*], *fauce*, § 16. III. 2. 2.
fax, § 16. III. 2. 6.
faxim, faxo, § 30. *obs.* 3.
febris, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
feles or *felis*, § 11. *obs.* 5. *b.*
feminis, § 16. III. 2. 4.
fer, § 32. *b. obs.*
ficus, § 10. *obs.* 7.
fidē for *fidei*, § 14. *obs.* 2.
fides or *fidis*, § 11. *obs.* 5. *b.*
foris, foras, § 52. *a.* 2.
fors, § 16. III. 2. 3.
frater, fratr-is, § 12. *obs.* 2.
fructus, fruiturus, § 32. *e.* 2. *obs.*
frugi, § 20. 2.
frugis, § 16. III. 2. 5.
fustis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
fuo, fuam, § 26. *obs.* 2.
Grus, gru-is, § 12. *obs.* 4.

Digitized by Google

Hermione, § 9. *obs.* 5.
hic, huc, hinc, § 63. *b.* 1.
hicce, hiccine, § 23. *b. obs.* 1.
hiems, § 16. III. 2. 5.
hodie, § 52. *a.* 2.
hospes, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
hujusce, § 23. *b. obs.* 1.
hunccine, § 23. *b. obs.* 1.
I for ei, Dec. 5, § 14. *obs.* 2.
ibis, -idis, ibes, § 12. *obs.* 3.
ignis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
Ilion, § 10. *obs.* 8
illic, illuc, illinc, § 63. *b.* 1.
impetis, -e, § 16. III. 2. 2.
impléro, § 30. *obs.* 2.
implêssem, § 30. *obs.* 2.
in, § 56, 3.
inficias, § 16. III. 2. 2.
inficio, inficior, § 47. 5. *obs.*
infit, § 47. 5.
ingratiis, § 16. III. 2. 2.
injussu, § 16. III. 2. 2.
inops, § 19. 5. *obs.* 3.
inquam, § 49. 2.
insignibam, § 32. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
ipsus for *ipse*, § 23. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1.
istic, istuc, istinc, § 63. *b.* 1.
iter, itiner-is, § 12. *obs.* 1.
Jecur, jecinor-is, § 12. *obs.* 1.
Jesus, § 13. *obs.* 6.
Jupiter, Jovis, § 12. *obs.* 2.
jusso for *jussero*, § 30. *obs.* 3.
jussu, § 16. III. 2. 2.
juvaturus, § 32. *e.* 2. *obs.*
Juvenalis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *e.*
juvenis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *f.*
Laurus, § 10. *obs.* 7.
Lemniasi, § 12. *obs.* 7.
lenibam, § 32. *a. obs.* 2.
levâsso, § 30. *obs.* 3.
licêssit, § 30. *obs.* 3.
ludicra, -um, § 20. 2.
lues, § 16. III. 2. 4.
luo, luiturus, § 48. 1. *obs.* 2.
Macte, § 20. 2.
Manto, § 10. *obs.* 8.
Marcellĭa, § 60. *c. obs.* 1.
mater, matr-is, § 12. *obs.* 2.
melos, § 10. *obs.* 8.
meme, § 23. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
memini, § 48. 3.
memor, § 19. 3. *obs.* 1.
messis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
metuo, metutum, § 48. 1. *obs.* 2.
meus, Voc. *mi*, § 10. *obs.* 2.
mihimet, § 23. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
mortuus, moriturus, § 32. *e.* 2. *obs.*
Natu, § 16. III. 2. 2.
nauci, § 16. III. 2. 2.
navis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
ne, § 56. 4.
necesse, § 20. 2.
neptis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
nequam, § 20. 2.
nôram, § 30. *obs.* 2.
novi, § 48. 3.
Odi, § 48. 3.
olli for *illi*, § 23. *b.* 2. *obs.* 3.
opis, opem, ope, § 16. III. 2. 5.
orbis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
Orpheus, § 13. *obs.* 6.
os, oris, § 16. III. 2. 6.
ortus, oriturus, § 32. *e.* 2. *obs.*
ovile, § 11. *obs.* 4.
Pan, Ac. *-a*, § 12. *obs.* 7.
panis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *f.*
pariturus, § 32. *e.* 2. *obs.*
pater-familias, § 9. *obs.* 2.
pater, patr-is, § 11. *obs.* 3. § 12. *obs.* 2.
pauci, pauco, § 20. 1.
pauper, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
pelvis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
perduim for *perdam*, § 32. *c.* 1. *obs.*
Pericles, § 11. *obs.* 6.
permissu, § 16. III. 2. 2.
pernicii for *-ei*, § 14. *obs.* 2.
pictaï, § 9. *obs.* 1.
pinus, § 10. *obs.* 7.
piscis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *e.*
plebes, G. *is, ei*, § 11. *obs.* 5.
plebs or plebes, § 11. *obs.* 5. *c.*
plerique, § 20. 1.
plus, § 16. III. 2. 5. § 18. 2. *obs.* 2.
poema, G. *atis, æ*, § 12. *obs.* 7.
poesis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.* § 11. *obs.* 6.
pondo, § 16. III. 2. 3.
potis, pote, § 16. III. 2. 2.
potius, potissimum, § 52. *b.*

Digitized by Google

preci, -em, -e, § 16. III. 2. 4.
præceps, -ipitis, § 12. *obs.* 1.
præsto, § 20. 2.
primanus, § 22. *a* 2. *obs.* 4.
primoris, -es, § 20. 2.
primum, -ò, § 22. *b.* 4. *obs.* 1.
procinctu, § 16. III. 2. 2.
promptu, § 16. III. 2. 2.
puber, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
Quadrimus, § 22. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
quæso, quæsumus, § 49. 4.
qualiscunque, § 23. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2.
qualisqualis, § 23. *d. obs.* 2.
quantuscunque, § 23. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2.
quantusquantus, § 23. *d. obs.* 2.
quicunque, § 23. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2.
quisquis, § 23. *d. obs.* 3.
quotcunque, § 23. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2.
quotquot, § 23. *d. obs.* 3.
Ravis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
re, red, § 56. 5.
reapse, § 23. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
reliquiæ, § 56. 5.
restis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
rettuli, § 56. 5.
Sæpius, sæpissimè, § 52. *b.*
salve, § 49. 5.
satis, satius, § 52. *b.*
satrapes, G. *is*, D. *æ*, § 9. *obs.* 4.
satur, § 17. 2. *obs.*
scibo for *sciam*, § 32. *a.* 2. *obs.*
se, § 56. 6.
sectum, secaturus, § 32. *e.* 2. *obs.*
secundanus, § 22. *a.* 2. *obs.* 4.
secundum, -ò, § 22. *b.* 4. *obs.* 1.
secus, secius, § 52. 6.
semet, § 23. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
seminex, § 20. 2.
sementis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
senarius, § 22. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1.
senex, senis, § 12. *obs.* 1.
sentis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *e.*
sepelĭ, § 30. *obs.* 2.
September, § 11. *obs.* 3.
sese, § 23. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
siem for *sim*, § 26 *obs.* 1.
sitis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
situs, § 16. III. 2. 4.
sol, § 16. III. 2. 6.
sonitum, sonaturus, § 32. *e.* 2. *obs.*
sons, § 20. 2.
sordis, -em, -e, § 16. III. 2. 4.
sospes, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
spontis, -e, § 16. III. 2. 3.
strigilis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
suapte, suopte, § 23. *e. obs.* 2.
supellex, ectilis, § 12. *obs.* 1.
suppetias, § 16. III. 2. 2.
summóssem, § 30. *obs.* 2.
sus, su-is, § 12. *obs.* 4.
Temet, § 23. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
Tempe, § 16. III. 2. 1.
ternarius, § 22. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1.
tertiadecumani, § 23. *a.* 2. *obs.* 4.
tertianus, § 22. *a.* 2. *obs.* 4.
tete, § 23. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
Tiber, Tibris, Tiberis, § 11. *obs.* 3.
Tiberis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
Tibris, -idis, is, § 12. *obs.* 2.
tigris, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
tigris, -idis, is, § 12. *obs.* 2.
torale, toral, § 11. *obs.* 4.
torris, § 11. *obs.* 2. *e.*
trabes, trabis, trabs, § 11. *obs.* 5. *c.*
trâxe for *traxisse*, § 30. *obs.* 2.
tresviri, § 22. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
trimus, § 22. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
tussis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
U for *ui*, Dec. 4. § 13. *obs.* 2.
ua, ue, ui, &c. § 2. 2. *obs.* 3.
uber, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
ubus, D. and Abl. Pl. Dec. 4. § 13. *obs.* 3.
úm for *arum*, § 9. *obs.* 3.
úm for *orum*, § 10. *obs.* 4.
úm for *uum*, § 13. *obs.* 3.
Vale, § 49. 5.
ve, § 56. 7.
vectis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *e.*
Verria, § 60. *c. obs.* 1.
vermis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *e.*
vesper, § 16. III. 2. 4.
vesperi, -e, § 52. *a.* 2.
vetus, § 19. 3. *obs.* 1.
vicis, -em, -e, § 16. III. 2. 5.
victor, trix, Adj., § 19. 1. *obs.*
vis, § 16. III. 2. 5.
volucris, § 11. *obs.* 2. *f.*
volupe, § 20. 2.

Digitized by Google

Classes of Words.

Aceus, § 60. *b*. 3.
ades, § 59. *e*. 1.
aeus, § 60. *c*. 2.
ago, § 59. *b*. 3.
aia, § 60. *b*. 1. § 61. *a*. 2.
aneus, § 60. *b*. 1.
antus, § 61. *a*. 1.
anus, § 60. *c*. 1. § 60. *c*. 2. § 60. *c*. 4.
aris, § 60. *b*. 1.
arium, § 59. *c*. 2.
arius, § 60. *b*. 1.
as, § 59. *e*. 1. § 60. *c*. 2. § 61. *c*.
aster, *astra*, § 59. *f*. 2.
atus, § 59. *d*. 3.
ax, § 60. *a*. 2.
bilis, § 60. *a*. 7.
bra, § 59. *c*. 4.
brum, § 59. *c*. 4.
bulum, § 59. *c*. 4.
bundus, § 60. *a*. 4.
cio, § 59. *f*. 2.
crum, § 59. *c*. 4.
culum, § 59. *c*. 4.
culus, § 59. *f*. 1.
cundus, § 60. *a*. 5.
è, § 63. *a*. 1.
ela, § 59. *d*. 1.
ellus, § 59. *f*. 1.
ens, § 60. *a*. 1.
ensis, § 60. *c*. 1. *obs*. 3. § 60. *c*. 4.
enus, § 60. *b*. 3.
eo, § 62. *a*. 1.
ernus, § 60. *b*. 5.
etum, § 59. *c*. 2.
eus, § 60. *b*. 3. § 60. *c*. 1. § 60. *c*. 2.
fariam, § 63. *a*. 2.
ia, § 59. *d*. 2.
iades, § 59. *e*. 1.
ianus, § 60. *c*. 1.
ico, *iculo*, § 62. *b*. *obs*. 2.
icus, § 60. *b*. 2.
ĭcus, § 60. *b*. 2. § 60. *c*. 1. § 60. *c*. 3.
ides, § 59. *e*. 1.
idis, § 60. *a*. 8.
idus, § 60. *a*. 8.
ies, § 59. *d*. 2. § 63. *a*. 2.
igo, § 59. *b*. 3.
ile, § 59. *c*. 2.
ilis, § 60. *a*. 7. § 60. *b*. 1.
illo, § 62. *b*. 4.
illus, § 59. *f*. 1.
im, § 63. *a*. 2.
ine, § 59. *e*. 1.
inus, § 60. *b*. 3.
īnus, § 60. *b*. 3. *c*. 1. *c*. 2.
is, § 59. *e*. 1.
isper, § 63. *a*. 2.
itas, § 59. *d*. 2.
ites, § 60. *c*. 2.
itia, § 59. *d*. 2.
ities, § 59. *d*. 2.
itim, § 63. *a*. 2.
itius, *icius*, § 60. *b*. 1.
itudo, § 59. *d*. 2.
ium, § 59. *c*. 3. § 59. *d*. 3.
ius, § 60. *b*. 1. *c*. 2. *c*. 3.
ivus, § 60. *b*. 1.
men, § 59. *b*. 2.
mentum, § 59. *b*. 2.
monia, § 59. *d*. 3.
monium, § 59. *d*. 3.
nus, § 60. *b*. 3.
o, § 62. *a*. 2. § 63. *a*. 1.
olentus, § 60. *b*. 4.
one, § 59. *e*. 1.
or, § 59. *d*. 1.
osus, § 60. *b*. 4.
ot, § 61. *a*. 3.
otus, § 61. *a*. 3.
sco, § 62. *b*. 2.
sul, § 59. *a*. 3.
ter, § 61. *b*. § 63. *a*. 1.
ticus, § 60. *b*. 2.
tilis, § 60. *b*. 2.
tio, § 59. *d*. 7.
tor, § 59. *a*. 1.
torium, § 59. *c*. 1.
trina, § 59. *c*. 1.
trix, § 59. *a*. 2.
trum, § 59. *b*. 4.
tum, § 59. *b*. 1.
tura, § 59. *d*. 1.
turio, § 62. *b*. 3.

Digitized by Google

tus, § 59. *d.* 1. § 60. *a.* 6.
ucus, § 60. *a.* 3.
ugo, § 59. *b.* 3.
uleus, § 59. *f.* 2.
ulto, § 62. *b. obs.*
ulum, § 59. *b.* 4.
ulus, § 59. *f.* 1. § 60. *a.* 2.
umnus, umna, § 59. *b.* 2.
urnus, § 60, *b.* 5.
us, § 61. *b.*
utio, § 62. *b.* 2. *obs.*
uus, § 60. *a.* 8. § 60. *b.* 1.
xillus, xilla, § 59. *f.* 2.

SYNTAX.

Abdico, § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.
accuso, § 73. *d.* 6.
ad plenum, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
adulor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
æmulor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
æstiva, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
agnina, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
alius alius, § 79. *f.* 3.
alter, § 78. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2.
amplius, § 78. *a.* 3.
an, anne, § 90. *a.* 6.
angusta viarum, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
antequam, § 84. *a. iii. obs.* 3.
at, ast, § 90. *a.* 3.
atque, § 90. *a.* 1.
atqui, § 90. *a.* 3.
audio, § 70. 3. *obs.* 1.
aut, § 90. *a.* 2.
autem, § 90. *a.* 3.
auxilior, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
avarus, § 72. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
avertor, § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 2.
avidus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
Belli, § 77. *c. obs.* 4.
benedico, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
bidui abest, § 77. *b.* 1. *obs.*
biremis, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
blandior, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
boni consulo, § 76. *c. obs.* 1. *i.*
——*facio*, § 76. *c. obs.* 1. *i.*
bovina, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
Calida, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
certus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
cingo, § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
cingor, § 75. *b.* 2. *obs.*
clam, § 91. 1. *obs. ii.*
committo, § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1.
compertus, § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 5.
conscius, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
consors, § 73. *c.* 4.
consulo, § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 2.
consultus, § 73. *d.* 5. *obs.*
contentus, § 76. *d.* 4.
creor, § 70. 3.
cupidus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
Delecto, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
defendo, § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.
desino with Gen., § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 4.
dicor, § 70. 3.
dignor, § 76. *d.* 3.
dignus, § 76. *d.* 4.
diem dicere, § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 4.
displiceo, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
divina, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
domi, -mo, -mum, § 77. *a.* 4. *obs.* 1.
donec, § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 2.
dono, § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 2.
duco, § 70. 3. *obs.* 3.
dum, § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 2.
Eligor, § 70. 3.
enim, § 90. *a.* 4.
ergo, § 90. *a.* 5.
est mihi, § 74. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1.
est qui, § 69. 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
est-ubi, § 69. 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
et, § 90. *a.* 1.
evado, § 70. 3.
existimor, § 70. 3.
existo, § 70. 3.
expers, § 73. *c.* 4.
exsors, § 73. *c.* 4.
exuo, § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
Famulor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
felix, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
ferina, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
ferox, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
fessus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.

Digitized by Google

fidissimus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
fio, § 73. 3. § 73. *a.* 2.
foris, *foras*, § 77. *a.* 4. *obs.* 1.
fretus, § 76. *d.* 4.
fungor, § 76. *d.* 3.
fruor, § 76. *d.* 3.
Gaudeo, § 76. *d.* 3.
gelida, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
genus, § 73. *b. obs.* 4.
gnarus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
graminis herba, § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 5.
gratificor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
guberno, § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2.
Habeo, § 70. 3. *obs.* 5.
hæreo, § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
haud, § 89. 2. *obs.* 3. *i.*
hiberna, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
hic ille, § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 3.
hic and *ille*, § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2.
honestum, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
humi, *humo*, § 77. *a.* 4. *obs.* 1.
Id ætatis, § 73. *b. obs.* 4.
id locorum, § 73. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1.
igitur, § 90. *a.* 5.
ignarus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
immo, § 89. 2. *obs.* 3.
imperitus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
impero, § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
imperor, § 80. 2. *obs.* 2.
incedo, § 70. 3. *obs.* 1.
indies, § 89. 2. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
indignus, § 76. *d.* 3.
indoctus, § 73. *d.* 5.
induo, § 74. *b. obs.* 1. *v.*
in eo est, § 79. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2.
ingratus, § 73. *d.* 4. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
in obliquum, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
inscius, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
inscribo, § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
insidior, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
in solido, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
insons, § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 5.
interea loci, § 73. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1.
interdico, § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *v.* § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.
interest, § 73. *a.* 3.
invideo, § 74. *b.* 2. *obs.* 1.
invideor, § 80. 2. *obs.* 2.
ipse, § 79. *a.* 4.
Jam, § 89. 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
jamdudum, § 87. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
jampridem, § 87. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
jubeo, § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2.
juvo, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
Lædo, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
lætus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
lassus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
lenocinor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
Magno natu, § 73. *b. obs.* 3.
maledico, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.*
mane, § 77. *c. obs.* 2.
manifestus, § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 5.
medeor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
medicor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
medius, § 73. *c.* 4. *obs.* 3.
memini, § 73. *d.* 7.
memor, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
mihi redundant, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
militiæ, § 77. *c. obs.* 4.
mille, § 78. *c.* 2.
minax, with Dat., § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 5.
minime gentium, § 73. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1.
minus, § 78. *a.* 3.
misereor, § 73. *d.* 3.
miseresco, § 73. *d.* 3.
miseret, § 73. *d.* 3.
miseror, § 73. *d.* 3.
moderor, § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2.
modicus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
monstror, § 70. 3. *obs.* 1.
muto, § 76. *c. obs.* 3.
Ne, § 90. *a.* 6.
nam, § 90. *a.* 4.
nedum, § 84. *b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3. *iv.*
nec, § 90. *a.* 1.
nescio-quis, § 79. *e.* 2. *obs.* 2. § 84. *a. i.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
nisi, § 84. *b. iii.* 2. *obs.* 4. § 90. *b.* 5.
noceo, § 74. *a.* 1.
nomen dare, § 70. 3. *obs.* 3.
nomen est, § 70. 3. *obs.* 3.
noxius, § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 5.
nubo, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
num, § 90. *a.* 6.
Obliviscor, § 73. *d.* 5. *obs.* 1.
octava, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
officio, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
omnis for *ullus*, § 79. *e. obs.* 3. *iii.*
oneraria, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
operæ pretium, § 73. *a.* 1. *obs. ii.*

Digitized by Google

opitulor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
opus, § 76. *d.* 5.
Pœnitet, § 73. *d.* 2.
palam, § 91. 1. *obs. ii.*
palpo, *-or*, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
parco, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
particeps, § 73. *c.* 4.
patiens solis, § 73. *d.* 5. *obs.*
patiens solem, § 73. *d.* 5. *obs.*
pertæsus, § 73. *d.* 3.
piger, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
piget, § 73. *d.* 2.
placeo, § 74. *a.* 1.
plus, § 78. *a.* 3.
populus, Voc., § 71. *obs.* 1.
potior, § 76. *d.* 3.
præstolor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
prima virorum, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
primæ, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
priusquam, § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 3.
procul, § 91. 1. *obs. ii.*
profusus sui, § 73. *d.* 5. *obs. ii.*
propior, § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 3.
proximus, § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 3.
prudens, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
pudet, § 73. *d.* 2.
pulcrum, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *i.*
Quam, § 78. *a.* 2. *b. i.*
quamvis, § 84. *b. iii.* 3.
quanquam, § 84. *b. iii.* 3.
quarta, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
quasi, § 84. *b. iii.* 3. *obs.* 3.
qui with Poten., § 84. *b. ii.*
qui with Subj., § 84. *a. ii.*
quia, § 84. *a. iii.* 2.
quid causæ, § 73. *c.* 2. *obs.* 1.
quid rei, § 73. *c.* 2. *obs.* 1.
quin, § 83. *i. obs.* 2. *i.* § 84. *a. iii.* 1. *obs.* 2.
quippe, § 90. *b.* 2.
quisquam, § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 3.
quisque with Superl., § 78. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.
quo for *ut eo*, § 84. *b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3.
quod, § 94. *a. iii.* 2.
quod for *quantum*, § 79. *d. obs.* 4.
quominus, § 84. *b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3.
quoniam, § 84. *a. iii.* 2. *obs.* 3.
quotidie, § 89. 2. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
quum, § 84. *a. iii.* 2. 3.
Refert, § 73. *a.* 3.
regno with Gen., § 76. *d.* 3. *obs.* 2.
rego, § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2.
reminiscor, § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 3.
reus, § 73. *d.* 6.
rivus aquæ, § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 5.
rudis, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
rus, *rure*, *ruri*, § 77. *a.* 4. *obs.* 1.
Sagax, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
satisfacio, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
scurror, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3.
segnis, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
secundæ, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
securus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
seu, *sive*, § 90. *a.* 2.
si, § 84. *b. iii.* 2.
siquidem, § 90. *b.* 2.
simul, § 91. 1. *obs. ii.*
solvendo esse, § 88. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2.
stativa. § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
studiosus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
sum, § 70. 3.
sum with Gen., § 73. *a.* 2.
sum with Dat., § 74. *a.* 2.
sum in comp., § 74. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
sunt qui, § 69. 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
Tædet, § 73. *d.* 2.
tamen, § 90. *a.* 3.
tantum abest ut, § 84. *a. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3.
tantum quod, § 79. *d. obs.* 2.
telluris operta, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
tempero, § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2.
timidus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
tum, *tunc*, § 89. 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*
turpe, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
Ullus, § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 3.
usque, § 91. 1. *obs. ii.*
usus, § 76. *d.* 5.
utile, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
utor, two Abl., § 70. 3. *obs.* 4.
utor, § 76. *d.* 3.
utrum, § 90. *a.* 6.
Vaco, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
vel, § 78. *b.* 1. § 90. *a.* 2.
venit mihi in mentem, § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 3.
venio, § 70. 3. *obs.* 1.
vero, *verum*, § 90. *a.* 3.
vescor, § 76. *d.* 3.
videor, § 70. 3.
vitabundus with Acc., § 75. *a. obs.* 1.
vocor, § 70. 3.

Digitized by Google

INDEX III.

Index of References.

1. Auson. *Ausonius.*

x. 462. § 15. 1. 1. *obs.* 2.

2. Cæs. *Cæsar.*

B.C. *Bellum Civile.*

i. 46. § 91. *a.* 2.
i. 83. § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
iii. 27. § 91. *c.* 2. *ii.*

B.G. *Bellum Gallicum.*

i. 2. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. *i.*
i. 6. § 69. 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
i. 48. § 91. *a.* 21.
i. 49. § 91. *b.* 1.
iii. 106. § 77. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
vi. 18. § 91. *a.* 25.
vi. 27. § 91. *a.* 12.
vi. 44. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.

3. Cat. *Catullus.*

x. 5. § 92. 1. *obs.*

4. Cic. *Cicero.*

Ac. *Quæstiones Academicæ.*

iv. 40. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1. *i.*

Am. *de Amicitiâ.*

1. § 84. *a. ii.* 3. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 90. *a.* 5. *i.*
2. § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 3. *i.*
— § 84. *b. iii.* 3. *obs.* 3. *i.*
4. § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 5.
6. § 23. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2.
— § 90. *a.* 6. *a. ii.*
9. § 16. III. 1. 1. *a. obs.* 1.
14. § 76. *d.* 1. *obs.* 2.
17. § 79. *d. obs.* 1.

p. Ar. *p. Archiâ poetâ.*

3. § 66. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
6. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii. a.* 5.

Att. *ad Atticum Epist.*

ii. 4. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
ii. 24. § 84. *b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3. *iii.*
iii. 21. § 84. *a. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3.
vi. 2. § 84. *a. iii.* 1. *obs.* 2. 1.
vii. 3. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
xi. 6. § 84. *b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3. *iii.*
xi. 13. § 73. *d.* 2. *obs.* 2.
xi. 15. § 84. *b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3. *iii.*
xi. 16. § 77. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
xii. 18. § 77. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
xii. 27. § 73. *d.* 2. *obs.* 2.
xii. 37. § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 3.
xiii. 32. § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 3.

p. Balb. *p. Corn. Balbo.*

20. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1. *ii.*

Brut. *Brutus.*

1. § 73. *c.* 4. *obs.*
10. § 91. *a.* 12.
35. § 70. 3. *obs.* 1.
85. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
89. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii. b.* 1.

Cat. *in Catilinam.*

i. 3. § 79. *b.* 3. *obs.* 2.
i. 9. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
—— § 76. *c. obs.* 1. *ii.*
—— § 90. *b.* 6. *ii.*
ii. 3. § 92. 4. *obs. ii.*
ii. 7. § 91. *a.* 21.
ii. 9. § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 1. *i.*
iii. 3. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.
iv. 3. § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1. *iv.*

Digitized by Google

Clu. *p. Cluentio.*
9. § 77. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
40. § 77. *a.* 2. *obs.* 3.

Divin. *or* d. Div. *de Divinatione.*
i. 6. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
i. 16. § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
i. 28. § 91. *a.* 1.
ii. 13. § 23. *f. obs.* 2.

Fam. *ad Familiares Epist.*
i. 2. § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
i. 7. § 79. *d. obs.* 4. *iii.*
—— § 84. *a. i.* 2. *obs.* 1.
—— § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i. c.*
i. 9. § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
ii. 8. § 79. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
iv. 12. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii. b.* 1.
—— § 91. *a.* 24.
v. 2. § 78. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
v. 4. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
v. 7. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
v. 9. § 77. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1.
vi. 3. § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
vi. 7. § 84. *a. iii.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
vii. 23. § 79. *d. obs.* 4. *iv.*
ix. 11. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. *i.*
ix. 14. § 84. *a. iii.* 2. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
ix. 22. § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
x. 15. § 91. *b.* 1.
xv. 2. § 77. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
xv. 14. § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*

Fin. *de finibus.*
i. 6. § 90. *b.* 2. *ii.*
ii. 2. § 79. *d. obs.* 3. *i.*
ii. 3. § 90. *b.* 2. *ii.*
ii. 20. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
ii. 22. § 68. 3. *obs.* 3.
iii. 4. § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 3.
iii. 10. § 84. *c.* 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*
iii. 19. § 66. *c. obs.* 2. *iii.*
iv. 5. § 90. *b.* 2. *ii.*

p. Flac. *pro Flacco.*
26. § 78. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.

a. Her. *ad Herennium.*
i. 1. § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.

Inv. *de Inventione.*
i. 2. § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
i. 36. § 91. *b.* 2.

Leg. *de Legibus.*
ii. 10. § 90. *a.* 4. *iv.*
ii. 16. § 91. *a.* 25.

L. Man. *p. lege Maniliâ.*
3. § 77. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*

p. Mar. *pro Marcello.*
10. § 86. *b.* 2. *obs.* 4. *iv.*

p. Mil. *pro Milone.*
2. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.
16. § 91. *a.* 18.

Mur. *pro Murænâ.*
40. § 77. *e.* 3. *obs.* 3. *ii.*

N.D. *de naturâ deorum.*
i. 2. § 91. *a.* 2.
i. 44. § 73. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
ii. 6. § 67. 2. *obs.* 1.
ii. 62. § 90. *a.* 1. *i.*
iii. 14. § 79. *d. obs.* 3.
iii. 36. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *v.*

Off. *de Officiis.*
i. 4. § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
i. 14. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs. a. ii.*
i. 15. § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
i. 19. § 91. *c.* 1. *ii.*
i. 23. § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
i. 25. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 2.
i. 28. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. *i.*
i. 39. § 79. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.
i. 43. § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
ii. 8. § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 1. *i.*
iii. 2. § 77. *c.* 2. *obs.* 1.
iii. 11. § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
—— § 87. *b.* 2. *obs.* 1.
iii. 12. § 90. *a.* 6. *a. ii.*
iii. 18. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
iii. 29. § 74. *a.* 6. *obs.* 3.

Or. *Orator.*
7. § 79. *f.* 1. *obs.* 3.

d. Or. *de Oratore.*
i. 4. § 66. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
i. 34. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
i. 57. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
ii. 1. § 73. *c.* 4. *obs.*
ii. 22. § 84. *b. ii.* 2. *obs.* 2.
ii. 35. § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.

Digitized by Google

Pronouns, § 23.
Pronunciation, § 2. *a.*
Punctuation, § 2 *c.*
Reduplication, § 31. *b. iii.*
Roots, § 57.
Substantives, § 57.
Supines, § 31. *c.*
Tenses, § 24. *c.*
——— derivative, § 32.
Verbs, § 24.
—— compound, § 51.
Verbs, contractions in, § 30.
—— defective, § 48.
—— endings of, § 29. § 35.
—— formation of, § 25.
Verbs, irregular, § 42.
—— of two Conjugations, § 27. *obs.* 4.
Voices, § 24. *a.*
——— active, § 28.
——— passive, § 34.
Words, classes of, § 58.

SYNTAX.

Ablative, § 76.
—— absolute, § 77. *d.*
—— of agent, § 76. *a.*
——— from a place, § 77. *a.* 3.
——— fulness or want, § 76. *d.*
——— instrument, § 76. *b.*
——— material, § 76. *a.* 4.
——— part affected, § 76. *b.* 2.
——— price, § 76. *c.*
——— quality, § 73. *b.*
——— removal, § 76. *d.* 6.
——— separation, § 76. *d.* 6.
——— size and space, § 77. *b.*
——— time, § 77. *c.* 1.
——— of union, § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 3.
——— primary meaning of, § 72. *obs.* 5.
Accusative, § 75.
—— cognate, § 75. *a. obs.* 2.
—— double, § 75. *b.*
—— single, § 75. *a.*
—— of part affected, § 76. *b.* 2.
——— place, § 77. *a.* 2.
——— restriction, § 75. *obs.* 4.
——— size and space, § 77. *b.*
——— time, § 77. *c.* 2.
—— primary meaning of, § 72. *obs.* 4.
—— with Adj. § 75. *a. obs.* 1.
——— Verbs causative, § 75. *b.* 3.
——— neuter, § 75. *a. obs.* 3.
——— passive, § 75. *b.* 2.
Adjective, § 78.
—— an epithet, § 68. 1. *obs.* 1.
—— a predicate, § 68. 1. *obs.* 1.
Adjective, neuter, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
—— partitive, § 73. *c.* 1.
—— and substantive, § 68.
—— neut. with Gen., § 73. *c.* 2.
Adjective used alone, § 68. 4.
—— Pronouns, § 79. *f.*
Adjectives meaning
—— accusation, § 73. *d.* 6.
—— affinity, § 74. *c.* 3.
—— desire, § 73. *d.* 4.
—— ease, § 74. *a.* 6.
—— equality, § 74. *c.* 3.
—— fulness, § 76. *d.* 2.
—— knowledge, § 73. *d.* 4.
—— memory, § 73. *d.* 4.
—— part affected, § 76. *b.* 2.
—— participation, § 73. *c.* 4.
—— pleasantness, § 74. *a.* 6.
—— quantity, § 73. *c.* 2.
—— reference, § 74. *b.* 7.
—— removal, § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 2.
—— separation, § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 2.
—— similarity, § 74. *c.* 3.
—— union, § 74. *c.* 3.
—— utility, § 74. *a.* 6.
—— want, § 76. *d.* 2.
Adverbs, § 89.
—— of affinity, § 74. *c.* 3.
——— ease, § 74. *a.* 6.
——— equality, § 74. *c.* 3.
——— pleasantness, § 74. *a.* 6.
——— quantity, time, and place, § 73. *c.* 3.
——— removal, § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 2.
——— similarity, § 74. *c.* 3.
——— time, § 89. 2. *obs.* 2.

Digitized by Google

Adverbs of union, § 74. *c.* 3.
——— utility, § 74. *a.* 6.
Antecedent and Relative, § 69.
—— omitted, § 69. 1. *obs.* 2.
Apposition, § 66. *a.*
Attraction, § 66. *c.*
—— of Relative, § 69. 3. *obs.* 1.
Attraction inverted, § 69. 3. *obs.* 2.
Cases not governed, § 77.
Clauses accessory, § 65. *b.* 2.
——— adjectival, § 65. *d.* 2.
——— adverbial, § 65. *d.* 3.
——— co-ordinate, § 65. *c.*
——— subordinate, § 65. *c.*
——— substantival, § 65. *d.* 1.
Comparatives, § 78. *a.*
——— two, § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 4.
——— with Abl. § 78. *a.* 2.
——— *quam* omitted, § 78. *a.* 3.
——— *quam ut* or *qui*, § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
——— *quam pro*, § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3.
Complements of a sentence, § 65. *b.*
Concords, first, § 67.
——— second, § 68.
——— third, § 69.
Condition and consequent, § 84. *b. iii.* 2.
Conjunctions, § 90.
—— with co-ordinate clauses, § 90. *a.*
——— subordinate clauses, § 90. *b.*
—— admissive, § 84. *b. iii.* 3.
—— adversative, § 90. *a.* 3.
—— argumental, § 90. *a.* 4.
—— causal, § 84. *a. iii.* 2.
—— conditional, § 84. *b. iii.* 2.
—— consecutive, § 84. *a. iii.* 1.
—— copulative, § 90. *a.* 1.
—— disjunctive, § 90. *a.* 2.
—— illative, § 90. *a.* 5.
—— intentional, § 84. *b. iii.* 1.
—— interrogative, § 90. *a.* 6.
—— temporal, § 84. *a. iii.* 3.
Construction of sentences, § 65.
Correction, § 66. *b.*
Dative, § 74.
Dative, alone, § 74. *a.* 6. *obs.* 2.
—— for Gen. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
—— of agent, § 76. *a.*
——— object to which direction is made, § 74. *b.*
——— person interested, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
——— place, § 77. 1. *obs.* 1.
——— purpose, § 74. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.
——— receiver, § 74. *a.*
——— union, § 74. *c.*
—— primary meaning of, § 72. *obs.* 3.
—— a second, § 74. *b.* 8.
Demonstratives, § 79. *c.*
—— two united, § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 3.
Dependent sentences, § 65. *c.*
Deponents, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
Distance, § 77. *b.*
Distributives, § 78. *c.* 3.
Epithet, § 68. 1. *obs.* 1.
—— agreeing with many nouns, § 68. 2. *obs.* 2.
Futures, use of, § 87. *a.* 2. *obs.* 4.
—— in the Infin., § 87. *c. obs.* 2.
Future part. pass., § 86. *a.* 3.
Genitive, § 73.
—— alone, § 73. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
—— exegetic, § 73. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
—— of object, § 73. *d.*
——— part affected, § 76. *b.* 2.
——— participation, § 73. *c.*
——— possessor, § 73. *a.*
——— quality, § 73. *b.*
—— primary meaning of, § 72. *obs.* 2.
Gerunds, § 88.
Gerundial adjective, § 88. 5.
Historic Infinitive, § 85. 3. *obs.* 1.
——— Present, § 87. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
——— Tenses, § 87. *a.*
Imperative, § 83.
—— in *oratio obliqua*, § 83. 1. *obs.* 3.
—— of Perfect Pass. § 83. 1. *obs.* 4.
—— Present and Future, § 83. 1. *obs.* 1.
—— substitutes for, § 83. 1. *obs.* 2.

Digitized by Google

Imperative, with negatives, § 83. 2.
Imperfects, § 87. *b.* 1.
Impersonal verbs, § 67. 7. § 73. *d.* 2.
—— passives, § 80.
Indefinites, § 87. *b.* 3.
Independent sentences, § 65. *c.*
Indicative, § 82.
Indicative, distinguished from Subj., § 81. 3.
—— for Potential, § 84. *c.* 2.
—— in dependent clauses, § 82. 2.
—— with admissive particles, § 84. *b. iii.* 3.
———— causal—§ 84. *a. iii.* 2. *obs.* 3.
———— conditional—§ 84. *b. iii.* 2.
———— relatives, § 82. 1. *obs.* 1. § 84. *b. ii.* 2.
———— temporal particles, § 84. *a. iii.* 3.
Indirect assertion, § 65. *d.* 1. *i.* § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*
——— petition, § 65. *d.* 1. *ii.* § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
——— question, § 65. *d.* 1. *iii.* § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
Infinitive, § 85.
—— alone, § 85. 3.
———— in exclamations, § 85. 3. *obs.* 2.
—— as Acc., § 85. 1.
——— Nom., § 85. 1.
—— and its subject, § 85. *a.*
—— case of subject, § 85. *a.* 2. *obs.* 3.
—— without a subject, § 85. *a.* 2.
—— connected with other verbs, § 85. *b.*
—— dependent on Adj., § 85. 2. *obs.*
—— difference between Eng. and Lat., § 85. *b. obs.* 3.
—— substitutes for, § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2.
Infinitivus historicus, § 85. 3. *obs.* 1.
—— with Nom. § 85. 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
Interjections, § 92.
Interrogatives, § 79. *e.*
—— and answer, § 66. *a.* 2.
Measure of excess, § 78. *b.* 2.
Middle Voice, § 80. 1. *obs.* 3.
Moods, § 81.
Names of Places, § 77. *a.*
—— with Adj., § 77. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
Negatives, § 89. *obs.* 3.
———— two counteracting, § 89. *obs.* 3. *iv.*
Neuter Adj. and Pron. with Double Acc., § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.
——— Verbs with Acc., § 75. *a. obs.* 3.
———— passive, § 80. 1. 2.
Nominative, § 70.
—— in predicate, § 70. 2.
—— with Infin., § 85. *a.* 2. *obs.* 3.
Numerals, § 78. *c.*
Object immediate, § 72. 2.
——— remote, § 72. 2.
Objective Gen., § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 1.
Oblique cases, § 72.
Oratio obliqua, § 65. *c.* 2.
———— —— virtual, § 84. *a. ii.* 2.
———— with Subj. § 84. *a. ii.* 1.
——— *recta*, § 65. *c.* 2.
Participles, § 86.
—— force of, § 86. *a.*
—— case of, § 86. *b. obs.* 3.
—— Eng. and Lat. compared, § 86. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
—— equal to *Adjectival* or *Adverbial* clauses, § 86. *b. obs.* 4.
Partitives, § 73. *c.* 1.
—— omitted, § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
Passive voice, § 80.
—— impersonals, § 80. 2.
Perfects, § 87. *b.* 2.
Personal pronouns, § 79. *a.*
Place, § 77. *a.*
Possessives, § 79. *b.*
—— with Gen. of Adj., § 79. *b.* 2.
—— with Relatives, § 79. *b.* 3.
Potential, force of, § 84. *obs.*
—— mood, § 84. *b.*
—— independent, § 84. *c.*
Predicate, § 65. *a.* 2.

Digitized by Google

Predicate, Adjectives, § 68. 1. *obs.* 1.
——— neuter, § 68. 1. *obs.* 1.
—— Adj. agreeing with many nouns, § 68. 2. *obs.* 1.
—— noun in, § 70. 2.
—— relative agrees with, § 69. 2.
—— verb agrees with, § 67. 8.
Prepositions, § 91.
—— as adverbs, § 91. 1. *obs.*
—— verbs compounded with, § 74. *b.* 3.
—— understood, § 91. *d.*
Pronouns, § 79.
Propositions, § 65.
Questions indirect, § 79. 2.
——— with Subj., § 84. *a. i.* 1.
Relative pronouns, § 79. *d.*
—— and antecedent, § 69.
—— attracted, § 69. 3. *obs.* 1.
—— case of, § 69. 3.
—— limiting the antecedent, § 69. 4.
—— not limiting, § 69. 4.
—— with Subj., § 84. *a. ii.*
——— Infin., § 84. *a. ii.* 1. *obs.* 3.
Size, § 77. *b.* 2.
Space, § 77. *b.* 1.
Subject, § 65. *a.*
—— and verb, § 67.
—— a sentence, § 67. 5.
—— not expressed, § 67. 6.
—— of impersonals, § 67. 7.
——— Infinitive, § 85. *a.*
Subjunctive, force of, § 84. *obs.*
—— true, § 44. *a.*
Substantiva mobilia, § 66. *a. obs.* 2.
Substantive and Adj., § 68.
—— with many Adj., § 68. 2.
——— Gen., § 73. *a.* 1. § 73. *d.* 1.
Superlatives, § 78. *b.*
—— with *quisque*, § 78. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.
Supines, § 88. *b.*
Synesis, § 67. 2. *obs.* 1.
Tenses, § 87.
—— in the Infinitive, § 87. *c.*
—— marking the state of an action, § 87. *b.*
——— the time, § 87. *a.*
—— similar, § 87. *a.* 1.
Verbs, causative, § 75. *b.* 3.
Verbs, compounded with Prep., § 74. *b.* 3. 4. 5. 6.
—— *bene, satis, male*, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
—— *cum*, § 74. *c. obs.* 1.
—— copulative, § 70. 2. *obs.* 1.
—— expressing direction, § 74. *b.* 1.
——— feelings, § 74. *b.* 2.
——— ——— union, &c., § 74. *c.* 1.
—— omission of, § 67. 6. *obs.* 3.
—— with second Dat., § 74. *b.* 8.
——— double Acc., § 75. *b.*
—— transitive, § 75. *a.*
Verbs signifying to
—— abound, § 76. *d.* 1.
—— abstain, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— accuse, § 73. *d.* 6.
—— acquit, § 73. *d.* 6.
—— appoint, § 75. *b.* 3.
—— benefit, § 74. *a.* 1.
—— buy, § 76. *c.*
—— call, § 75. *b.* 3.
—— cause, § 75. *b.* 3.
—— cease, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— choose, § 75. *b.* 3.
—— command, § 74. *a.* 5.
—— communicate, § 74. *c. obs.* 1.
—— compare, § 74. *c.* 1.
—— condemn, § 73. *d.* 6.
—— congratulate, § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2.
—— contend, § 74. *c.* 2.
—— declare, § 74. *a.* 4.
—— defend, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— deliver, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— depart, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— deprive, § 76. *d.* 1.
—— devote, § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2.
—— differ, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— display, § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2.
—— distinguish, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— divide, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— entrust, § 74. *a.* 3.
—— envy, § 74. *b.* 2.
—— esteem, § 74. 3. *obs.* 5.
—— favour, § 74. *b.* 2.
—— fear, § 74. *b.* 2.
—— fight, § 74. *c.* 2.
—— fill, § 76. *d.*
—— forget, § 73. *d.* 7.

Digitized by Google

Verbs signifying to give, § 74. *a.* 3.
—— hate, § 74. *b.* 2.
—— injure, § 74. *a.* 1.
—— keep off, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— loose, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— make, § 75. *b.* 3.
—— name, § 75. *b.* 3.
—— obey, § 74. *a.* 5.
—— pay, § 74. *a.* 3.
—— persuade, § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2.
—— pity, § 73. *d.* 3.
—— present, § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 2.
—— promise, § 74. *a.* 4.
—— prove, § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2.
—— recommend, § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2.
—— reckon, § 75. *b.* 3.
—— refuse, § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 1.
—— remember, § 73. *d.* 7.
—— remind, § 73. *d.* 7.
—— remove, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— resist, § 74. *a.* 5.
Verbs signifying to seem, § 74. 3.
—— sell, § 76. *c.*
—— separate, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— show, § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2.
—— speak, § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
—— stick, § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
—— take away, § 76. *d.* 6.
—— think, § 75. *b.* 3.
—— threaten, § 74. *a.* 4.
—— value, § 76. *c.*
—— vow, § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2.
—— want, § 76. *d.* 1.
—— yield, § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 1.
to be, § 70. 3.
— be angry, § 74. *b.* 2.
—— called, § 74. 3.
—— chosen, § 74. 3.
—— elected, § 74. 3.
—— named, § 74. 3.
—— thought, § 74. 3.
Vocative case, § 71.

INDEX II.

Etymology.

Abus, D. and Ab. Pl. Dec. i. § 9. *obs.* 4.
accepso, § 30. *obs.* 3.
accingier, § 37. 4. *obs.*
accipiter, *-tris*, § 12. *obs.* 2.
acer, § 18. 1. *obs.* 2.
adeo, *adeor*, § 47. 6. *obs.* 2.
ædilis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
adjûro, § 30. *obs.* 2.
Æneas, § 9. *obs.* 5.
æther, *aer*, Ac. *a*, § 12. *obs.* 7.
affinis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
aio, § 49. 1.
ajo for *aio*, § 2. 2. *obs.* 1.
alias, § 52. *a.* 2.
alii, *aliæ*, Gen. § 23. *f.* *obs.* 2.
Albis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *a.*
amâram, § 30. *obs.* 2.
amâsti, § 30. *obs.* 2.
amandus sum, § 36. *obs.* 2.
amaturus sum, § 30. *obs.* 1.
ambage, § 16. III. 2. 2.
amnis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
amussis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *a.*
an, *am*, *amb*, § 56.
ancile, *-iorum*, § 11. *obs.* 4.
Anchises, § 9. *obs.* 5.
anguis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
annali, § 16. III. 2. 2.
anus, G. *anuis*, § 13. *obs.* 1.
apage, § 49. 5.
apis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *f.*
Aprilis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *c.*
Aquinas, § 19. 5. *obs.* 2.
arbosem for *arborem*, § 2. *a.* *obs.* 2.
Arcas, § 12. *obs.* 7.

Digitized by Google

astu, § 16. III. 2. 3.
Athos, § 10. *obs.* 8.
audii, audieram, § 30. *obs.* 2.
audisti, § 30. *obs.* 2.
ausim, § 30. *obs.* 3.
ave, § 49. 5.
avis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
Bacchanalia, -ium, -iorum, § 11. *obs.* 4.
basis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *a.*
biduum, § 22. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
biennium, § 22. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
bimus, § 22. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
binarius, § 22. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1.
bipennis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
bipes, § 19. 5. *obs.* 3.
bos, bov-is, § 12. *obs.* 4.
buris, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
Cacoethes, § 16. III. 2. 1.
cælite, § 16. III. 2. 2.
cætera, -um, § 20. 2.
calcar, § 11. *obs.* 4.
canis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *f.*
caro, carn-is, § 12. *obs.* 1.
casse, § 16. III. 2. 2.
cĕdo, § 49. 6.
celer, § 18. 1. *obs.* 2.
cepe, § 16. III. 2. 1.
cete, § 14. *obs.* 4.
chaos, § 10. *obs.* 8.
chelys, § 11. *obs.* 6.
cicur, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
civis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
classis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
clavis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
cœpi, § 48. 3.
compedis, § 16. III. 2. 3.
confit, confieri, § 47. 5.
consors, § 19. 5. *obs.* 3.
cornu, cornûs, § 13. *obs.* 1.
cucumis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
cucumis, -is or *eris*, § 12. *obs.* 3.
cupressus, § 10. *obs.* 7.
Decemviri, § 22. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
defit, defiunt, § 47. 5.
degener, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
dei, dii, dî, § 10. *obs.* 3.
Delos, § 10. *obs.* 1.
derisui, § 16. III. 2. 2.
deses, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
despicatui, § 16. III. 2. 2.
deus, Voc., § 10. *obs.* 2.
di, dis, § 56. 2.
dic, § 32. *b. obs.*
dicebo, for *dicam*, § 32. *a.* 2. *obs.*
diē for *diei*, § 14. *obs.* 2.
dis, ditis, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
diu for *die*, § 16. III. 2. 2.
diu, diutius, § 52. *b.*
diutissimè, § 52. *b.*
dives, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
divisui, § 16. III. 2. 2.
domus, § 13. *obs.* 5.
duc, § 32. *b. obs.*
duim for *dem*, § 32. *c.* 1. *obs.*
duo for *duos*, § 22. 1. *obs.*
duoviri, § 22. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
E for *ei*, Dec. 5. § 14. *obs.* 2.
eapse, eumpse, § 23. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
edim for *edam*, § 32. *c.* 1. *obs.*
egomet, § 23. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
epos, § 10. *obs.* 8.
erepsēmus, § 30. *obs.* 2.
estur, § 47. 3.
ethos, § 10. *obs.* 8.
evâsti, § 30. *obs.* 2.
expugnassere, § 30. *obs.* 3.
exspes, § 16. III. 2. 2.
Fac, § 32. *b. obs.*
fames, famē, § 11. *obs.* 5.
fari, fatur, &c., § 49. 3.
[*faux*], *fauce*, § 16. III. 2. 2.
fax, § 16. III. 2. 6.
faxim, faxo, § 30. *obs.* 3.
febris, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
feles or *felis*, § 11. *obs.* 5. *b.*
feminis, § 16. III. 2. 4.
fer, § 32. *b. obs.*
ficus, § 10. *obs.* 7.
fidē for *fidei*, § 14. *obs.* 2.
fides or *fidis*, § 11. *obs.* 5. *b.*
foris, foras, § 52. *a.* 2.
fors, § 16. III. 2. 3.
frater, fratr-is, § 12. *obs.* 2.
fructus, fruiturus, § 32. *e.* 2. *obs.*
frugi, § 20. 2.
frugis, § 16. III. 2. 5.
fustis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
fuo, fuam, § 26. *obs.* 2.
Grus, gru-is, § 12. *obs.* 4.

Digitized by Google

Hermione, § 9. *obs.* 5.
hic, huc, hinc, § 63. *b.* 1.
hicce, hiccine, § 23. *b. obs.* 1.
hiems, § 16. III. 2. 5.
hodie, § 52. *a.* 2.
hospes, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
hujusce, § 23. *b. obs.* 1.
hunccine, § 23. *b. obs.* 1.
I for *ei*, Dec. 5, § 14. *obs.* 2.
ibis, -idis, ibes, § 12. *obs.* 3.
ignis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
Ilion, § 10. *obs.* 8.
illic, illuc, illinc, § 63. *b.* 1.
impetis, -e, § 16. III. 2. 2.
implēro, § 30. *obs.* 2.
implēssem, § 30. *obs.* 2.
in, § 56, 3.
inficias, § 16. III. 2. 2.
inficio, inficior, § 47. 5. *obs.*
infit, § 47. 5.
ingratiis, § 16. III. 2. 2.
injussu, § 16. III. 2. 2.
inops, § 19. 5. *obs.* 3.
inquam, § 49. 2.
insignibam, § 32. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
ipsus for *ipse*, § 23. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1.
istic, istuc, istinc, § 63. *b.* 1.
iter, itiner-is, § 12. *obs.* 1.
Jecur, jecinor-is, § 12. *obs.* 1.
Jesus, § 13. *obs.* 6.
Jupiter, Jovis, § 12. *obs.* 2.
jusso for *jussero*, § 30. *obs.* 3.
jussu, § 16. III. 2. 2.
juvaturus, § 32. *e.* 2. *obs.*
Juvenalis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *e.*
juvenis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *f.*
Laurus, § 10. *obs.* 7.
Lemniasi, § 12. *obs.* 7.
lenibam, § 32. *a. obs.* 2.
levāsso, § 30. *obs.* 3.
licēssit, § 30. *obs.* 3.
ludicra, -um, § 20. 2.
lues, § 16. III. 2. 4.
luo, luiturus, § 48. 1. *obs.* 2.
Macte, § 20. 2.
Manto, § 10. *obs.* 8.
Marcellīa, § 60. *c. obs.* 1.
mater, matr-is, § 12. *obs.* 2.
melos, § 10. *obs.* 8.
meme, § 23. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
meminī, § 48. 3.
memor, § 19. 3. *obs.* 1.
messis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
metuo, metutum, § 48. 1. *obs.* 2.
meus, Voc. *mi*, § 10. *obs.* 2.
mihimet, § 23. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
mortuus, moriturus, § 32. *e.* 2. *obs.*
Natu, § 16. III. 2. 2.
nauci, § 16. III. 2. 2.
navis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
ne, § 56. 4.
necesse, § 20. 2.
neptis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
nequam, § 20. 2.
nŏram, § 30. *obs.* 2.
novi, § 48. 3.
Odi, § 48. 3.
olli for *illi*, § 23. *b.* 2. *obs.* 3.
opis, opem, ope, § 16. III. 2. 5.
orbis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *d.*
Orpheus, § 13. *obs.* 6.
os, oris, § 16. III. 2. 6.
ortus, oriturus, § 32. *e.* 2. *obs.*
ovile, § 11. *obs.* 4.
Pan, Ac. *-a*, § 12. *obs.* 7.
panis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *f.*
pariturus, § 32. *e.* 2. *obs.*
pater-familias, § 9. *obs.* 2.
pater, patr-is, § 11. *obs.* 3. § 12. *obs.* 2.
pauci, pauco, § 20. 1.
pauper, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
pelvis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
perduim for *perdam*, § 32. *c.* 1. *obs.*
Pericles, § 11. *obs.* 6.
permissu, § 16. III. 2. 2.
pernicii for *-ei*, § 14. *obs.* 2.
pictaï, § 9. *obs.* 1.
pinus, § 10. *obs.* 7.
piscis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *e.*
plebes, G. *is, ei*, § 11. *obs.* 5.
plebs or plebes, § 11. *obs.* 5. *c.*
plerique, § 20. 1.
plus, § 16. III. 2. 5. § 18. 2. *obs.* 2.
poema, G. *atis, æ*, § 12. *obs.* 7.
poesis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.* § 11. *obs.* 6.
pondo, § 16. III. 2. 3.
potis, pote, § 16. III. 2. 2.
potius, potissimum, § 52. *b.*

Digitized by Google

preci, -em, -e, § 16. III. 2. 4.
præceps, -ipitis, § 12. *obs.* 1.
præsto, § 20. 2.
primanus, § 22. *a* 2. *obs.* 4.
primoris, -es, § 20. 2.
primum, -ò, § 22. *b.* 4. *obs.* 1.
procinctu, § 16. III. 2. 2.
promptu, § 16. III. 2. 2.
puber, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
Quadrimus, § 22. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
quæso, quæsumus, § 49. 4.
qualiscunque, § 23. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2.
qualisqualis, § 23. *d. obs.* 2.
quantuscunque, § 23. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2.
quantusquantus, § 23. *d. obs.* 2.
quicunque, § 23. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2.
quisquis, § 23. *d. obs.* 3.
quotcunque, § 23. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2.
quotquot, § 23. *d. obs.* 3.
Ravis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
re, red, § 56. 5.
reapse, § 23. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
reliquiæ, § 56. 5.
restis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
rettuli, § 56. 5.
Sæpius, sæpissimè, § 52. *b.*
salve, § 49. 5.
satis, satius, § 52. *b.*
satrapes, G. *is*, D. *æ*, § 9. *obs.* 4.
satur, § 17. 2. *obs.*
scibo for *sciam*, § 32. *a.* 2. *obs.*
se, § 56. 6.
sectum, secaturus, § 32. *e.* 2. *obs.*
secundanus, § 22. *a.* 2. *obs.* 4.
secundum, -ò, § 22. *b.* 4. *obs.* 1.
secus, secius, § 52. 6.
semet, § 23. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
seminex, § 20. 2.
sementis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
senarius, § 22. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1.
senex, senis, § 12. *obs.* 1.
sentis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *e.*
sepelí, § 30. *obs.* 2.
September, § 11. *obs.* 3.
sese, § 23. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
siem for *sim*, § 26 *obs.* 1.
sitis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
situs, § 16. III. 2. 4.
sol, § 16. III. 2. 6.
sonitum, sonaturus, § 32. *e.* 2. *obs.*
sons, § 20. 2.
sordis, -em, -e, § 16. III. 2. 4.
sospes, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
spontis, -e, § 16. III. 2. 3.
strigilis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
suapte, suopte, § 23. *e. obs.* 2.
supellex, ectilis, § 12. *obs.* 1.
suppetias, § 16. III. 2. 2.
summóssem, § 30. *obs.* 2.
sus, su-is, § 12. *obs.* 4.
Temet, § 23. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
Tempe, § 16. III. 2. 1.
ternarius, § 22. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1.
tertiadecumani, § 23. *a.* 2. *obs.* 4.
tertianus, § 22. *a.* 2. *obs.* 4.
tete, § 23. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
Tiber, Tibris, Tiberis, § 11. *obs.* 3.
Tiberis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
Tibris, -idis, is, § 12. *obs.* 2.
tigris, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
tigris, -idis, is, § 12. *obs.* 2.
torale, toral, § 11. *obs.* 4.
torris, § 11. *obs.* 2. *e.*
trabes, trabis, trabs, § 11. *obs.* 5. *c.*
trâxe for *traxisse*, § 30. *obs.* 2.
tresviri, § 22. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
trimus, § 22. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
tussis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *b.*
U for *ui*, Dec. 4. § 13. *obs.* 2.
ua, ue, ui, &c. § 2. 2. *obs.* 3.
uber, § 19. 5. *obs.* 1.
ubus, D. and Abl. Pl. Dec. 4. § 13. *obs.* 3.
úm for *arum*, § 9. *obs.* 3.
úm for *orum*, § 10. *obs.* 4.
úm for *uum*, § 13. *obs.* 3.
Vale, § 49. 5.
ve, § 56. 7.
vectis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *e.*
Verria, § 60. *c. obs.* 1.
vermis, § 11. *obs.* 2. *e.*
vesper, § 16. III. 2. 4.
vesperi, -e, § 52. *a.* 2.
vetus, § 19. 3. *obs.* 1.
vicis, -em, -e, § 16. III. 2. 5.
victor, trix, Adj., § 19. 1. *obs.*
vis, § 16. III. 2. 5.
volucris, § 11. *obs.* 2. *f.*
volupe, § 20. 2.

Digitized by Google

Classes of Words.

Aceus, § 60. *b.* 3.
ades, § 59. *e.* 1.
æus, § 60. *c.* 2.
ago, § 59. *b.* 3.
alis, § 60. *b.* 1. § 61. *a.* 2.
aneus, § 60. *b.* 1.
antus, § 61. *a.* 1.
anus, § 60. *c.* 1. § 60. *c.* 2. § 60. *c.* 4.
aris, § 60. *b.* 1.
arium, § 59. *c.* 2.
arius, § 60. *b.* 1.
as, § 59. *e.* 1. § 60. *c.* 2. § 61. *c.*
aster, astra, § 59. *f.* 2.
atus, § 59. *d.* 3.
ax, § 60. *a.* 2.
bilis, § 60. *a.* 7.
bra, § 59. *c.* 4.
brum, § 59. *c.* 4.
bulum, § 59. *c.* 4.
bundus, § 60. *a.* 4.
cio, § 59. *f.* 2.
crum, § 59. *c.* 4.
culum, § 59. *c.* 4.
culus, § 59. *f.* 1.
cundus, § 60. *a.* 5.
è, § 63. *a.* 1.
ela, § 59. *d.* 1.
ellus, § 59. *f.* 1.
ens, § 60. *a.* 1.
ensis, § 60. *c.* 1. *obs.* 3. § 60. *c.* 4.
enus, § 60. *b.* 3.
eo, § 62. *a.* 1.
ernus, § 60. *b.* 5.
etum, § 59. *c.* 2.
eus, § 60. *b.* 3. § 60. *c.* 1. § 60. *c.* 2.
fariam, § 63. *a.* 2.
ia, § 59. *d.* 2.
iades, § 59. *e.* 1.
ianus, § 60. *c.* 1.
ico, iculo, § 62. *b. obs.* 2.
icus, § 60. *b.* 2.
icus, § 60. *b.* 2. § 60. *c.* 1. § 60. *c.* 3.
ides, § 59. *e.* 1.
idis, § 60. *a.* 8.
idus, § 60. *a.* 8.
ies, § 59. *d.* 2. § 63. *a.* 2.
igo, § 59. *b.* 3.
ile, § 59. *c.* 2.
ilis, § 60. *a.* 7. § 60. *b.* 1.
illo, § 62. *b.* 4.
illus, § 59. *f.* 1.
im, § 63. *a.* 2.
ine, § 59, *e.* 1.
inus, § 60. *b.* 3.
inus, § 60. *b.* 3. *c.* 1. *c.* 2.
is, § 59. *e.* 1.
isper, § 63. *a.* 2.
itas, § 59. *d.* 2.
ites, § 60. *c.* 2.
itia, § 59. *d.* 2.
ities, § 59. *d.* 2.
itim, § 63. *a.* 2.
itius, icius, § 60. *b.* 1.
itudo, § 59. *d.* 2.
ium, § 59. *c.* 3. § 59. *d.* 3.
ius, § 60. *b.* 1. *c.* 2. *c.* 3.
ivus, § 60. *b.* 1.
men, § 59. *b.* 2.
mentum, § 59. *b.* 2.
monia, § 59. *d.* 3.
monium, § 59. *d.* 3.
nus, § 60. *b.* 3.
o, § 62. *a.* 2. § 63. *a.* 1.
olentus, § 60. *b.* 4.
one, § 59. *e.* 1.
or, § 59. *d.* 1.
osus, § 60. *b.* 4.
ot, § 61. *a.* 3.
otus, § 61. *a.* 3.
sco, § 62. *b.* 2.
sul, § 59. *a.* 3.
ter, § 61. *b.* § 63. *a.* 1.
ticus, § 60. *b.* 2.
tilis, § 60. *b.* 2.
tio, § 59. *d.* 7.
tor, § 59. *a.* 1.
torium, § 59. *c.* 1.
trina, § 59. *c.* 1.
trix, § 59. *a.* 2.
trum, § 59. *b.* 4.
tum, § 59. *b.* 1.
tura, § 59. *d.* 1.
turio, § 62. *b.* 3.

Digitized by Google

tus, § 59. *d.* 1. § 60. *a.* 6.
ucus, § 60. *a.* 3.
ugo, § 59. *b.* 3.
uleus, § 59. *f.* 2.
ulto, § 62. *b. obs.*
ulum, § 59. *b.* 4.
ulus, § 59. *f.* 1. § 60. *a.* 2.
umnus, umna, § 59. *b.* 2.
urnus, § 60, *b.* 5.
us, § 61. *b.*
utio, § 62. *b.* 2. *obs.*
uus, § 60. *a.* 8. § 60. *b.* 1.
xillus, xilla, § 59. *f.* 2.

SYNTAX.

Abdico, § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.
accuso, § 73. *d.* 6.
ad plenum, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
adulor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
æmulor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
æstiva, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
agnina, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
alius alius, § 79. *f.* 3.
alter, § 78. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2.
amplius, § 78. *a.* 3.
an, anne, § 90. *a.* 6.
angusta viarum, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
antequam, § 84. *a. iii. obs.* 3.
at, ast, § 90. *a.* 3.
atque, § 90. *a.* 1.
atqui, § 90. *a.* 3.
audio, § 70. 3. *obs.* 1.
aut, § 90. *a.* 2.
autem, § 90. *a.* 3.
auxilior, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
avarus, § 72. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
avertor, § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 2.
avidus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
Belli, § 77. *c. obs.* 4.
benedico, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
bidui abest, § 77. *b.* 1. *obs.*
biremis, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
blandior, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
boni consulo, § 76. *c. obs.* 1. *i.*
——*facio*, § 76. *c. obs.* 1. *i.*
bovina, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
Calida, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
certus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
cingo, § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
cingor, § 75. *b.* 2. *obs.*
clam, § 91. 1. *obs. ii.*
committo, § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1.
compertus, § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 5.
conscius, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
consors, § 73. *c.* 4.
consulo, § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 2.
consultus, § 73. *d.* 5. *obs.*
contentus, § 76. *d.* 4.
creor, § 70. 3.
cupidus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
Delecto, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
defendo, § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.
desino with Gen., § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 4.
dicor, § 70. 3.
dignor, § 76. *d.* 3.
dignus, § 76. *d.* 4.
diem dicere, § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 4.
displiceo, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
divina, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
domi, -mo, -mum, § 77. *a.* 4. *obs.* 1.
donec, § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 2.
dono, § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 2.
duco, § 70. 3. *obs.* 3.
dum, § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 2.
Eligor, § 70. 3.
enim, § 90. *a.* 4.
ergo, § 90. *a.* 5.
est mihi, § 74. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1.
est qui, § 69. 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
est-ubi, § 69. 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
et, § 90. *a.* 1.
evado, § 70. 3.
existimor, § 70. 3.
existo, § 70. 3.
expers, § 73. *c.* 4.
exsors, § 73. *c.* 4.
exuo, § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
Famulor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
felix, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
ferina, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
ferox, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
fessus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.

Digitized by Google

fidissimus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
fio, § 73. 3. § 73. *a.* 2.
foris, foras, § 77. *a.* 4. *obs.* 1.
fretus, § 76. *d.* 4.
fungor, § 76. *d.* 3.
fruor, § 76. *d.* 3.
Gaudeo, § 76. *d.* 3.
gelida, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
genus, § 73. *b. obs.* 4.
gnarus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
graminis herba, § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 5.
gratificor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
guberno, § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2.
Habeo, § 70. 3. *obs.* 5.
hæreo, § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
haud, § 89. 2. *obs.* 3. *i.*
hiberna, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
hic ille, § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 3.
hic and *ille*, § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2.
honestum, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
humi, humo, § 77. *a.* 4. *obs.* 1.
Id ætatis, § 73. *b. obs.* 4.
id locorum, § 73. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1.
igitur, § 90. *a.* 5.
ignarus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
immo, § 89. 2. *obs.* 3.
imperitus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
impero, § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
imperor, § 80. 2. *obs.* 2.
incedo, § 70. 3. *obs.* 1.
indies, § 89. 2. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
indignus, § 76. *d.* 3.
indoctus, § 73. *d.* 5.
induo, § 74. *b. obs.* 1. *v.*
in eo est, § 79. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2.
ingratus, § 73. *d.* 4. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
in obliquum, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
inscius, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
inscribo, § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
insidior, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
in solido, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
insons, § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 5.
interea loci, § 73. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1.
interdico, § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *v.* § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.
interest, § 73. *a.* 3.
invideo, § 74. *b.* 2. *obs.* 1.
invideor, § 80. 2. *obs.* 2.
ipse, § 79. *a.* 4.
Jam, § 89. 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
jamdudum, § 87. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
jampridem, § 87. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
jubeo, § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2.
juvo, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
Lædo, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
lætus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
lassus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
lenocinor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
Magno natu, § 73. *b. obs.* 3.
maledico, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.*
mane, § 77. *c. obs.* 2.
manifestus, § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 5.
medeor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
medicor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
medius, § 73. *c.* 4. *obs.* 3.
memini, § 73. *d.* 7.
memor, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
mihi redundant, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
militiæ, § 77. *c. obs.* 4.
mille, § 78. *c.* 2.
minax, with Dat., § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 5.
minime gentium, § 73. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1.
minus, § 78. *a.* 3.
misereor, § 73. *d.* 3.
miseresco, § 73. *d.* 3.
miseret, § 73. *d.* 3.
miseror, § 73. *d.* 3.
moderor, § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2.
modicus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
monstror, § 70. 3. *obs.* 1.
muto, § 76. *c. obs.* 3.
Ne, § 90. *a.* 6.
nam, § 90. *a.* 4.
nedum, § 84. *b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3. *iv.*
nec, § 90. *a.* 1.
nescio-quis, § 79. *e.* 2. *obs.* 2. § 84. *a. i.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
nisi, § 84. *b. iii.* 2. *obs.* 4. § 90. *b.* 5.
noceo, § 74. *a.* 1.
nomen dare, § 70. 3. *obs.* 3.
nomen est, § 70. 3. *obs.* 3.
noxius, § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 5.
nubo, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
num, § 90. *a.* 6.
Obliviscor, § 73. *d.* 5. *obs.* 1.
octava, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
officio, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
omnis for *ullus*, § 79. *e. obs.* 3. *iii.*
oneraria, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
operæ pretium, § 73. *a.* 1. *obs. ii.*

Digitized by Google

opitulor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
opus, § 76. *d.* 5.
Pœnitet, § 73. *d.* 2.
palam, § 91. 1. *obs. ii.*
palpo, *-or*, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
parco, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
particeps, § 73. *c.* 4.
patiens solis, § 73. *d.* 5. *obs.*
patiens solem, § 73. *d.* 5. *obs.*
pertæsus, § 73. *d.* 3.
piger, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
piget, § 73. *d.* 2.
placeo, § 74. *a.* 1.
plus, § 78. *a.* 3.
populus, Voc., § 71. *obs.* 1.
potior, § 76. *d.* 3.
præstolor, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
prima virorum, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
primæ, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
priusquam, § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 3.
procul, § 91. 1. *obs. ii.*
profusus sui, § 73. *d.* 5. *obs. ii.*
propior, § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 3.
proximus, § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 3.
prudens, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
pudet, § 73. *d.* 2.
pulcrum, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *i.*
Quam, § 78. *a.* 2. *b. i.*
quamvis, § 84. *b. iii.* 3.
quanquam, § 84. *b. iii.* 3.
quarta, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
quasi, § 84. *b. iii.* 3. *obs.* 3.
qui with Poten., § 84. *b. ii.*
qui with Subj., § 84. *a. ii.*
quia, § 84. *a. iii.* 2.
quid causæ, § 73. *c.* 2. *obs.* 1.
quid rei, § 73. *c.* 2. *obs.* 1.
quin, § 83. *i. obs.* 2. *i.* § 84. *a. iii.* 1. *obs.* 2.
quippe, § 90. *b.* 2.
quisquam, § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 3.
quisque with Superl., § 78. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.
quo for *ut eo*, § 84. *b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3.
quod, § 94. *a. iii.* 2.
quod for *quantum*, § 79. *d. obs.* 4.
quominus, § 84. *b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3.
quoniam, § 84. *a. iii.* 2. *obs.* 3.
quotidie, § 89. 2. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
quum, § 84. *a. iii.* 2. 3.
Refert, § 73. *a.* 3.
regno with Gen., § 76. *d.* 3. *obs.* 2.
rego, § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2.
reminiscor, § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 3.
reus, § 73. *d.* 6.
rivus aquæ, § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 5.
rudis, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
rus, *rure*, *ruri*, § 77. *a.* 4. *obs.* 1.
Sagax, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
satisfacio, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
scurror, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3.
segnis, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
secundæ, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
securus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
seu, *sive*, § 90. *a.* 2.
si, § 84. *b. iii.* 2.
siquidem, § 90. *b.* 2.
simul, § 91. 1. *obs. ii.*
solvendo esse, § 88. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2.
stativa, § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
studiosus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
sum, § 70. 3.
sum with Gen., § 73. *a.* 2.
sum with Dat., § 74. *a.* 2.
sum in comp., § 74. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
sunt-qui, § 69. 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
Tædet, § 73. *d.* 2.
tamen, § 90. *a.* 3.
tantum abest ut, § 84. *a. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3.
tantum quod, § 79. *d. obs.* 2.
telluris operta, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
tempero, § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2.
timidus, § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
tum, *tunc*, § 89. 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*
turpe, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
Ullus, § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 3.
usque, § 91. 1. *obs. ii.*
usus, § 76. *d.* 5.
utile, § 68. 4. *obs.* 2.
utor, two Abl., § 70. 3. *obs.* 4.
utor, § 76. *d.* 3.
utrum, § 90. *a.* 6.
Vaco, § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
vel, § 78. *b.* 1. § 90. *a.* 2.
venit mihi in mentem, § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 3.
venio, § 70. 3. *obs.* 1.
vero, *verum*, § 90. *a.* 3.
vescor, § 76. *d.* 3.
videor, § 70. 3.
vitabundus with Acc., § 75. *a. obs.* 1.
vocor, § 70. 3.

Digitized by Google

INDEX III.

Index of References.

1. Auson. *Ausonius.*

x. 462. § 15. 1. 1. *obs.* 2.

2. Cæs. *Cæsar.*

B.C. *Bellum Civile.*

i. 46. § 91. *a.* 2.
i. 83. § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
iii. 27. § 91. *c.* 2. *ii.*

B.G. *Bellum Gallicum.*

i. 2. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. *i.*
i. 6. § 69. 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
i. 48. § 91. *a.* 21.
i. 49. § 91. *b.* 1.
iii. 106. § 77. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
vi. 18. § 91. *a.* 25.
vi. 27. § 91. *a.* 12.
vi. 44. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.

3. Cat. *Catullus.*

x. 5. § 92. 1. *obs.*

4. Cic. *Cicero.*

Ac. *Quæstiones Academicæ.*

iv. 40. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1. *i.*

Am. *de Amicitiâ.*

1. § 84. *a. ii.* 3. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 90. *a.* 5. *i.*
2. § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 3. *i.*
— § 84. *b. iii.* 3. *obs.* 3. *i.*
4. § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 5.
6. § 23. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2.
— § 90. *a.* 6. *a. ii.*
9. § 16. III. 1. 1. *a. obs.* 1.
14. § 76. *d.* 1. *obs.* 2.
17. § 79. *d. obs.* 1.

p. Ar. *p. Archiâ poetâ.*

3. § 66. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
6. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii. a.* 5.

Att. *ad Atticum Epist.*

ii. 4. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
ii. 24. § 84. *b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3. *iii.*
iii. 21. § 84. *a. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3.
vi. 2. § 84. *a. iii.* 1. *obs.* 2. 1.
vii. 3. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
xi. 6. § 84. *b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3. *iii.*
xi. 13. § 73. *d.* 2. *obs.* 2.
xi. 15. § 84. *b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3. *iii.*
xi. 16. § 77. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
xii. 18. § 77. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
xii. 27. § 73. *d.* 2. *obs.* 2.
xii. 37. § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 3.
xiii. 32. § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 3.

p. Balb. *p. Corn. Balbo.*

20. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1. *ii.*

Brut. *Brutus.*

1. § 73. *c.* 4. *obs.*
10. § 91. *a.* 12.
35. § 70. 3. *obs.* 1.
85. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
89. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii. b.* 1.

Cat. *in Catilinam.*

i. 3. § 79. *b.* 3. *obs.* 2.
i. 9. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
—— § 76. *c. obs.* 1. *ii.*
—— § 90. *b.* 6. *ii.*
ii. 3. § 92. 4. *obs. ii.*
ii. 7. § 91. *a.* 21.
ii. 9. § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 1. *i.*
iii. 3. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.
iv. 3. § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1. *iv.*

Digitized by Google

Clu. *p. Cluentio.*
9. § 77. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
40. § 77. *a.* 2. *obs.* 3.
Divin. *or* d. Div. *de Divinatione.*
i. 6. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
i. 16. § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
i. 28. § 91. *a.* 1.
ii. 13. § 23. *f. obs.* 2.
Fam. *ad Familiares Epist.*
i. 2. § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
i. 7. § 79. *d. obs.* 4. *iii.*
—— § 84. *a. i.* 2. *obs.* 1.
—— § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i. c.*
i. 9. § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
ii. 8. § 79. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
iv. 12. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii. b.* 1.
—— § 91. *a.* 24.
v. 2. § 78. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
v. 4. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
v. 7. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
v. 9. § 77. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1.
vi. 3. § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
vi. 7. § 84. *a. iii.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
vii. 23. § 79. *d. obs.* 4. *iv.*
ix. 11. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. *i.*
ix. 14. § 84. *a. iii.* 2. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
ix. 22. § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
x. 15. § 91. *b.* 1.
xv. 2. § 77. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
xv. 14. § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
Fin. *de finibus.*
i. 6. § 90. *b.* 2. *ii.*
ii. 2. § 79. *d. obs.* 3. *i.*
ii. 3. § 90. *b.* 2. *ii.*
ii. 20. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
ii. 22. § 68. 3. *obs.* 3.
iii. 4. § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 3.
iii. 10. § 84. *c.* 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*
iii. 19. § 66. *c. obs.* 2. *iii.*
iv. 5. § 90. *b.* 2. *ii.*
p. Flac. *pro Flacco.*
26. § 78. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
a. Her. *ad Herennium.*
i. 1. § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.
Inv. *de Inventione.*
i. 2. § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
i. 36. § 91. *b.* 2.
Leg. *de Legibus.*
ii. 10. § 90. *a.* 4. *iv.*
ii. 16. § 91. *a.* 25.
L. Man. *p. lege Maniliâ.*
3. § 77. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*
p. Mar. *pro Marcello.*
10. § 86. *b.* 2. *obs.* 4. *iv.*
p. Mil. *pro Milone.*
2. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.
16. § 91. *a.* 18.
Mur. *pro Murænâ.*
40. § 77. *e.* 3. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
N.D. *de naturâ deorum.*
i. 2. § 91. *a.* 2.
i. 44. § 73. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
ii. 6. § 67. 2. *obs.* 1.
ii. 62. § 90. *a.* 1. *i.*
iii. 14. § 79. *d. obs.* 3.
iii. 36. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *v.*
Off. *de Officiis.*
i. 4. § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
i. 14. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs. a. ii.*
i. 15. § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
i. 19. § 91. *c.* 1. *ii.*
i. 23. § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
i. 25. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 2.
i. 28. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. *i.*
i. 39. § 79. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.
i. 43. § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
ii. 8. § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 1. *i.*
iii. 2. § 77. *c.* 2. *obs.* 1.
iii. 11. § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
—— § 87. *b.* 2. *obs.* 1.
iii. 12. § 90. *a.* 6. *a. ii.*
iii. 18. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
iii. 29. § 74. *a.* 6. *obs.* 3.
Or. *Orator.*
7. § 79. *f.* 1. *obs.* 3.
d. Or. *de Oratore.*
i. 4. § 66. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
i. 34. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
i. 57. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
ii. 1. § 73. *c.* 4. *obs.*
ii. 22. § 84. *b. ii.* 2. *obs.* 2.
ii. 35. § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.

Digitized by Google

ii. 75. § 84. *b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
iii. 6. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
iii. 43. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
iii. 55. § 79. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.

Or. Par. *Oratoriæ Partitiones.*

1. § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
11. § 90. *a.* 4. *ii.*

Ph. *Philippica.*

ii. 5. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
ii. 11. § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
ii. 16. § 84. *b. iii.* 3. *obs.* 2. *i.*
ii. 34. § 84. *a. ii.* 4. *obs.* 1.
ii. 36. § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 2.
ii. 43. § 66. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
iv. 1. § 79. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.
xi. 10. § 77. *d. obs.* 3.
xi. 14. § 84. *a. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3.

in Pis. *in Pisonem.*

41. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*

p. Plan. *pro Plancio.*

10. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
41. § 91. *b.* 7.
42. § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 1. *i.*

ad Fr. *ad Quint. Fratrem.*

iii. 1. 4. § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 2.

p. Qu. *pro Quintio.*

2. § 84. *b. iii.* 3. *obs.* 3.

p. Rab. *pro Rabirio.*

2. § 9. *obs.* 4.

p. S. R. *p. Sext. Rosc. Am.*

10. § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 4.
19. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
45. § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *i.*

Ros. Com. *p. Roscio Com.*

6. § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
16. § 85. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1. *ii.*

Sen. *de Senectute.*

1. § 66. *c. obs.* 2. *iii.*
— § 84. *b. iii.* 3. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
2. § 79. *d. obs.* 2. *ii.*
— § 91. 2. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
6. § 79. *f.* 2. *obs.* 2.
— § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i. a.*
6. § 90. *b.* 5. *i.*
— § 91. *b.* 1.
7. § 91. *a.* 1.
8. § 90. *a.* 4. *iv.*
11. § 86. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
12. § 70. 3. *obs.* 1.
— § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii. a.* 2.
13. § 69. 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
14. § 78. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1.
— § 84. *a. ii.* 3. *obs.* 1.
— § 89. 2. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
16. § 76. *d.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
17. § 16. III. 1. 1. *a. obs.* 1.
— § 16. III. 1. 1. *c. obs.*
— § 79. *d. obs.* 2. *i.*
19. § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 79. *d. obs.* 3. *ii.*
23. § 78. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.

p. Sext. *pro Sextio.*

7. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
21. § 91. *a.* 16.
52. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
— § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 1. *vi.*

Tusc. *Quæst. Tusculan.*

i. 1. § 90. *b.* 2. 1.
i. 17. § 79. *d. obs.* 1. *ii.*
i. 19. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
ii. 20. § 90. *a.* 2. *i.*
ii. 21. § 87. *a.* 2. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
iv. 5. § 75. *a. obs.* 4. *i.*
iv. 16. § 76. *b.* 2. *obs. iii.*
v. 14. § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
v. 28. § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 3.
v. 37. § 75. *b.* 3. *obs.* 1. *ii.*

Orationes Verrinæ.

Div. *in Q. Cæc. Divinatio.*

1. § 84. *a. ii.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
2. § 73. *b. obs.* 2.
— § 90. *a.* 2. *ii.*
3. § 69. 1. *obs.* 3.
— § 91. *c.* 1. *ii.*
4. § 77. *c.* 2. *obs.* 3.
5. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i. c.*
6. § 90. *a.* 3. *iii.*
— § 91. *a.* 18.
10. § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
— § 90. *a.* 6. *b.* 1.

Digitized by Google

11. § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 79. *c.* 2. *obs.* 1.
— § 85. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
12. § 68. 2. *obs.* 2.
— § 80. 4. *obs.*
13. § 73. *b.* 7. *obs.* 3.
— § 76. *b.* 2. *obs.* *i.*
14. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
15. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
— § 87. *b.* 2.
— § 90. *a.* 3. *ii.*
16. § 90. *a.* 3. *i.*
— § 90. *a.* 6. *a.* *ii.*
17. § 84. *a.* *iii.* 3. *obs.* 2. *i.*
21. § 76. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.
— § 87. *c.* *obs.* 2. *ii.*
22. § 84. 6. *iii.* 1. *obs.* 2.
25. § 67. 6. *obs.* 1.
28. § 84. *a.* *ii.* 1. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
35. § 84. *a.* *ii.* 2. *obs.* 2.

Ver. i. *Actio prima.*

1. § 90. *a.* 1. *i.*
1. § 90. *a.* 1. *i.*
4. § 87. *a.* 2. *obs.* *ii.*
6. § 90. *b.* 3. *ii.*
9. § 68. 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*
10. § 75. *b.* 3. *obs.* 2.
11. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 2.
12. § 68. 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 90. *a.* 3. *i.*
13. § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 2.
14. § 90. *a.* 5. *i.*
— § 90. *a.* 6. *obs.*
— § 90. *a.* 6. *a.* *ii.*
18. § 88. *a.* 1. *obs.*
47. § 84. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2.

Ver. ii. *Actio secunda.*

1. *Lib.* 1.

1. § 68. 2. *obs.* 2.
— § 90. *a.* 1. *ii.*
7. § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
9. § 87. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 87. *c.* *obs.* 2. *i.*
12. § 76. *d.* 2. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
— § 77. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
18. § 74. *a.* 6. *obs.* 4.
26. § 90. *a.* 1. 3. *i.*
40. § 73. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
41. § 69. 3. *obs.* 2. *i.*
44. § 91. *a.* 24.
45. § 79. *d.* *obs.* 4. *iv.*
— § 90. *a.* 6. *b.* 5.
48. § 73. *b.* *obs.* 3.
53. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
57. § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1. *ii.*

2. *Lib.* 2.

1. § 84. *a.* *iii.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
2. § 84. *a.* *iii.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
6. § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
8. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
20. § 79. *d.* *obs.* 4. *ii.*
21. § 60. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
27. § 74. *b.* 3. *obs.* 3.
29. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 90. *a.* 5. *i.*
31. § 90. *b.* 6. *ii.*
33. § 91. *c.* 1. *ii.*
55. § 90. *a.* 4. *iv.*
59. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
72. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 4.

3. *Lib.* 3.

25. § 77. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2. *v.*
— § 91. *a.* 21.
42. § 91. *b.* 5.
72. § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
— § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 3.
83. § 90. *a.* 5. *i.*
96. § 72. *a.* 2. *obs.*

4. *Lib.* 4.

4. § 80. 1. *obs.* 2.
16. § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
17. § 84. *a.* *iii.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
18. § 87. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
23. § 91. *a.* 12.
47. § 88. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1.
50. § 70. 3. *obs.* 3.
51. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
56. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1. *iii.*

5. *Lib.* 5.

1. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 1. *i.*

5. Claud. *Claudianus.*

vi. Con. Hon. 24. § 19. 1. *obs.*

6. Curt. *Curtius.*

iii. 11. 57. § 23. *f.* *obs.* 2.

Digitized by Google

7. Hor. *Horatius.*

O. i. *Odæ. Lib.* 1.

1. 3. § 69. 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
1. 18. § 69. 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
—— § 85. 2. *obs.*
1. 23. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
1. 28. § 60. *c.* 3. *obs.*
2. 3. § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *i.*
2. 13. § 91. *d. obs.*
3. 11. § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1.
6. 1. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
6. 20. § 91. *a.* 21.
8. 7. § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
8. 15. § 77. *c.* 2. *obs.* 3.
9. 1. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i. a.*
9. 10. § 74. *c.* 2. *obs.*
10. 19. § 68. 1. *obs.* 5.
12. 17. § 79. *d. obs.* 5.
12. 37. § 76. *d.* 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*
16. 13. § 86. *b.* 2. *obs.* 3. *i.*
17. 1. § 76. *c. obs.* 3.
17. 3. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.
22. 1. § 76. *b.* 2. *obs. iii.*
22. 10. § 91. *a.* 27.
24. 5. § 90. *a.* 5. *i.*
24. 9. § 76. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
24. 10. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
24. 14. § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
27. 6. § 69. 3. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
28. 35. § 82. 2. *obs. v.*
—— § 84. *b. iii.* 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
31. 2. § 91. *b.* 5.
32. 15. § 23. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2.
35. 2. § 91. *b.* 5.
35. 28. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
35. 29. § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
37. 13. § 91. *b.* 1.
37. 21. § 69. 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*

O. ii. *Odæ. Lib.* 2.

1. 1. § 91. *b.* 6.
2. 6. § *b. obs.* 2.
—— § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*
3. 14. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii. a,* 3.
3. 21. § 91. *b.* 1.
3. 19. § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*
6. 6. § 84. *c.* 1. *obs. iv.*
6. 8. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
8. 17. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i. b.*
9. 17. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 4. *ii.*
11. 4. § 84. *c.* 1. *obs. iii.*
13. 40. § 15. II. 4. *obs.* 3.
14. 19. § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.
19. 28. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.

O. iii. *Odæ. Lib.* 3.

1. 9. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i. a.*
1. 10. § 84. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
3. 20. § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*
4. 5. § 90. *a.* 6. *b.* 4.
4. 7. § 85. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
4. 57. § 91. *a.* 9.
5. 5. § 91. *d. obs.*
5. 10. § 11. *obs.* 4.
7. 30. § 91. *c.* 2. *ii.*
8. 2. § 76. *d.* 1. *obs. iii.*
8. 13. § 73. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
9. 6. § 91. *a.* 20.
13. 13. § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
15. 16. § 91. *b.* 10.
16. 30. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
18. 10. § 18. 1. *obs.* 2.
19. 15. § 91. *a.* 25.
24. 19. § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
26. 8. § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 5.
27. 27. § 75. *a. obs.* 3. *iii.*
27. 70. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 4. *ii.*
29. 50. § 75. *a. obs.* 2.
29. 52. § 74. *a.* 6. *obs.* 1.
30. 12. § 76. *d.* 3. *obs.* 2.

O. iv. *Odæ. Lib.* 4.

2. 1. § 74. *a* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
2. 59. § 85. 1. *obs.* 1.
3. 4. § 75. *b.* 3. *obs.* 2.
3. 23. § 70. 3. *obs.* 1.
4. 2. § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*
5. 1. § 60. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2.
7. 3. § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 1.
9. 41. § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *i.*

O. v. *Odæ. Lib.* 5.

9. 9. § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
9. 11. § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
16. 65. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
C.S.11. § 66. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *v.*

Sat. i. *Satiræ. Lib.* 1.

1. 1. § 23. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2.

Digitized by Google

1. 19. § 70. 2. *obs.* 2.
—— § 85. *a.* 2. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
1. 20. § 73. *c.* 2. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
—— § 84. *a. iii.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
1. 36. § 87. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
1. 50. § 73. *a.* 3. *obs. iii.*
1. 62. § 76. *c. obs.* 1. *ii.*
1. 63. § 84. *c.* 1. *obs. iii.*
1. 81. § 84. *b. ii.* 1. *obs.*
1. 101. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii. a.* 5.
2. 4. § 85. *a.* 2. *obs.* 3. *i.*
2. 18. § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*
2. 27. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
3. 10. § 66. *c. obs.* 2. *iv.*
3. 13. § 84. *c.* 1. *obs. iv.*
3. 14. § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 5.
3. 32. § 90. *a.* 3. *ii.*
3. 67. § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*
3. 95. § 14. *obs.* 2.
3. 248. § 21. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1.
4. 1. § 66. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
4. 5. § 84. *b. iii.* 2. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
—— § 91. *b.* 4.
4. 9. § 91. *c.* 1. *ii.*
4. 10. § 91. *c.* 1. *ii.*
4. 14. § 76. *c. obs.* 1. *iii.*
4. 20. § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
4. 22. § 84. *a. iii.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*
4. 39. § 85. *a.* 2. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
4. 74. § 90. *a.* 2. *i.*
4. 98. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i. b.*
4. 135. § 86. *b.* 2. *obs.* 4. *ii.*
5. 5. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
5. 7. § 91. *a.* 23.
5. 8. § 88. *b.* 2. *obs.*
5. 19. § 70. 3. *obs.* 2.
5. 44. § 84. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
5. 63. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
6. 12. § 79. *d. obs.* 5.
6. 22. § 90. *a.* 2. *i.*
6. 39. § 91. *b.* 6.
6. 122. § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
7 15. § 22. *a.* 1. *obs.*
7. 24. § 75. *b. iii. obs.* 1. *iv.*
9. 4. § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
9. 11. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 3.
9. 17. § 85. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
9. 18. § 91. *a.* 26.
9. 32. § 90. *a.* 2. *i.*
9. 46. § 68. *obs.* 1.
9. 47. § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
9. 52. § 90. *a.* 3. *ii.*
9. 54. § 69. 3. *obs.* 2. *i.*
10. 1. § 90. *a.* 4. *iv.*
10. 25. § 87. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
10. 31. § 91. *a.* 8.
10. 53. § 87. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
10. 64. § 84. *c.* 1. *obs. iii.*
10. 86. § 91. 1. *ii.*

Sat. ii. *Satiræ. Lib.* 2.

1. 20. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
1. 43. § 84. *c.* 1. *obs. iv.*
2. 8. § 82. 2. *obs. iv.*
2. 9. § 90. *a.* 2. *i.*
2. 27. § 87. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
2. 107. § 79. *e.* 1. *obs.* 2.
2. 112. § 84. *b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3. *i.*
3. 3. § 74. *a.* 6. *obs.* 4.
3. 19. § 87. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
3. 61. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
3. 67. § 90. *a.* 6. *b.* 2.
3. 140. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
3. 197. § 78. *c.* 2. *obs.*
3. 207. § 90. *a.* 4. *iv.*
3. 278. § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 1.
3. 313. § 78. *b.* 2. *obs. i.*
5. 58. § 90. *a.* 6. *b.* 3.
5. 69. § 85. 1. *obs.* 2.
5. 92. § 78. *b.* 2. *obs. ii.*
6. 10. § 90. *b.* 3. *i.*
6. 32. § 74. *b.* 8. *obs.* 1.
6. 44. § 73. *b. obs.* 4.
6. 84. § 74. *b.* 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*
6. 111. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
7. 1. § 87. *b. obs.* 3. *i.*
7. 4. § 18. 1. *obs.* 2.
7. 91. § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
8. 3. § 91. *b.* 5.
8. 81. § 91. *b.* 5.

E. i. *Epistolæ. Lib.* 1.

1. 40. § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
1. 50. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
1. 51. § 84. *a. ii.* 3. *obs.* 4.
1. 93. § 79. *f.* 1. *obs.* 2.
1. 100. § 76. *c. obs.* 3.
2. 49. § 84. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2.
—— § 85. *b.* 2. *i. a.*

Digitized by Google

2. 59. § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
3. 15. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
3. 30. § 84. *c.* 2. *obs.* 3.
5. 21. § 80. 2. *obs.* 2.
6. 5. § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.
6. 50. § 79. *d. obs.* 1.
6. 56. § 69. 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
6. 68. § 90. *b.* 5. *ii.*
7. 38. § 70. 3. *obs.* 1.
7. 39. § 84. *b. iii.* 2. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
7. 47. § 91. *a.* 6.
7. 81. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii. a.* 5.
8. 12. § 77. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
10. 24. § 84. *b. iii.* 3. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
10. 26. § 19. 3. *obs.* 2.
10. 30. § 80. 3. *obs.*
10. 49. § 87. *b.* 1. *obs.* 5.
—— § 91. *a.* 20.
10. 50. § 77. *d. obs.* 2. *i.*
11. 29. § 91. *a.* 26.
12. 5. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
14. 16. § 74. *b.* 3. *obs.* 1.
14. 32. § 80. 3. *obs.*
14. 36. § 73. *d.* 2. *obs.* 2.
15. 7. § 74. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2.
15. 35. § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
15. 42. § 90. *a.* 4. *iv.*
16. 30. § 85. *a.* 2. *obs.* 3. *i.*
16. 55. § 16. III. 1. 1. *c. obs.*
—— § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 3.
16. 57. § 82. 2. *obs.* 1.
16. 61. § 85. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
17. 1. § 84. *b. iii.* 3. *obs.* 2. *i.*
17. 5. § 84. *b. iii.* 2. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
—— § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii. a.*
17. 13. § 75. *a. obs.* 3. *iv.*
17. 19. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
17. 43. § 91. *b.* 3.
18. 4. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 4. *i.*
18. 10. § 74. *b.* 7. *obs.* 2.
18. 36. § 76. *c. obs.* 2.
19. 7. § 86. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
19. 44. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*

E. ii. *Epistolæ. Lib.* 2.

1. 14. § 91. *a.* 12.
1. 63. § 69. 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
1. 124. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
1. 194. § 84. *c.* 1. *obs. i.*
1. 240. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
2. 55. § 91. *b.* 5.
2. 133. § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*
2. 175. § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 1.
2. 200. § 90. *a.* 6. *b. obs.*
2. 212. § 91. *b.* 5.
2. 215. § 85. 2. *obs. ii.*

A.P. *Ars poetica.*

28. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
56. § 80. 2. *obs.* 2.
69. § 84. *b. iii.* 1. *obs.* 3. *iv.*
129. § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*
203. § 20. 1.
218. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
266. § 91. *a.* 14.
304. § 76. *c. obs.* 1. *ii.*
324. § 73. *d.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
371. § 74. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
380. § 73. *d.* 5. *obs. ii.*
385. § 83. 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
461. § 79. *f.* 1. *obs. i.*

8. Juv. *Juvenalis.*

i. 6. § 15. I. 2. *obs.* 4.
i. 35. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
i. 49. § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
ii. 3. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
iv. 24. § 71. *obs.* 1.
v. 63. § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
v. 113. § 74. *b.* 7. *obs.* 1.
viii. 84. § 74. *b.* 3. *obs.* 1.
x. 118. § 30. *obs.* 2.
x. 197. § 78. *b.* 2. *obs. ii.*
xiii. 26. § 67. 6. *obs.* 3.
xiv. 71. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.* 2.
xiv. 177. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. i.

9. Liv. *Livius.*

i. *Lib.* 1.

1. § 70. 3. *obs.* 3.
— § 90. *a.* 2. *ii.*
— § 91. *a.* 1.
— § 91. *a.* 1.
— § 91. *a.* 4.
— § 91. *a.* 13.
— § 91. *a.* 21.
— § 91. *b.* 1.
— § 91. *b.* 6.
— § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*

Digitized by Google

— § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*
2. § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 74. *b.* 3. *obs.* 1.
— § 91. *a.* 10.
— § 91. *a.* 18.
— § 91. *b.* 1.
3. § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1.
— § 74. *b. obs.* 2.
— § 79. *f.* 1. *obs.* 3.
— § 86. *b.* 2. *obs.* 4. *iii.*
4. § 73. *a.* 4. *obs.* 1.
— § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 1. *vii.*
— § 82. 2. *obs. iii.*
— § 91. *a.* 13.
— § 91. *a.* 24.
— § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*
— § 91. *c.* 1. *ii.*
5. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
— § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 91. *a.* 1.
6. § 67. 3. *obs.* 1.
— § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
— § 84. *b. ii.* 2. *obs.* 1.
— § 86. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 91. *a.* 1.
— § 91. *b.* 7.
7. § 73. *b. obs.* 1.
— § 74. *b.* 3. *obs.* 2.
— § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
— § 79. *a.* 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
— § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
— § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 87. *c. obs.* 2. *ii.*
— § 91. *a.* 1.
— § 91. *a.* 18.
— § 91. *b.* 1.
— § 91. *b.* 7.
8. § 67. 8. *obs.* 2.
— § 73. *a.* 2. *obs.*
— § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 78. *b.* 3. *obs.* 1.
— § 82. 2. *obs. ii.*
9. § 74. *b.* 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 75. *a. obs.* 4. *i.*
— § 76. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1.
— § 83. 1. *obs.* 3.
— § 84. *a. ii.* 3. *obs.* 3.
— § 91. *a.* 1.
— § 91. *a.* 5. *obs.*
— § 91. *b.* 6.
— § 91. *b.* 6.
10. § 74. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
— § 91. *a.* 13.
— § 91. *b.* 9.
11. § 86. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
— § 91. *a.* 11.
— § 91. *a.* 18.
— § 91. *b.* 8.
12. § 74. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
— § 79. *f.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
— § 91. *b.* 1.
14. § 73. *c.* 2. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
— § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 4. *i.*
— § 77. *a.* 3. *obs.* 2.
— § 91. *a.* 4.
15. § 67. 2. *obs.* 2.
— § 74. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.
— § 77. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
— § 86. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
— § 91. *a.* 1.
— § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*
16. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
— § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 1.
— § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.* 3.
17. § 74. *a.* 6. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
— § 76. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
— § 86. *a.* 2. *obs. i.*
— § 91. *a.* 20.
— § 91. *b.* 1.
18. § 73. *d.* 5. *obs. iii.*
— § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 3.
— § 84. *b. iii.* 3. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
— § 91. *b.* 5.
— § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*
19. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.* 4.
20. § 66. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
— § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
— § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
— § 91. *a.* 28.
21. § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*
22. § 67. 3. *obs.* 2.
— § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1. *ii.*

Digitized by Google

— § 91. *a.* 1.
— § 91. *c.* 2. *i.*
23. § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 1. *i.*
24. § 10. *obs.* 2.
— § 71. *obs.* 1.
— § 73. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
— § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 3.
25. § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
— § 76. *d.* 2. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 91. *c.* 4. *i.*
26. § 74. *b.* 3. *obs.* 1.
— § 83. 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
— § 89. 2. *obs.* 3. *iv.*
— § 89. 2. *obs.* 3. *iv.*
— § 91. *a.* 14.
— § 91. *a.* 24.
— § 91. *b.* 6.
— § 91. *c.* 2. *i.*
27. § 67. 1. *obs.*
— § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 86. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 89. 2. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 91. *a.* 22.
28. § 68. 1. *obs.* 7.
— § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
— § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 1.
29. § 69. 3. *obs.* 1.
— § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
31. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
— § 91. *d. obs.*
32. § 70. 3. *obs.* 1.
— § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 75. *b.* 3. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 76. *b.* 2. *obs. ii.*
— § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 4.
— § 84. *b. ii.* 2. *obs.* 1.
33. § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
— § 91. *a.* 16.
— § 91. *c.* 1. *ii.*
34. § 66. *c. obs.* 2. *ii.*
— § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
— § 74. *b.* 3. *obs.* 1.
— § 77. *a.* 3. *obs.* 2.
— § 86. 6. 2. *obs.* 4. *ii.*
— § 91. *a.* 16.
— § 91. *c.* 4. *i.*
35. § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 91. *a.* 22.
— § 91. *b.* 4.
36. § 74. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
— § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
37. § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 3.
38. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3.
— § 91. *a.* 5.
39. § 68. 3. *obs.* 3.
— § 70. 3. *obs.* 3.
— § 73. *b. obs.* 1.
— § 74. *b.* 8. *obs.* 1. *i.*
40. § 74. *b.* 3. *obs.* 1.
— § 79. *a.* 3. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 89. 2. *obs.* 3. *v.*
— § 89. 2. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
41. § 68. 1. *obs.* 3.
— § 73. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 73. *b. obs.* 2.
— § 73. *c.* 2. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
— § 76. *d.* 5. *obs.*
— § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 79. *e.* 1. *obs.* 1.
43. § 80. 2. *obs.* 3.
— § 91. *a.* 17.
44. § 74. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.* 1.
45. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 2.
— § 91. 1. *obs. i.*
46. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 76. *d.* 1. *obs.* 2.
— § 90. *a.* 6. *b.* 5.
47. § 77. 2. *obs.* 1.
— § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
— § 79. *f.* 2. *obs.* 2.
— § 80. 1. *obs.* 3.
— § 84. *a. ii.* 3. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
48. § 69. 1. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
— § 70. 3. *obs.* 3.
— § 74. *b.* 3. *obs.* 1.
— § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
— § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
— § 75. *a. obs.* 3.
— § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 91. *a.* 18.
49. § 75. *b.* 2. *obs. i.*
— § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
— § 85. 2. *obs. i.*
— § 88. *b.* 2. *obs. i.*
— § 91. *a.* 18.

Digitized by Google

50. § 66. *b. obs. ii.*
— § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. *i.*
— § 74. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1.
— § 74. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
— § 84. *ii.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
51. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.* 5.
52. § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
53. § 67. 5. *obs.*
— § 77. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
— § 91. *a.* 4.
54. § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
— § 74. *b.* 8. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
— § 85. 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
55. § 66. *b. obs. ii.*
— § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 88. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
— § 91. 2. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
— § 91. *c.* 1. *ii.*
56. § 69. 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 86. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
57. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. *i.*
— § 83. 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 84. *b. iii.* 2. *obs.* 3. *i.*
58. § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 76. *b.* 2. *obs. iii.*
59. § 80. 4. *obs.* 1.
— § 91. *a.* 13.

ii. *Lib.* 2.

1. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 4.
— § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 76. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1.
— § 79. *c.* 2. *obs.* 1.
— § 86. *b.* 2. *obs.* 4. *ii.*
2. § 74. *a.* 6. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
— § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
— § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 2.
— § 89. 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*
3. § 69. 1. *obs.* 3.
— § 73. *c.* 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 77. *d. obs.* 1.
— § 79. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
— § 88. *a.* 4. *obs.* 1.
4. § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 3.
— § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
— § 84. *a. ii.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii. b.* 1.
— § 91. *a.* 4.
— § 91. *d. obs.*
5. § 73. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2.
— § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
— § 91. *a.* 24.
6. § 67. 3. *obs.* 3.
— § 76. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
— § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
— § 84. *b. iii.* 2. *obs.* 4. *ii.*
— § 91. *b.* 4.
— § 91. *b.* 6.
7. § 78. *b.* 2. *obs.*
— § 91. *a.* 25.
— § 91. *b.* 6.
— § 91. *b.* 8.
— § 91. *b.* 8.
8. § 68. 1. *obs.* 4. *iii.*
— § 73. *b. obs.* 3.
— § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
— § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
— § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
— § 74. *a.* 6. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
— § 74. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.
— § 88. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
— § 89. 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 91. *a.* 4.
— § 91. *a.* 14.
— § 91. *d. obs.*
9. § 74. *a.* 6. *obs.* 2.
— § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 3. *i.*
10. § 67. 2. *obs.* 1.
— § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 74. *b.* 3. *obs.* 2.
— § 76. *d.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 83. 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
— § 84. *b. iii.* 2. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
— § 84. *c.* 1. *obs. iii.*
— § 89. 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 91. *b.* 8.
11. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
— § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
12. § 66. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
— § 66. *b. obs.* 4.
— § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 6.
— § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 78. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
— § 79. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3.
13. § 69. 1. 2. *obs.*
— § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 2.
— § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 3. *i.*
— § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 1.
— § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
14. § 76. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1.
— § 77. *d. obs.* 2. *ii.*

Digitized by Google

— § 91. *c.* 1. *i. obs.* 1.
15. § 74. *a.* 6. *obs.* 3. *i.*
— § 84. *a. ii.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
— § 84. *a. iii.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
17. § 76. *d.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 79. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
18. § 68. 2. *obs.* 1.
— § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. *i.*
19. § 67. 5. *obs.*
— § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*
20. § 74. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 2.
— § 86. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 91. *b.* 8.
22. § 16. III. 1. 1. *c. obs.*
— § 67. 2. *obs.* 1.
— § 79. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*
— § 80. 4. *obs.*
— § 91. 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*
23. § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
— § 79. *a.* 3. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
— § 91. *a.* 1.
24. § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 79. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
— § 79. *f.* 3. *obs.*
25. § 77. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
26. § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 1. *i.*
28. § 73. *c.* 4. *obs.*
— § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.
29. § 67. 6. *obs.* 3.
31. § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 1.
34. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
36. § 77. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2.
38. § 84. *b. iii.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*
42. § 14. *obs.* 2.
45. § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 5.
48. § 87. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
— § 90. *a.* 5. *i.*
57. § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 2. *i.*
59. § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 3. *i.*

iii. *Lib.* 3.

11. § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 4.
31. § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
52. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i. b.*
64. § 74. *b.* 3. *obs.* 1.
70. § 76. *d.* 3. *obs.* 2.

iv. *Lib.* 4.

3. § 67. 6. *obs.* 3.
24. § 39. 2. *obs.* 3.
27. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 1. *v.*

v. *Lib.* 5.

2. § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 2.
3. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *v.*
4. § 68. 2. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
— § 77. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
35. § 91. *a.*
40. § 79. *e.* 1. *obs.* 1.
41. § 76. *d.* 2. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
52. § 77. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
53. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
54. § 68. 2. *obs.* 1. *ii.*

vi. *Lib.* 6.

13. § 76. *d.* 4. *obs.* 3.
14. § 88. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
— § 91. 1. *obs. ii.*
16. § 91. 1. *obs. ii.*
27. § 84. *a. ii.* 1. *obs.* 3. *i.*
29. § 77. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
42. § 89. 2. *obs.* 1. *iii.*

vii. *Lib.* 7.

5. § 76. *d.* 5. *obs. ii.*
16. § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3. *i.*

viii. *Lib.* 8.

13. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 2.
18. § 84. *a. i.* 1. *obs.* 2.

ix. *Lib.* 9.

10. § 78. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
22. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
45. § 73. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1.
46. § 91. *a.* 2.

x. *Lib.* 10.

1. § 66. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 68. 1. *obs.* 3.
— § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.

Digitized by Google

xxi. *Lib.* 21.

l. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
5. § 79. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1.
— § 79. *a.* 3. *obs.* 2. *i.*
7. § 76. *b.* 2. *obs. ii.*
29. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3.
60. § 67. 3. *obs.* 1.

xxii. *Lib.* 22.

28. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 4.
32. § 87. *a.* 2. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
51. § 76. *d.* 5. *obs. i.*

xxiv. *Lib.* 24.

10. § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 2. *i.*
26. § 9. *obs.* 4.
46. § 77. *b.* 1. *obs. i.*

xxv. *Lib.* 25.

13. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
27. § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.

xxvi. *Lib.* 26.

1. § 73. *c.* 2. *obs.* 5.
24. § 91. *b.* 10.
35. § 67. 2. *obs.* 1.

xxvii. *Lib.* 27.

2. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
9. § 88. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *i.*
19. § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 2.

xxviii. *Lib.* 28.

Epit. § 77. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*

xxx. *Lib.* 30.

24. § 66. *b. obs. i.*

xxxi. *Lib.* 31.

13. § 6. *obs.* 5. *a.*

xxxiv. *Lib.* 34.

7. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *v.*

xl. *Lib.* 40.

10. § 68. 2. *obs.* 1. *v.*
30. § 91. *a.* 19.
41. § 91. *a.* 21.

xlii. *Lib.* 42.

15. § 78. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
57. § 91. *a.* 5.

xlv. *Lib.* 45.

21. § 70. 2. *obs.* 2.
34. § 91. *a.* 5.

10. Luc. *Lucanus.*

i. 126. § 84. *a. i.* 1. *obs.* 1.
i. 128. § 19. 1. *obs.*
iv. 405. § 15. 1. 1. 1. *obs.* 2.
vi. 217. § 13. *obs.* 1. *b.*
vii. 408. § 15. 1. 1. *obs.* 2.

11. Lucr. *Lucretius.*

i. 87. § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
i. 112. § 86. *a.* 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
v. 1139. § 48. 1. *b. obs.* 2.

12. Mart. *Martialis.*

xii. 59. § 80. 1. *obs.* 2.

13. Nep. *Corn. Nepos.*

Att. *Atticus.*

8. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*

Ep. *Epaminondas.*

5. § 77. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*

Thras. *Thrasybulus.*

2. § 14. *obs.* 2.

14. Ov. *Ovidius.*

Met. *Metamorphoses.*

i. 169. § 70. 3. *obs.* 3.
i. 539. § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2.
vi. 195. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
xv. 96. § 70. 3. *obs.* 3.

Ep. *Heroid. epist.*

ii. 85. § 84. *c.* 1. *obs. iv.*
x. 86. § 84. *a. i.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
xviii. 180. § 15. 1. 4. *obs.*

Digitized by Google

Fast. *Fasti.*

i. 287. § 68. 2. *obs.* 1. *v.*
iv. 68. § 15. 1. 1. *obs.* 2.

Tr. *Tristium Lib.*

i. 2. 24. § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2.
iv. 8. 51. § 83. 1. *obs.* 4.
v. 1. 66. § 74. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
v. 8. 23. § 91. *a.* 8.

Pont. *ex Ponto epist.*

iii. 8. 24. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 2.

15. Pers. *Persius.*

i. 27. § 15. 1. 4. *obs.*
—— § 85. 1. *obs.* 1.
iii. 97. § 30. *obs.* 2.

16. Plaut. *Plautus.*

Am. *Amphitruonis.*

Prol. 19. § 70. 3. *obs.* 3.
— 117. § 12. *obs.* 7.
i. 1. 55. § 30. *obs.* 3.

Aul. *Aulularia.*

iii. 2. 16. § 32. *c. obs.*

Cap. *Captivi.*

Iii. 4. 38. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *iii.*

Cas. *Casina.*

Prol. 71. § 77. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*

Merc. *Mercator.*

iii. 2. 2. § 91. 1. *ii.*

Stic. *Stichus.*

i. 1. 50. § 67. 7. *obs.*
iii. 2. 13. § 91. *b.* 7.

Truc. *Truculentus.*

ii. 3. 27. § 91. *a.* 8.

17. Plin. *Plinius.*

N.H. *Natur. Historia.*

ii. 63. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
vii. 31. § 71. *obs.* 2.
x. 43. § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 1. *i.*
xi. 8. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
xxxvi. 6. § 88. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2.

E. *Epistolæ.*

ii. 11. § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3. *ii.*

18. Prop. *Propertius.*

iii. 11. 57. § 23. *f. obs.* 2.

19. Quin. *Quintilianus.*

i. 11. § 15. 1. 4. *obs.*
ix. 2. § 76. *a.* 2. *obs.* 3.

20. Sal. *Sallustius.*

Cat. *Catilina.*

17. § 20. 1.
33. § 73. *c.* 4. *obs.*
— § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
41. § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
48. § 76. *d.* 3. *obs.* 2.

Jug. *Jugurtha.*

8. § 68. 2. *obs.* 1. *vi.*
38. § 68. 2. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
46. § 79. *a.* 3. *obs.* 4.
53. § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 3.
95. § 76. *d.* 2. *obs.* 1. *iv.*

21. Stat. Theb. *Statius Thebais.*

i. 406. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
ix. 5. § 75. *a. obs.* 2.
x. 506. § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*

22. Suet. *Suetonius.*

Jul. 7. § 73. *d.* 2. *obs.* 3.

23. Tac. *Tacitus.*

Ann. *Annales.*

i. 46 § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
ii. 34. § 17. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
ii. 73. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
iii. 55. § 76. *d.* 3. *obs.* 2.
iv. 12. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
vi. 9. § 75. *a. obs.* 4. *iii.*
xi. 2. § 91. *a.* 5.
xi. 10. § 77. *d. obs.* 2. *i.*
xii. 18. § 73. *b. obs.* 4.
xv. 5. § 88. *a.* 2. *obs. ii.*
xv. 15. § 73. *d.* 2. *obs.* 3.
xvi. 14. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.

Digitized by Google

H. *Historiæ.*

ii. 67. § 22. *a.* 2. *obs.* 4.

Agr. *Agricola.*

18. § 74. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1. *ii.*

24. Ter. *Terentius.*

And. *Andria.*

Prol. § 69. 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
i. 1. 30. § 84. *c.* 1. *obs. i.*
i. 1. 70. § 69. 1. *obs.* 4.
i. 1. 71. § 76. *d.* 2. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
i. 1. 107. § 88. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2.
ii. 1. 2. § 91. *a.* 4.
ii. 1. 30. § 73. *a.* 3. *obs.*
ii. 1. 31. § 74. *b.* 8. *obs.* 2.
ii. 3. 17. § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 3. *iii.*
iii. 3. 23. § 67. 8. *obs.* 2.
iv. 5. 33. § 84. *a. i.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
v. 1. 5. § 91. 2. *obs.* 1. *iv.*

Eun. *Eunuchus.*

Prol. 32. § 15. 1. 2. *obs.* 4.
ii. 2. 24. § 73. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1.
ii. 3. 10. § 76. *c. obs.* 1. *i.*
ii. 3. 69. § 91. *a.* 1.
iii. 2. 43. § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 2. *i.*
v. 5. 5. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*

Heaut. *Heautontimor.*

i. 1. 41. § 89. 2. *obs.* 3. *i.*
i. 1. 44. § 15. 1. 3. *obs.* 1. *b.*
ii. 1. 3. § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 2.
ii. 1. 5. § 70. 3. *obs.* 4.
ii. 3. 46. § 13. *obs.* 1.
ii. 3. 123. § 69. 1. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
v. 4. 3. § 73. *d.* 3. *obs.*

Ad. *Adelphi.*

iii. 2. 12. § 76. *d.* 3. *obs.* 2.
v. 1. 8. § 20. 2.
v. 8. 16. § 75. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2.

Phor. *Phormio.*

i. 2. 97. § 90. *a.* 6. *b.* 5.
i. 4. 11. § 91. *b.* 2.
v. 4. 2. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*

25. Val. Flac. *Valerius Flaccus.*

ii. 296. § 20. *obs.* 2.

26. Virg. *Virgilius.*

E. *Eclogæ.*

i. 1. § 91. *c.* 2. *ii.*
ii. 74. § 84. *c.* 2. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
ii. 44. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
iii. 33. § 74. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*
iii. 77. § 83. 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
iii. 80. § 68. 1. *obs.* 2.
iii. 103. § 84. *a. i.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
v. 1. § 84. *a. iii.* 2. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
v. 23. § 90. *a.* 1. *iii.*
v. 65. § 92. 4. *obs. i.*
v. 80. § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3. *iii.*
v. 88. § 84. *a. iii.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*
v. 89. § 76. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
vii. 25. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
vii. 47. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3.
viii. 5. § 85. 1. *obs.* 1.
——— § 85. 2. *obs.*
viii. 43. § 68. 1. *obs.* 2.
viii. 81. § 3. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3.
viii. 86. § 91. *a.* 23.
viii. 102. § 84. *c.* 1. *obs. iii.*
viii. 107. § 79. *e.* 2. *obs.* 2.
ix. 6. § 89. 2. *obs.* 3. *iii.*
ix. 24. § 91. *a.* 13.
ix. 45. § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
ix. 67. § 87. *b.* 2. *obs.* 1.
x. 48. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*

G. *Georgica.*

i. *Lib.* 1.

18. § 66. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
56. § 84. *a. i.* 1. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
98. § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
201. § 78. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
208. § 14. *obs.* 2.
294. § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 1.
299. § 83. 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
330. § 87. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
383. § 89. 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
435. § 76. *d.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
438. § 86. *b.* 2. *obs.* 4. *i.*

Digitized by Google

ii. *Lib.* 2.

14. § 91. *b.* 5.
16. § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
104. § 69. 4. *obs.* 2.
105. § 79. *d.* *obs.* 1. *i.*
127. § 78. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
134. § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *v.*
— § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
231. § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
244. § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
412. § 83. 1 *obs.* 1. *iii.*
486. § 83. 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*

iii. *Lib.* 3.

13. § 76. *a.* 4. *obs.*
— § 91. *b.* 5.
26. § 76. *a.* 4. *obs.*
— § 91. *b.* 6.
53. § 91. *b.* 10.
57. § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 3.
84. § 76. *b.* 2. *obs.* *ii.*
143. § 91. *a.* 24.
260. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *v.*
345. § 60. *c.* 3. *obs.*
356. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
418. § 74. *b.* 3. *obs.* 1.
419. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *v.*
451. § 88. *a.* 1. *obs.*
499. § 74. *b.* 8. *obs.* 2.

iv. *Lib.* 4.

23. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 4. *i.*
25. § 90. *a.* 2. *iii.*
65. § 79. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2. *i.*
75. § 91. *a.* 5.
117. § 84. *b.* *iii.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
300. § 74. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*
445. § 90. *a.* 4. *iii.*
453. § 89. 2. *obs.* 3. *iv.*

Æ. *Æneis.*

i. *Lib.* 1.

13. § 91. *a.* 9.
27. § 86. *b.* 2. *obs.* 4.
31. § 87. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
35. § 87. *b.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
37. § 85. 3. *obs.* 2.
46. § 70. 3. *obs.* 1.
48. § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 3.
— § 84. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
130. § 75. *a.* *obs.* 3. *iii.*
154. § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
178. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
182. § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
203. § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 1. *i.*
215. § 68. 4. *obs.* 1.
219. § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
224. § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
319. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.* *b.* *i.*
328. § 75. *a.* *obs.* 2. *iii.*
350. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
365. § 77. *a.* 2. *obs.* 3.
440. § 76. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1.
461. § 92. 4. *obs.* *i.*
526. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1.
589. § 76. *b.* 2. *obs.* *ii.*
601. § 73. *a.* 2. *obs.*
630. § 85. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
654. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
662. § 91. *c.* 2. *i.*
726. § 3. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3.
750. § 91. *c.* 4. *ii.*

ii. *Lib.* 2.

8. § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
15. § 89. 2. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
55. § 84. *b.* *iii.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*
75. § 83. 1. *obs.* 3.
110. § 84. *c.* 1. *obs.* *iv.*
142. § 79. *e.* 3. *obs.* 1.
148. § 73. *d.* 7. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
171. § 79. *c.* 2. *obs.* 2. *i.*
228. § 73. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3.
322. § 87. *b.* 1. *obs.* 4.
323. § 84. *a.* *iii.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
325. § 87. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
332. § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
— § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 5.
345. § 84. *a.* *ii.* 3. *obs.* 1.
377. § 85. *a.* 2. *obs.* 3. *i.*
426. § 78. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
427. § 73. *d.* *obs.* *iii.*
510. § 75. *b.* 2. *obs.*
519. § 15. 1. 3. *obs.* 1.
535. § 91. *b.* 8.

Digitized by Google

576. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
600. § 84. *b. iii.* 2. *obs. ii.*
643. § 74. *b.* 3. *obs.* 1.
667. § 79. *f.* 3. *obs.*
783. § 15. 1. 3. *obs.* 1.

iii. *Lib.* 3.

28. § 76. *d.* 6. *obs.* 4. *i.*
39. § 84. *c.* 1. *obs. ii.*
54. § 19. 1. *obs.*
113. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *iv.*
122. § 13. *obs.* 6.
123. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *i.*
134. § 85. *b.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii. a.*
173. § 68. 3. *obs.* 3.
234. § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 1. 1. *i.*
302. § 91. *a.* 3.
388. § 83. 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
394. § 83. 2. *obs.* 1.
422. § 91. *c.* 2. *i.*
452. § 74. *b.* 2. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
480. § 91. 1. *obs. i.*
618. § 73. *b. obs.* 1.
621. § 88. *b.* 3. *obs.*
695. § 91. *c.* 3.

iv. *Lib.* 4.

5. § 74. *a.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
36. § 77. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
— § 77. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
141. § 91. *a.* 3.
224. § 77. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
231. § 91. *c.* 2. *i.*
234. § 74. *b.* 2. *obs.* 1. 1. *i.*
371. § 74. *b.* 3. *obs.* 1.
379. § 90. *a.* 4. *iv.*
383. § 85. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
— § 86. *b.* 2. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
468. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
470. § 22. *b.* 2. *obs.*
480. § 91. *a.* 15.
493. § 37. 4. *obs.*
528. § 32. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
554. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
570. § 73. *c.* 1. *obs.* 1.
578. § 71. *obs.* 2.
597. § 84. *a. iii.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
660. § 85. *a.* 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*

v. *Lib.* 5.

53. § 66. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *v.*
120. § 78. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
122. § 15. 1. 2. *obs.* 4.
194. § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
— § 89. 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
237. § 73. *d.* 6. *obs.* 3. *iii.*
266. § 75. *b.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
296. § 69. 1. *obs.* 1. *i.*
323. § 91. *c.* 2. *ii.*
438. § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 2.
451. § 74. *b.* 1. *obs.* 3.
— § 77. *a.* 4. *obs.* 2.
511. § 22. *b.* 2. *obs.*
541. § 74. *b.* 2. *obs.* 1. *i.*
704. § 78. *b.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
728. § 69. 1. *obs.* 5.

vi. *Lib.* 6.

11. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 1. *i.*
30. § 84. *b. iii.* 2. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
84. § 84. *b. iii.* 2. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
127. § 68. 3. *obs.* 2.
140. § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
170. § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *iv.*
203. § 91. *c.* 4. *ii.*
222. § 66. *a.* 1. *obs.* 1. *vi.*
288. § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *v.*
299. § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 2.
428. § 73. *c.* 4. *obs.*
467. § 68. 4. *obs.* 2. *v.*
570. § 89. 2. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
653. § 13. *obs.* 3.
714. § 91. *a.* 27.
719. § 90. *a.* 6. *a. ii.*
743. § 66. *b. obs. ii.*
763. § 21. *b. obs.* 2.
794. § 91. *c.* 4. *i.*
795. § 91. *a.* 11.
800. § 22. *b.* 2. *obs.*
815. § 91. *a.* 15.
823. § 73. *d.* 1. *obs.* 3. *i.*
837. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
880. § 74. *b.* 3. *obs.* 3.

vii. *Lib.* 7.

12. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3. *i.*
27. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3. *ii.*
272. § 79. *c.* 1. *obs.* 3.

Digitized by Google

305. § 74. *a.* 5. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
424. § 91. *c.* 1. *i.*
498. § 74. *a.* 2. *obs.* 2.
618. § 74. *b.* 4. *obs.* 1.
624. § 68. 1. *obs.* 3.
756. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
790. § 32. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2.
807. § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 2.

viii. *Lib.* 8.

82. § 74. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1. *i.*
161. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
292. § 91. *c.* 2. *ii.*
561. § 15. 1. 2. *obs.* 1.

ix. *Lib.* 9.

7. § 86. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
20. § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 2.
26. § 9. *obs.* 1.
59. § 74. *a.* 1. *obs.* 2. *ii.*
214. § 6. *obs.* 5. *a.*
269. § 84. *a. i.* 1. *obs.* 1. *iii.*
283. § 91. *c.* 4. *i.*
300. § 91. *a.* 18.
356. § 73. *c.* 3. *obs.* 2.
486. § 66. *b. obs. iii.*
514. § 91. *c.* 3.

x. *Lib.* 10.

108. § 26. *obs.* 2.
207. § 78. *c.* 3. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
361. § 74. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2. *iii.*
666. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.

xi. *Lib.* 11.

73. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.
343. § 74. *b.* 6. *obs.* 2.
467. § 30. *obs.* 3.
473. § 74. *b.* 5. *obs.* 1. *ii.*
822. § 23. *c.* 1. *obs.* 2.

xii. *Lib.* 12.

386. § 75. *a.* 1. *obs.* 3. *i.*
649. § 76. *d.* 4. *obs.* 1.
659. § 73. *d.* 4. *obs.* 2.

THE END.

GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, PRINTERS, ST. JOHN'S SQUARE, LONDON.

Digitized by Google

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

THE BROMSGROVE GREEK GRAMMAR.

Second Edition. Price 5*s*.

ABRIDGMENT OF THE ABOVE.

Price 1*s*. 6*d*.

INTERMEDIATE GREEK GRAMMAR.

PREPARED FOR CHRIST'S HOSPITAL.

Price 2*s*.

THE BROMSGROVE LATIN GRAMMAR.

Fourth Edition, much enlarged. Price 5*s*.

ABRIDGMENT OF THE ABOVE.

Price 1*s*. 3*d*.

SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO., LONDON.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google